

WHO...?

WITHOUT LIFTING A SWORD, HAS INFLUENCED AND CHANGED FOR THE GOOD MORE LIVES THAN ANY OTHER PERSON (including gang leaders, "unrehabilitatable" criminals, drug abusers, and even satanists).
- Isaiah 9:7; 1 Corinthians 6:9-11

KNOWS EVERYTHING ABOUT YOU, BUT LOVES YOU JUST THE SAME.
- John 2:24-25; Romans 5:9

TOTALLY IDENTIFIES WITH ALL YOU'RE GOING THROUGH RIGHT NOW, ...AND IS WONDERFULLY ABLE TO HELP...
- Heb 2:17b; 4:15

OFFERS YOU A CLOSER FRIENDSHIP THAN A BLOOD BROTHER, A RELATIONSHIP THAT WILL NEVER END.
"There are friends who pretend to be friends, but there is a friend who sticks closer than a brother."
- Proverbs 18:24

CAME TO GIVE YOU AN ABUNDANT PROSPEROUS LIFE FREE FROM SICKNESS, DISEASE, FEARS, INSECURITIES, AND ANXIETIES.
"My purpose is to give life in all its fulness."
- John 10:10b

WAS RICH, BUT BECAME POOR TO MAKE YOU RICH.
"Though he was so very rich, yet he help you to become so very poor, so that by being poor he could make you rich."
- 2 Corinthians 8:9

PREPARED A MANSION FOR YOU TO LIVE IN.
"There are many homes up there where my Father lives, and I am going to prepare them for you."
- John 14:2

CARED ENOUGH TO TAKE THE RAP (PAY THE PENALTY) FOR EVERY OFFENSE YOU EVER COMMITTED SO YOU CAN BE FREE FROM GUILT AND CONDEMNATION.
- 2 Corinthians 5:21; Isaiah chapter 53

WANTS TO GIVE YOU ULTIMATE PEACE AND REST.
"I am leaving you with a gift - peace of mind and heart. And the peace I give isn't fragile like the peace the world gives. So don't be troubled or afraid."
- JOHN 14:27
"Come to me and I will give you rest - all you who work so hard beneath a heavy yoke."
- Matthew 11:28

OFFERS YOU STABILITY AND SECURITY - HE NEVER CHANGES.
- It's the same yesterday, today, and forever."
- Hebrews 13:8

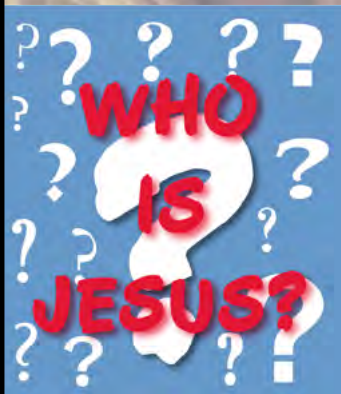
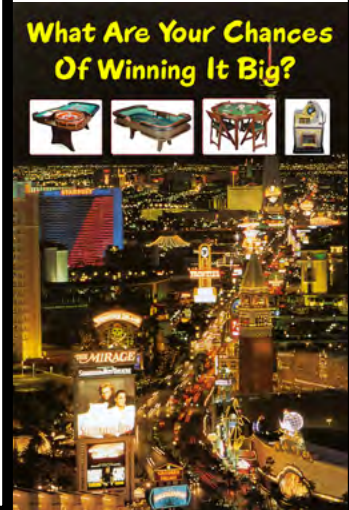
CONQUERED DEATH TO OFFER YOU EVERLASTING LIFE AS A FREE GIFT.
"How earnestly I tell you this - anyone who believes in me already has eternal life!"
- John 6:47; see also Romans 6:23b

WILL ONE DAY RULE THE WORLD, ESTABLISHING LASTING PEACE.
"He will bring true justice and peace to all the nations of the world."
- Isaiah 9:7

Christian Evangelism Printing

A How To Do It Guide For In Home Printers & Desktop Publishers

Evangelist
Rev. David A. Hupp, Bth, D.D.



Christian Evangelism Printing

A How-To-Do-It-Guide

For In Home Printers

And Desktop Publishers

Evangelist Dr. David A. Hupp

HIS Print Media Ministries

Santa Maria, California, U.S.A.

What Readers Are Saying About *Christian Evangelism Printing*

Wow! That is a beautiful book, excellently written & well done, & most certainly you had a great anointing of the Lord. I'm very proud of you for being obedient to the Lord & utilizing the talents & gifts He's given you for His glory. We thank you so much for a copy of your book.

Mary Peterson & Rebekah Strine, FOCUS Ministries, Inc.

David, I spent two hours last night reading your new printing manual, "Christian Evangelism Printing". It is excellent...both from an instructional viewpoint...and an inspirational perspective.

9/16/09 Prince Handley, Handley World Services Foundation, Inc.

Regarding our website <http://www.tracts4u.com>

Kudos for creating such a wonderful site. This site is not just informative but also very inventive too. We find a limited number of people who can think to write technical stuff that creatively. We keep searching for information on a topic like this. We ourselves went over dozens of blogs to acquire know-how with respect to this. We look forward to much more!!

Writing Service (IP: 72.8.155.221 , yokehost.info)



New 1900 Square Foot City location For Christian Evangelism Printing

ISBN 978-1-61623-753-0

Published November, 2009

Latest revision, November 2016 by:

HIS Print Media Ministries

115 W. Bunny Ave.

Santa Maria, CA 93458-2805 USA

www.tracts4u.com

E-mail: info@tracts4u.com

Cell Phone: 805-452-5150 (David)

This book may be reproduced in whole or in part for *Free Distribution*. The easiest way to do this is by using e-mail and the internet to attach/forward the e-book version posted on our website. First, download the free PDF e-book document from the website and save it on a hard drive, thumb drive, or memory card. You can then forward it to others as an e-mail attachment. One can also forward only the URL link (see below) to the document. One does Ctrl key + mouse left click over the blue [hypertext](#), or types these words into the address bar of his internet browser window, then presses the enter key. The computer then finds the document on the internet and displays/downloads it. Evidently one can read the book in the web browser window without having to download it. The latest edition PDF contains more clickable (blue text) links to online (internet) resources and additional information.

[CEP e-book download link.](#)

Now to Him Who, by (in consequence of) the [action of His] power that is at work within us, is able to [carry out His purpose and] do superabundantly, far over and above all that we [dare] ask or think [infinitely beyond our highest prayers, desires, thoughts, hopes, or dreams].

To Him be glory in the church and in Christ Jesus throughout all generations forever and ever. Amen (so be it). - Ephesians 3:20-21 Amplified Bible

Permissions & Copyright Acknowledgements

Scripture quotations marked NLT are taken from the Holy Bible, New Living Translation, copyright 1996, 2004. Used by permission of Tyndale House Publishers, Inc., Wheaton, Illinois 60189. All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations marked TLB are taken from the Holy Bible, Living Bible Paraphrase, copyright 1971. Used by permission of Tyndale House Publishers, Inc., Wheaton, Illinois 60189. All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations taken from the Amplified[®] Bible,
Copyright © 1954, 1958, 1962, 1964, 1965, 1987 by The Lockman Foundation
Used by permission. (www.Lockman.org)

In Gratitude

Here I say “Thank You!” to all those, some now deceased and with the Lord, who helped me keep going, got the devil off my back, helped me grow up, becoming the steadfast gung-ho Christian evangelist I am today. They have corrected me, even though it hurt, and pruned me for further growth in grace, and in the Lord.

Galatians 4:1-2 NLT “Think of it this way. If a father dies and leaves an inheritance for his young children, those children are not much better off than slaves until they grow up, even though they actually own everything their father had. ²They have to obey their guardians until they reach whatever age their father set.”

Hebrews 12:10 NLT “For our earthly fathers disciplined us for a few years, doing the best they knew how. But God's discipline is always good for us, so that we might share in His holiness.”

Hebrews 12:5-6 NLT “And have you forgotten the encouraging words God spoke to you as His children? He said, “My child, don't make light of the Lord's discipline, and don't give up when He corrects you. ⁶For the Lord disciplines those He loves, and He punishes each one He accepts as His child ”

Hebrews 12:7 NLT “As you endure this divine discipline, remember that God is treating you as His own children. Who ever heard of a child who is never disciplined by its father? ”

Hebrews 12:11-14 NLT “No discipline is enjoyable while it is happening—it's painful! But afterward there will be a peaceful harvest of right living for those who are trained in this way. ¹² So take a new grip with your tired hands and strengthen your weak knees. ¹³ Mark out a straight path for your feet so that those who are weak and lame will not fall but become strong. ¹⁴ Work at living in peace with everyone, and work at living a holy life, for those who are not holy will not see the Lord.”

Proverbs 27:6 NLT “Wounds from a sincere friend are better than many kisses from an enemy.”

John 15:2 NLT “Any branch in Me that does not bear fruit [that stops bearing] He cuts away (trims off, takes away); and He cleanses and repeatedly prunes every branch that continues to bear fruit, to make it bear more and richer and more excellent fruit.”

Reverends Frank & Frances Hawks – When I got out of the Navy to enter the ministry, I didn't know how to hear from God or what to do. This anointed couple invited me to their home where the first day they prayed for me for 12 hours, then later arranged for me to go to two Bible colleges and get a lifetime ministry ordination. They introduced me to Apostle Prince Handley who was a key player in supplying me with leads for printing tracts.

Prince Handley – 40 years of productive evangelistic and discipleship training ministry, and an expert in designing and maintaining Christian websites. We worked closely together locally to produce tens of thousands of tracts. WWW.PRINCEHANDLEY.COM
WWW.TWITTER.COM/PRINCEHANDLEY
WWW.REALMIRACLES.ORG

Harold Terrell – a disabled prophet who loved me enough to tell me the truth about my immaturity, helping me to begin to grow up and accept “life on life's terms.”

Evangelist Sondra Berry Young – responsible for connections to make tracts for street ministries. <http://www.sondraberryyoung.org>

Jerry & Joni Leonard – a Smith Wigglesworth type miracle and healing anointing, mentors who kept me balanced or on track. They enabled me to produce paperback books.

Pastors Drs. Ken and Laurella Meyer – took me in when I was jobless and had no place to go; they helped me get a new career and back on my feet, all at their own expense. <http://www.witnesstv.org>

Jack R. Johnston – Santa Barbara City College Print Shop Supervisor for the 15 years I worked there in printing and duplicating. He allowed me to learn the printing trade at a pace I could handle.

Ross & Adeline Hupp – My parents. They paid for the remodelling of a ranch building to turn it into a well-equipped printing facility with insulation, heating, and air conditioning.

Rev. Harriet Elise Hupp & her family – My ministry associate wife. We believe God brought us together by a divine appointment. She had fourteen years experience in desktop publishing, and began improving the looks and readability of this book before we married in 2010. Together we struggled against computer and printer malfunctions to produce the testimony booklet [My Miracle Stories](#). Having passed the test, we are "co-laborers together with Christ" in this publishing ministry.

David Whalen – Although he lives in eastern Canada, he edited the book and mailed us some needed grammatical changes for the November 2016 edition.

Joe Zaragoza, Tim Larson, and Richard Cutner – Volunteered hours of professional skill in electrical, concrete, and drywall work in remodeling the Quonset hut to serve as a print shop.

Preface

In a (2005?) “[presbytery](#),” (1 Timothy 4:14) at our local church I was told prophetically, through the late [Dr. Esther Mallet](#), the head of our organization, Community Chapel World Outreach, Inc. located in Norwalk, CA, that the Office of the Evangelist is upon me, and that I will train others to do what I do. I took this to be printing evangelism since I have been working at this, off and on, both as a hobby and a profession over a period of forty plus years, starting in 1967 at age seventeen. More recently I was told prophetically, that I will write things that *are* going to benefit others, whether I think they will or not.

At first I posted two documents on the www.tracts4u.com website, [Do Tracts Work?](#) and [Printing Instructions](#) for printing the increasing number of Christian eEvangelism tracts being posted on our website in various languages for free downloading and use by offset printers and desktop publishers worldwide. My idea was not just to print the tracts and give them to ministries to pass out as I had done in the past, but to save the increasing international shipping costs, and guide others in making (designing and printing) these tracts, or making their own themselves, possibly at a lower cost than it had cost me to do it. This would free my time to be preparing and posting a greater variety of tracts on the website in a greater number of languages, as well as designing a number of new tract ideas the Lord has been showing me. I much prefer computer designing to running a printing press like I did for years, often with difficulties due to improperly running equipment. I like the axiom, “It is better to teach a man to fish by himself than my giving him a fish to eat.” As seen in the visions of others, I hoped to give hands-on-training in the printing trade to others who are disadvantaged with free time on their hands who could then be sent out to start Christian evangelism print shops of their own. Thousands of dollars worth of equipment and a building were donated for my use. At one point I worked and saved for months to buy each additional piece of equipment needed.

I see this book as a timely solution, especially since I have actively participated in the publishing of paperback books for others, and I already have for my immediate use, good bookmaking equipment, and the knowhow to use it in writing a book of my own. “A” grades on college papers and my thesis for a bachelor’s degree, along with the teacher’s interest in getting together to dialogue with me, coupled with over twenty years of writing and public speaking in communicating God’s Good News, and having made a living working as a printer for fifteen years - all this has prepared me for this enjoyable undertaking.

HIS Print Media Ministries

Mission Statement

2 Timothy 2:1-2 KJV “Thou therefore, my son, be strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus. ²And the things that thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also.”

1 Corinthians 9:18-19 NLT “What then is my pay? It is the opportunity to preach the Good News without charging anyone. That's why I never demand my rights when I preach the Good News. ¹⁹Even though I am a free man with no master, I have become a slave to all people to bring many to Christ.”

Dr. Esther Mallet, head of EMIBU, to David Hupp at a presbytery at CCWO church in Carpenteria, CA.

"The Office of the Evangelist is upon you, and you will teach others to do what you do."

I was also told, by the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, "You will write things that will help other people, whether you think they will, or not."

Beginning in 1967, at age seventeen, I began to take an interest in Christian Evangelism Printing, buying a hand cranked mimeograph machine from the Sears and Roebuck catalogue for about \$75. In 1979, I did volunteer work with a seasoned evangelist in his non-profit publishing center.

I am not particularly fond of the hard work of running printing presses and bindery equipment, but it is what I feel called to do and I am good at it. Also, the Lord has blessed or gifted me with thousands of dollars worth of good free equipment to do it with. Years ago, about 1978, I told my spiritual mother, Frances, I was wondering why I was getting involved in learning printing at the Fullerton City College in Southern California, and helping Evangelist Dick Handley run his publishing center. God had blessed him with \$100,000 worth of equipment and a place to put it in within one week's time. Frances replied, "I think it will come in handy some day." She then began to shake all over as the Spirit of God within her bore witness by affecting her motor nerves, "That's right! That's right!" she added.

After having made a living in the printing industry for about 14 years, having learned most aspects of the business (except marketing and billing—my wife handles the billing), and having taken nine graphic arts classes with "A" grades, and been gifted with tens of thousands of dollars of free printing equipment and the free use of a building, I realized that my calling as an Evangelist, at least for now, is to help others spread the good news about Jesus Christ and the free gift of eternal life He offers, through media—printed and online tracts, booklets and books, stickers with QR codes, audio recordings, and online YouTube [Free Training Videos](#) on desktop publishing. The number of people we have been privileged to work with, in these avenues of outreach, is increasing and adding excitement to our lives. My wife and I are living on social security retirement benefits and are blessed to be able to provide this ministry at a minimal cost with no contributions going to us personally (no charge for our labor).

An old proverb states that it is better to teach a person how to fish for himself, than to just be perpetually feeding him fish. We printed and mailed over 40,000 gospel tracts to

various ministries and evangelists in Brazil. The printing was \$300, and the international shipping \$530. With our training, a national could cut out the shipping cost. By buying one of the new fast full-color [HP Pro X series](#) of desktop inkjet printers with a *pagewide* non-moving print head, and after-market remanufactured ink cartridges, a novice at printing, with limited computer skills, can download and print a free online gospel tract document from our website, without having to set up a print shop like we have done.

Our statement of purpose: To aide others in using media (printing, audio and video) to make and distribute their own gospel and discipleship training materials, at the least possible expense, with minimal fundraising effort on their part or ours. We believe that no one who is eager and willing to fulfill the great commission of Jesus Christ should be hampered from doing so, due to a lack tools or training (knowhow). We go so far as to invite ministers to stay in our home for hands-on interaction in developing their projects. I took one minister to our print shop for hands on training where he participated in producing his own materials (e.g., paperback books). Our ministry development will not be limited due to a lack of funding. We try to put God's will first in our lives. For a reasonable fee, we do digital and offset printing for those who want it. We utilize the technology and resources we currently have, and trust the Lord to expand our capacity to serve. We believe that our hearts are being touched with the things that touch God's heart. God's continued favor on our lives and ministry is ample witness that we are following Him, walking in step with the Holy Spirit (Galatians 5:25), in what we have being doing toward the advancement of His kingdom.

An exciting recent example (August 2015) of the fulfillment of our goal or mission is the e-mails received from Denish Otuoma and David William, in Kenya, East Africa, found on pages 24-25 of this book.

In March, 2016 Harriet and I were interviewed for twelve minutes on the *Open Up* internet TV show about our ministry. We posted the video on You Tube. You can watch it by clicking here.

[Our business Interview](#) with the *Open Up* Internet TV (12 minute long segment) show at the offices of the Bakersfield Californian newspaper has been posted on YouTube. The URL link to the video is: <https://youtu.be/9U9pvJMP6ZE>

Table of Contents

Chapter	Topic	Start Page
1	A Call to Evangelize!	15
2	Do Tracts Work—Why Get Involved?	19
3	HIS Print Media Ministries Brief History	29
4	Setting up and Running the Business	43
5	Financing the Business	51
6	Pricing Jobs – So You Don’t Go Broke!	53
7	Shipping & Packaging	55
8	Doing the Math—Estimating Jobs & Using the Proportions Formula	59
9	Computers, Printers, & Software	63
10	Computer Networking	67
11	The Value of Having a Website	73
12	Guidelines-Printing out tracts in the "Posts" section of www.tracts4u.com, Website & tract Prices	79
13	Worldwide Communication by E-mail & Internet	85
14	Moving Equipment Yourself	87
15	Color Laser or Inkjet Printer, Offset Press, or Mimeograph?	101
16	Free Online (Internet) Training Videos	111
17	Converting Hard Copy Document to Metal Printing Press Plate	121
18	Making PDF Documents from MS Word & Adobe	131
19	Making a Laser Film Positive from a Computer Document	141
20	Laser Film to Positive Development Metal Plate	155
21	Two Color Hard Copy to Two Color Press Separations	165
22	Two Color Computer Document to Two Color Press Separations	173
23	Adding Second “Spot Color” to Tract Document Separations	177
24	Two Color Hard Copy to Computer to Two Color Press Separations	179
25	Optical Character Recognition Program—Hard Copy to Computer Copy	189
26	Duotones, Screens, & Gradients	197
27	Document Enhancement—Adding Photos, Art, Graphics	201
28	Using <i>Dragon Naturally Speaking</i> Software—Dictation to Typed Text	211

Table of Contents (continued)

Chapter	Topic	Start Page
29	<u>Banners, Posters, and Signs</u>	215
30	<u>CD Audio Tracts</u>	219
31	<u>Booklet Making</u>	223
32	<u>Paperback Book Making</u>	231
33	<u>Reproducing a Comb Bind Textbook</u>	243
34	<u>E-Books</u>	249
35	<u>Utilizing Social Media—QR Codes and E-tracts</u>	257
36	<u>Bindery—Folding, Perforating, Scoring, Numbering, Cutting, Laminating</u>	263
37	<u>Volunteers & Saving Money—Cutting Down Waste & Cost of Consumables</u> ..	271
38	<u>Buying Printing Supplies & Consumables</u>	275
39	<u>Mixing a Custom Ink Color Using Pantone Matching System</u>	279
40	<u>Foreign Language Translations</u>	283
41	<u>Pressman’s Pointers Learned from Twenty Years of Printing</u>	287
42	<u>Maintenance, Repairs, and Adjustments</u>	297
43	<u>Electrical & Room Temperature Requirements</u>	301
44	<u>HIS Print Media Ministries Printing Accomplishments</u>	311
45	<u>Services Offered by HIS Print Media Ministries & Other Print Shops</u>	317
46	<u>Writing a Tract While Avoiding Jargon Unfamiliar to Lost Souls</u>	321
47	<u>My First Tract</u>	333
48	<u>Holiday or Special Occasion Tracts</u>	335
49	<u>Writing and Publishing a Booklet or Paperback Book</u>	337
50	<u>General ISBN Information</u>	351
51	<u>What’s This Born Again Business? God’s Plan of Salvation</u>	357
52	<u>God’s Anointed Soul Winning Plan</u>	401
53	<u>Follow-up — Discipleship Training/Bible Axioms for New Believers</u>	407
54	<u>Open Air Ministry — Reaching Beyond the Printed Page</u>	423
55	<u>Maintaining Priorities — Desiring “That Good Part”</u>	431
56	<u>Where & How You Can Help</u>	433
57	<u>World’s Most Important Prayer (English & Spanish), & A Closing Prayer for Readers</u>	435

A Call to Evangelize!



“He that goeth forth and weepeth, bearing precious seed, shall doubtless come again rejoicing, bringing his sheaves with him.” – Psalm 126:6

Jesus Christ told his disciples 2000 years ago, “Look around you! Vast fields of human souls are ripening all around us, and are ready now for reaping. The reapers will be paid good wages and will be gathering eternal souls into the granaries of Heaven. What joy awaits the sower and the reaper, both together.” – John 4:35b-36 TLB

A song comes to mind, “Do you know that souls are dying, do you care; children lost and voices crying, do you care? Son of God and King is He, yet He died upon a tree. Are you heartless, does it matter, do you care?”

Jesus stated, by way of a parable, “Go out into the highways and hedges and compel them to come in, that my house may be full!” – Luke 14:23.

The plight of the unsaved world was graphically portrayed to me in a documentary film titled [“Dead Birds”](#), shown in my city college Cultural Anthropology class. The film showed life in a village called “Kua Koa Ba” in the mountain highlands of Papua, New Guinea. Before Christian missionaries arrived along with western influence, the villagers believed in *animism*—that spirits lived in everything. It was like they lived in mortal terror of demons, making a fetish of warding off evil spirits and seeking the blessing of good spirits. They were constantly at war with neighboring tribes, wanting to be on top in the tally of who had killed the most number of their neighbors. As a tribal ritual, young girls had two fingers of one hand cut off. More recent news reports have shown me that life is better there now. Missionary Don Ricardson was about to give up on trying to reach these people for Jesus Christ. Then there was a turning for the better when he found what he called a “redemptive analogy” which led to a book and movie titled [The Peace Child](#).

Jesus stated in one translation of John 10:10, “The thief comes not but to kill, to steal, and to destroy. I am come that they might have life in all its fullness.” Jesus

commissioned the 12 to 500 people he appeared to after His resurrection from the dead to “Go ye into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature.” – Mark 16:15

Mark 16:20 tells us they obeyed. “And the disciples went out and preached everywhere, and the Lord worked with them, confirming the Word with signs that followed.”

In the first 300 years of the Christian Church it went from twelve disciples hiding behind locked doors for fear of the “Jews” or religious leaders of that day, to fierce persecution under Roman Emperor Nero, to the official and dominant religion of the same Roman Empire under Emperor Constantine. Today, although 19,000 people are coming to Christ each day, the birth rate of the world is 23,000 new babies a day. It looks like we may be losing ground, but Jesus said, as one of the five things that must take place as a precursor of his return, “And this Gospel of the Kingdom shall be preached into all the world as a witness to all nations, and then shall the end come.” – Matthew 24:14. When Jesus commissioned his disciples (defined in Greek as “an adherent, a follower”), He must have been referring to us as well as them since they are now in heaven, and souls are yet to be won and much work remains to be done to accomplish this goal.

In Bible College Evangelism class at [Miracle Valley Bible College](#) founded by the late great [evangelist A.A. Allen](#), we learned about the principle of [synergisms](#) or how things can multiply exponentially, and how one-on-one evangelism, the kind done with printed gospel tracts, may be the cheapest and easiest and most cost-effective way to win the world for Christ. A little saying goes, “Each one, win one, then all will be won.” In this Bible college Evangelism class we used the science of mathematics and multiplication to figure out that our class of only 50 or less students could reach the whole world in less than 40 years by each one winning one soul per year, and those souls also winning a soul each year. This would pave the way for Jesus to return and set up His millennial kingdom on earth in which we will have transformed, immortal, bodies that we so much long for as the Apostle Paul did ([1 Corinthians 15](#)). This will be a time where Jesus' rule, and government with accompanying peace, will have no end. In class we were told the story of a man doing a good deed for the Chinese or Japanese emperor and consenting to be paid by a grain of rice being placed on the first square of a chess game board, and being doubled with each succeeding adjacent square. The end amount of rice, by the time one got to the last square of the board, would be phenomenal!

I started in personal evangelism with tracts on the streets and advanced to holding church services in parks, at convalescent hospitals, and weekly at the local Rescue Mission. This work has had its challenges, but each day brings an opportunity for what I call *divine appointments* for souls and miracles as we go forth in Jesus' mighty name.

I remember the words of the song [Go Ye into All the World](#), sung at the graduation service from the first bible college I attended: “Far, far away, in heathen darkness

dwelling, millions of souls forever may be lost. Who, who will go, salvation's storytelling, Looking to Jesus, heed not the cost.?"

Closing this chapter on a happy note, I have told people that the Lord is not going to sit back and let the world go to hell in a hand basket while the devil's antichrist comes and works all kinds of lying signs and wonders. A guest on Sid Roth's TV show, [*It's Supernatural*](#) stated that, in the next ten years, a billion people will be saved. Another guest had the same dream as his wife. They were running across the United States from a tidal wave. He got to the nation's capital, and clung to one of the columns. Then the Lord revealed that the wave is a coming great revival. The people God will use won't be the established churches; and the places the Holy Spirit touches will be sporadic.

Do Tracts Work - Why Get Involved?

Why should one get involved in Christian Evangelism Printing, specifically printing “[tracts](#)”, when printing can be a messy, frustrating operation with seemingly little or no immediate evidence of results or financial remuneration, no miracle healings or signs and wonders like one sees in an evangelistic meeting? God’s written Word, the Bible, states in Isaiah 55:8-11 (Amplified Translation):

Isaiah 55:8-11 AMP “For My thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways My ways, says the Lord. ⁹ For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are My ways higher than your ways and My thoughts than your thoughts. ¹⁰ For as the rain and snow come down from the heavens, and return not there again, but water the earth and make it bring forth and sprout, that it may give seed to the sower and bread to the eater, [*II Cor. 9:10.*] ¹¹ So shall My word be that goes forth out of My mouth: it shall not return to Me void [*without producing any effect, useless*], but it shall accomplish that which I please and purpose, and it shall prosper in the thing for which I sent it.”

Mark 13:4 AMP “Tell us, when shall these things be? and what *shall be* the sign when all these things shall be fulfilled?”

Mark 13:10 KJV “And the gospel must first be published among all nations.”

Please consider some of the following emails received by HIS Print Media Ministries from those passing out our tracts, as well as those made by other tract ministries. Also included are statistics gathered from published articles.

THE PASTOR'S SON

Unknown

Dec 25, 2005

Every Sunday afternoon, after the morning service at their church, the Pastor and his eleven-year-old son would go out into their town and hand out gospel tracts. This particular Sunday afternoon, as it came time for the Pastor and his son to go to the streets with their tracts, it was very cold outside as well as pouring down rain. The boy bundled up in his warmest and driest clothes and said, "OK Dad, I'm ready."

His Pastor Dad asked, "Ready for what?"

"Dad, it's time we gather our tracts together and go out."

Dad responded, "Son, it's very cold outside and it's pouring down rain."

The boy gave his dad a surprised look asking, "But, Dad, aren't people still going to hell, even though it's raining?"

Dad answered, "Son, I am not going out in this weather."

Despondently, the boy asked, "Dad, can I go? Please?"

His father hesitated for a moment, and then said, "Son, you can go. Here are the tracts; be careful, son."

"Thanks, Dad!" And with that, he was off and out into the rain.

This eleven-year-old boy walked the streets of the town going door-to-door and handing everybody he met in the street a gospel tract. After two hours of walking in the rain, he was soaking, bone-chilled wet, and down to his VERY LAST TRACT. He stopped on a corner and looked for someone to hand a tract to, but the streets were totally deserted. Then he turned toward the first home he saw - and started up the sidewalk to the front door and rang the doorbell. He rang the bell, but nobody answered. He rang it again and again, but still no one answered. He waited but still no answer. Finally, this eleven-year-old trooper turned to leave, but something stopped him. Again, he turned to the door and rang the bell and knocked loudly on the door with his fist. He waited, something holding him there on the front porch. He rang again, and this time the door slowly opened.

Standing in the doorway was a very sad-looking elderly lady. She softly asked, "What can I do for you, son?"

With radiant eyes and a smile that lit up her world, this little boy said, "Ma'am, I'm sorry if I disturbed you, but I just want to tell you that JESUS REALLY DOES LOVE YOU, and I came to give you my very last gospel tract which will tell you all about JESUS and His great LOVE."

With that, he handed her his last tract, and turned to leave.

She called to him as he departed. "Thank you, son! And God bless you!"

Well, the following Sunday morning in church Pastor Dad was in the pulpit. As the service began, he asked, "Does anybody have a testimony or want to say anything?" Slowly, in the back row of the church, an elderly lady stood to her feet. As she began to speak, a look of glorious radiance came from her face as she said, "No one in this church knows me. I've never been here before. You see, before last Sunday I was not a Christian. My husband passed on some time ago, leaving me totally alone in this world. Last Sunday, being a particularly cold and rainy day, it was even more so in my heart that I came to the end of the line where I no longer had any hope or will to live. So I took a rope and a chair and ascended the stairway into the attic of my home. I fastened the rope securely to a rafter in the roof, then stood on the chair and fastened the other end of the rope around my neck. Standing on that chair, so lonely and brokenhearted, I was about to leap off, when suddenly the loud ringing of my doorbell downstairs startled me. I thought, "I'll wait a minute, and whoever it is will go away." I waited and waited, but the ringing doorbell seemed to get louder and more insistent, and then the person ringing also started knocking loudly. I thought to myself again, "Who on earth could this be?! Nobody ever rings my bell or comes to see me." I loosened the rope from my neck and started for the front door, all the while the bell rang louder and louder. When I opened the door and looked I could hardly believe my eyes, for there on my front porch was the most radiant and angelic little boy I had ever seen in my life.

His smile, oh, I could never describe it to you! And the words that came from his mouth

caused my heart, that had long been dead, to leap to life as he exclaimed with a cherub-like voice, "Ma'am, I just came to tell you that JESUS REALLY DOES LOVE YOU." Then he gave me this Gospel Tract that I now hold in my hand. As the little angel disappeared back out into the cold and rain, I closed my door and read slowly every word of this gospel tract. Then I went up to my attic to get my rope and chair. I wouldn't be needing them anymore.

You see, I am now a Happy Child of the KING and since the address of your church was on the back of this Gospel Tract, I have come here to personally say 'THANK YOU' to God's little angel who came just in the nick of time and, by so doing, spared my soul from eternity in hell."

There was not a dry eye in the church. And as shouts of praise and honor to the King resounded off the very rafters of the building, Pastor Dad descended from the pulpit to the front pew where the little angel was seated. He took his son in his arms and sobbed uncontrollably.

Probably no church has had a more glorious moment, and probably this universe has never seen a Papa that was more filled with love and honor for his son... except for one. This Father also allowed His Son to go out into a cold and dark world. He received His Son back with joy unspeakable, and as all of heaven shouted praises and honor to The King, The Father sat His beloved Son on a throne far above all principality and power and every name that is named.

Hi David,

Thank you for forwarding a powerful message ["The Pastor's Son"]; it reminds me of what we did last Sunday afternoon in the park where they invited us to pray for the newly elected officer. I then instructed our brethren to distribute tracts and it works out people come to church. Continue your good work for He who calls you is faithful. Bless you, Irene

Your tracts are anointed and wonderful and we know by the Spirit of the Lord that many have come to know Jesus through them. Jerry and Joni Leonard

WOW!!!WOW!! AND DOUBLE WOW!!!

Today I had to go far far far away, way down the hi-way to a town with no name I know.....close to the squatter camp where we have gone for years...you see shack after shack after shack in the depths of poverty....so so sad!! I went to a school, that we are helping that has 200 students and no books, no pencils (EXCEPT WHAT WE HAD GIVEN THEM) no nothing...but I had never seen the inside before...it was quite shocking to say the least.

As we drove up the children were expressionless...so unhappy.....surrounded by a barbed wire fence that was broken and lapsing all around the building....the kitchen was in very bad shape with one pot to feed 200 children..they had just a handful of bowls and silverware to feed a few kids in line, they had to wait till dishes were washed then

the next line of kids could eat...and what they had was soup...and not much of that..they were blessed if there was any soup available at all....this is not a big pot..... on a hotplate.....they need help desperately.....I could hardly keep the tears back as I walked through this school with appalling conditions...yet crammed together in a room to be taught...with almost no help whatsoever...the only stuff they have is what we have given them.....for 200 students they had 2 metal frame toilets..that when the toilet holes are full they have to keep moving.....I have never seen such poverty....tomorrow I am going to write more...but the unhappy faces turned to great joy as we began to hand our gospel tracts, "KNOW YOUR FUTURE" BY [MEL GERRARD](#)...and candy sent by Corinne and Don Hail..scripture candy canes...and candy sent by a couple of churches we had saved till now..they were soooooo elated....what a wonderful treat for them...and then I was given permission to speak to all the students and 100 percent raised their hands and bowed their heads in prayer to receive JESUS as their LORD AND SAVIOUR AND VERY BEST FRIEND.....Sondra Berry Young Ministries

Info from November 2004 [Charisma Magazine](#) article titled, [God In the Small Print](#) :

A United States school teacher, Mary, was leaving tracts on her desk for the students. A lawyer on the school board fought to have her fired for this. At a funeral, Mary found herself sitting next to this lawyer and felt compelled to hand him the only tract in her purse, written by a Christian attorney. Not long afterwards, the lawyer's daughter joined Mary's class. Mary suggested that the daughter be assigned to another class, but the daughter replied that that wouldn't be necessary because her dad had accepted Jesus as his Savior.

[Jews for Jesus](#) has passed out over 40 million tracts one-on-one. Director David Brickner acknowledges that, although, (in New York City?) 25% of tract recipients immediately discard them, he believes that few other methods of evangelism are as powerful as passing out tracts that contain the Word of God.

[Chick Publications](#) founder, tract writer, and artist Jack Chick says, his booklet tracts containing Scriptures have sold over 500 million copies worldwide, and that the Word will not return void according to God's promise in Isaiah 55:11 "So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper *in the thing* whereto I sent it."

[Gospel for Asia](#) reports thousands of conversions as a direct result of tracts finding their way into remote villages, often where people have never heard the gospel or seen a Bible.

Some of the greatest names in Church history, such as missionary [Hudson Taylor](#), and evangelist [George Whitefield](#), became Christians after reading tracts.

A man in India picked up a tract off the ground, got saved, and started 25 churches.

Apostle Dick Handley (www.realmiracles.org) says that through one copy of one tract he wrote, that went to a foreign country, 120 people were Baptized in the Holy Spirit!

A local, Santa Barbara woman, the late Theresa Usura, got saved through a tract left in the restroom of Harry's Plaza Café. Her changed life resulted in her husband getting saved, and the two of them eventually becoming pastors of a local church.

Pastor Clayton Golliher, head of [Hope For Homeless Youth](#) at the Dream Center in Los Angeles told me that, so far over 3,000 people have gotten saved through the [Seven Things God Wants Us to Know](#) booklet tract which I put on computer medium and on this website for free downloading. Now we print this booklet in Spanish as well as English.

A man contacted us from Fresno, CA, requesting [Know Your Future](#) booklet tracts. He is now passing out our tracts to the local homeless each month, along with food and other necessities. We wondered how he had gotten one of our tracts. Here is the response he sent us by an e-mail:

From: Scott Bellefeuille

Date: Tuesday, September 20, 2011

Subject: A God Story

Hi David you asked me awhile ago how I got one of your tracts. Well, we put the pieces together today. You came down to Fresno for a family gathering not too long ago, and gave a tract to your cousin James. He lives at one of the houses I work at. James and I have had talks about Jesus in the past, so when he returned home from the gathering, he showed it to me. That's when I loved it, like I shared with you in my first email. James shared a room with another guy named Larry, he is my boss's girlfriend's brother. Shortly after he came back Larry went into the hospital it turned out he had cancer, and not long to live. James gave that tract to his sister, which she read the tract to Larry and asked him if he would like to ask Jesus into his life. He did, he repeated the prayer in the tract. This last Friday Larry went home to be with the Lord. Another amazing God story. Thank you for being a servant of God. I will be placing an order with you first part of October. This is a God thing! God Bless, Scott Bellefeuille

A Report from Apostle Dick Handley:

I had a tract, [The Little Red Bible](#), in my billfold (wallet) for 18 months. I would read it every once in a while when nobody was looking and then put it back into my wallet.

One night while alone in my bedroom I was weighed down by the guilt of my sins and I pulled out The Little Red Bible and began to read it. One verse jumped out at me: "Come now, and let us reason together," says the LORD. "Though your sins are (red)

like scarlet, and though they are red like crimson, they shall be as wool." (From Tanakh: Isaiah 1:18). I was so convicted that I began to weep. I got on my knees on top of my bed and holding my hand in the air, I said, "Jesus, if you're there ... take my hand." No one took my hand; I did it again, but nothing happened. I thought I was so dirty that God would not take me. But, the next time I said something different: "Jesus, I know you're there ... please take my hand." I thought maybe I would feel a surge of power or a great light would shine, but I experienced nothing. I went to bed weeping and so sorry for my sins and my wicked past. I thought again: "I am so dirty that God will not have me."

However, the next morning when I woke up, I was different. And my life has never been the same since!

A lady wrote me a letter and told me how she had found one of our tracts *How To Win* on the sidewalk in downtown Los Angeles. She told me how she read the tract, prayed the prayer, and was wonderfully saved by the Lord Jesus. Inside the envelope she placed the tract: it was dirty and had several small holes in it (the way she found it)!

We received news from Africa that 122 people received the Baptism in the Holy Spirit, with speaking in tongues; all 122 read one tract...the same piece of literature: the same piece of paper.

One pastor wrote us that every time he received a four pound package of literature from us, the LORD would raise up two to three new churches.

Years ago, I called and got permission to reproduce the tract, [Who Is Jesus?](#), written by Gwen Shaw of [End-time Handmaidens and Servants](#). This tract had been translated into about thirty languages. I asked them to send me four copies of each language. I figured that when a foreign country requested tracts, I could reproduce these from the printed copy. If the language used *romance* characters in their alphabet, I would be able to retype the text using my English language keyboard. The special characters with accents can be found under the [glyphs](#) pallet in a page layout program, or under *symbols* in *Microsoft Word*. For the remaining languages, the columns of text are scanned and placed into a page layout program. Microsoft corporation also has an [on screen virtual keyboard](#) that might be helpful with typing foreign languages.

[Roy Cypher](#), a minister we have been printing for, began to go to other countries. When he went to Kenya, I remade this tract in [Swahili](#), and Roy took 1,000 copies with him. Two high schools (600 students) were brought together for an evangelistic outreach. Each student was given one of the tracts we had printed. 200 students came forward to ask Jesus into their hearts, and all the students took the tracts home to their families.

On another trip, Roy went to Pakistan to speak at a pastor's conference and a large crusade. We reproduced the same tract in the [Urdu](#) language by scanning. I gave some to another minister who visits Pakistan. He sent me via e-mail, attachment pictures of recipients holding the tracts in Pakistan.



Man in Pakistan Holding Tract

In 2014 we met the pastor of [Lighthouse Foursquare Church in Santa Rosa, CA](#). As we talked, we could sense God's presence and believed that our meeting was what we call a *divine appointment*. Later, the Pastor took our tracts to outreaches in the Philippine Islands, and Columbia, South America. He sent us the following e-mail regarding the outreach in Columbia:

Great Material

Hi David and Harriet,

I just wanted to shoot off a quick note to let you know that the quality of the printed materials, gospel tracts and handouts in Spanish were excellent.

The hosting Foursquare Church there in Barrancabermeja, Colombia loved them and gladly received them, passing them out and using them in a huge downtown city square outreach we had. Over the course of a few days we led over 300 people to Jesus. We feel that your gospel tracts played a part in drawing those people and reinforcing their decisions with those quality handouts.

Thanks again,

Sincerely,
Pastor Kel Slater
along with the Gary Oates
Ministry Team

Recently (August, 2015) we printed out 40,000 *How to Win* tracts in Portuguese and sent them to Brazil. The cost of printing was very reasonable at .75 cents a tract, but it cost over \$300 for the shipping. I really enjoy writing and designing tracts and would prefer to have others in foreign countries use our website to get the prepared tracts and print them in their own country which would save the postage fees. That is why we were so excited when we received this email from Kenya, East Africa:

Dear David, Praise God, First and foremost allow me to start by introducing myself. My name is brother Denish Otuoma from Kenya who is a bible believer and a born again Christian who loves the word of God and sharing the same with others as in the book of Mark 16:15. After following you closely through your

website (www.tracts4u.com), I love what you are doing and the truth in your materials. Therefore this has led me to one thing that has made me to take this golden chance that God has given me to write to you and it is my prayer that this email will find you well in Jesus' name.

I would like to seek your permission to reproduce/print these your materials so that God willing, I might go to the streets distributing them to people free of charge so that they too might be blessed in Jesus' name. But I could only do this if you grant me permission to do so.

May God bless you as I look forward to your further advice or response in Jesus' name. Shalom, Brother Denish

Right away I replied to Denish and gave him permission to use the tract. He then wrote to tell me how he had a vendor print him out 576 copies of the tract *Who is Jesus?* in English and started distributing them to people. He was surprised how people came to him for copies and in a very short time all of his printed tracts were gone and wished he had more.

Again, I e-mailed him with the info that I could send him a Swahili language version for future printing. Denish was thankful for my prayers and encouragement as he continues to spread the good news of Jesus Christ to Kenya.

Not many days later I received an awesome e-mail from David William in Kenya about how he received Jesus by Denish giving him a tract. He wrote:

Hi—My name is David William, Most people living in and around the city and Estate of Pangani, Nairobi here in Kenya, know me, the local man called the Cowboy or charcoal seller. In fact I have often approached people in the streets, giving my opinions about all sorts of things. Many preachers who have visited the city or Estate have also been on the receiving end of my "hatred" of religion. I hated Christians, and I persecuted them wherever I found them. Sometimes I would go out looking for them, attacking them in the streets both verbally, and sometimes physically, over a period of 25 years or more. So what made me, David William, or David William charcoal seller, this way?

I was abandoned by my mother when I was almost 3 years old, and I was raised by strict religious institutions, in which I suffered physical abuse between the ages of 11 and 17 years old. This meant that I was deprived of real love, and the teachings about the God of love, through Jesus Christ. For many years I led a lonely and confused lifestyle, and could only gain some form of recognition by acting the part of the Cowboy.

Five days ago while walking around the city street, that's on 26/08/2015, I was approached by a loving Christian, who gave me this tract of "[WHO IS JESUS?](#)" and told me that Jesus loved me. I was not initially impressed by his words, but by the tract he gave me. "Show me love, and I will believe you!" The Christian man and his wife did show me love, and they also did in a local church when I visited there. Eventually, I was drawn into a family of Christians who cared for me and put Jesus' words into practice by giving me this: "Love your neighbor as yourself." (Matthew 22:39). This made me to spend the little shillings and buy a bible NIV version today and I began to read about what Jesus has done for me. Jesus changed me, when I received him as my Lord and Savior after reading this which are very simple but very powerful. "Jesus, I believe you paid the penalty for my sins when you died on the cross and rose from the dead. I want to turn from my sins and place my trust in you as my Lord. I am willing to follow you the rest of my life. Thank you for the gift of eternal life. Amen".

I will be having a far more important activity than before: telling people about Jesus. Instead of hating Christians, now I love them, and I also love non-Christians, and want them to know about the love of God through Jesus Christ.

My testimony shows that Jesus can change anyone who is willing to come to Him, whatever state they are in. As Jesus said, "He who comes to me, I will in no way cast out." (John 6:37).

The Bible says, "Believe in the Lord Jesus Christ, and you will be saved." (Acts 16:31).

"If you will confess with your mouth the Lord Jesus, and shall believe in your heart that God has raised Him from the dead, you will be saved." (Romans 10:9).

God bless you for whatever good work you're doing with these tracts of reaching people for free-of-charge scripture here in Kenya. If you do not know Jesus Christ as your own personal Lord and Savior, let me tell

you now that when he died on the cross 2000 years ago, He paid for all of your sins to be forgiven. If you are willing to acknowledge your sins to God and repent of them, you can have the full forgiveness that Jesus obtained for you, and you can have peace with God through Jesus Christ. If you would like to receive this love from God that can transform your life, then I urge you to receive this tract and read it with the help of your Bible; you will be never be the same again. They are very simple but very powerful.

"Father, I come to you in the name of Jesus Christ, and confess to you that I am a sinner. I am sorry for my past sins, and wish to forsake them. I ask you, in the name of Jesus, please forgive me for all my sins, and let Jesus come and dwell in my heart by faith. I thank you now for saving me, and ask you please to let me be led by your Spirit, so that I can live a life that pleases you. I thank you for it in Jesus name, Amen."

To continue as a true believer you must follow the Lord Jesus Christ, and put into practice what he taught. Read your bible regularly, pray to God in Jesus' name, and fellowship with other born-again believers.

Thank brother and man of God who was giving people this free of charge for people to read and be bless. I have receive this your email address on the last page at the bottom and I thought it wish to shared with you my testimony and keep the God work.

Therefore can I be in a position to have some copies of this to share with people while sharing my testimony with them? I hope you will take your time and respond to my request and I will be patiently waiting in Jesus' name. Blessing, David William

My first reaction to this e-mail was "Praise the Lord" for a new convert through the ministry of tracts. Then I was extremely surprised about how much he had learned about the Bible to quote scriptures and understand the Word in such a short time. I contacted Denish and he was able to get together with David William and give David tracts to pass out. The second batch of tracts that they had printed was in Swahili, their native language, from a document I supplied Denish by e-mail attachment. Wow! This is a testimony about how God can use the "each one, win one, and all will be won" — how the Kingdom of God can multiply if each of us passes along the love of God and the message of His grace through our Lord Jesus Christ.

HIS Print Brief History

The Bible says, in Revelation 17:7 *“For God has put it in their hearts to do His will.”* Psalm 37:23 (NLT) *“The LORD directs the steps of the godly. He delights in every detail of their lives.”*

When I was born, my Pentecostal grandmother laid a hand on me when my scientific and agnostic Dad wasn't looking, and dedicated me to the Lord to work for Him. In 1967 at age 17, contrary to my Dad's will of going out and getting a summer job, I decided to buy a hand cranked [mimeograph machine](#) from Sears for about \$75 and print Christian literature for a local Coffee House youth ministry in a nearby city. I wrote and printed my first tract, *How Important Is Your Soul?*, by drawing and typing on a stencil. In about 1971, at a Sunday School meeting at the Assembly of God church I grew up in, a visiting minister, Gwen Schmidt, had asked all those willing to die for Christ, if necessary, to come forward, so I did. She came to me and stated, as if giving me a message from God, “You have doubted God at times, but you have a sincere inner desire to serve Him; and, if you walk quickly in the way He shows you to go, it will be for you as it was in the Book of Acts.” In about 1978, my spiritual parents took me to [Voice of Pisgah](#) (Herald of Hope), which published a healing newsletter out of the Los Angeles area. They also introduced me to Dr. Ernest F. Sody who ran the [Los Angeles Free Tract Society](#), with the idea that I might work there (see Nov 2010 picture below). As well, they tried to introduce me to [Evangelist Dick Handley](#), who had just opened a small publishing center with \$100,000 the Lord gave him during a time of fasting and prayer on a farm in the Midwest.



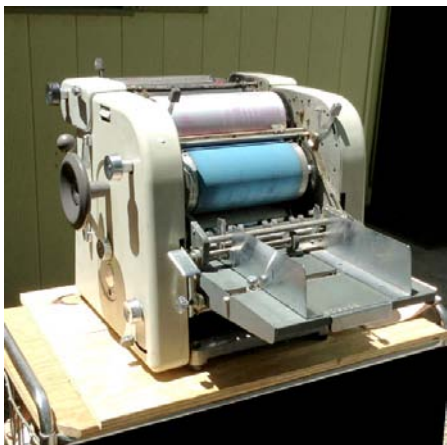
I didn't feel worthy of working with any of them, but ended up being an administrative assistant to Rev. Handley about the time I was finishing up my four year Bachelor of Theology degree in Anaheim, CA. I took two additional courses in [typography](#) and [graphic arts](#), and questioned my spiritual mother as to why I was taking these classes. She replied that they would someday come in handy, and then she shook all over as the Holy Spirit within her affected her [motor nerves](#), bearing witness to what she had just said. Then she stated, "That's right! That's right!" Later on, about the year 2005, I fasted for seven days and went to a meeting of a prophetess, [Sandy Querin](#), from Clovis, CA. I had been care giving,



The Los Angeles Free Tract Society, a non-profit corporation established in the late 1800's. One can get some free tracts each day, but pays by the pound after that.

and the printing equipment given to me had been in an expensive storage for over a year. Thus, I was wondering how this great call of God on my life would ever come to fruition. Rev. Querin came over and whispered in my ear that I had sensed change was coming and it was, that doors of opportunity would open to me and I should not be afraid to enter into them.

In 1981 I moved back to Santa Barbara, CA, where I had grown up, and started in street evangelism, and connected with a local church who gave me a donated table top offset duplicator (printing machine) made by Ricoh. I connected with the Holy Ghost Repair Service in Hollywood, and Al Van Dyk of [Christian Action League](#) in Goleta, CA. I wore out the Ricoh offset table top duplicator, printing tracts for the Pasadena Rose parade and these organizations. Then Al Van Dyk let me use a table top AB Dick duplicator that was in better condition. I had a Ricoh [electrostatic plate maker](#) and



heating device that hardened the toner image on the paper plate. If I wanted quality, I would have a metal plate made at a local graphic arts supplier, called a *service bureau*. I was able to make 50,000 Action League testimony tracts of players in the Rose Bowl game that year. I printed one side and laid them out on the ground to dry in the sheet metal covered garage where I was printing, and the next day when I went to print the back side, I found the paper had absorbed moisture since it was the Christmas season, and most of the tracts wrinkled when I finished the printing!

By 1990 I had done enough printing to have the confidence to apply for a job in the Duplicating Department at City College and I worked there eighteen months full time, then in the print shop hourly for over 10 years. After that I was employed for two years half time with a new Digital Computer to Plate printing system, until the Print Shop was closed. I felt it unfair that the lead printer had retired and the position had been left open for six years when I could have filled it. As a result, I had to work two jobs and do care giving to make a living and pay my bills. The Lord knew what was going on and had not forsaken me.

Hebrews 6:12 NLT “Then you will not become spiritually dull and indifferent. Instead, you will follow the example of those who are going to inherit God's promises because of their faith and endurance.”

He saw to it that I was compensated by my being given (to my surprise, and without my having to ask) tens of thousands of dollars of good equipment for a tax deductible receipt I arranged with the church I was attending. Years later, I had to give away a lot of equipment to a non-profit tract printing organization, because I had been laid off at work and couldn't afford the high storage costs. Years later, after my wife and I started a new print shop, I was blessed with more printing equipment, no tax receipt required.

I stored the first batch of equipment for a year at my Dad's ranch. In 2000 he pressured me to find a place to move the equipment and set up a Christian printing business. A retired [Salvation Army Officer](#) moved out of his apartment and into a home he bought and had remodeled. He didn't drive or have a car and the rebuilt home had an old 20' by 24' garage out back as a separate building with a cement floor, but no electricity. I asked to rent it and was paying \$120 a month including electricity. Since the neighbors didn't complain, I was able to do business there without a city business license. An electrician at the college where I worked agreed to give me a reduced rate of \$700 for putting in a 220 volt electrical sub panel from the main house if I dug the ditch between the garage and the house. I agreed, and I was able to run a telephone wire and TV cable down the same underground pipe so I had television and DSL internet.

My apostle friend, for whom I had done volunteer publishing work 20 years earlier, came to town and got a job helping handicapped children. We worked together there for about a year and printed a lot of Christian literature until the property owner died suddenly and his relatives sold the property and I had to put the equipment in storage for two years. As I wrote earlier, I gave most of it away to a non-profit Christian Tract Society. In that small Eastside garage, I was running two, two color offset printing presses and a one color press and the related prepress and bindery equipment. With two friends, we took the hard copy [Know Your Future booklet tract](#) and remade it on the computer in [Spanish](#), [French](#), and [English](#). I have a heart to reach the unreached so I made an agreement with the owner of the Free Tract Society in Los Angeles, that if I printed a quantity of these booklets in Spanish with their contact information on the back, they would see to it that they got sent to Cuba. We managed, just before Raymond, the garage owner died, to print 32,000 booklets. This was done on the two, two color Hamada presses, four to a legal size page on four sheets. Two ministry friends and I cut them into sets of two and collated them with an electric collator, feed them through the semiautomatic booklet maker, trimmed them apart in an electric /hydraulic paper cutter, then [shrink wrapped](#) them in stacks of 100 with an instruction booklet on how to use them in each bundle. Yes, this was an amazing achievement considering the equipment we had to work with – no automated booklet making system, no rotary slitter for trimming, no expensive image setter, no camera or darkroom.

I kept two printing presses and a metal plate maker, folder, laminator, paper cutter, and booklet maker and bought a [color laser printer](#) with which I kept the printing call and vision alive for five or more years, storing the equipment in the apartment garage of a church member, and then at my parent's ranch behind their eight car garage. During some of this time I had a job at the city college print shop half time where I grew in skill and knowledge about modern digital CTP (computer to plate) printing methods. When the college print shop closed and I was laid off, I worked out of the home I was care giving in until the lady died and I moved in with the pastors of the church where I had been ordained as an evangelist, and where I served as church treasurer, adding to my skill of how to run a business. I had again applied to work in the duplicating department at the college where I had started out in 1990, but although I had run a high speed

[Xerox Docutech 135/6135](#) digital bookmaking machine for three years, I didn't have the official Xerox training and a severely handicapped person with the certificate got the job.

This was not an easy time after Carol Ann, the lady I had cared for about seven years, died. I was in debt, had lost my free place to stay, and my job in the same day, and couldn't find a job of sufficient income to pay my mounting credit card bills. I reached the point where I couldn't pay another month of storage for the print shop equipment, my truck engine had blown up and I couldn't drive it, and I went through a chapter 7 bankruptcy. The pastor of my church and a man helping us with our website development rented a large moving truck with the idea that we were going to empty the storage before I lost it. We started the move, which involved about five printing presses in a 10' by 30' space jammed full of stuff, and the helper suggested I tell the Self Storage manager that I didn't want to deal with it all and turn it over to him and walk away, something I didn't at all want to do as I don't give up easily. A modern day apostle, [Emmanuel Cannistraci](#), came to our church and prayed over me, stating, "You have persevered when others would have capitulated and given up." The Word of God states:

Psalm 34:19 KJV "Many are the afflictions of the righteous: but the LORD delivereth him out of them all."

Romans 8:37 AMP "Yet amid all these things we are more than conquerors and gain a surpassing victory through Him Who loved us."

I contacted the Los Angeles Free Tract Society and they agreed to take most of the equipment if I could get it there. I then called [Hope For Homeless Youth](#) at the Dream Center in Los Angeles and they agreed to send about four men who came over a couple of days and we got everything moved out by the deadline. All the men asked for was food, a nights lodging where I was staying, and gas money for their trip. I was able to fix my truck engine myself before going bankrupt, and I have since stayed debt free and have lived by faith.

I got a grant offer for a semester of Certified Nursing Assistant coursework, which led to two State Certificates and a chance to find a job starting at \$13.75 an hour in a field where there was plenty of work, even though, in 2008, a worldwide economic recession was already setting in. As the prophetess, [Sandy Querin](#), had foretold would happen, a door of opportunity opened before me, and I went through it. A Nurse had told me that, with a few medical certificate designations behind my name, I could be making good money doing the same kind of care giving work I had done for 10 years. I quickly rushed to get in the Certified Nursing Assistant Program at city college where I had worked for fifteen years and taken over two years of classes, taking nine graphic arts and computer desktop publishing courses with "A" grades. I got three more "A"s in the three care giving courses and passed the State written and practical exams and got my two certificates. I signed up with five local agencies, and while I worked my way up to

50+ hours a week, I used the spare time to restart HIS Print Media Ministries with the equipment I had been storing.

My parents had gotten older and asked that I move into a vacant mobile home on their ranch that was left in filthy condition. I agreed. Talk of building a new building on their ranch for the print shop, or remodeling the Quonset hut seemed to end when my mother made the statement, "We are getting older now, and not much gets done around here." I had hoped that half of the metal Quonset hut, used to store lumber, could be cleared out and used as my father had suggested years earlier.

The late Father Bob Harvey of the local charismatic [Episcopal Church](#) prayed over me years ago when they were meeting above Tina's Bar. "This young man has a call of God on his life that is so strong, that it is stronger than he is. It comes and goes, but he can't shake it off!" The call of God in me was not about to wait any longer. The carpet in the mobile home had been removed because the dog(s) of the previous tenant has ruined it. I asked my parents if I could put one of the two printing presses being stored behind their eight car garage in my living room. I got an OK. I strengthened the floor from below where the printing press would go by putting in extra support piers. I built a sturdy ramp out of plywood and three 4 x 4 beams. I chose the [Hamada 550 two color exact registration press](#) because I had used it before in making the four to a legal size sheet [Know Your Future Spanish booklet tracts](#) for Cuba and it had worked well. I used the ramp and "come along" cable winch to pull the press up onto the bed of my half ton truck. When the truck couldn't back up perpendicular enough to the sliding door entry way without the front tires going over the side of the cliff, a neighbor came and we used his flatbed truck. I hooked the cable winch to a heater vent hole in the plywood floor to winch the press in and my Dad jokingly commented that I didn't pull the mobile home off its support stands.

I also used money I saved from working to put in, with my engineer father's verbal guidance, a separate 30 ampere electrical outlet system which included the 220 volt designated outlet for the Nu-Ark exposure box for press printing plates. I built a double row of shelves on three walls around the living room and some more in the bedroom where I set up a second computer, printer and scanner system that was donated. I saved my [CNA](#) earnings and bought additional pieces of equipment after careful research into brands and models, and with the prayer support and advice of seasoned elders or "spiritual parents" in the Lord according to the Bible passage that says the heir of the estate is "*under tutors and governors until the time appointed by the Father.*" – Galatians 4:2. I purchased a tabloid-sized graphic arts quality [Ricoh brand color laser printer](#) that produces near photo quality prints, duplexes and does forty pages a minute with almost no paper jams. That, with tax, was \$4,600 with a church discount. The Bible also states, "*having put it their hearts to do His will.*" I paid \$800 for the 2000 sheet high-capacity input paper tray. I could see afterwards, when we began

reproducing textbooks for a Bible University, that the Lord had been leading me in what to do.

Then, in 2009, I saved for a factory reconditioned [Rollem Champion 990](#) slitter/perforator/scorer that cuts apart tract booklets that would otherwise be hard to cut because of not sitting flat in a paper cutter due to the stapled fold on the left side. That machine, used, but factory reconditioned, cost about \$6,300 with stand! Since I had gone bankrupt, I bought it on layaway. I then had two computer systems, a letter/legal-size two color printing press, two color laser printers, an HP 5000 monochrome tabloid laser printer for making film positives for metal press plates, the plate exposure box, a donated \$5,000 [perfect binder](#) or paperback book maker, an [electric booklet maker](#), a [10 bin collator](#) (waiting for the rest of the booklet making system that will work with it which I got later), two high quality Epson inkjet photo printers for business cards that also print on CDs for Audio tracts, a shrink wrapper, weigh scale for shipping, wide format laminator, tabloid electric folder, paper jogger, and an 18" hand operated paper cutter. The Rollem Champion 990 booklet slitter, perforating, and scoring machine, with its bolt together stand was placed in the single wide mobile home bedroom after I turned the bed 90°. I would have to move to the Quonset hut before I would have room for more equipment. When an author and her husband came to see how I could make their *Who Am I?* study guide paperback book for prisoners, Rev. Abele asked, "Where do you sleep?"

I was told by Ancient Paths Seminars pastor, [Craig Hill](#), that I saw the end result of the vision given me, but there were holes in the path to get there that the Lord would fill by plugging in people to fill in the gaps. My associate, Prince Handley had preached on the street years ago and given away all the money he had to others needier than himself and gone home not knowing how he would feed his baby. There was a knock at the door, and when his wife answered, there was no one there, but a paper sack on the doorstep, which she brought in to the kitchen sink. Inside the paper sack was a money bag with coins going back into the 1800's. The only explanation was a note in the bag, a scripture verse, Philippians 4:19 which reads, "My God shall supply all your need according to His riches in glory by Christ Jesus."

After finding out about the printing supplies outlet, [Christine's Graphic Supplies](#), I ordered about \$1,000 worth of start-up supplies. I had actually begun using the equipment, believing the Lord is saying, "Use what you have, and I will give you more!" I paid to have the website www.tracts4u.com changed to an easier to manage updated "Word Press" design. I continued creating or recreating Christian evangelism tracts, turning them into PDF files and posting them on the website for any printer in the world to download for free, all without my having to use any unfamiliar [HTML code](#). An associate, in another city, with years of website experience can step in when necessary and enhance or fix problems with the website from his laptop computer where he lives. One can also contact me through the posted contact information and get tracts printed

to be sent anywhere in the world that the US Postal Service delivers. For example, on the color laser printer I printed and shipped by a Priority International Flat Rate Box, tracts to a street evangelist in Nigeria, Africa. From a computer file of [How To Win in Portuguese](#), I made a film positive using the new Ricoh Color Laser Printer, then transferred the image to a metal plate with the exposure box, and printed 23,000 on the printing press in one color, cut them on the cutter, weighed the shipping box on the scale, and shipped two boxes of the unfolded tracts to two different ministries in Brazil, South America. Using the donated paperback bookbinding machine a local church gave me to use in my residence, I began publishing two paperback books I also helped design, [That's No Problem For The Lord](#), by Jerry Leonard, and my mother's family history of homesteading west of the Missouri River in the 1920's, [Settlers Of the Sod](#) (583 pages).

One translation of The Word of God says, that in the early beginnings of the church, in the Acts of the Apostles, the Gospel spread in “*ever widening circles*”, which ties in with the theme verse for this ministry, Mark 13:10 KJV “*And this gospel of the kingdom shall be published as a witness into all nations, and then shall the end come.*” Although it seems to be going too slow for the insatiable call of God on my life, I am helping make this a reality, praying that I can eventually make a living at it and do it full time along with miracle evangelistic outreaches in local parks, shopping centers, and at the beach, as foreseen by others in a dream or visions. I have been given a prophetic revelation that I will “train others to do what you do.” I envisioned a nice warehouse with a concrete floor and 220 volt power, a newer 12 x 18" two color press, and a no chemistry computer to metal plate image setter. I couldn't spend too much time dreaming, though, when there was already plenty of Christian Evangelism Printing and designing of tracts to do. In 2012 my wife and I bought the printing press I wanted with funds for me I discovered in an account listed on my late father's portable computer hard drive.

“Consider the plans that I have for you, says the Lord, plans for success, and not for defeat, to give you a future and a hope” – Jeremiah 33:3

In May of 2010 I began remodeling the existing 860 square foot [Quonset hut](#) on the ranch where I live. Some of the labor for pouring the concrete floor has been donated, along with some of the labor of two electricians. I was given \$9,000 for the remodel which entailed removing the stored wood, fixing leaks in the roof and painting it, putting insulation in the walls and ceiling, and building a wood sub frame between the metal support beams. We then covered the inside with drywall, attaching it to the wood and metal structure. A 100 ampere electrical panel was put up along with higher capacity input wires from the junction boxes a couple of feet away on the outside of the hut. We then affixed EMT electrical piping and electrical outlets to the surface of the drywall, both 110 volt, and 220 volt for the plate exposure box, an hydraulic/electric paper cutter purchased in 2012, a Ryobi 3302 printing press (purchased in 2012), and on my wish list, computer to metal press plate image setter (\$11,000+ used). In this larger facility,

there is room for the booklet making system (collator / interface / stapler/ booklet maker / face trimmer / output conveyor) that is over eight feet long, something there was no room for in the mobile home.



I was able to move all of the heavy equipment in the mobile home into the Quonset hut. The mobile home was then used primarily for computer graphic design, color laser printing, and prepress. The mobile home was reorganized with tables across one wall and three computers, scanners, and printers, becoming the prepress facility I had envisioned. After the Quonset hut was remodeled, my wife and I moved our office to her home about 70 miles away, vacating the mobile home so it could be rented to help support my mother with Alzheimer (short term memory loss). We got a second set of computers which stayed at the print shop. We bought a lot of [Whalen metal shelves](#) for supplies storage at the Quonset hut. On the internet on [Craig's list](#), we found free work tables.

The Quonset has a double door entrance in the middle just above the ground, and an 8' x 8' concrete ramp was also poured. When it came time to pour the concrete, I was nervous because I didn't know if I was going to have to pay for the concrete myself. My brother-in-law's two workers had to be paid, along with the concrete, and the pumper truck and driver – more money than I had, and I was quitting my care giving job to care for my dying father who was in the last stages of pancreatic cancer and wasn't thinking straight. My sister Anne had been appointed executor of the estate and was present when the issue came up so she asked my Dad directly, "Who is paying for the Quonset hut remodel, you, or David." He replied, "I am." I had quit my job to care for my dying father, but had enough money in the business account and my personal account to finish the job at about \$4,900. Now, I had a reimbursement letter to give to my family to replenish the accounts! My sister agreed to pay the electricians for the wiring and drywall I couldn't put up by myself. I found two attic exhaust fans on the ranch and those are installed with switches, one at the apex on each end of the building, and two Hunter

ceiling fans. Some of the interior paint was donated by a local building supply company. Rolls of rubberized plastic base molding served as a kickboard where the drywall meets the concrete floor.

As further evidence of how the Lord was moving in this project, all the siblings were gathered around my Dad when he breathed his last and went to heaven. Dad had expressed a reluctance to remove the remaining equipment from the mobile home to the Quonset hut the easy way, using the [Case w4 articulating loader](#). The day Dad died, I felt an urgency to get the rest of the equipment moved that day, which didn't seem like the respectful thing to do. I told my brother, John about it and, to my surprise he was agreeable. My brother had more recent experience with the loader than I had; and, in about an hour, using ratcheting tie down straps, we were able to safely and quickly move the remaining heavy equipment. Now all the available printing and bindery equipment was sitting on the new concrete floor. The main power panel was in, and the power outlets for the machinery and lights were in progress. More amazing, my mother later told my wife and me that, before my dad died, he said that we should not have to pay rent or utilities. She said it was not normal for my dad to act that way.

My relatives and siblings had come from out-of-town to attend my wedding to Harriet Cogan, who is gifted by God with graphics and administrative ability, to take place the week after my Dad died. My mother, Adeline was in good hands with her two sisters, to help her through mourning the loss of my Dad, and they all headed for the Midwest farm to spend the summer where they grew up. As a bonus to our wedding, a modern day Apostle, Rev. Dick Handley, ordained my wife and me together at the close of the wedding ceremony. I worked with a City College student and minister, John, and got two sets of the newly released (2010) Adobe design Standard CS5 software which went on four computers so my wife and I can work side-by-side in her beautiful Santa Maria home, or in the computer section of the Quonset hut. "When God guides, He provides!"

I mention here a needed note about temperature control. When I first started printing in one section of the eight car garage on my parent's ranch, it would get so cold (40° during the winter) that the ink wouldn't stick to the printing plate without an infrared heat lamp above the ink train rollers. In 2009, printing in the mobile home during the summer it got up to 100°, and I had to carefully monitor the Hamada Printing press' water adjuster to avoid toning or unwanted background ink in the non image areas of the printed sheets. Years earlier, I had worked in a warehouse for three years with similar hot weather issues. This is why, in remodeling the Quonset hut, I insulated the walls and ceiling and painted the roof with Henry's brand white latex roof coating to reflect heat. At the apex of each end of the metal building there are ventilation slots. As I mentioned, I found two [squirrel cage blowers](#) with electric motors on the ranch and bought shelf brackets to mount them. My wife Harriet and I got two 54" premium [ceiling fans](#) at \$30 off at Costco to be placed midway in each half of the building. To handle the uncomfortable winter cold, I had planned to purchase a propane powered 30,000 BTU

Blue Flame non-vented heater made by [Mr. Heater](#) that has an automatic shut off when the unit has used so much oxygen that it is dangerous to humans working in the area. Such a heater would work for a 1000 square foot building, but I found out that non-vented propane or natural gas heaters are illegal in California, and it is not legal in this state to place the propane tank inside the building. Also, propane is expensive, up to \$1 an hour compared to 27+ cents an hour for electricity, but there was no electrical power to spare for heating, with all the equipment. Propane is selling for \$3 or more a gallon. I began investigating a [Williams](#) brand, box-shaped natural gas heater with a propane conversion kit. It comes with a through-the-wall vent and can be placed at the center of the long wall opposite the entry doors. This kind of a heater puts out 30,000 BTU or more of heat and costs between \$500 and \$600.

Then, to my surprise, I visited the shop one day and found a wood burning stove or fireplace sitting next to the Quonset hut. My family paid for the chimney parts, and I put it next to one of the two main entry doors (see pictures in this book). We had bought a 40,000 btu forced air propane heater from [Harbor Freight](#), and put it on a rolling cart with the propane tank on the bottom shelf, and a carbon monoxide sensor (sounds an alarm before there is not enough oxygen air to breathe) sitting alongside the unit. We can stick the incoming air end of the heater into the open wood stove door, and open the chimney valve so the air to feed the heater comes from outside the building, eliminating a lack of oxygen suffocation danger. This propane heater warms up the shop on cold mornings until the fireplace gets going. For the summer heat, we found that, above 78°, we will need a strong air conditioner next to the large printing press. We found one (11,000 BTU) on the ranch and installed it in the small window near the Ryobi 3302 offset press. More recently we learned that we also have to chill the water in the press watering system, and that air blowing over the press rollers may prevent the press from getting enough water to keep unwanted ink off the background areas of the printed sheet.

Regarding building a print shop in the hut, I felt like the Lord gave me the phrase, “If you build it He will come!”, from the movie starring Kevin Costner. I believed that when the print shop was completed and the equipment in place and ready to produce evangelism materials to save souls for eternity, the Lord would fill this workspace like He filled Solomon’s temple when it was dedicated, and jobs would begin to come in. The Lord had said in a presbytery (the elders of the church laying hands on a prospective minister) that I would print, pray over, and send these tracts out all over the world, and people on the receiving end would be so touched that a door of opportunity would open for me to go to those countries. By another *divine appointment*, a press repairman named Larry came from the big city and put new rollers in two of our printing presses. Afterward he stated that it had been the best two days on a job he had experienced. Since then, we have been able to print tens of thousands of tracts for distributors overseas and here in the United States.

2 Chronicles 7:1-2 NLT “When Solomon finished praying, fire flashed down from heaven and burned up the burnt offerings and sacrifices, and the glorious presence of the LORD filled the Temple. ² The priests could not enter the Temple of the LORD because the glorious presence of the LORD filled it.”

To say that it has all been *smooth sailing*, would not be truthful. I had to learn, over time, how to best use the newer printing press, controlling the ink, water, and room temperature, and to position the image properly on the printing plate and adjust the halftone pictures and graphics we printed so they weren't too dark or too light. At one point on a critical job, I was getting unwanted background ink. Seemingly at my wit's end, I told the Lord that, if He didn't solve this problem, I would never print for Him again! Unknown to me, my wife had been cleaning up our computer desks area and found some note cards I had made on lessons learned doing previous jobs. She had placed them on the corner of the desk. It occurred to me that I might have had this problem before and written something about it. As I turned to look for my note cards, I saw the stack Harriet had put on the desk. When I looked through them, I found a note about adding varnish to the ink to make it thicker. I followed the advice, and it solved the problem!

As of April, 2012, my wife and I had all the equipment we wanted except the image setter which makes metal plates from the computer, and new, costs tens of thousands of dollars (11,000+ used). Although we have put more money into the business than we have made from jobs, we have gotten a few large jobs that utilize the equipment we have, and we are not in debt. We have made tracts for the Los Angeles Free Tract Society, and hope to print hundreds of thousands more *Know Your Future* booklets. We also ordered a new brand of [Komoto](#) brand film positive material for our color laser printer which makes adequate solids that the previous brand couldn't do. We took on a job for 30,000+ two color Spanish booklets with heavy solids of color and bleeds to the three sides of the trimmed pages. Now we can do more than we realized without an expensive *image setter*. The registration between colors with the current system isn't perfect, but gives good-looking quality.

We knew we could be scrutinized by the IRS for not having shown a profit for multiple years in a row. I heard that if one shows a loss three years in a row, the government could claim we are running the business as a hobby to avoid paying taxes. In 2008, the IRS asked me to explain my having shown a loss of \$9,000. I sent an explanation letter and they have not bothered us since. Afterward, we began having a professional tax person do our taxes. I found that each piece of expensive equipment we buy has to be depreciated over a number of years for tax purposes. We could solve possible further IRS scrutiny by becoming a non-profit corporation of our own, or becoming a subsidiary of an existing one. We would have minimal obligation to the parent ministry, and our yearly income report would be a simple one. We were given two such opportunities, and

in 2016, accepted the one with Mercy International, Inc., which also has tax exempt status with the IRS.

In 2015 we put a bid on a (twice as large as the Quonset hut) 1900 square foot downtown office building in the city where we live, about two miles from our home. The city agreed to approve the property for the kind of printing we do. The place has central heating and air conditioning, parking, adequate electrical power, and is over twice as large as the Quonset hut we have been using. In 2016, we found a way to purchase the building without going into debt. In the Quonset hut on the family ranch, we didn't pay utilities or rent. Now we have business insurance of \$600+ per year, yearly property taxes of \$1,500+, monthly city utilities (water, sewer, and trash) of \$68, and monthly electric and gas bills. The city yearly business license was only about \$20 because we are now able to operate as a non-profit tax-exempt 501c3 ministry related subsidiary of Mercy International, Inc. Since operating as a non-profit is new to us, we are considering joining the support group SPOKES located in the nearby city of San Luis Obispo.

For picture of the new location, see the chapter on *Moving Equipment*. Evidence of God's hand helping us through people was amazing. After the move, we started printing again by making 10,000 Spanish gospel tracts and donating them to a ministry in Mexico. Other ministers in our parent corporation delivered the tracts for free. We also began making more paperback books and booklets. I encountered two new equipment problems I had not seen in 15+ years of printing, but I read the manufacturer's troubleshooting guide at home, made adjustments the next day, and was then able to print at the maximum press speed of 10,000 an hour!

Galatians 6:9 κϋν - And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.

We found a couple with a similar website to ours, like www.tracts.com. In fifteen years, they have helped print and distribute over a million tracts, training others in tract making. Joe and Laura have linked our website to theirs and even posted a price-list we recently made. In 2015, I realized that training videos would be a lot easier to follow than the written down, step-by-step method for designing tracts outlined in this book. I downloaded the free edition [Microsoft Expression Encoder screen capture software](#) from the Microsoft website. I also bought the latest armature video editing software from [Nero](#). I can now make ten minute video clips that capture all the movements made on my computer screen as I do a document creation demonstration, along with my voice through a headset. The video is then converted to a [WMV](#) (windows media video) file format using the Microsoft software. The file ripping process is very labor intensive on the computer's Intel i7 2.8 [multicore CPU](#) (central processing unit). The resulting file is compatible with the You Tube video website. I easily upload the video with my free You Tube account, and add a thumbnail start picture, along with *tag* words, and add a brief

written description. On our website, www.tracts4u.com, I added a new page titled *Free Training Videos*, where I list the videos and the clickable *hypertext* links to watching the videos. After a couple of videos, I was able to change recording settings to increase the playback quality. A sample video I like, *Add a Form Field to a PDF Document 4 Contact Information*, is located at the following internet address: <http://youtu.be/z9wda1FKTks>. I have made at least ten videos so far. Also, I figured out how to make the hyperlinks (like the one above) in the interactive PDF of this book, clickable with the computer mouse so one can go to additional material found on the internet through a Wi-Fi connection or hot spot. In 2016, I bought *Snagit* 13 brand screen capture which is easier to use. I now have twenty-one YouTube training videos. Snagit does video capture in the high definition MPEG4 file format which YouTube desires.



State of finished and equipped Quonset hut (north half) in 2015 before the move to the City of Santa Maria, CA. The south half contained paper storage, a break room, 10 bin collator, assembly tables, saddle stitch stapler, and a paper drill.

Setting up and Running the Business

One should establish a business name. I chose HIS Print Media Ministries. One should compose a Mission Statement. One should operate with the idea that he is spreading the Good News and not trying to make a profit or living by what he does with the business. Terry Mize, an apostle to Mexico, stated at a meeting I attended, "There is nothing God won't do for you, if you will but help spread the Gospel."

I opened a separate checking and savings account at my bank and got a MasterCard debit card to go with the account. By opening the business account with dual names, *HIS Print Media Ministries* and my name *David A. Hupp*, I avoided having to get a city business license and post a fictitious name statement in the local newspaper. Our print shop location outside the city limits was probably also a factor. A yearly business license within the city limits where we live would be \$40 a year. If we were selling merchandise to people other than churches and non-profits, we would probably have to charge and collect state sales taxes. [The Free Tract Society of Los Angeles](#) is a non-profit corporation. For years they didn't have to charge sales tax, but now they do, on literature they don't give away for free.

I did go to the State of California website and get a business/employer tax ID number ([EIN](#)) which I put on my yearly federal income tax papers. If we eventually buy our own building in the city where we live, we would also need to buy insurance. A lawyer told us that we could even work out of our home in the city where we live because so many people are doing it and the city is ignoring it. If we did enough business to need to hire and pay employees, we could go through the company [Pay Chex](#), that for a fee, would handle all the required employer and employee payroll deductions for us. When I worked private duty as a CNA (caregiver), along with others, that is how the family paid me. I put the receipts for everything I buy for the business in a folder and total them up at the end of the year for IRS tax purposes and listed the results on a [schedule C](#) income tax form titled, *Profit or Loss from a Business*. Categories are: rent, office supplies, shipping and postage, equipment purchases and repair. More expensive equipment requires depreciating the cost over a number of years. All contributions or payments for work done are in the form of checks made out to the business name and are put in the business checking account. That way at the end of the year I only need the twelve monthly bank statements to figure out how much money came in. When more money went out than came in, mostly because I printed and gave away literature to evangelistic ministries, I showed a loss on the [schedule C](#) form and it results in my paying less taxes when balanced against my regular job income, and usually results in my getting a tax refund or paying less taxes. One year I showed a business loss of \$9,000 and the IRS asked for an explanation, and I was able to give a satisfactory one.

I told the IRS I was planning to become a [non-profit 501\(c\)3 corporation](#) because they consider your business a hobby if it doesn't show a profit after about three years.

Getting the incorporation would cost a couple of thousand dollars if a lawyer did it and then I would have to have a board of directors and three or so meetings a year, with minutes of the meeting. One possible advantage is that a place of business bought by the corporation may be free from yearly city property taxes. An option would be for us to legally share an existing church's corporation status - to be under their umbrella for tax and business purposes. We have been offered two such opportunities, but after a discussion with a Christian counselor, I came to believe we should start our own corporation so as to avoid distractions from our Christian evangelism printing emphasis.

A lawyer told my wife one could do the filing and paperwork himself by following free guidelines posted on certain websites. If one wants to investigate becoming a non-profit and getting tax exempt status, here are three internet links:

Paid help for setting up a non-profit 501(c)3 <http://www.LegalZoom.com/Non-Profit>

Tax exempt status <http://www.irs.gov/Charities-&Non-Profits>

American Fellowship Church Publication <http://www.amfellow.org>

Nolo Press [How to Form a Non-profit Corporation in California](#)
[Encyclopedia of Related Non-Profit Books](#)

My wife's tax preparer and her husband, both CPAs, told me that, since I was doing most of my printing for churches that are non-profits and don't have to pay taxes, or for clients in other states, I do not have to charge sales taxes on jobs I do. I can legally get by with not incorporating. Incorporating may be something I don't need or want – due to the expense, time and necessary record keeping involved. I would have to file an annual renewal form for the State of California and pay a yearly fee. Please note that the IRS is now requiring the Free Tract Society of Los Angeles, a non-profit, to collect and process state sales tax from customers who buy their tracts.

My ministry associate, [Prince Handley](#), told me years ago that, if he had a choice, he would not have gone non-profit, implying that one must keep too many detailed records, but that going non-profit is what God told him to do. I haven't seen a need to do that except that I would be able to issue tax deductible receipts for contributions. When I got paid at my regular care giving job, I put a tithe or 10% of my net earnings into the business account. Sometimes I had to put my whole check in because I bought a piece of equipment to expand the business. If someone wants to donate a piece of equipment for a tax deductible receipt, I get the church I am ordained with to issue one. By this means I have been blessed with several printing presses in good condition, and bindery equipment – thousands of dollars worth!

I was told in a prophecy when prayed over by church leaders in a ["Presbytery"](#) that I would train others to do what I do. Craig Hill of Ancient Paths Seminars stood in front of me and told me that I could see the end vision, but there were holes in the fulfillment path where God will plug in people to make it happen. God has been doing just that! If I were to become a non-profit corporation, I could hire disadvantaged people age fifty-five or older through the Work Training Program in the State of California. They would be

able to work 19 hours a week at near minimum wage and learn the printing trade, plus do work for God and get paid by the State of California. In the event that I hire and pay employees in the normal sense, as mentioned earlier I could go through the "Pay Chex" company who would take out the proper deductions when I call in the hours worked every two weeks, and they would, for a fee, mail the employee a paycheck drawn from the money in the business checking account. This could only happen if one charges for each job done and seeks to make some profit. In 2002, an associate minister, who used to have his own family run print shop, wrote a suggested letter I can send out stating that I charge cost of materials plus 30%. In 2013, we felt we had to raise that to 40%. In 2016, a print shop we visited in the State of Oregon told me I may need to increase that to 50%. I was telling people that I don't charge for our labor, and that we design documents for free. Now I ask for a donation for design work. Also, we are not paid by the business, but live on our social security retirement, and a pension.

Another method is to follow what the print shops I worked in used to do. They charged a penny per color per copy for printing on a press, plus the cost of negatives and metal plates, and about \$9 per 1000 for folding plus a \$12 set up of the folder fee. When you figure a normal printing press can do at least 6,000 copies an hour, and you get a big job such as one inquiry I received about my ability to print a million *How To Win* tracts in Portuguese for Brazil, there is the potential to make \$60 an hour. I gained so much graphic design experience (through City College classes and on-the-job-training) that an instructor at a technical institute said I didn't need to take her course and was the equivalent of a Graphic Artist Assistant. Thus, I could charge a fee or hourly rate for designing documents to be printed on the computer, but I don't because that is the part I enjoy doing.

A normal print shop gains additional revenue by charging for bindery work. Using the paper cutter would be at least a dollar per cut. Using the folder would be about \$12 for setting it up for a job, and \$9 for every 1,000 pieces of paper folded. If one doesn't charge appropriately for copies made on the color laser printer, one could be hit all at once with a bill for \$700 for a set of toner cartridges that will print 15,000 copies at 20 percent coverage of toner on the sheet. Ricoh, the manufacturer of my tabloid color laser printer, figures all the consumables together 9(except paper) and came up with a figure of 1.2 cents per black and white letter size copy and about 6.6 cents per color copy at 5% coverage of toner on the page. Thus, full color costs a lot more than grayscale (black toner).

In January 2016, my wife and I were re-ordained under [Mercy International](#). The leaders told us that when they set up the corporation in 1983, they designed it so they could be an umbrella ministry that covers other unincorporated ministries like ours that are associated with them. We were given their California Tax Exemption Number and told we could use it. For example, we noticed that when we order literature to give away

to the homeless from [Christian Book](#) in Massachusetts, they provide a place on their online order form for this exemption number so we don't have to pay tax on our orders.

October 2016 – To do business, legally, when we moved to the City of Santa Maria business district, we had to file a DBA (doing business as) fictitious name statement with the city and post it in the local newspaper for four consecutive weeks. We asked for a business inspection to check our fire extinguisher and door locks and bathroom facilities. A special permit and accompanying inspection was needed to resurface the roof and add a subpanel and electrical ceiling outlets for three presses and two other machines in the press room. When we applied for the City business license we applied as a non-profit tax exempt division of the parent ministry Mercy International, Inc. to do this we had to show a paper of permission from the parent corporation to use their 501c3 incorporation number. We needed a letter from the IRS showing that their EIN (Employer Identification Number) has tax exempt status. It took more than one trip to city hall. We are pleased that it all was relatively easy compared to starting our own new non-profit corporation.

Having a building in the city means considerably more operating expenses than we had when we were on the family ranch where we paid no rent or utilities, but did occasional repairs in exchange. Now my wife's family trust owns the new building, and lets us use it; but they shouldn't have to pay any of the operating expenses. My social security of about \$650 a month after medical insurance, isn't going to be able to pay these expenses either. I am listing these projected monthly expenses here so one can plan to do enough profit making jobs to stay above water on required expenses. One solution I found was to begin asking for a donation for the hours we spend designing documents for printing.

1. City non-profit business license per year \$20
2. Monthly city water, trash, and sewer Minimum \$68 per month
3. Electric bill \$100 a month
4. Natural gas bill for space heating \$20 minimum per month in the winter
5. Insurance (not including equipment) About \$900 a year
6. Yearly taxes – Because the building is not owned by the non-profit corporation, the yearly taxes at 1.1% are \$1,500 or more! Had the building been leased from the owner and not been bought, they wanted \$2,000 per month for 1900 square feet of space!

Total: \$2,608+ per year

Another solution:

The Free Tract Society of Los Angeles has been in business for over 100 years. They solicit and accept donations as a non-profit. Like us, they do more than just print tracts – they have outreaches to the poor and homeless. They also help people with job training.

They hire a pressman, so have to bring in money. They give away a pound of tracts a day. If a person wants more tracts, they weigh them on a scale and charge \$7 a pound. They considered the charge a donation and were able to avoid charging state sales tax for years. They were investigated by the State Franchise tax board and given a choice to be charged for unpaid sales tax in past years, or, forget the past and begin collecting and mailing in their sales tax. The director decided to comply and they have been charging tax on the non free items for several years now. The former director, Dr. Ernest F. Sody, told me in the 1970's that they would reprint print a tract I wrote, but I would have to pay for the printing and give them some of the printed tracts to place on their tract tables for sale or give away. A couple of years ago I began giving them two color tracts I had written, designed, and printed on our equipment, with their contact information already on the back of the tracts. I hoped someone would like the tracts and when they ran out, they would ask us for more, and we would offer to sell them some. The Spanish *Why John 3:16?* Tract caught on and the FTS agreed to pay us \$200 a box (10,000 tracts) for the two color exact registration tract. We drove 170 miles to personally deliver the tracts. Since they had a pressman to pay, they then asked me to send, by e-mail attachment, a PDF two color separation computer document for the tract to a service bureau in Orange County that makes negatives for \$10 each color plus shipping. www.filmoutput.com then mails the films to the FTS who strips them into a mask and then burns metal press plates. As a side note, we found that, printing one color at a time, and using high quality accurate registration color separations they paid for, the FTS got no better quality then we had gotten making film positives from our laser printer and printing both colors at the same time on our two tower Ryobi 3302 press.

This additional income idea didn't prove to be an ongoing source of revenue to pay our business operating expenses, but at least some tracts I wrote and designed are getting into the hands of the general public through a major outlet. Since the Free Tract Society doesn't print booklets which are more labor intensive to design and make, they buy four booklets redesigned and printed by us. The FTS prints the two color non booklet tracts, and we print their booklets. One Spanish booklet with heavy solid areas of ink and *full bleeds* of ink to the edges of pages of the trimmed booklets. A Los Angeles area church paid 10 cents each for 20,000 booklets. We printed extras which the FTS agreed to buy.

Now that our ministry name is coming up on internet searches, evangelistic people are contacting us to perfect and print their tract ideas. They take it so far and don't know how to make it quality or multiple colors like we do. Since it was taking hours to get these documents ready to print, and charging by the hour would be more than an individual could afford to pay, we began asking for a donation for the design work. One lady from Irving, Texas, mailed us her eight *paste up* originals. I sent her by e-mail, a press quality PDF of each document for her approval. We then printed, on our color laser printer, 600 of her *Jesus Understands* tract at five cents each (our cost, no profit)

in a USPS Flat Rate Priority \$6.45 envelope. Her response was, "I am sooo glad I found you!" We have finished and printed and mailed her other tracts. She and her evangelism team partners plan to buy more soon. We told her we hadn't charged enough, and she sent extra money. As a plus, I posted her tract documents on our website for free use.

If interest in Mrs. Butler's tracts creates a need to print thousands at a time, I will separate the colors to make the tract on the printing press. In 1993, when I printed for a mailing service, we charged a penny per copy per color, marked the paper up 50%, and charged about \$14 for each metal plate. Printing two colors at 6,000 copies an hour, could bring in \$120 an hour. I would not agree to print less than a box of paper (5,000 sheets) on a printing press due to the extra time (over a laser printer) to set up the press, register the colors on the sheet, and clean up the press. For folding, we would charge \$12 to set up the folder, and \$9 per 1,000 sheets folded. This shows that printing can be profitable if enough business is coming in.

I recommend avoiding what I call headache jobs. Examples are printing glossy paper on the press, printing a company's letterhead/ stationary on a press on expensive *writing* paper, and printing more than one color using instant toner based *laser plates*, or polyester plates which require chemical development. The water balance is more critical with these kinds of plates, they are harder to use with colored inks, and the plates, not being metal, may stretch, making exact registration between more than one color impossible. Also, trying to make words in the same line of text a second color for emphasis will result in the second color words not being in exact alignment with the rest of the line printed in the main body text color. I suggest sticking to long run jobs on the press using Metal plates. Short run jobs can be run on the color laser printer if one keeps in mind that running color on a laser printer is six times more expensive per copy than on a printing press.

We had a *Next Day Signs* company make magnetic signs for the sides of our car from our computer document. We could have bought thinner material from the Kelly Paper Company and printed signs using our wide format inkjet or 12" x 18"+ color laser printer, but water based non pigmented ink would not be as durable as stick on vinyl letters cut from a roll by a computerized machine. The sign shop print on magnetic material is over twice as thick at 30 mil. The signs will not bend around creases in the car door's sheet metal, so it must be a size that fits over a reasonably flat surface. Otherwise wind could get under the lead edge and the sign blow off while driving. The two color door signs cost about \$89 a pair. The message contained our company name, street address, what we do (design & printing), and our cell phone number and website address.

For the building signs, I took down the previous owners 44" x 44" signs and used spray paint for plastic. I sprayed both inside and outside with enough coats so the previous information was no longer visible. I designed a two color computer document

and took it to the sign shop on a CD disk as a PDF file. I chose black and medium blue rather than a red because reds fade over time when exposed to sun light. The sign company transferred their printout right onto our two Plexiglas sign shells. Our Christian neighbors volunteered to put the signs back up. Because the previous sign holders were used, the city planner, being given a letter size printout of the proposed design, signed off the new design and waived the normal sign permit fee of about \$65. We were in Oregon visiting relatives, when an auto body repair man called me on my cell phone from. He was our first non ministry related prospect for business at our new shop, and said he had been driving by and seen our building sign. Please note that, in designing signs to be seen from a distance, the letters should have additional space between them. We learned that signs can, over time, be a less expensive means of advertising to generate business that will not just pay expenses, but bring a profit for upgrading older equipment, and being able to offer more gospel literature free to evangelists and missionaries.



Existing sign shells were painted white with spray paint made for plastic. A sign shop printed and transferred the sign design to two shells. Life expectancy is 8+ years. Christian neighbors volunteer to remount signs on their day off. Car door signs are on thicker magnetic material, on flat portion of door and are removable when car is washed. With so many homeless people hanging out in our area of town, I taped a tiled and laminated sign I made to the inside of the back window – *The World's Most Important Prayer* in English & Spanish.





My father had been a research scientist and inventor. He invented the world's smallest digital volt meter in 1964, and had previously made good money in his own business designing and marketing an electric timer. In 2016, I offered to drive an overworked minister to a nearby city to pick up his repaired computers. He had gone through a mental crisis. While we were shopping in the vegetable department of a big Walmart, the Spirit of God came on Ken, and he laid a hand on my shoulder and talked to me by the Lord for fifteen minutes. The gist of the revelation is that God is going to give me *witty inventions* that I can patent that will bring in finances. This wasn't the first time a minister had told me this. I have wanted to make the *good news* about Jesus Christ free of charge like the Apostle Paul did in the New Testament of the Bible. Patentable inventions could be a means of prospering our printing business.

Proverbs 8:12 KJV I wisdom dwell with prudence, and find out knowledge of witty inventions.

Financing the Business

"I look up to the mountains—does my help come from there? My help comes from the LORD, who made heaven and earth!" – Psalm 121:1-2

Christian song sung by Rev. Kenneth Copeland, "I cannot be defeated, no, and I'll never quit, redeemed by the blood of Jesus, I've been saved from Satan's pit...He won the battle and He did it all for me. I cannot be defeated, no, and I know I'll never quit." Another Christian hymn "Though none go with me, still I will follow...no turning back, no turning back."

Kenneth Copeland Ministries now has its own television network, but you don't see them begging for financial support. They believe they are operating in God's will and that God will take care of the finances as they actively believe God to supply their needs. Copeland's mentor, the late [Rev. Kenneth E. Hagin](#) made the statement, "Some people think that the blessings of God ought to just fall on them like ripe cherries off a tree, but they don't. They have to be appropriated by faith." I have made a list of things I am believing God for the printing ministry, and am commissioning the ministering angels of God...given charge concerning me to bring in those things (Matthew 4:6; 18:10).

2 Corinthians 4:13 NLT "But we continue to preach because we have the same kind of faith the psalmist had when he said, "I believed in God, so I spoke."

Mark 11:22-24 NLT "Then Jesus said to the disciples, "Have faith in God. ³ I tell you the truth, you can say to this mountain, 'May you be lifted up and thrown into the sea,' and it will happen. But you must really believe it will happen and have no doubt in your heart. ⁴I tell you, you can pray for anything, and if you believe that you've received it, it will be yours."

I am not going to allow myself to be disappointed by people not showing an interest in which the Lord has put in my heart to do. As King Hezekiah said to the Lord when faced with considerable opposition, "But our eyes are on Thee" – (2 Chronicles 20:12). Someone said, "If the Lord ain't in it, you might as well hang it up!" Another Christian axiom states, "The will of the Lord makes a way for itself." My associate, Prince Handley (<http://www.realmiracles.org>) felt the Lord wanted him to open a small publishing center. He went on a retreat on a farm in the Midwest to be alone and pray. While there, he was unexpectedly given \$100,000 and in one week had the printing center set up and running and was able to also purchase recording equipment for making uplifting radio broadcasts. "This is the Lord's doing, it is marvelous in our eyes." – (Psalm 118:23).

I was told, prophetically, that the Lord would have people plug into the path to success in my vision of a printing ministry. This ministry would train others and reach other countries with anointed literature that would dramatically change lives. But I am not sitting around waiting for it to just happen. I am planning for success and doing the "tent making" as the apostle Paul did to be self supporting when necessary, making the gospel without charge – (1 Corinthians 9:18).

Proverbs 16:9 KJV "A man's heart deviseth his way: but the LORD directeth his steps."

Psalm 37:23 *κλν* *"The steps of a good man are ordered by the LORD: and he delighteth in his way."*

About 2008, I printed a nice appeal letter written by the pastor of my church, and included printed tract samples, and set it out to evangelical churches within an eighty mile radius of where I was staying, and also to big name national ministries. I got one reply from Joyce Meyers stating they didn't feel led to help at that time. Yet I keep going as the Hymn says, "Lead on oh King Eternal, the day of march has come...the arm of flesh will fail you, ye dare not trust your own."

I conclude this section by stating that I believe that people should be told that contributions are accepted or welcomed, and that funds donated go into a separate ministry account and do not benefit me or my wife personally. Established organizations that do solicit funds (have donations coming in) will pay at least the cost of materials plus 40%. As mentioned, in 2002 I began charging cost of materials plus 30%, and it hasn't been enough to break even. Later, in 2013, I changed to 40% additional. Individuals who want to do street work and have tracts to pass out will not be denied help if they can't afford to pay for the literature. They will be given a starter batch of tracts and when they have passed them out, be asked to satisfactorily explain what they did with them before I consider giving them more.

The business website and business cards contain contact information, and a P.O. Box address where one can make contributions. I keep a record of work done, partly for IRS accountability, and receipts are issued for all paid jobs. This is a faith venture. I remember watching the printing of Free Bible Studies in Hindi for India while working as an administrative assistant to Prince Handley in his small publishing center. When we had packaged the printed studies, Rev. Handley said, "Well, brother, now we have to believe God for the postage money to come in (i.e., through the P.O. Box)." He has told me more recently that he even gets contributions from people in poor countries in Africa. As the saying goes, "The Lord works in mysterious ways, His wonders to perform."

Rom 11:33 *AMP* *"Oh, the depth of the riches and wisdom and knowledge of God! How unfathomable (inscrutable, unsearchable) are His judgments (His decisions)! And how untraceable (mysterious, undiscoverable) are His ways (His methods, His paths)!"*

If one is going to be selling printed matter in the state in which the business is located, even as a tax exempt non-profit corporation, the state one lives in may require him to charge customers/ buyers state sales tax and turn that tax in to the state. Publication 61 tells who or what is exempt from collecting and paying these taxes in the State of California, as well as how to collect the taxes.

A modern proverb: "The will of the Lord makes a way for itself."

Pricing of Jobs – So You Don't Go Broke

Tract Pricing – For Larger Quantities, Quality, Optional Custom Address – On a Printing Press, or Full Color Laser Printer

HIS Print Media Ministries, designs and prints tracts, booklets, and paperback books. Our primary emphasis is Christian Evangelism. All incoming money goes into a ministry account. There are no paid employees. We are volunteering our labor and years of printing experience. When I worked in a commercial print shop connected with a mailing service, in 1993, we charged a penny per ink color per copy, marked the paper up 50% above wholesale cost, and charged \$10 or more for each metal printing plate for the press. Thus, if one could use a two color press to print at 6,000 copies an hour on a long run job, and all went well, one could make up to \$120 an hour! I haven't found this to be the real world of printing and all its related problems. Later, after spending hours to make 20 good quality 583 page paperback books for my mother, I was not too happy. I told someone that, if they expected me to print something for them at a real low price so they could in turn mark up the price and sell it to help make a living for themselves, I wouldn't do that for them because, if such a job isn't helping people find God, it isn't worth the hassle it takes me to make quality books. I won't do a job, or will refund the deposit if I can't make a quality product that I am proud of.

If you like passing out tracts, and you make them yourself, you will quickly find out that buying supplies/consumables for your inkjet or color laser printer is quite expensive. We have a professional laser printer that does near photo quality, and a printing press that does two colors with exact color registration. I was searching the internet for the best price on aftermarket toner cartridges that help lower such costs. I www.tonerprice.com. They have aftermarket non-remanufactured color cartridges that cost half that of the OEM (original equipment manufacture). I have been buying them for years and they work fine. They also sell the OEM imaging drums, fuser unit, transfer belt, and waste toner container.

Quantities of 2000 or less are done on the laser printer. Minimum quantity printing press jobs are 5,000+ copies (one box or ten reams of letter size paper) for one color, and 10,000+ for two color tracts. Shipping for small jobs is by [USPS](#) Priority flat rate (domestic and international) envelopes and boxes. Domestic books and booklets are sent by [USPS Media Mail](#), the cheapest method. Larger orders are shipped by [UPS](#) (United Parcel Service). We do not pay for the shipping. The blue *hyperlinked* text after each category listed below is a link to a sample tract. (Place mouse cursor over the blue text, hold down the control key and left click the mouse). Although the links below are for English language tracts, we also have Spanish and other languages. For a look at all the tracts we print, please go to: www.tracts4u.com. You can contact us by E-mail: info@tracts4u.com; or, by cell phone: 805-452-5150 (David). Tracts are printed on white paper. Colored paper is special order, and a higher price.

1. One color ink, four tracts per letter size sheet. \$2 per 100. *How To Win*
<http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=75>
2. One color ink, two per letter size sheet. \$3 per 100. *What Fills the Void?*
<http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=750>

3. Two colors of ink, two tracts per letter size sheet. \$3 per 100. Run on a printing press. 10,000 minimum for custom contact address . *Why John 3:16?*
<http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=43>
4. Two colors of ink, two tracts per legal size sheet, run on a printing press. \$4.50 per 100 *Who is Jesus?* <http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=397>
5. *Full color cards (glossy surface on front), 4 per letter size sheet, on color laser printer.* \$10 per 100
You Are Loved! <http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=707>
6. Full color, two per letter size sheet, on color laser printer. \$8 per 100 (plain paper). \$10 per 100 (32lb glossy paper). \$15 per 100 (coated one side card stock, no fold)
Are You Playing With Satan? <http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=111>, or *Who...?*
<http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=166>
7. Full color, four per letter size sheet (32lb glossy paper). \$6 per 100. \$5 per 100 (plain paper)
How to Live Forever – There is Only One Way <http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=118>
8. Full color, tri-fold or bi-fold, one per letter size sheet (32lb. glossy paper) \$20 per 100.
Prayer Changes Everything <http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=57>,
Messiah's Identity Revealed <http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=172>

Booklet Tracts (stapled)

Small 2 ¾" tall x 4 1/8" wide, 16 pages, 2 color, on printing press. \$6 per 100. *Know Your Future* (English, Spanish, French) <http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=678>
Letter half, color cover, plain paper, 12 pages. \$50 per 100. *Seven Things God Wants Us to Know* <http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=212>

Booklets (Letter half, legal half, Tabloid half)

Letter half, coated one side card stock full color cover, plain paper content with full color graphics/pictures. \$5 each. Note: booklet maker machine can do about 64 pages + cover. Thicker booklets require more handwork. *My Miracle Stories*
<http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=557>

Paperback Books – Glossy coated one side card stock full color bleed to the edges cover. 100 pages to about 600 pages (letter half size), 300 pages in letter size.

Letter half, 150-200 pages, color cover, black text and grayscale pictures on content pages. \$10 each.

Letter size, color pictures throughout, up to 300 pages. \$15 each. *Christian Evangelism Printing* <http://www.tracts4u.com/blog1/?p=432> (a 16.23mb file size download)

Note: Companies like Xulon and Tate Publishing may charge \$500 -899 for the first copy

Shipping & Packaging

Shipping (within the USA) by USPS Flat Rate Priority Boxes (Prices May 2016)

Medium size \$13.45 – holds approximately 1,700 5.5" x 4.25" (folded size) tracts, or 5,000 2.75" x 4.25" (folded size) tracts.

Large size \$18.75 – holds approximately 3,000 5.5" x 4.25" (folded size) tracts, or 6,000 2.75" x 4.25" (folded size) tracts.

Note: International Flat Rate requires a Customs slip, and has a maximum weight of 20 pounds per box.

International: These sizes and prices are the best value for the money, and prices are subject to change yearly. Prices now vary by region. Priority Letter/Legal Size Flat Rate Envelope \$29.95, Priority Medium Flat Rate Box - \$66.95 , Priority Large Flat Rate Box - \$86.95 (2016 prices). At about 42 lbs (3 flat rate boxes), International Priority becomes cheaper.

Note: The math done below was compiled using 2012 prices. The USPS website is <http://www.usps.com>. Their postage price calculator link is <https://postcalc.usps.com/>.

In April, 2012, I needed to mail 20 of the paperback books we made for my mother, from the west coast to the Mid-West. I assumed that the USPS (United States Postal Service) large size Priority Flat Rate Box at \$15.45 x 2 (10 books per box), was going to be the cheapest. I then investigated using the internet and found the USPS parcel post price for the same package would be \$18.70. USPS *media mail* would be cheaper at \$8.99, but I would only be able to send books, booklets, and CDs, not tracts or our normal Christian printed matter. Fed Ex would be \$21.11 for home delivery in three business days. UPS was \$23.49 for four day delivery. My conclusion, then, for packages shipped within the United States, is Media Mail for books, booklets, and CDs; and Priority Flat Rate boxes for printed matter. If one does the paperwork and payment online for USPS Flat Rate Boxes, the post office will come and pick up the ready to ship boxes. If one sets up a [Fed Ex](#) online shipping account, the price is cheaper than their normal price. The two companies will even pick up the prepared packages at one's place of business if the shipping activity is great enough. For doing the shipping labels at home, including printing out postage stickers, one would need an accurate scale with a capacity of twenty pounds or more. Twenty pounds is the weight limit for USPS International Flat Rate Boxes. Also, on Non-Flat Rate Boxes, making the box close to the size of the item(s) being shipped, reduces the postage. Now, computer accessed online companies like www.stamps.com provide a small scale and software to get started. The catch is that this is not the USPS, and a fee of \$19 a month or more is charged for the convenience of printing out your own postage stickers.

In shipping overseas, I have chosen to use the Same [Medium Flat Rate Priority Boxes](#). The local post office window clerks were surprised to find that I was saving \$30-\$60 per box over other avenues the USPS offers. On international shipping, the

maximum weight for a Flat Rate Priority Box is twenty pounds, but I haven't exceeded that when sending paper products. It could happen using letter size 32lb glossy coated paper. The box is six inches tall. That equates to 1,440 sheets weighing about 21 pounds. Overseas shipping of packages over four pounds requires filling out and attaching a larger size [PS Form 2976-A Customs Declaration and Dispatched Note – CP 72](#). One would want to write, under *Detailed Description of Contents*, "Pieces of Literature. No Commercial Value. Free Gift". The idea here is avoiding being charged import duty. International packages under 4 pounds require the smaller [customs form](#). One can send about 200 unfolded 4.25" x 5.25" tracts in a padded 6" x 9" number "0" envelope. It is sent by [International First Class](#). The cost (August 2015) is about \$10+.

One would include a notice to the distributor asking that the receiver send a satisfactory explanation of what he did with the literature before he will be sent more literature. This tests the waters so to speak to see if the distributor is a true evangelist or pastor who is giving away the literature and not trying to sell it to make a profit. Then, if the sender believes the distributor is sincere, the recipient can be sent up to 1,200 of the same tracts in a legal size Flat Rate International Priority Envelope (less than 4 pounds total weight) for \$29.95, or 5,000 of the tracts in a medium flat rate priority box for a cost of about \$66.95. Either of these options is a better value than the [First Class International](#). In all of these categories, the cost of the shipping is more than the cost of the printing. Now the post office offers a discounted price for buying these Flat Rate Boxes *online* or by computer and the internet.

Large orders going overseas require a different, less expensive strategy. About 2010, my wife and I printed 40,000+ French *How to Win* tracts for Haiti for Christian disaster relief efforts after a devastating earthquake struck the area of the capital city. Another ministry had rented space on a barge to be towed from the United States. We used the United Parcel Service to ship the printed boxes of tracts to the east coast to be put on the barge. I used to send booklet tracts to South Africa by USPS "M-bag" which was \$1.50 a pound. That rate has gone up and made it cost prohibitive. The box of literature couldn't weigh 63 pounds and was put in a canvas mail sack. One bag was returned to me and the box was more rounded and spongy like a medicine ball. M-bag used to take six to eight weeks to get there. In contrast, the smaller Priority Flat Rate boxes go by air plane and take about eight days to get to their overseas destination. As of 2015, the USPS is saying that all mail goes by air to foreign countries. IF missionaries or evangelists are traveling to a mission station, I suggest they pay for an extra suitcase of a size that will hold the maximum weight limit of literature.

For booklets and books sent inside the United States, [USPS Media Mail](#) is the cheapest way, even though slower than other methods; and, media mail now includes tracking. We were sending tract booklets to another ministry by Media Mail, and were told that over 3,000 people had been saved through these booklet tracts. Three times

the shipment was delayed or lost. Now we buy insurance for packages sent to this ministry, which is about \$2 for \$50 worth of tracts.

The Apostle I worked with told me not to fold the tracts being sent out of the country as the corners can be damaged in shipping. He says in heavy rainfall areas of Africa, we should line the box with a plastic bag to protect the literature from moisture. We have been shrink-wrapping the unfolded tracts in small bundles. This keeps them in place, and also helps keep moisture out. Also, we use clear, wide, shipping tape to seal the seams and joining areas of cardboard boxes to keep them from being damaged or breaking open during transit. He says the name of the country must be on its own line, printed in all capital letters, at the bottom of the address on the shipping label, and clear tape must be placed over the label surface and extend $\frac{3}{4}$ " beyond the labels edges. Shipping Christian literature has become so expensive. I would like to see a website of the itineraries of Christians traveling, and someone to coordinate their taking tracts with them as part of, or an addition to, their luggage. I noticed, during my visits to the Los Angeles Free Tract Society, that they are using the USPS Priority Flat Rate Boxes for their shipping. In closing, I suggest that, when printing and shipping literature to distributors overseas who you aren't familiar with, (one's you received literature requests from by regular mail or e-mail, possibly because they looked at your website), that you not send a large quantity the first shipment. As well, request a written response telling what they did with the last shipment, and how they used the literature to advance the Kingdom of God. We want to be sure, also, that they aren't getting the literature for free from us, and then selling it to try and make a living for themselves.

In 2014, I received an e-mail from Brazil asking for a quote on printing 100,000 tracts. I would have liked to do the job, but the shipping from the United States would be as much as \$66.25 for each box of 5,200. I used Portuguese interpreters to relay the message that I couldn't do the job because the high cost of shipping would ruin any good printing price I could quote them. Instead, I offered to help them design a tract that they could get printed in Brazil. I could also turn the tract into what I call an *E-tract* – a read order PDF computer document that would be sent by e-mail attachment. In the chapter, *Do Tracts Work?*, at the end of the chapter (page 25), see the testimony of how a man in Africa used one of our tract documents posted on our website, paid to have about 576 of them printed in his own town, passed them out there, and received at least one dramatic conversion where an anti-Christian person truly gave his heart and life to Jesus Christ.

An important issue is having correct and clearly readable addresses when shipping overseas. Working with an Apostle, we would get literature requests where we couldn't clearly understand the shipping address, partly because so many requesting tracts would hand write their contact information, and use handwriting. Some packages were being returned as not deliverable. We decided to scan the contact info sent us and then print a copy of it and use that for the *Send To:* address. Three packages still came

back. We learned that we have to add the name of the country on a line by itself in all capital letters, at the bottom of each address, aligned to the left (beginning of lines of text above the last line). Also, one should cover the entire label with clear packaging tape with a 3/4" overlap beyond the edge of the label.

With all the requests for free literature coming in, our client decided to send out a small quantity of tracts by International First Class, along with a request that the evangelist or missionary or church send a satisfactory explanation as to what they did with the literature. To do this, he created a *Notice to Distributors*, found at the end of this chapter in English and Portuguese. Then we would consider sending them a larger quantity of tracts. I did some research (based on the December 2015 USPS rates) and found that a USPS International Flat Rate Medium Box was a better value (more tracts for the dollar) than three legal flat rate envelopes. I also found that at about 42 pounds or three Medium Flat Rate Boxes, (because tracts weigh only 14 lbs. per box, not the allowed 20 lbs., it became cheaper to send larger quantities to one address by [International Priority](#), in one box, with a weight limit of 66 pounds for many countries.

Handley **WORLD SERVICES**SM Publishing
P.O. Box A
Downey, California 90241 USA

NOTICE

Please write us. Tell us how you are using the literature.

Also, please include any testimonies of salvation, healing, or miracles from people who read the literature.

In the future we will only send literature to those ministries and people who tell us HOW and WHERE the literature is being used with a detailed explanation.

In Christ's love,

NOTAR

Por favor escreva-nos. Diga-nos como você está usando a literatura.

Também, por favor inclua qualquer testemunho de salvação, cura, ou milagres da gente que leu a literatura.

No futuro só enviaremos a literatura àqueles ministérios e gente que nos diz COMO e ONDE a literatura está sendo usada com uma explicação detalhada.

No amor de Cristo,
Edwin "Prince" Handley

President / CEO
Handley **WORLD SERVICES**SM Incorporated
WWW.PRINCEHANDLEY.COM
Twitter: princehandley
E-mail: princehandley@gmail.com

"And the gospel must first be preached to all the nations."

Doing the Math - Estimating Jobs & Using the Proportions Formula

I just couldn't grasp beginning algebra in the eighth grade and my parents got a *synch notice* or progress report that read "Four tests, four Fs". When I was younger I was spanked for "D" grades on my report card, but as a teenager, the loving and intellectual side of my Dad, like the love of our Heavenly Father who looks past our faults and sees our need, helped me to almost get a B average that second semester. In this math class I went from an F to an A in the same year! I learned one valuable thing from Algebra: the *proportions formula*, which has helped me so immensely in the printing trade. I want to share its use here.

One weekend, I began printing 5,100 of the tract booklet *Seven Things God Wants Us To Know*. After I got the printing press going I made metal plates for the booklet inside, but the cover is full color so I was doing it on the cheaper color laser printer when the printer stopped with an error code that wouldn't clear. This meant I had to switch to the other laser printer and figure out how many I had printed of the 999 maximum I had set on the counter, so I could finish the second set. First I measured how many had printed when the machine stopped. The pile height was 2.25" I measured the first set and got 6.25" How many more do I need? The proportions formula for finding the answer is: $\frac{6.25}{999} = \frac{2.25}{X}$ The next step is to cross multiply: $6.25 \times X = 2.25 \times 999$. This shortens to $6.25X = 2247.75$. I need the unknown (X) by itself, so I move the 6.25 across the = and under: $X = \frac{2247.75}{6.25}$ Dividing the numerator or top number by the denominator or bottom number gives me the answer of 359.64 pages out of 999 that I had printed when the machine failed. By subtraction, I needed to print 640 more copies to complete the second set.

Another example of the use of this formula is mixing the fountain solution for the offset press. The gallon bottle of fountain concentrate says to mix 1 part concentrate to 15 parts de-ionized water. The press water fountain bottle appears to hold over a quart. How much concentrate will I need to add to a quart (32 ounces) of water? Figure a part to be 1 ounce. $\frac{1}{15} = \frac{X}{32}$ $15X = 32$ $X = \frac{32}{15}$ $X = 2.13$ ounces of concentrate to be added to a quart of de-ionized water to get a little over a quart of water with the proper ph balance or reading of 4.5 to 5.5 (slightly acidic).

For a third example, I was printing the black and white signatures of the seven things booklet on the press on a hot summer day (90 degrees?) and the water adjustment got too lean and *toning* occurred – unwanted ink began printing in the background, wasting an inch thick stack of paper before I caught it, stopped the press, increased the water setting, and cleaned the blanket and plate cylinders to resume printing. The front side of the signature I was printing had already been printed and I didn't want to put that plate back on again and reregister it to print more, so I decided to just print one inch of copies on the laser printer. Then I could put those in the press and finish the job. But how

many sheets or copies are in 1”? How many copies do I tell the laser printer to print? I was using 22lb weight paper. I measured the thickness of an unopened ream of 500 sheets and it was 2 1/8” thick or 2.125”. So: $\frac{2.125}{500} = \frac{1}{X}$ $2.125X = 500$ $X = \frac{500}{2.125}$ $X = 235$ sheets. I printed 235 sheets on the laser printer and put the stack in the press input (printed side down) to make up for the wasted *toned* sheets. I spun the water fountain roller a few times to get more water at startup and I was printing again from where I left off. I do not recommend running the freshly offset press printed paper through the laser printer as ink will likely get the inside of the printer dirty like it does the rollers on the paper folder.

Estimating a Job

Apart from working for a living as a pressman at the local City College, I can't recall ever making a profit in printing, which is not good. Honestly, when I lost my two jobs due to the print shop closing and the lady I was caring for died, and I couldn't find work sufficient to pay my mounting bills or printing expenses. I had to file for bankruptcy. After that, I worked as a certified caregiver, saved money, and printed only what I could afford. Prince Handley, my associate, wrote a letter for me (about the year 2002) to give to churches and those able to pay, asking that they pay cost of materials plus 30% for print jobs I did for them. We found that wasn't enough, so we now charge cost of materials plus 40%. My supervisor at the college print shop would charge a percentage on each job for replacement of equipment. This enabled him, for example, to buy a [Kompac automatic dampening system](#) for the two printing presses I ran. I got a call from a salesman for an elaborate software program (called [Franklin Estimator](#)?) that estimates jobs of all kinds, even allowing potential customers to figure out online how much their job would cost. Experienced customers could be allowed to submit their documents directly by internet for printing. This salesman thought that, with my not having to pay rent or electricity for the printing facility I am using on our family ranch, my charging cost of materials plus 40% would keep the business out of debt. Keep in mind that all workers are volunteers and all profit is going back into the business checking account with the hope that we can buy printing supplies for future jobs, or more printing equipment.

In the early 1990's, I worked full time for over three years – printing advertisements and newsletters for customers at a mailing service. There we estimated the job another way - 1 cent per color per copy, with the paper marked up 50%. Polyester printing plates were about \$12 each and metal plates \$15 each. Cutting was \$2 a cut and folding \$12 for setup and \$9 per 1000.

In case you don't know yet, the cost of consumables for laser printers is high. A set of toner cartridges to print 15,000 copies is about \$680. When it comes time to replace the imaging or drum units at 60,000 or more copies, that is \$610! The photo receptor belt assembly is \$175 every 150,000 copies, and the waste toner cartridge is about \$40 every 30,000 copies. It is hard to figure out how much of the consumables are used on

a job. That is why one must use as a guideline, the cost per copy furnished by the laser printer manufacturer. When I bought my Lanier lp126cn color laser printer, I was told that black and white copies cost eight tenths of a cent at 20% coverage of toner on the page; and color copies, with 20% coverage per color, cost about six cents each. By buying aftermarket cartridges when available or [Uni-Kit](#) refill toner (from [www.meritline.com](#)), and generic integrated circuits to tell the printer the cartridge has been replaced (from [www.fillserv.com](#)), one can lower the price per copy even more. I recommend saving the empty toner cartridges. By buying online from [www.tonerprice.com](#), I can buy ready to use aftermarket color toner cartridges (not remanufactured) for my Ricoh tabloid laser printer for about half the price of OEM cartridges from [www.tonerprice.com](#). Generally, the main parts of the printer are only made by the printer manufacturer. Tonerprice sells these OEM parts also, e.g., waste toner container, imaging drums, fuser kit, transfer belt.

The proportion formula can be used to find the cost of a single sheet of paper when you know the cost of a ream (500 sheets). For example, Xerox Premium Multipurpose Paper is sold in packages of 800 sheets at Costco and is 24lb weight and 96 brightness. It is sold for about \$6.83 a package which with tax added is about \$7.33. $\frac{7.33}{800} = \frac{X}{1}$
 $X = \frac{733}{800}$ X = 9/10 cent per sheet.

When I first started printing the Jerry Leonard book *That's No Problem For The Lord*, he and his wife wanted to know how much it would cost (how much I would charge them) per book to produce. The book insides are all black and white text, and there are 216 pages or 108 letter half sheets. I figured, since the book is being printed one up on letter half sheets, it would cost half the .8 cent per page, although I think it would be cheaper to make it two up on letter size. I couldn't figure out how to do this in Microsoft Word, and the tabloid laser printer won't print on the letter half sheet. The best I could do was to increase the right margin to put the document on the left half of a letter size sheet then print the document in reverse order, flip the paper 180 degrees, and print it again in straight order, which is less efficient, but gives me two books per sheet. .4 cent per page imaging cost for the letter half sheet x 215 pages = 86 cents for printing the book inside. The paper used was the Xerox Multipurpose, so is half of .91 cents per sheet or .455 cent x half of the 216 pages or 108 sheets = 81.9 cents for paper for the inside. Adding to this the 86 cents for imaging gives \$1.679 for the inside of a book copy. The cover stock is cut down from tabloid size 10 point (.010" thick) *Kromekote* Digital C1S (coated one side) short grain. This high gloss cover stock is about \$45 for 250 sheets. (Note: I was told that Kromekote isn't made anymore. Now we buy [Tango Digital Coated Cover](#) sold by the [Kelly Paper Company](#). It is not necessary to buy the more expensive coated card stock if one is going to laminate it for a book because the gloss laminate makes it shine). I used the paper cutter to cut it to 8 ½" by 14". The cost per sheet is $\frac{250}{4500} = \frac{1}{x}$ 250X = 4500 X = 55 cents per sheet. The cost of printing the

cover is more than 6.6 cents since it has more than 20% coverage of toner and the sheet size is larger than letter size. I figure at least 10 cents for printing the outside, and 2 cents for printing the non glossy inside which has some colored text. Thus, the total cover cost of material and imaging is 55 cents + 12 cents = 67 cents. Adding to this the \$1.67.9 for the book content = \$2.349. I need to figure something for the glue for binding the cover so I add 5 cents for a total materials and imaging cost of \$2.39.9. If I make this cost plus 30%, [put 239.9 into the calculator, then press the + key, then put in 30 and press the % key] to get \$311.87 or \$3.12 per book. As I noted earlier, the cost could be more if the wear and tear on the machine for running a letter half sheet is the same as for running a letter size sheet., and it could be reduced by using the aftermarket bottles of refill toner along with the integrated circuits. I had been charging the Leonard's \$3 (too small an amount) for printing their book and it is being sold for \$15, so the author is able to make a profit.

My Mother's book, *Settlers of the Sod*, is also a letter half layout, so the cover price is the same. The amount of glue required is at least twice as much or about 15 cents. The majority of the 583 inside pages contain color pictures, so imaging cost for the inside of the book is considerably more at 2.5 cents per page. The paper is a thinner cheaper 20lb to make the book thinner than it originally was at 683 pages when it was first done on the 24lb paper in 11 point type size. Reducing the type size to 9 point reduced the thickness of the book by about 100 pages! This really cut down the production cost also. The imaging cost is 2.5 cents x 584 or \$14.60. The paper is about \$27 for a 10 ream carton (5,000 sheets cut to 10,000 letter half sheets). 2700 cents divided by 10,000 letter half sheets = .27 cent per sheet for the cost of paper. The cover, as with the Leonard book, is 55 cents per card stock sheet, but both the outside and the inside of the cover have a lot of toner, so I figured 20 cents for imaging the cover. Thus, the estimate of materials and imaging only (no labor) for my Mother's book is: cover 75 cents [55 + 10 + 10] + glue 15 cents = inside [.7884 cents paper + 14.60 imaging] = \$16.1384. My Mother is selling her book for \$30 including shipping, so she makes a small profit of \$4 per book if I add 30% as Prince Handley suggested, charging my Mother about \$21 per book. You can see, that if you aren't accurate or realistic about the high cost of laser printing, especially color laser printing, or you fail to look at the manufacturer's estimated cost per copy when buying a printer, you could go broke in a hurry! Have you noticed that stationary superstores with built in copy centers charge well over 20 cents per color copy? There is an advantage to having your own color laser printer with built in duplexing. Some, such as the Brother models, print more than 20 pages a minute, and duplex, and cost less than \$500.

Computers and Software

In the old days we sent text or document copy out to typesetters, to compose it, and make a stat or photographic copy for physically pasting up along with artwork to make a [“camera ready”](#) hard copy from which to make a negative and then a metal plate using a graphics arts camera and darkroom and related chemistry. Then one stripped the negative into an orange or yellow masking sheet (emulsion side down) and transferred the image to a metal printing plate through a light exposure box. In the 1980's I borrowed an [IBM Selectric typewriter](#) with a carbon ribbon to make a column of text to add a salvation prayer to a tract. Once, I took one column to a *typesetter* who charged \$20 to make a *camera ready* positive with justified margins.

Now we can afford a personal computer, and page layout software where we type and arrange text, and imported artwork (also made or captured by computer and scanner. When we are satisfied with the document, we can print directly to a laser printer or inkjet, or print toner based “flipped horizontal” film positives from which we make positive development metal printing press plates that are a sharp 1200dpi or better quality of text. The pictures converted to printer’s “half tone” dots of a quality comparable to what our offset printing press or duplicator can handle – usually 120dpi (dots per inch) or more. Although most computers can make the text, not all can handle the larger file size of the quality artwork or graphics.

As a minimum, I recommend a computer (2002 or later year) with a CPU of [Intel Pentium 4](#) or better speed, 1 gigabyte or more of working [“RAM” memory](#), and a 40+ gigabyte hard drive for the operating system and programs, and an additional internal or [external hard drive](#) for storing created documents. The computer should have a [designated video card that supports two monitors](#) and the larger the main monitor, the better. The large main [LED monitor/display](#) allows one to display most of the page of a document and have it be large enough to edit the text at an easy to read size. The second monitor displays the working pallets (e.g., Paragraph, Type, Color Swatches) found in programs like Adobe Photoshop and Indesign. On a single monitor these pallets would have to be minimized each time they were not being used or they would block one’s view of the document being worked on.

A scanner that connects by SCSI or USB 2.0 is desirable and should have an optical or hardware resolution of 1200 by 1200 dpi and a “dynamic range” or [“Dmax”](#) (ability to reproduce shadow detail) of 3.2 or greater. The laser printer for making film positives should be able to do 1200 by 1200 dpi, have a [Postscript](#) level 2 or 3 printer driver, and make definite solid *halftone* dots (a method of converting a continuous tone photographic print to an offset printing press printable equivalent), even in the highlight areas, - digital artwork made up of small variable sized dots of ink. A [USB thumb/flash drive](#) of 4 or more gigabytes is essential when taking a document such as this book to various locations to continue working on it on various computers. The Zoom Tech H2

quality solid state (no moving parts) audio recording device is very helpful and can record from [mp3](#) quality to [24 bit](#) quality. A digital camera of 6 [megapixels](#) or more is essential for producing pictures immediately to use in documents. This is how I got the back cover collage for the first 2009 edition of this book. A [slide scanner](#) like the [Epson Perfection V500/550 Photo](#) for \$149+ is nice, but with digital cameras, I haven't found a need for it. Scanning negatives or slides requires a scanner with a backlight. I bought the Epson and use it a lot, and really like it.

For page layout programs, I recommend both [Microsoft Word](#) 2007 or later, and [Adobe Indesign](#) CS3 or later because it has a color separations preview pallet. I am currently using Microsoft Office Word 2007 because it has gone on sale for \$89 and gives me a license to use it on three computers. I had tried to use the 2000 and 2003 versions to continue working on the document I started in the 2007 version; but on the 2003 version I couldn't continue work with the same document unless I first opened it in the 2007 version and saved it in 97-2003 compatibility mode. When an earlier version document is opened in the latest version, it has limited editing functions unless converted to the latest version, which could adversely affect how the document looks or displays. I found myself working with two versions of documents. An alternative is to go to [www.onlineoffice.com](#) and get the free download office suite that is compatible with Microsoft Office.

For scanning and processing artwork or digital photos, I recommend [Adobe Photoshop](#) version 5 or later, due to the History pallet and multiple undo capability. [Adobe Acrobat CS5 Professional](#), or a later version, will be needed for creating PDFs for people who can't afford and don't have the expensive page layout programs on their computers, but want to utilize the documents you create using their Adobe Acrobat 10 or later reader which is a free download from the [www.adobe.com](#) website. In 2009 I Installed [Dragon Naturally Speaking](#) Preferred 10 which cost about \$50 after rebate. This allows one to talk into an approved microphone or headset attached to the computer and have your speech typed by the program into common word processing programs at over 90 words a minute with up to 99% accuracy. This is good for getting testimonies or writing books from authors who can't write or can't type properly.

An OCR program such as [Omnipage](#) version 17 or later, takes scanned, printed hard copy text or whole documents and converts then to fresh computer text with images of 300 dpi quality. [Abby Fine Reader](#) is a comparable OCR program. In 2015 I downloaded a free trial of their latest version. After trying it, I decided the earlier free *Sprint* version that came with my scanner does what I need to do. The OCR program saves having to retype the text in a document and any errors will hopefully be caught by the built-in spell checker. Omnipage can even go a step further and convert the recognized text to speech and read it to you in a computer-generated voice, and even convert the text to a different spoken language. For an internet browser, I recommend the free download [Mozilla Firefox](#). I also recommend downloading the free *e sword*

Bible study program from www.esword.com. Then you can quickly search for and locate scripture verses in various translations and copy and paste them into your document or sermon. That is how most of the scripture references got into this book.

It is now January 2016. I am still using Microsoft Office 2007 Professional that includes [Publisher](#), even though Office 2016 is now available. I am using Adobe CS5 ([Creative Suite](#)) Design Standard. I recommend CS6 because, in the newest Indesign, one can export a document to [.epub](#) file extension for making e-books that can be read on certain handheld tablet computers made for reading books converted to a computer medium. I found that exporting a document to [Adobe PDF Interactive](#), makes a read order document for tablets and smart phones with the capability of turning pages with the side swipe of a fingertip on the display. Thus, I haven't seen a need to pay extra money for fancy page flipping with sound software. It appears that [PDF](#) is a cross platform file format that can be opened and read on more types of devices and operating systems and computers than any other file format. Get this adobe software through a student at a city college or university, and save hundreds of dollars. These newer reading formats are growing in popularity and have interactive capability – a book can include online links to sound clips, movie clips, and click on hyperlinks that take one to a place on the internet for further information. If making money is not an issue, these new book formats can be shared as a means of evangelizing, or as discipleship tool.

When I began using [Microsoft Screen Capture](#) software and the related [Expression](#) file format converting software for making training videos, (and saw the computer CPU usage tachometer go as high at 80%), I realized the value of having at least a [quad core](#) i7 2.8 mhz processor. My current computer, now five years old, does all I need it to do. My wife bought two identical HP models in 2010. The motherboard went bad on one and the hard drive on the other. Also, since I have the Microsoft Windows 7 operating system on my computer, I was able to download for free the newest [Windows 10](#). Today's equivalent price computers have a sixth generation i7 Intel multi-core processor with [hyperthreading](#) that has a speed of 3.6MHZ. The latest USB is now [3.1](#) rather than 2.0 (ten times faster?). The wireless or Wi-Fi speed is now [AC speed](#) instead of N. Internal hard drives (for software programs and data storage) are at least 1 terabyte, sometimes 2.

Now, more so in laptop computers than desktops, solid state [SSD](#) (no moving parts) internal hard drives are available, but are expensive at about \$200 for 512 gigabytes. The Samsung brand comes with software to clone the old drive content onto the new drive. After five years of use, I was given a message by my computer that the failure of the internal hard drive was imminent and I should back up the information on that drive and put in a new drive. A technician said that there were bad sectors on the drive and it could not be copied to another drive. I should have acted sooner as programs costing hundreds of dollars were lost. To reinstall and activate the programs on a new drive, I would have to call the Adobe company, and explain my situation. The RAM or working

memory had increased from our 8 gigs to as high as 32 gigs. The designated graphics display cards are now increased from 1 to 4 gigabytes of ram. The better Dell brand computers come with [Bluetooth wireless connectivity](#) to compatible devices - something I like.

An acceptable (for my graphic arts use) new computer, tower only (no monitor), on sale at Costco, is about \$800. Models with SSD drives, Bluetooth, 32 gigabytes of RAM memory, and a Blue ray player/writer can cost up to \$2,000. I have a 25" flat screen display LCD 1080p full high definition, which is working fine. Because *Ultra High Definition 4K* monitors are now being sold for as low as \$340 for a 28" version made by Acer, the price of LED and LCD monitors is dropping. Some monitors have curved screens, which may reduce glare. Samsung is now selling their 27" monitor for less than \$300! Few new computers come with a [Blue Ray](#) disk drive which writes up to 50 gigabytes of information on a disk. I have found the existing [DVD](#) reader and writer drives to be of good movie-viewing quality, and a fast enough speed for recording audio and data.

Internet access – I consider access to the internet indispensable to the business since e-mail allows us to interact in real time with many parts of the world. On the ranch we got internet from the main house through an outdoor booster antenna attached to the router, and two Cisco Linksys Wireless access points (one for each computer) on the receiving end. We have internet in our home where we design documents, but don't want to pay an additional \$29.95+ per month for internet at our city print shop. I tried picking up free internet from a nearby restaurant, but the signal was too weak. The older 2.4mhz access point isn't as powerful as newer 5.4mhz AC speed units. I found that the Xfinity company offers a free 24 hour trial about twice a month which allows us to upgrade the software programs on our office computer. We also have a hand held android tablet that picks up Wi-Fi or internet through the cellular network. The data usage is limited to 512 megabytes per month and is paid for on our cell phones bill with Verizon wireless. A Verizon wireless hotspot device that plugs into a computer by a mini USB connector, would have a faster data transfer speed than our home hardwired phone line DSL internet service. The monthly additional monthly cost to our wireless phone bill would be \$20 for two gigabytes of data. With all the document attachments I make to our e-mail business correspondence, that might not be enough data allowance. For now we are doing OK with only the android operating system tablet that doesn't connect to our computers, and our DSL home internet service at about \$30 a month. Our LG brand cell phones are not smart phones, but have a slide open keyboard for unlimited texting and talk.

Computer Networking

2009 – In I was given a second computer just like the first one in the living room, along with a legal-size scanner, large screen CRT monitor and a second monitor to be used to display the various pallets of the page layout programs. I bought another inkjet photo printer with CD labeling capability to go with it at a local Christian thrift store for under \$20. I was going to put all this on the kitchen table, but there would be no room left to eat there. I took two pieces of old furniture passed down through the family out of the bedroom and put the second computer system in its place on a donated 3' square restaurant table with two shelves on the wall behind to hold the speakers, scanner, and printer. By running one 50' category 5 networking cable along the walls and under the rug to a four port [Netgear hub](#) on the shelf above the living room computer, I was able to easily set up a [LAN](#) or Local Area Network, sharing between the computers, the internal and external drives, and printer connected to each.

Here is how I did it. The button on the hub was set to normal. Into the four connections I connected category 5 cables from both computers, and one from the Westell [DSL](#) wireless [modem](#) I got from the Verizon phone company for about \$35 a month. I didn't get a house phone, but internet line only because I only needed my cell phone. The bedroom computer had a wireless G USB [network adapter](#) made by Linksys which gives me wireless internet connection from the antenna on the wireless modem in the living room. The living room computer gets its internet through the [network cable](#) from the modem to the [network hub](#), as I found this to be more reliable in getting connected than the wireless route. The fourth connection is to the newest and best Ricoh color laser printer, the idea being that I could print to this printer from the bedroom computer without the living room computer having to be turned on. I haven't gotten this capability working right yet.

To set the software to work with the hardware network I made, I recommend having the same operating systems on both computers, which in my case was Windows XP Professional Service Pak 3 (Note: This older Windows operating system is no longer supported by the Microsoft Corporation). On each computer I clicked on the "Start" icon in the lower left corner of the desktop, then went to "Control Panel", then "Network Connections" or "Network Setup Wizard". After following the wizard, I again went through "Start" to "My Computer", where I right clicked on each drive icon and went down to "Sharing and Security". I said OK to sharing this drive with other computers on the network and with the remote computer being able to change the files it accesses through the network. Again I went through "Start" to "Printers & Faxes", where I right clicked on the name of each of the printers that I currently had connected to the main or living room computer. Then I went down to "Sharing" and said to share the computer. After doing this on both computers, I now can access and use or modify any file or printer connected to either computer as long as they are both turned on. I got an eight

port hub or [switch](#) to use in place of the four port hub. The four port can be hooked in series to the eight port for additional ports. If I hook the network capable printers (e.g., Ricoh, Lanier, HP 5000) directly into the hub, rather than through a computer, I don't have to have the other computers on to use the printer from a computer that is on. However, I won't be able to access the hard drives in or connected to printers that are not on. One can also buy an external network Ethernet hard drive that hooks directly into the network hub. Should someone come over with a laptop or notebook computer that is modern enough to have a built in "Wi-Fi" or wireless capability, their computer will recognize the Verizon Westel wireless modem for the internet, and they can sit at the kitchen table and use the internet without a wired connection. If they wanted the notebook computer to access the wired network, they could unplug the network cable from the Ricoh laser printer to the Netgear hub and plug into the network connection on the portable computer and be on the network with the other two computers. If I replaced my Netgear hub with a the latest Wireless N or AC speed Lynksys brand router, I could wirelessly communicate with the living room computer from the bedroom computer or the portable computer, (the living room computer being hardwired to the wireless router). For another \$65, I could get a [wireless USB adapter or access point](#), and plug it into the living room computer and have it be wireless as well. Since the Ricoh printer would still be connected to the system through its USB 2.0 printer cable to the living room computer, I would be able to print to that printer from any of the three computers, provided that the router and living room computer were turned on. This is so fantastic. With this, one doesn't have to make a document file and transfer it to a thumb drive or burn it to a CD and then take the flash drive or CD to the other computer and plug it in, to access and print the file. It is also possible to configure the Verizon Westel 327 [modem](#) to work as a wireless hub or router, but I don't know how to do that and the Verizon technical support is not trained to show me how.

Using a wireless DSL or Cable modem with four Ethernet connections is superior to the base unit that is not wireless. Nevertheless, I was able to connect my mother's non-wireless Westel Verizon model to a dual antenna [D-Link wireless N router](#). I then called technical support and found that this router uses both antennas equally, so I removed one antenna and connected an [Amped Wireless 14db outdoor booster antenna](#) (\$70), and fastened it to the main house and tilted it directly facing the two [Lynksys AE1000 wireless access points](#) on a metal support bracket above the metal-covered print shop door. A plastic sandwich bag goes over the access points. This setup allows adequate DSL speed wireless internet access for two computers inside a metal building where there is normally no wireless signal for cell phone or internet, and we save the \$39 a month (with taxes) per residence Verizon DSL only service fee.

At my wife's Santa Maria Home, I unplugged the USB connection from her computer to her Brother MFC (multi function copier) color laser printer and, instead, hooked the printer by the network (category 5 or 6 cord) directly into the newer [Verizon model](#)

[GT784WNV DSL modem](#) and then hooked my second computer into that router with a network connection. I downloaded the Brother software printer driver from their website to the second computer and used the [Microsoft Windows 7 operating system](#) (start – devices and printers – add a printer) to make either computer print directly to the Brother printer which is now on the network. It may be necessary to use the printer's display panel to locate and print out the printers "IP" address for use in networking the printer. When the Brother printer is hardwired directly to the home telephone jack, it can also send and receive *faxes*. Now that we have e-mail service, I haven't seen a need for *fax* capability. It would be used to send a crude quality copy of a hard copy document to someone who has phone service, but no internet service. It should be noted here, that in our city, with Verizon DSL internet and phone service, using their latest model modem, the maximum download speed for data from the internet is 2.88 megabits per second (mbps), which I believe equates to about 350 kilobytes per second. This seems adequate, and even works with [Roku](#) devices which stream videos (movies) via the internet. Roku desires a minimum of 3.5 mbps transfer rate, but on newer movies, the 2.88 works OK. Cable Internet is faster, beginning at 12 megabytes (54mbps?) per second, but their monthly prices are higher.

I also have a [Tornado PC to PC data transfer device](#) which is the size of the hand hardware device (supposedly requiring no software install) with two retractable USB connections, and no need for a battery or external plug-in-the-wall power adapter. When the two connectors are plugged between computers, the drives and contents of both computers show up on either computer and files can be dragged and dropped between computers without setting up a network with a hub and without first having to copy them to a thumb drive or CD or external hard drive.

2012 - Here is an update for 2012 and later. Western Digital, now sells [My Book Live external network hard](#) drives in 2 and 3 gigabyte sizes. They connect to the network only by an ethernet (category 5 or 6 cable) and operate at gigabit speed which is faster than USB 2.0, but slower than the new USB 3.0 or 3.1. In 2014, computers were being made with [USB 3.0](#) connections. Ethernet external storage has the advantage of hooking directly to a wired or wireless gigabit hub, switch, router (e.g., the [Belkin N600](#)). I bought the Belkin because it has two usb ports. My hope was that I could plug a non-wireless older printer into the router and it could be accessed directly, wirelessly, by all computers on the local area network. I haven't been able to do that yet. All the computers within reception range of the router (or plugged into the router by an ethernet cable), have direct access to the network drive. Before, they had to go through the LAN (local area network) to the one computer that had the external drive hooked to it by a USB 2.0 or



Firewire 1394 connection. This slowed down the transfer speed of information, and that host computer had to be running for the system to work. The ethernet external drive also has software for *cloud* capability so it can be accessed from anywhere through an internet connection.



Left - Wireless internet directional booster antenna, made by *amped wireless*, extends reception range of internet from the main house on the ranch. Antenna is screwed onto one of the antenna mounts on the back of the *D-Link* "n" technology router, replacing one of two existing antenna. The router is hard wired into a *Westel* brand [DSL](#) modem connected to a phone jack in the main house on the ranch.

Right - Dual [Cisco AE1000](#) wireless "n" access points are mounted outside the sheet metal-covered Quonset hut above the main door in direct line of sight to the booster antenna at the main house (about 80 feet away). USB cables connect to two computers inside the hut. Signal strength is improved to 5 of 5 bars with door open, and 3-4 bars with door closed.

Newer printers, like our [Epson Artisan 1430](#) wide format inkjet, have wireless network connection capability which works well and helps free up the limited number of USB ports on one's computer tower. By being on the wireless network, other computers that have the printer software installed on them can also print wirelessly to a wireless device. I hit a snag when I couldn't get my Vista operating system laptop computer to work wirelessly with this printer. I called Epson support, but the man couldn't help me. There are also free, downloadable from the internet, wireless printing *apps*, like the one from the Hamermill Paper Company, for smart phones and tablets so they too can print wirelessly to a home printer e-mails and information found on the internet. I noticed a printer *app* on our *Verizon Elipsis* tablet, but I haven't tried it. Another technology, made by D-Link offers networking or internet through the house wiring wall outlets. Modules are plugged into the wall electrical outlets, and the network cables from computers on the system are plugged into the adapters. Thus, it is conceivable that an outlying building from the main house on a ranch, (like our print shop inside a metal building which blocks a wireless signal), can pick up an internet connection without an antenna signal booster.

2016 - I want to reemphasize the value of the Western Digital *My Book Live* network external storage hard drive. It has been running flawlessly for five years now. One of our 2010 desktop computer internal hard drives failed without our being able to recover the information on it. However, because we had been putting only the program software

on that drive, and storing all ministry documents on the external drive, we didn't lose the book, booklet, and tract documents we continue to use for the ministries we do printing for. Perhaps the nicest feature is that my wife and I, with both computers hardwired to the external storage drive through the Belkin wired/wireless [600N router](#), can be working on the same project saved in the same folder on the external drive, and very rarely will the message appear "the network is busy". On a textbook reproduction, we decided to move the page numbers in Adobe Photoshop so they all were the same distance from the bottom of the pages. I told my wife Harriet which pages needed to be adjusted. When she would finish a page, then close it, the Adobe Indesign CS5 page layout program on my computer would alert me that the imported or *placed* page she had just fixed needed to be updated. I clicked on the item with the alert in the *Links* pallet, then clicked on *Update*, and I watched the page number move into the proper position in my book document. Amazing! When we go on a trip or visit other ministries, we take along our laptop computer, and the WD network external hard drive with a network cable and its power adapter. At one location, a minister plugged the drive into his computer with a Cat 5 cable. The computer recognized the new device and found and installed the software driver for the drive. Then he was able to give us documents to work on from his computer, or copy to his computer documents we had completed for their ministry. The next best thing to that would have been a USB thumb drive or the *Tornado* hand-held device with the two extendible USB cords inside that plug into both computers for transferring or accessing information. The *Tornado* gets its 5.5 volt operating power from the computer through the USB port and needs no external power adapter, and, as mentioned, no software download is needed.

Another networking innovation I discovered, relates to the *Drop Box* (www.dropbox.com) cloud (internet) based storage system (a remote server or data storage device accessed through the internet). The first two gigabytes of storage are free. This solves the [FTP](#) (file transfer protocol) problem of transferring by internet larger file size computer documents too large for the 20 to 25 megabyte attachment limit to an e-mail. In the past one had to search for an FTP service to use. In one case, I posted a file on our website, which allows a 100 megabyte post, just so one person could download the file. Now, with *Drop Box*, an associate minister sends us Christian Movies in MPEG 4 compression file format. A whole movie in reasonable quality and sound can have a file size of 300 to 900 megabytes. When I have been sent a movie, it appears in the drop box folder on my computer, which is represented by an icon in the task bar at the bottom of the desktop main screen or window on the computer.

At first I tried to transfer the digital movie out of the folder and onto my external *My Book Live* network hard drive so I would not be taking up the minister's drop box storage allotment. A notice would appear that some of the properties of the movie would not be copied. I tried to play the movie from a thumb drive plugged into our new Samsung [Smart](#) LED TV which can connect to our home network. I found that I had no sound volume control while watching the movie, and the sound level was too low. Later, I left the movie in the drop box folder and right clicked on the icon of the movie and noticed I could then see and click on *Play To*, and choose the Samsung LED TV in the living room, which is hard wired through an adjoining wall to the computer room by a twenty-five foot [ethernet cable](#). I had the TV on and when I looked at the screen, I saw a message stating that the movie was ready to play. It played flawlessly with all its

properties, including the ability to adjust the sound. After watching the movie, I deleted it out of our drop box folder on my computer. Amazing!

The Value of a Website

In 2002, I was working with a minister with a genius IQ. He had designed his first website, www.realmiracles.com (now www.realmiracles.org), using the HTML code system. He said it was so difficult, he literally beat his head against the wall. Now there is free *open source* website-making software like [Word Press](#) that doesn't require knowing code. When we were working together, Prince Handley was adding his uplifting radio broadcasts from the past to the website. He said the website was getting 30 *hits* (visits) per second! Now he has about seven websites, and he has added [Twitter podcasts](#) (internet audio messages) with a listening audience of 17,000 a day, and over 100,000 followers. The bottom line, as I see it, is that, when one gets older, he can still reach a lot of people using the internet, and at a very low cost compared to printing and shipping literature, which Dick Handley still does. I read statistics that soon, there will be as many cell phones as there are people in the world, and a billion of these devices will be *smart* - capable of connecting to the [internet](#) or *world wide web*. This shows the potential to reach millions of people at a very low cost. On a website one can make a [URL](#) (internet address for a piece of information) connectable through a mouse click on [hyperlinked](#) text.

Having a website enables me to post tract documents for free use by printers and evangelists worldwide, as well as making an offer to create custom tracts from scratch on the computer or from existing hard copy. As an example of this, see the posted tract, [A Father's Steadfast Love](#). Whereas some organizations like the [Los Angeles Free Tract Society](#) print tracts and mail them by request all over the world, this shipping is expensive (\$66.95 for a USPS Priority International Flat Rate Box of 5,000 small tracts). I propose providing the documents or artwork online where printers can print the documents or tracts on location at minimal cost and save on the shipping. The idea here is rather than giving a man a fish to eat, one can teach that man to fish, and thereby multiply one's efforts rather than making your printing outlet the only source for a person to get tracts or literature from.

Communication by internet is fast and efficient. Verizon [DSL internet service](#) through a phone line is fast enough for e-mail communication and allows for up to 20 megabyte or large file size attachments. For transferring larger size files, there is a new [FTP](#) (File Transfer Protocol) free service (base two gigabytes of storage is free) called *Drop Box* (www.dropbox.com). The Google company also has [Google Drive](#) with even more free storage. When a person downloads documents or tracts from a website, this restriction is not an issue, just the download rate. I have found DSL download speed with the Verizon Phone Company, for example, to be about 350 kilobytes (2.88 megabits) per second maximum with their latest modem. Cable internet, an added paid for feature for those who have cable TV service, (although usually more expensive than DSL phone line service), can be, supposedly, up to 9 megabytes per second! When I lived alone in

a mobile home, I was paying \$35 a month for Verizon DSL internet since I didn't have phone service in the home, and therefore had to pay \$10 a month more for just internet. One can now get a cell phone network [cellular wireless hotspot/mobile hotspot device](#) that wireless computers can use to connect to the internet in locations where there is no landline connected [Wi-Fi](#). There are two types of these mobile hotspot devices - portable, and stationary (a broadband router for home or office). Evidently the data transfer rates are not fast, and one has to pay monthly fees for the megabytes of data they transfer by cellular internet. In 2014, Verizon wireless told us it would be \$80 a month for 10 gigabytes of data transfer. I was considering such a device for our computers in our print shop on the ranch, after my mother moved out of the main house and [DSL internet service](#) through the phone line was disconnected. Instead, we bought a Samsung Ellipse tablet that can access the internet by [Wi-Fi](#) or the cellular network. It shares data usage with our two cell phones, and adds \$10 a month to our phone bill. It also has [GPS](#) for guidance to a destination on a road trip in the car.

The total yearly fee for paying to have a website hosted and the domain name maintained with the [Network Solutions](#) hosting service is about \$142 a year + \$15.99 for private registration of the website address (URL). In 2015 we added SiteLock Premium at \$6.99 a month after a hacker had gotten into the dashboard of our website and installed malicious code that led to the hosting company suspending our website for three months. The free version of [Wordfence](#) software also helps. We get regular notices giving us the [IP addresses](#) of [hackers](#) who were blocked from altering our website. Our associate, Dick Handley, prefers using [GoDaddy](#) as a website hosting company. They offer easy to use *website builder* software for designing a website without having to use HTML code. After several hacks into our website resulting in the hosting company taking our website off the internet for about three months, I also felt it necessary to also pay \$6.99 a month for [Site Lock](#), a software provide by the website hosting company. This software does routine scans of the website for *malware*, and removes it. Also, the free version of [Word Fence](#), a plugin to our [Word Press](#) website, is needful. It alerts me by e-mail when someone tries to enter the administrative *dashboard* portion of our website, and even gives the IP (internet protocol) numerical address of the intruder, as well as the country they are attacking from.

As mentioned, new technology now allows one to download and use a free 5 megabyte website template from Word Press that doesn't involve using HTML code. With this format, with which the present version of [www.tracts4u.com](#) was made, I can enter a password to access the administrative portion of my website where I can easily upload files saved in PDF document format on my computer, mp3 audio files, and JPEG thumbnail images, as well as place *hyperlinked* text to free training videos posted at Google's [You Tube website](#).

I create a tract in Adobe Indesign CS5, then use the full version of Adobe Acrobat Professional 9 to convert the document to PDF format which can be opened by anyone

who has downloaded the free Acrobat Reader program from the Adobe website, www.adobe.com. I make a JPEG picture [thumbnail](#) (a small, low-file-size image of the cover of the tract), and click on buttons after "New Post", to add the thumbnail, the document, a title, and a brief description. When done I click on a button that posts the tract on the website and then I look at the website by internet access to see if all looks well.

I can also attach audio testimonies to the audio portion of the website. The website display program incorporates, as a plugin, an Adobe Flash based digital audio player that enables the visitor to the site to play the audio testimony of choice without having to have an audio player on his computer. Jesus told the man delivered of a legion of demons, (Mark 5:19 NLT) "...go home to your family, and tell them everything the Lord has done for you and how merciful He has been." The late Bishop Whitlock, a hospital chaplain, said, "A testimony is worth a thousand theories." In the ["About" section of the website](#) I posted a picture of myself and attached a 5 minute audio message about the formation of HIS Print Media Ministries. I have a [Zoom Tech H2](#) hand held digital audio recorder with four built in microphones that can record hours of testimony on a camera [SD memory card](#). The recorder can even record in mp3 condensed, low-file-size audio that is better than cassette quality. These files are easily transferred to the computer through a USB 2.0 patch cord from the device. If I desire to edit the audio file, I can do so using the free download program [Audacity](#).

My website contains links to [Discipleship](#) or Bible study materials (e.g. www.harvestime.org) for new believers as Jesus commanded us:

Matthew 28:18-20 NLT "Jesus came and told His disciples, "I have been given all authority in heaven and on earth. ¹⁹ Therefore, go and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit. ²⁰ Teach these new disciples to obey all the commands I have given you. And be sure of this: I am with you always, even to the end of the age."

If I can't solve a problem with the website, a more knowledgeable person can, with my permission and password, access the administrative portion of the website to fix the problem and embellish or enhance the website as well.

I close this chapter by stating that such websites as mine must be a threat to the devil's kingdom. When I first started the site, someone had jammed the site with hundreds of links or website addresses to [pornographic websites](#). Statistically, 35% of the internet content worldwide is pornography! Shouldn't God have a share of the World Wide Web as His divine tool for reaching the lost and discipleship training to those who may never enter a church door? Prince Handley, my associate, said he had tried to pay someone to design a website for him but it wasn't satisfactory. He has genius level intelligence and went back to college and took website design courses that utilize the complicated HTML code system. He said it was so difficult he literally beat his head against the wall in frustration. The result is that his primary website, www.realmiracles.com (now www.realmiracles.org), in about 2002, when we worked closely together, was getting 30 or more ["hits"](#) or visits per second! The words of the Christian hymn come to mind, "Though all Hell assails me, I shall not be moved. In His

love and favor, I shall not be moved. Just like a tree that's planted by the water, I shall not be moved!" The Bible states, "If God be for us, who can be against us?" – (Romans 8:31B). "When the enemy shall come in like a flood, the Spirit of the Lord will lift up a standard against him and put him to flight [*for He will come like a rushing stream which the breath of the Lord drives*]. – (Isaiah 59:19B Amplified) "Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be with them." – (2 Kings 6:16)

Since the website was posted on the internet, we have received over 7,500 viewer comments in several languages, with only one or two being negative. Most responders are trying to use me as a means of boosting their Google rating status with the guise of selling me their products. Some even want us to look at pornography websites; but at least they are finding the Good News of the free gift of eternal life through Jesus Christ by viewing our website. Some probably sense the presence of the Spirit of God when they visit us on the web, but they don't know what to make of it.

In February 2012, I let a [scammer](#), allegedly a Microsoft affiliate, access my computer to eliminate a supposed life-threatening virus. After that our website pages showed unwanted text, and I couldn't gain access to the *Dashboard* or administrative portion of the website. The technicians at our website hosting company fixed the problem for \$60, and upgraded us to the latest version of Word Press, the free website building software/template we are using. My wife questioned whether our website was worth having – she didn't think it was doing any good – that no legitimate person was visiting the site – and it was dragging down our business because the documents we print are posted for free use by anyone. We normally charge for making tracts since we are not yet a non-profit corporation, and we have to show a yearly business profit to stay out of trouble with the IRS. I did a Google search under [Gospel Tracts](#) and found our website listed. When I used the Google internet search engine and typed in the name of our ministry, *HIS Print Media Ministries*, we came up first in the list of results. I had found, earlier, a site, [www.tractlist.com](#), that listed pages of tract-making, selling, and distributing organizations, including ours. I found that one tract company in Grand Rapids, Michigan had printed hundreds of millions of tracts. Another couple with the website [www.tracts.com](#), had produced and given away for free a million tracts in fifteen years, along with teaching others how to make, post, and print their own tracts. My wife and I are now associated with them and they are promoting our work through links and postings on their website. We have also made and posted a *Printing Prices* list on both websites that contains [hyperlinks](#) to actual sample documents on our website. We have put new page headings on the website with titles of *E-tracts* and [E-books](#). Now the read order tracts (not for printing, but forwarding by e-mail to others) can be grouped under one heading. E-books, the simplest form being a read order [PDF](#) ([Adobe Acrobat Reader](#)) file, are growing in popularity, and software (e.g., .e-pub) is now available to make them readable on [smartphones](#), and electronic book readers or [tablets](#).

Here is a testimony related to downloading and using the [God's Anointed Soul Winning Plan booklet](#) put together by HIS Print Media Ministries, and posted as a read order *E-booklet* for free download on the internet by [Prince Handley](#):

8:30 AM Dear Apostle Handley,

Thank you for the free downloading of "God's Anointing Winning Soul Plan". I never knew that there is so much Joy and happiness in preaching the word of God. As you talk, you feel this fresh air blowing on you, more ideas coming into your brain. Am very happy, extremely happy that am telling people about Jesus. So far I've succeeded in converting three(3) SOULS for Christ. But I found out that some of my friends are avoiding me. It doesn't matter to me because am happy working for Christ. May the Almighty God bless you sir.

On September 9, 2015, we received an e-mail in the English language from a man who was looking for a particular Spanish tract document titled [*El Camino Romano al Cielo*](#) (*The Roman's Road to Heaven*). We figured he must have done an internet search using one of the search engines like [Google](#), and found our e-mail address. I had designed a two color computer document of that tract title. He wanted to get the tract printed for Argentina in South America. I had designed a new style document by that title and I was able to e-mail the document to him as an attachment. I also agreed to help him put a custom contact address on the back of the document. This is an example of what we had hoped would happen when we make tract documents and post them on our website

for free use, hopefully by other printers. We had actually printed 10,000 of this tract on our printing press, so we knew it looked good when printed. The problem is that our printing and mailing of the tracts to a foreign country costs more for the shipping than for the printing. We feel it is better if we help others to print the tracts in the vicinity where they will be distributed.

An even more exciting story is found on page 23 of this book. A man named Denish in Kenya, East Africa, asked our permission to use a tract titled [*Who is Jesus?*](#) Which he found posted on our website. He paid a local printer to make 576 of these tracts, and easily passed them out. About five days later, we got an [e-mail](#) from a David, who said he had verbally persecuted Christians until he received one of the tracts from Denish and was truly converted, asking Jesus into his heart as his Savior and Lord. I used e-mails to connect the two men together and e-mailed them the computer document of the tract in Swahili, their native language. Denish then printed more of the tracts, this time in his native language, and gave some of them to David William to pass out.

Website Making Software & Training

[Download WordPress](#)

[WordPress Beginner Videos - Free WordPress Video Tutorials](#)

[21 Best Free WordPress CMS Courses and Tutorials](#)

[WordPress 101 Tutorials - iThemes](#)

[Complete WordPress Training for Beginners | Udemy](#)

Printing Instructions for Tracts Posted on Website

1. Tracts with full color pictures are for printing on a color laser printer or inkjet printer only, since they are Adobe Acrobat ([PDF](#)) documents and printing on a printing press requires separations of the pictures into the four process colors. If you want to print these full color tracts on a printing press, request [color separations](#) or the original Adobe Indesign CS2 documents from info@tracts4u.com. A [monochrome](#) or black and white laser printer will print these documents, but the colored text will turn gray and not be black. Opening and saving to one's computer, the documents posted on the website will require having the [free internet download Adobe Acrobat Reader software](#).
2. The tracts have two pages of the same information for laser printers that have a built in duplexer (prints front and back sides automatically). If you don't have a [duplexing](#) printer, you will only need to print one of the pages and manually flip the paper over to print the backsides. Please print one tract both sides and make sure the pages, after folding and cutting, are in the right alignment and sequence, before printing the whole job. The PDF file won't allow you to move the image and text on the page unless your printer has the capability of moving the paper in the input tray. One may request the original Adobe Indesign CS2 document so he or she can move the parts around for best fit and looks on the page, if one has the Indesign Program. Another option for skilled users, would be to open the PDF in Adobe Photoshop, then use the marquis and move tools to reposition all or parts of the document to obtain needed column spacing after folding of the printed document, and for adding additional margins for particular printers or printing presses.
3. The booklet tract [Seven Things God Wants Us to Know](#) prints as collated sets on a duplexing laser printer to be run through a booklet maker. If you don't have a booklet maker, you can hand fold the collated booklets in half and use an inexpensive saddle stitch stapler, or get a long throat stapler at an office supply store and staple the booklet in two places and then fold it.
4. Most tracts are designed or laid out on the page for making a metal, or polyester laser printing plate for an offset printing press. They are made as a ["work and turn"](#) or a ["work and tumble"](#) so that only one plate is required for the inside and outside of the tract. To print the inside or backside, one simply flips the paper 180 degrees end for end or sideways.
5. Proper Margins – Most printers, printing presses included, (except for certain photo full bleed inkjet printers), require at least a 1/8" margin or no print area around the four outside margins of the paper, between the text or images and the edges of the sheet. Older inkjets (late 1990 models) may require a minimum 5/8" bottom margin. Printing presses require a no print area ["gripper bite"](#) of 1/4" to 3/8" on the edge of the paper that the ["impression cylinder"](#) grabs to pull the paper through the press. One way around this is to print the document using the longer length side of the paper (if it has more margin) as the gripper edge. The website documents are laid out with a margin of 3/16" or more required by the Ricoh laser color laser printer being used by HIS Print Media Ministries. A few website (products page) documents, like the [Gambling tract](#), are made for a trim on 3 sides after printing and folding so that the

finished tract has a [“full bleed”](#) cover with no white border margins showing on the cover. One can custom cut larger than letter size sheets from parent size sheets from the paper company if the margins are not enough for a printing press. The printed sheets are then trimmed on the gripper side of the sheet.

6. Tracts that are two colors of text and don't have close registration between the two colors can be printed on a single color printing press by running the paper through the press twice, once for each color. An offset pressman can make single color text documents into two or more spot color documents by making a negative from a printed copy of the computer document and then stripping it up in a mask with windows cut in it that open and close to chose only one of the colors when making metal (aluminum) printing plates from the one negative.
7. Prison art tracts like the [Why John 3:16?](#) can be separated into two spot colors using the Adobe Photoshop magic wand tool. HIS Print can make and furnish you PDF files of these two color documents.
8. If you wish to put a custom address on the back of a tract, you should e-mail the address to info@tracts4u.com and a special version of the tract will be made for you in Adobe Indesign, and then converted to a “press quality” Adobe Acrobat PDF document and emailed to you as an attachment. This will look better than trying to stamp an address on the back with a rubber stamp. On most posted documents where there is enough space on the back for contact information, I have added a text box editable field. When one moves the computer mouse over the address area, and clicks, the I beam appears. By right clicking the mouse on the added text, one can choose [rich text formatting](#) such as bold or italic.
9. HIS Print can design tracts for you if you provide the text as a word document, and computerized (from scanner or digital camera) images (e.g., JPEG or TIFF file format) that are good quality (300dpi or more, and a file size of over 200KB)
10. HIS Print has three offset printing presses set up and running hat are able to print up to 8,000 copies an hour at a cost of 1 cent each color on a page per side plus the cost of the paper and printing plate. In the meantime, one can order tracts in small quantities to be printed on a color laser printer at higher prices than offset printing. The minimum quantity of paper to be printed on a press is one letter size box of 5,000 sheets.
11. The cheapest way to convert computer documents to offset printing plates for a printing press, is to use a laser printer to print on a clear plastic with the image [“flip horizontal”](#), then transfer that image to an aluminum positive development printing plate using a plate exposure box. The “flip horizontal” option can work with a PDF file if your printer has an Adobe [“postscript” printer driver](#). Regular printer drivers found on cheap printers and inkjets don't have this capability. At your request, HIS Print can use the *flip horizontal* option in making a PDF document from Adobe Indesign CS5. The purpose of the “flip horizontal” is to get the printed image on the film or acetate as close to the metal plate as possible in transferring the image to the metal plate using the plate exposure box so there is no distortion or fuzziness of the image caused by the thickness of the film or acetate. Polyester based [“laser plates”](#) can also be imaged directly through the laser printer. They can print up to 20,000 copies

per plate, but the pH or acidity of the press fountain solution has to be accurately measured and kept at a reading of 4.5. Since polyester or paper plates can stretch, changing the registration of the image on the paper, these kinds of plates are not recommended for printing multi color documents that require exact registration between the different colors. These plates can cost as little as a dollar each. Unlike metal plates, laser plates are probably not reusable for printing more of the same tract later on.

One can also make film positives (for making positive development metal plates) on an inkjet printer. Inkjets only print on specially made transparency material. Also, all printed pictures are made of "halftone" dots, and inkjets print smaller, uniform size "stochastic" dots that may dissolve and disappear when the metal plate is being developed with chemistry after having been exposed. This problem is solved by buying a [RIP software](#) that tells the inkjet printer to make "halftone" dots that are larger and don't dissolve away. Such software is expensive (hundreds of dollars), but one can do without it by printing text only documents.

A new technology (from India?) is a paper plate for the printing press that is made with an inkjet printer. DAA International LLC, a supplier of printer supplies, offers [geniejet plates](#) imaged with certain Epson inkjet printers like the 2880 that use the Ultrakrome K3 inkset. Their systems start at over \$1000. [Prestek](#) uses an Epson printer and RIP software to print directly onto aluminum press plates that are then baked for runs up to 20,000 copies. Their [JT Inkjet Direct system](#) is about \$5,000

An even more exciting technology is a development called "[Memjet](#)"- a desktop inkjet printer with a "[pagewide](#)" non moving print head that does up to 1600 by 1600 dpi resolution and 60 pages a minute! Hewlett Packard makes a similar technology machine, their [Officejet Pro X series](#), that also duplexes the sheets. The HP models have gone on sale for as low as \$299, and remanufactured cartridges are appearing for under \$40 each. The Memjet printers will print as fast as 60 pages a minute at a high 1600 by 1600dpi quality. [Memjet printers](#) are being sold through distributors.

12. As a Christian Evangelism or witnessing tool, one should also consider audio testimonies put on CDs. Sample titles are [A Divine Revelation of Hell /Heaven](#), and [To Hell and Back](#). The website www.spiritlessons.net supplied the audio files for free downloading to make the CDs, as well as the document files to print the labels to go on the CDs.
13. **Praying Over the Tracts**- All literature printed should be prayed over with the laying on of hands, for an anointing (the power of God) to go into the tracts to make them effective in reaching people who read them. I learned this when I brought a box of tracts to an evangelistic outreach hosted by a local church at the beach. When my "spiritual parents" drove up, I asked Frances to lay hands on the box from where she was sitting in the passenger seat and pray over the tracts. She told me, when she got done, that a tangible anointing of the Holy Spirit had gone into the paper the tracts were printed on. This reminded me of:

Isa 55:11 *"So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it."*

Acts 19:11-12 *"And God wrought special miracles by the hands of Paul: So that from his body were brought unto the sick handkerchiefs or aprons, and the diseases departed from them, and the evil spirits went out of them."*

The modern day Apostle, Prince Handley, author of some of the literature on the www.tracts4u.com website, and the founder of Handley World Services Foundation (www.realmiracles.org) offers the following instructions in praying over the literature you print and send out:

"I first speak the BLOOD OF CHRIST over the packages and literature, then the person being shipped to and the cities, areas, and countries where they will go. I bind the devil from hindering their safe delivery and I decree that they will get into the hands of the distributors and that each individual piece of literature will get to the person or people *God wants it to*. I ask God to *ANOINT THE LITERATURE* and to *SAVE, HEAL, DELIVER, PROSPER, and THRUST OUT INTO THE MINISTRY GREAT HOLY GHOST APOSTLES, PROPHETS, EVANGELISTS, PASTORS, TEACHERS, and CHRISTIAN WORKERS* as a result of the items being shipped. I ask God to *smite Satan through the literature, and to pour out the HOLY GHOST* on the regions...and to raise up *GREAT HOLY GHOST CHURCHES* as a result of the literature...and to bring about the greatest *WORLD-WIDE REVIVAL AND AWAKENING EVER!* *The LORD also instructed me to tell you to do the same and to believe for MULTIPLICATION.*

Tract Prices – For some of the tracts posted on the www.tracts4u.com website, when printed by HIS Print Media Ministries:

HIS Print Media Ministries (February 2016) info@tracts4u.com

We have limited quantities of tracts in stock, offered at the Prices below while supply last.

Large quantities (10,000 minimum - one ten ream box of paper) for tracts printed on the offset printing press are printed on request.

These prices do not include shipping. (Shipping is usually by USPS Priority Flat Rate Boxes, either domestic [United States], or international. A medium box can hold up to 5,000 small tracts.) Note: Some of the tracts listed below are out of stock, but serves as examples for sizes and prices of tracts.

2-COLOR TRACTS ON PRINTING PRESS - BUNDLES OF 100 TRACTS – Available Now

How to Live Forever (Eng. & Spanish) \$2.00 (20# or 22# white paper, two color)

[How to Win](#) (Eng. & Spanish) \$2.00 (20# white paper, one color)

Peace and Safety? Sudden Destruction? (Eng.) \$6.00 (Full 8.5x11 sheet, white thicker paper, Tri-fold, 2-color ink)

[The Greatest Offer Ever Made](#)

[By The Greatest Man Who Ever Lives](#) \$6.00 (four fold, two to a legal size sheet, two color *duotone*, white 20# paper,)

[What Fills the Void](#) (Eng., Spanish, and Portuguese) \$3.00 (20# or 22# paper, 4-fold, two color)

[Who is Jesus?](#) (Eng., Spanish, Swahili) \$4.50 (4 fold, Can be special ordered in other languages – 5,000 min. order)

[Why John 3:16](#) (Eng. & Spanish) \$3.00 (20# or 22# white paper, 2-color ink)

[World's Most Important Prayer](#) \$3.00 (2 color, four fold)

[It's Your Move](#) (Eng.) \$3.00 (2 color, two to a letter size sheet, one fold)

World in a Mess \$4.00 (2 color *duotone*, full bleed cover)

[Life's 2 Most Important Questions](#) (Eng. & Spanish) \$3.00 (two color, four fold)

[Los Dos Preguntas Mas Importantes de la Vida](#)

Who...? \$3.00 (2 color, four panel)

[Which Way to Heaven - Finding the True Path to Eternal Life](#) \$3.00 (two color, four panel)

[The Roman's Road to Heaven](#) \$3.00 (2 color, 8 panels)

[El Camino Romano Al Cielo](#) (Spanish) \$3.00 (2 color, 8 panels)

[Messiah's Identity Revealed](#) \$3.00 (2 color, 1 fold, crossword puzzle tract 4 Jewish people)

[Are You Playing With Satan?](#) \$3.00 (2 color *duotone*)

Booklet Tracts:

[Tesoros en el Cielo](#) (Spanish - Treasures in Heaven) \$12.00 (two color, 24 pages)

[Know Your Future](#) \$10.00 (16 pages - We have all broken God's 10 Commandments. What do we do now?)

[Conozca Su Futuro](#) (Spanish - Know Your Future) \$10.00 (16 pages)

Como Obtener Paz con Dios (How to Have Peace with God) \$15.00 (2 color, 16 pages)

COLOR TRACTS PRINTED ON LASER PRINTER (FULL-COLOR) – BUNDLES OF 25 TRACTS – Printed on Request

[A Vital Decision That Will Lead You to a Life Changing Experience](#) (Eng.) \$3.00 (22# white paper)

[Are You Playing with Satan?](#) (Eng.) \$5.00 (thick paper)

[Body Piercing – Is it for Me?](#) (Eng.) \$5.00 (thick paper)

[World in a Mess!](#) (Eng.) \$5.00 (thick paper)

[Who...?](#) \$6.00 (full color, two to a letter size sheet, on thick coated card stock)

[How to Live Forever - There is Only One Way](#) \$4.00

SEASONAL TRACTS PRINTED ON LASER PRINTER (FULL COLOR) – BUNDLES OF 25 TRACTS – Printed on Request

Christmas:

[Wise Men Still Seek Him](#) (Eng. & Spanish) \$4.00 (80# coated cover paper, Front full bleed colors)

[What Child Is This?](#) \$6.00 (8 panel)

[Valentine's Day](#) (Eng. & Spanish) \$6.00 (80# coated cover paper, Front full bleed colors)

[Easter](#) \$6.00 (80# coated cover paper, Front full bleed colors)

[Halloween](#) \$6.00 (full color – thicker paper) Note: The one color (black) on orange paper is cheaper at \$3.00

[Bounty of Blessing](#) (Thanksgiving) \$10.00 (full bleed card)

REGARDING TRACTS PRINTED ON THE LASER: We can notify you when these tracts have been printed on the printing press, and are available at lower prices. Please let us know if you would like to receive updates on our products and prices via email. Contact us for large quantity printing on the printing press.

Communication Worldwide by E-mail and Internet

I am excited to share here one recent example of how e-mail was used to design and print a tract in the United States, that was passed out in the province of Odessa, India in the [Oriya/Odia](#) language. We were printing and shipping tracts for free distribution in foreign countries for Handley World Services, Inc. Through this, we developed an ongoing e-mail correspondence with Pastor Naik who actively evangelized in the district where he pastored a church. We had sent him a box of tracts on our own, and a NLT [Life Application study Bible](#). In 2015, a few weeks before Easter, he e-mailed saying that a Christian group would get up early Easter Sunday morning and parade the streets of the city and pass out tracts. He wanted an Easter tract in his language, and he would need it within two weeks. As it turned out, he wanted us to make and mail them. I knew of only one Easter tract in English, one I had designed, titled *Why the Cross?* I had it posted on our website. I told him to look at it there and see if that would work for him. He said he would translate the English message into his language, type it out on his computer, and e-mail it to us. We would use the same artwork as the English version, making the glossy card tracts in full color. Shipping the quantity of about 400 that he wanted would fit in a USPS Flat Rate Priority International envelope that requires a small customs slip and arrives in 6 to 10 days at a mailing cost of about \$24.

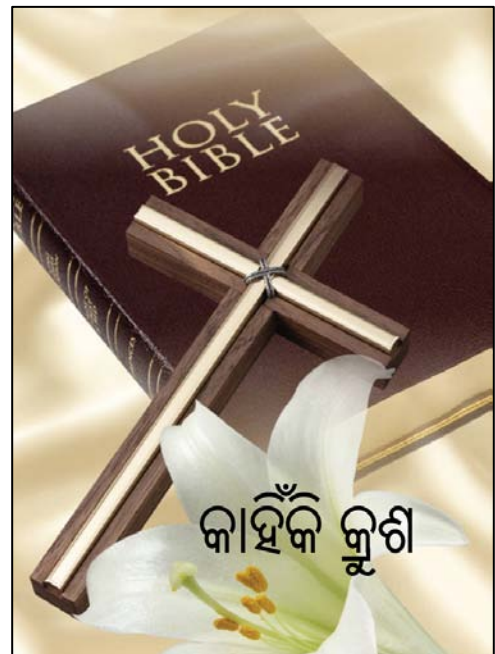
When Pastor Naik sent me the translation into his language, Oriya, by e-mail, it didn't display correctly on my computer monitor because I didn't have the [font](#) for that language on my computer. When I did try to find and download the font, only the title text on the cover would display right. I e-mailed and told the pastor he would have to make an Adobe Acrobat Reader (PDF) of his word processing document, and he would have to tell the computer software to include the fonts on his computer that he had used. Also, he would have to make the text an appropriate size to fit in the space for it on the back of the tract. Another issue was the picture I had used for the English tract was interfering with the readability of the text. Hence I had to search for a different background color artwork of the resurrected Jesus leaning against the large round stone covering the entrance of the carved-in-the-rock tomb. An angel of God had rolled away the stone so Jesus could get out of the tomb borrowed from a rich man. Also, I would have to import the PDF image of the text into Adobe Photoshop on my computer so I could resize it to look good on the document. As well I had to drop the background out of the text so the underlying background picture would be visible. Getting text I could work with delayed the project. I *placed* the image of the text into the Adobe Indesign CS 5 Page layout Program document. When I finally assembled a quality two sided document with four tracts to a page, and a trim on all sides to eliminate the white borders, I made a viewable-by-anyone PDF of the document of the proposed tract, and sent it to India as an e-mail attachment. It was approved by Pastor Naik, and I quickly printed, cut, and mailed the tracts to the address the pastor gave me by e-mail. We only had about ten days left before Easter Sunday. We prayed. The pastor was overjoyed to receive the tracts the day before his planned event. This pastor liked to send me pictures of him passing out literature we mailed to him, but he didn't have his own digital camera. Unexpectedly, someone accompanied the outreach and took nice pictures, some of which he sent me by e-mail attachment. Working together, and using e-mail and the internet, we had made this pastor's day!

Through e-mail and the Internet we have worked with translators in other countries to convert English tracts to their language. For, example, a minister we later met in our own city, had been in Peru, South America. We were looking for a Spanish translator, and approached his wife, Fanny, who is a native speaker, and also fluent in English. We sent the text from our English version to her and she sent back the Spanish translation as columns of text. I cut and pasted the text into the (page layout program) tract document in place of the English and sized it to fit. We used newer style graphics we had gotten from the Free Tract Society in Los Angeles. I then e-mailed it back to Peru for proofreading. When the tract was completed, we e-mailed the document as a *press quality* PDF to a [service bureau](#) in the City of Santa Ana, CA. The FTS had set up an account with them. Using one of their expensive computer-to-film machines, [Film Output](#) made two quality letter size negatives and mailed them to the FTS, billing them by a credit card on file. FTS [stripped the negatives into masks](#) for a two color tract and burned metal plates and printed the job. When we visited the Tract Society, Steve, the man in charge, showed us the printed tracts.

We had been printing and shipping thousands of Portuguese How to Win tracts to Brazil, and we noticed that FTS didn't have the Spanish [Con Que Se Llena Este Vacio?](#) we had helped them with, in Portuguese ([Como Preencher O Vazio?](#)). An affiliate minister I used to work with in his print shop had given us a box of tract negatives from the late 1970's and early 80's. I found the Portuguese version of this tract, and retyped the text into the FTS graphics that we had used on the Spanish version. FTS referred me to a Portuguese translator they had worked with who verified the translation when I e-mailed the tract as a PDF document to them. I then used the approved computer document to print two film positives on a color laser printer. From there I used a light exposure box to burn the image onto two metal plates, one for black ink and the other for a red ink. I printed a box of the Portuguese tracts on our two color press. When we again visited the Tract Society, I gave them about 2,500 of the tracts. When they run out and want more and desire to print them themselves, I can again e-mail the new tract document to the service bureau to make a set of negatives for them. My work with the FTS has helped them make the transition from the older method of using a graphic arts camera and a dark room and stinky chemicals, to a modern [image setter](#) that makes negatives right from the computer, rather than capturing the image by camera from a camera ready [paste up](#).



Pastor Dayanidi Naik of Bethesda Church of God in the Odissa province of India passes out Easter card tracts we worked together to make by e-mail correspondence with attachments.



Moving Equipment Yourself

A two color printing press or [offset duplicator](#) that prints a tabloid size or smaller sheet weighs up to 1,000 pounds. My opinion, based on experience, is that you can move such pieces of equipment, one at a time by yourself, and put them into operating condition in the place you want to use them by yourself. If there are no electrical outlets and you want a designated outlet just for that press, although I have done this myself, I recommend you get an electrician connected with the church to help with this. Most of these presses should run on 110 volts and connect to a regular outlet. The fact that they have two motors to drive the mechanism and the vacuum pump means they will draw about 8 or more amperes of current, so I would not run two presses from the same duplex outlet or on the same electrical circuit connected to one 15 or 20 ampere circuit breaker in the electrical panel.

The easiest way I know to move a press weighing 1,000 pounds or less, one at a time, is with a small 1/2 ton truck with a 2" ball on the bumper which has a capacity of 2,000 pounds and 200 pounds tongue weight, and a [U-Haul motorcycle trailer](#) that has small tires so it sits low to the ground, is about 4' wide by 8', has tie down points at each corner, and a 3' fold down ramp on the back that is shallow enough of an angle to winch the press into the trailer with a single hand operated [ratcheting cable winch](#) (come along) between the front center of the trailer bed and one end of the press. Most two color presses seem to sit on two I beam rails. In the past, I would raise one end with a [pry bar](#) and [fulcrum](#) block of wood, or an [automotive floor jack](#). I would then insert 30" sections of 1" PVC plastic pipe under the two rails, and the press could be pushed by hand, rolling on the pipes. Now, because our big press weighs 2,800 pounds, I bought two sets of [car-moving-dollies](#). Each cradle has four casters and is good for about 800 pounds.

After the press is loaded so the weight balance is just past the center line or axle for good handling, it is secured at all four corners with [ratcheting tie-down-straps](#) that come in packages of four from places like Home Depot. All leveling screws or feet should be backed off or removed so they don't stick down and interfere with the pipes rolling the length of the underside. The winch has a lever for operating in reverse to slowly let the press down the ramp, a notch at a time. If the end of the press has a bar going across near the bottom, the flat end of the pry bar can be placed under it so that when one lifts on the end of the bar (which costs about \$20-25 at Home Depot), it lifts and moves the press at the same time. To get the press from ground level into a building on a raised foundation, it may be necessary to build a ramp. The ramp I made is a 40" wide by 8' long sheet of 3/4" thick plywood with three 4 x 4s fastened below it the long way with the ends cut at 45 degree angles, and about 3 to 4" of just plywood on each end to serve as a lip to hang on entry ways such as a door threshold. I had two presses stored behind the eight car garage on the ranch where I live. I drove the truck alongside the overhang

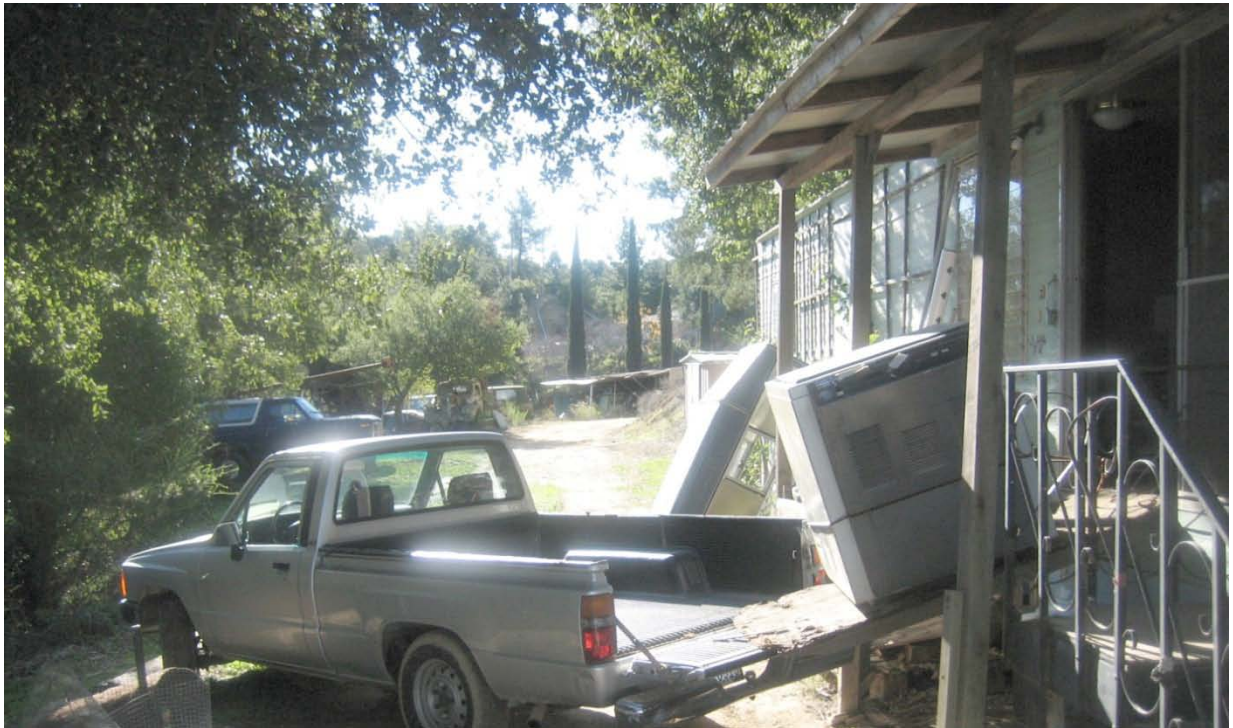
and connected to the side of the rear truck bumper with a chain, this I connected to the ["come along"](#) and then to the press to pull it out into the open on rollers or sheets of old plywood. When the press was directly behind the truck, I turned it 90 degrees with a pry bar, backed the truck up, took the tail gate off, and put the lip of the ramp I made on the edge of the truck bed and with pipes and the same come along, winched the press up into the truck bed. To move it all the way forward, I had to run a rope over the top of the cab and protect the paint with thick pieces of soft wood or cardboard and refasten the winch (the press being held from slipping back down the ramp in the meantime by another rope tied to the front two eye loops in the truck bed) to the front bumper of the truck. If entry way space is limited in the place where one is taking the press to unload and use, such as a mobile home next to the side of a cliff, one should put the press on a flatbed truck so it can be unloaded from the side into the building. The ramp and the truck raises the press about half way to its destination height so the ramp used again to go into the building is a shallow enough angle to winch it in with a come along.

I put the press in the living room of a single wide mobile home with no carpet and a plywood floor. I first went under the mobile home and put extra concrete piers and connecting blocks of wood to strengthen the floor in the area where the press would be used. This proved helpful as later when I was running the press at full speed doing a job it was stable. I checked the press for level in both directions after putting it in position and it was fine as is. I thought I would run a rope through a window opposite the sliding glass door and out the other side to a sturdy tree trunk, as an anchor point to winch from, but the windows were jalousie type and I knew if the rope leaned on one of the glass panes it could break. Instead I pulled a [heater register](#) out of the floor and found a sturdy edge of plywood I hooked the come along onto. Fortunately, the anchor point didn't pull the mobile home off its mounting stands.

The [18" hand operated Triumph model 4705 paper cutter](#) was removed from its stand by four bolts, and two people carried it up the entry steps and into position. The heavy paperback book binding machine was taken up the steps with two people, with a lighter duty ramp over the steps, but it was hard work and it would have been better to have used the heavy ramp and first removed the entry way steps into the mobile home. The [NuArc FT26V3UP plate exposure box](#) was moved in with a lighter duty ramp from the truck bed by only one person using the come along. Now the compact print shop contained most of the essential equipment after I bought a [Rollem Champion 990](#) 18" slitter / perforator / scoring machine on its stand.

After my wife and I and friends to our ministry remodeled the 860 square foot Quonset hut on the family ranch, I was able to add additional equipment, some of which was donated. We bought a [Challenge Titan 200 20" cut width electric hydraulic paper cutter](#). It came on rollers and was transported in a small trailer. The larger 12" x 18" paper size [Ryobi 3302 press](#) weighed 2,800 pounds and was too heavy to transport with our SUV. We paid the seller \$500 to deliver this press. Paul, the delivery man, also brought an

electric fork lift and a hand-operated pallet jack with specially made forks. In the Quonset hut we also added storage racks for incoming and outgoing paper and a table and scale for packaging and shipping. Isaiah 54 in the Bibles tells of readjusting the stakes of one's tent to make more room as a widow turns from barrenness to having children. After we had finished the larger building remodel, the local city college donated additional equipment left over from the closing of the print shop there, the same equipment I had used when I had worked there for about 12 years.



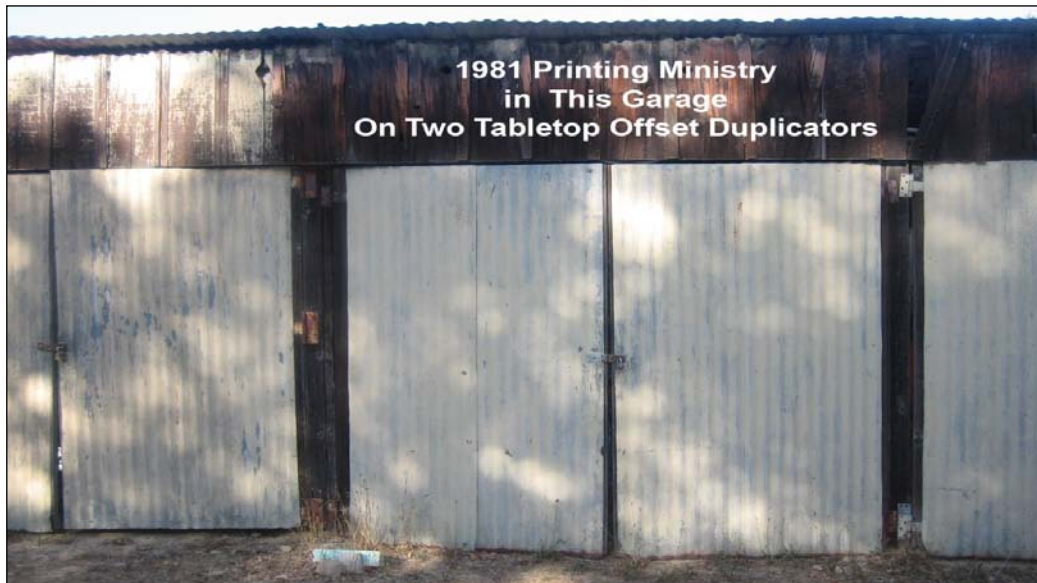
Winching in the NuArc Plate Exposure Box with light duty ramp.



Equipment like this used Ryobi 3302 two color press, weighing 2,800 lbs., at the price of \$8,500, is better handled by a professional mover. Paul of QP Printing Equipment Sales in Los Angeles sold us the press then delivered and put it in place for \$500 more. It was not easy, and well worth the extra delivery cost.



Here are pictures of the equipment in position, First in a rented 20' by 24' detached garage 2000-2003, then 2008-2009, in a single wide mobile home 10' by 45+', then the Quonset hut 2010-2016, and now October 2016, the city of Santa Maria business district.



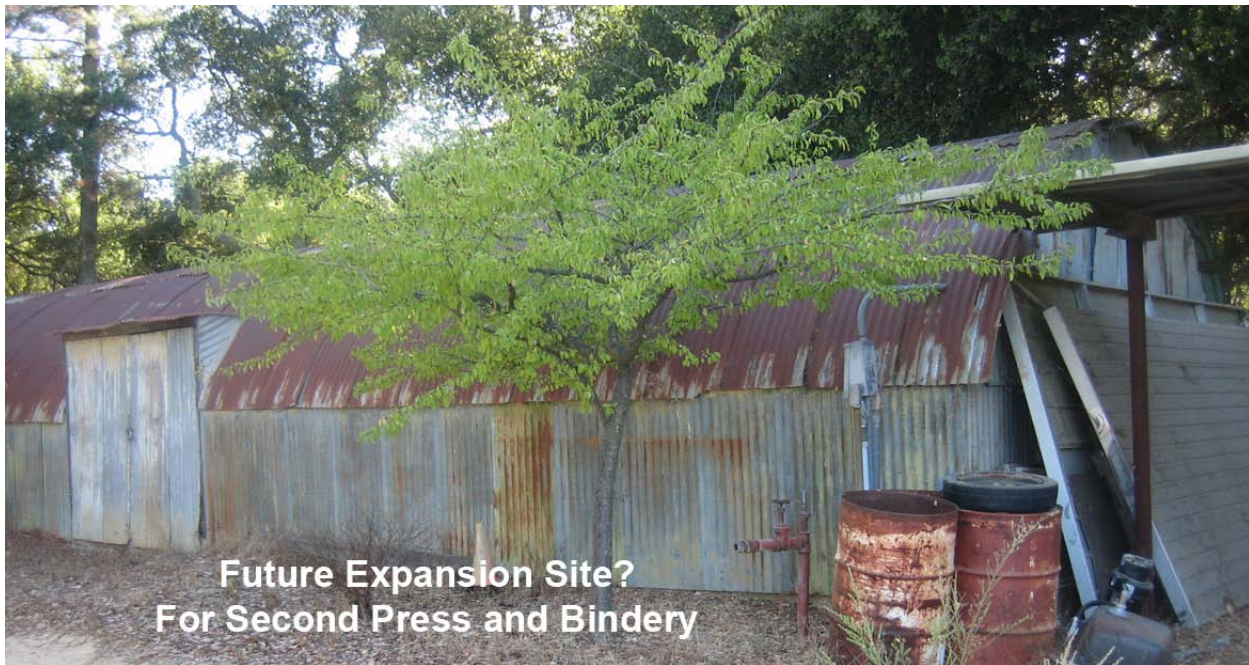


Equipment (all pictures): Two 2002 IBM Computers w 1.8 GHZ P4 processors, 1.5 Gigabytes RAM, internal and external hard drives, dual monitors, 1200 dpi scanner(s), [Epson R300/320 photo inkjet printers with CD label printing / continuous ink feed system](#); [BowayV970 Perfect Binder](#) (Paperback book gluer and cover inserter); [Triumph 4700 hand paper cutter](#), [Martin Yale friction feed tabloid folder](#); NuArk mercury vapor bulb flip-top plate exposure box; [Ricoh model Aficio spc811dn](#) tabloid duplexing 40ppm graphics color laser printer; 10 bin [Baum/Plockmatic 310 paper collator](#), [HP 5000 monochrome tabloid laser printer](#) for film positives for exposing metal aluminum positive development press plates; Lanier/Ricoh Ip126 legal size duplexing 26ppm color laser printer; 1983 [Hamada 550 CDA](#) two color exact registration offset printing press; O & M series 60 / [Plockmatic booklet maker](#); GBC 24 1/2" double sided laminator; Dayton grocery store weighing scale for shipping, GBC Comb Binding machine; Mustek large format A3 scanner; Shrink Wrapper; Staples hand-operated machine for Scoring / Perforating / Cutting; hand paper cutter for business cards and tract sample centering adjustment with computer. [Rollem Champion 990](#) 18" booklet slitter, perforator, and scoring machine.

Since the first 2009 book edition, we now have about everything that was on our wish list for future equipment purchases, except a CTP ([computer-to-plate](#)) image setter. We bought a 1994 [Plockmatic system 88 booklet making system with a face trimmer](#), a [Baum 714 air feed/vacuum folder](#), an AB Dick / Ryobi 3302 true two color 12" x 18" format offset printing press, and a [Challenge Titan 200](#) programmable hydraulic cutter at \$2500 off the previously quoted price.



Romans 8:31-32 NLT "What shall we say about such wonderful things as these? If God is for us, who can ever be against us? Since He did not spare even His own Son but gave Him up for us all, won't He also give us everything else?"



My father, before he died of cancer, with a little persuasion from my sister, gave permission for me to remodel this Quonset hut as a means of fulfilling my dream of having my own print shop. I started the project in faith. When the concrete floor was being poured and I didn't have the money to pay the workers, my sister asked my dad directly, "Who is paying for the remodel, you or David?" "I am.", he replied. He died a few weeks later. The project probably cost about \$15,000 and included a lot of volunteer labor. My sister, the power of attorney for the estate, saw to it that I was reimbursed for all expenses. Later, Dad told my mother I wouldn't have to pay for rent or utilities! The photo below was taken in April, 2012.



The offset printing equipment was moved out of the mobile home living room and into the remodeled Quonset hut. The mobile home was then used as a digital pre-press area with two modern computers, and a 2008 tabloid color laser printer with near photo quality, automatic two sided printing at a speed of 40 pages per minute. This machine makes quality paperback book and booklet covers. After I got married, and the remodel was finished, we moved the office to our Santa Maria home so the family could rent the space to help care for my mother.





Inside the Remodeled Quonset hut. With room for more equipment, we purchased a tabloid sized true two color AB Dick 9985 (Ryobi 3302) printing press, an accurate vacuum pickup/air feed folder; a donated Interlake saddle stitcher, Rollem Mini (scoring, perforating, numbering), and a 24+\" GBC hot laminator. We purchased a Plockmatic 88 booklet maker and Face Trimmer. Later we were able to reproduce the patch cord to connect the Plockmatic 310 10 bin friction feed collator. This helps produce booklets at a faster rate.



Here are some updated photos as of April 2012



A Plugger's forced air heating system



The Challenge Titan 200 programmable electric/hydraulic paper cutter is quiet, runs on 220V, single phase power, does a 20" wide cut, yet is compact in size, and mounted on casters to move it about the shop.

This 11,000 BTU air conditioner should keep the press area below 75° and prevent unwanted background *toning* of ink.

We are fortunate to have modern computers. Internet is wireless from the main ranch residence. Two USB access points mounted outside pick up the signal. A 14db booster antenna from the house increases signal strength & transfer rate.

The HP5000 monochrome laser printer serves as the poor man's image setter, making 1200 dpi film positives from which positive development metal offset printing press plates are imaged with a NuArc flip top plate exposure box.



2016 - In 2015 we began looking to move again to a larger 1900 square foot building Harriet's family Trust would buy in the city where we live. The distance between the Quonset hut print shop and our home is 60+ miles. At one point, a customer called and asked us to print a large quantity of one of his Portuguese tracts for Brazil, providing we could get one finished box packaged and to the post office before they closed that afternoon. We left our home for the shop, rushed the printing and drying of the paper and got the package mailed with a half hour to spare. We were in such a hurry that we didn't take time to include three stapled booklets we make on the laser printer. The customer caught it, and brought it to our attention. We knew then that we had to find a shop closer to home.

I measured the larger pieces of equipment and concluded they will fit through the 36" entry door if we remove the thin inside boards of the door frame, and some accessories on the side of the biggest printing press are removed. This printing press weighs 2,800 lbs, our V6 powered SUV wouldn't be able to pull it, and the paper input section of the press was bolted to the main frame and subject to being damaged if we put a jack under that end. If the press were tilted to winch it onto a trailer with a ramp, the input section could drag on the ground. When we bought the press, the seller delivered it on a flat bed truck and unloaded it with an electric fork lift. Paul had a modified hand operated pallet jack to position the press on the concrete. He had traveled 150 miles and only charged \$500 for the delivery. A press repairman told me that was a bargain. What would we do this time around?

Harriet suggested we pay a towing company with a flat bed truck like we had seen while getting gas. I asked the driver about helping us and his boss said no because the press could come loose on the trip. I then called a family owned company in the city near the Quonset hut print shop. The man was very cooperative and moved the press and left it in the parking lot behind the new shop location. He charged \$437.50, but we didn't have to pay for it. A man named David in Canada, who also designs gospel tracts, found our website on the internet, and had trouble downloading the free e-book version of this book, so he e-mailed us. He took an interest in our move to a larger printing facility, and wished he could be with us to help. When I told him we had hired a towing company and moved the press, he told us again that he wanted to pay the bill and sent us a money order for the exact amount in US dollars!

I got the big press ready to be winched onto the flat bed of the tow truck. We bought a low profile three ton hydraulic floor jack at Harbor Freight Tools, along with two sets of car dollies rated at 1,200 pounds each. I put four 4x4 wood blocks under the press on the two frame rails. Then I put a dolly in place of each block. I used small C clamps to secure each dolly against a press foot so the dolly couldn't slide along the rail. I decided to load the press from the paper input end so it wouldn't hit and drag on the concrete when it tilted to go up on the truck bed. It was so hard to turn the press 180 degrees on the dollies, that I used a come along and fastened one end to the Quonset door pin that went down into the concrete. Once the press was centered on the truck bed in its flat position, we removed the dollies and put the four wood blocks back under the press. The truck owner used a lot of ratcheting tie downs, and all went well for the sixty mile ride to Santa Maria, CA. The driver would have liked to help get the press through the 36" wide back door at the new shop location but the task was taking longer than expected, so he stopped and went home.

In relating the rest of the story, consider the following two Bible verses:

Psalm 121:1-2 NLT I look up to the mountains—does my help come from there? My help comes from the LORD, who made heaven and earth!

Hebrews 4:16 AMP Let us then fearlessly and confidently and boldly draw near to the throne of grace (the throne of God's unmerited favor to us sinners), that we may receive mercy [*for our failures*] and find grace to help in good time for every need [*appropriate help and well-timed help, coming just when we need it*].

The new shop location was not in a good area of town due to homelessness, crime, and gang activity. It was afternoon, and the big press had to be navigated through the 36" wide door and put into position before dark, but my wife and I couldn't do it by ourselves. When we loaded our \$6,000 paper cutter, my wife had told me to ask a neighbor for help and I didn't. The cutter tipped over winching it up the ramp onto a heavy duty U Haul motorcycle trailer and was damaged. Fortunately, the part cost only about \$42, and I was able to replace it myself. A printing equipment repair advisor for the whole nation, working with CFS, Matt bond, lived in our city, and had been fixing the same problem for years. He told us what to do and ordered the part. Now I was forced to ask for help. Incredibly, for the next four instances of unloading heavy equipment, homeless people rode by on their bicycles, saw the situation, and asked if I wanted help. With the big press, a tattoo artist and his girlfriend showed up. He used his cell phone to call other homeless friends in the area. They worked with enthusiasm and we got the press in and in place. They didn't ask for any money for their work. Being an evangelist, I asked them to gather in a circle so I could ask God to bless them for helping. I told them we would start the prayer by all praying the *World's Most Important Prayer* together. Their names were enrolled in heaven's Book of Life.

We moved the two lighter presses, a Hamada 550 two color, and a Ryobi 3200 with a heavy duty 1600 lb capacity galvanized U Haul motorcycle trailer with a sturdy fold-down ramp. Putting a piece of 1/2 plywood on the ramp prevented the expanded metal surface from getting dented. The Hamada had two rails, and no screw on feet, so I was able to roll it on 1" schedule PVC pipes about 30" in length. The Ryobi had a weaker frame on the paper output end. I used the four car moving dollies to move it. Both machines required a ratcheting cable winch to load and unload the presses. We were able to put the Ryobi sideways in the front of the trailer and the Hamada in next. It pushed the limit the trailer could hold and the car with the factory tow package could pull. Our SUV has a truck-like suspension, and came with a towing package. We down shifted the automatic transmission to second gear going up hills. I left the dollies under the Ryobi for the trailer trip, but secured it to the trailer front and sides with ratcheting tie down straps.

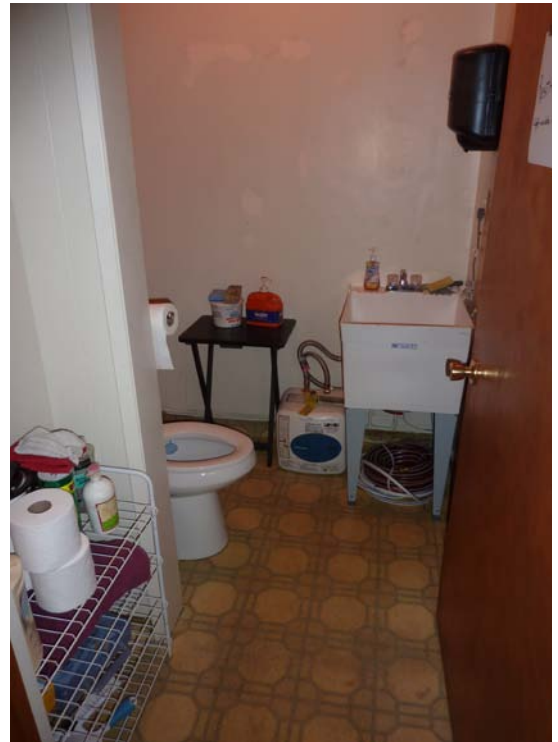
It was late afternoon when we began unloading the two presses, and I needed help. A retired homeless carpenter, awaiting his first retirement check came by on his bicycle and worked until midnight to get the two machines inside and in place. His specialty had been doors. He later came back and installed three metal security doors.

On other printing equipment, we attached permanent casters. This way, one can store the machines around the perimeter of the bindery room and roll them to the center of the room to use them.

Here are some pictures of the move to Santa Maria, and the finished result with the machines in their designated places in the new larger 1900 square foot print shop, now located downtown with proper power, water, trash, and city sewage disposal. Amazingly, along with the move we also got a city business license as a non-profit tax exempt church related corporation. There are now taxes and utilities and building insurance, but the building is paid for, and we are doing Evangelism printing of tracts and books and booklets in it. We do the document designing in our home where the better computers and better color laser printer are. We are so blessed!







Color Laser or Inkjet printer, Offset Press, or Mimeograph?

Which of these three is the most cost effective and least labor intensive way of making quality tracts, booklets, and books? From the standpoint of simplicity and ease of use, the automatic [duplexing](#) color laser printer is the way to go. The difficulty is paying \$400 or more every 6,000 to 15,000 copies for a set of toner cartridges. After searching the internet, I found www.tonerprice.com to have the cheapest prices, and they offer generic, compatible, color cartridges at about half the manufacturer's price. If you buy about \$75 worth, you can get free shipping. They frequently offer discount codes by e-mail, as well as rewards points. They sell the other main replaceable parts for our laser printers such as the intermediate transfer belt, the fuser unit, color imaging drums, and waste toner containers. Evidently, the use of aftermarket toner or ink cartridges cannot, legally, void the warranty policy for the printer.

The sturdier graphics arts quality color laser printers like my 2007 [Ricoh Aficio SP C811dn](#) with a monthly duty cycle of over 100,000 copies, have a cost per black and white copy of about 1.2 cents and 6.6 cents for a color copy. This is important to keep in mind as the time will come when you will have to pay hundreds of dollars for internal printer parts such as imaging drums (\$145 for the black & \$545 for the set of three colors), photo receptor transfer belt kit (\$175), waste toner cartridge (\$25), etc. The higher-priced models like mine with a maximum RAM (512 megabytes) of working memory and the 2,000 sheet high capacity paper drawer (an \$800 accessory), cost about \$4,600 including tax, with a church discount. This, to me, is a bargain, as they have a monthly duty cycle of 200,000 copies, do very acceptable (4 bit) photos, and do tabloid-size sheets, as well as book covers on 12" by 18" C1S (coated one side) 12 point card stock for posters and paperback book covers. The feed mechanism is so reliable, BLI, an independent testing agency, said my model did 100,000 copies over two months without a paper jam, and no service calls! And these models do 40-50 pages a minute. The laser printer can also make book sets that are collated. The [RCPS](#) software printer driver can take a read order document and match the pages to print a booklet.

Inkjets are a cheaper initial investment and generally do better photo quality than laser printers, but at a lot slower speeds, and the text at the fast speed has a ragged edge, but it isn't noticeable from a foot away. Older inkjets like the reliable Epson 740 and 880 models can be found in thrift stores for \$20 or less. The ink used in older inkjets is not pigmented so is not lightfast or water resistant. Aftermarket cartridges were selling as low as \$3 each compared to the manufacturer's price of over \$12 for each color. A bulk feed system could be added which utilizes refill packs of 4 ounce bottles for \$50 for the set. These inks can be fade resistant and water resistant. I washed my business cards more than once, and the black was slightly smeared, but the color held up. Epson now sells office inkjet printers with a built in [eco tank system](#) using 2 ounce capacity

cartridges. A new technology using a non-moving single print head inkjet, developed by a company in Australia with the brand name [Memjet](#), is on the market. It has the capacity to do 60 or more pages a minute at 1600 dpi high quality, but the recommended monthly *duty cycle* is less than 4,000 copies. Their first desktop model did not have automatic [duplexing](#). In the USA their machine is being sold through dealers.

My associate, Joe, collected up to ten Epson 740 inkjets at thrift stores and used 7 port [USB hubs](#) to hook all of them up to one computer. He makes card stock tracts with a full color picture on one side and Bible verses on the non-glossy side. The problem is this [Photo Paper](#), even though it is sold in packs of 150 sheets under the *Kirkland* brand at Costco, has a cost per package of about \$19, and the inkjet doesn't like to print on the non treated backside without the ink *bleeding*. I was happy to be given an [Epson Stylus Photo R320](#) with a pigmented ink, bulk feed system, and then buy an earlier model R300 at a local thrift store for under \$17. I got a set of ink cartridges at Costco for about \$64 and after several cleaning cycles, the second printer works fine. These models can do a very high 2880 x 5760 dpi quality, and they can print right on the surface of printable CDs, like the one included in the back of this book. These photo models use six ink colors rather than four, and can do *full bleed* borderless photos. This shortens the service life of the printer which collects the stray ink in a felt pad in the bottom of the printer. The manufacturer predetermines that after a certain number of copies have been printed, this pad will be saturated, and a notice will unexpectedly appear on the computer screen saying the printer is nearing or has reached the end of its life span. You won't be able to print after this without going to the Epson website and downloading a software counter reset utility which I have used successfully twice now. I used the Inkjet for business card size prayer card tracts printed 8 up on the Costco photo paper glossy side. I do the backside on the color laser printer. It should be noted here that, generally speaking, inkjet paper should not be used in color laser printers as it could stick to the fuser. I also make business cards at the highest possible quality, especially ones with photographs on them. I use the laser printer to print the *Sinner's Prayer* on the non-glossy backside.

The drawback of the inkjet is much slower speed, and a high cost for ink cartridges. To get highest quality, more expensive and thicker weight paper should be used to avoid "see through" of the printed matter on the backsides of the sheets. On my smaller Epson Stylus photo R320 inkjet printer, I was able to reduce ink costs by installing a CIS ([continuous inking system](#)). Because this is an older model, it is ideally suited for the system, compared to newer models which keep track of how many copies each ink cartridge is printing. When a set number of pages have been printed, the printer software stops the machine from printing and tells the operator to replace the cartridge. An aftermarket cartridge may not be empty, but it will still have to be removed and put back in place to reset the counter. There is an integrated electronic circuit on each

cartridge. With the CIS installation, six ink containers on the right side of the printer feed ink through a ribbon of six small flexible hoses that attach to an aftermarket set of ink cartridges. I bought a CIS system for the newer, wider Epson Artisan 1430 printer, but removed the system in favor of aftermarket cartridges that are refilled using a syringe and ink from a set of six 3.5 ounce bottles. The center support had to be high enough that the ink supply lines (running from the bottles on the side to the moving print head) didn't droop and drag on the paper. The point where the feed lines went into the print cartridge had to be fastened to limit side movement of the lines during travel. I even installed a sheet of cardstock to keep the lines from rubbing on the belt and registration ribbon along the back side of the printer cavity. Even with all this, the lines would snag in the carriage movement and cause the printer to stop, showing an error. I had tried using pigmented ink to get fade resistance and eliminate smearing if the printed matter gets wet, but the ink has pigment particles in it which can plug up the print heads if the printer isn't used regularly.



I switched to refillable aftermarket cartridges from [CIS inks](#). Eventually the printer stops when an orange light comes on to signal a cartridge needs refilling. I press the ink button and the carriage centers so I can open the lid and remove the cartridges. The refill bottles have pointed spouts and I was able to squirt ink right into the fill holes. The sides of the cartridges are clear and one can see the level of ink to know when the cartridge is full. I reinstalled the six cartridges and started printing again, but had to do a cleaning cycle and print a nozzle check pattern. Now I wish I had bought the pigmented ink refill bottles for water resistance. The brand worked fine that says on the box: *Long lasting vivid color - UV INK!* I washed business cards in the washing machine. The black text was distorted, but the colored text and picture were fine. I was searching the internet for instructions on how to reset the end of life notice, when I found a free download software called [SSC Utility](#). Apparently, it allows me to reset the counter in individual ink cartridges in cases where they are not really empty, but the printer stops and the orange empty light comes on. This is done remotely from the computer connected to the printer by a USB cable, and could possibly also work on the newer Epson 1430 wireless printer on the home network.



Ten+ Inkjets on Shelves around Computer



One Computer Running Ten Inkjets Through Two USB Hubs

The offset printing press with a metal plate, and especially with an automatic watering system like the [Kompac](#) brand, is superior for printing a low cost per copy of about one cent per color, and speed, at speed of 6,000 to 10,000 impressions per hour. At 6,000 impressions per hour, our big press has exact registration between two colors, and a variation of image on the sheet of as little as .005 one way and .007 the other way. This beats what laser printers can do when printing two-sided documents. If the press is kept lubricated, the press parts rarely wear out, and the ink is cheaper than laser toner. The disadvantage is that, if a book or booklet is being printed, one must have a paper collator and a *dummy* handmade sample guide to make sure the pages are backed up right. I like to print a copy on the laser printer and use it as an alignment guide. A positive development aluminum printing plate for a press should last 40,000 copies before it wears out, and it can be cleaned, preserved, and reused. Properly setting up the documents on the computer for the press gripper bite and plate bend minimize the press *make ready* time. I recently printed 23,000 *How To Win* tracts four per letter size sheet in Portuguese for Brazil. Because the job was laid out as a [work and turn](#), I was able to use one metal plate for both sides. I simply flipped the paper on the short side, jogged it, loaded it, and printed the backside just as I did the front side. With the press, we have done thousands of small tract booklets laid out four to a legal size sheet – producing a small booklet tract, printing it on the press with two color exact registration.

“See through” of an image printed on the backside was not a problem because the ink is oil-based and doesn't soak into the paper like water-based inkjet ink. I bought a slitting machine to cut the printed booklets apart, and make a small face trim on the short side opposite the stapled end. The press has an advantage over the laser printer here in that it has closer registration of the image on the page from sheet to sheet, and the paper feed mechanism is probably more reliable since it is a vacuum pickup system. I am able to make these booklets for a non-labor cost of about 5 cents each, whereas, on the color laser printer, they would be about 12 cents each. With repeated handling, booklets printed on a color laser printer deteriorate in quality because the toner begins to crack. Press ink doesn't do this.

I might point out here that major laser manufacturers such as Xerox, Konica/Minolta, Canon, and Ricoh do make high speed, full color and monochrome printers, but they probably cost over \$100,000, and a maintenance contract would be required. I ran a Xerox Docutech 135 making automotive lease guide books. The machine went ten hours without a jam one night at 135 pages a minute with automatic duplexing, collating, and stacking; but the daily royalty or per click charge to Xerox for the use of the machine was about \$900 a day, running it 24 hours a day! In exchange for a tax deductible receipt from my church, a 501c3 nonprofit corporation, I was able to get printing presses made in the 1980's and other related bindery equipment. Any laser printer equipment that old, if it existed, wouldn't be worth having due to the poor image quality, slow print speed, and slow electronics and low RAM memory capacity.

My conclusion is that laser printers are better for paperback books and larger booklets. They easily print full color (a skilled procedure on a printing press), print the backsides, and collate. Doing books or booklets on a press would require making a printing plate for each page. Making paperback books or booklets on a printing press would only be feasible for a larger quantity of a book or booklet. The *time is money* phrase applies here. If laser printer copy was more durable, and the cost of consumables like the imaging drum units, image transfer belt, and fuser unit, didn't cost hundreds of dollars, I would do more jobs on the laser printer and fewer jobs on the printing press. The laser printer is so much easier to set up and use once the document being printed is correctly laid out on the computer that the printer is attached to.

As another inkjet alternative, The Riso company came out with [Com Color](#) machines with four non moving inkjet print heads, one for each of the four process colors. Their machines have a duty cycle of 500,000 a month, and duplex, and do up to 150 copies a minute for A4 size paper. The quality is 300 x 600 dpi, and the machines probably cost \$20,000 or more. The ink is oil-based and pigmented. The registration accuracy between the front and back sides is about 1/16". A sales representative says the cost per copy is 4 cents with a maintenance contract, and about 2 cents without the maintenance contract. The cost per copy is the lowest in the industry for full color printers. Beware that their four ink cartridges, that print 100,000 copies, cost \$500 each!

Because these inkjet printers are connected to computers, they have the advantage of being able to print variable data, such as mass mailing a form letter with individualized information.

Riso started out making automated mimeograph machines with digital imaging of the stencils by a connection to a computer. The cost per page is really low, and the ink cartridges are a reasonable price. They didn't duplex, and there was enough "show through" of ink to the backside of the page, that duplexing wasn't a good idea. My boss at the city college had put a million copies on the GR3770 tabloid-size model! Looking from a foot away, the text quality appears acceptable. About 7 additional spot color drums are available, but they cost about \$800 each. I was given two older Risograph machines, but I gave them away. They were a cheap *quick n' dirty* technology in the early 1990s, but today, representing the Lord with what I print, I want a better quality and more attractive output.

In commercial printing, large web (paper on a roll) inkjet presses are competing with offset presses and offer less waste, print on demand, variable information from page to page, and shorter setup time. [Xerox phaser technology](#) uses wax based ink to solve the problem of ink soaking into the paper, causing "see through" when printing the backsides. Pre-coating the paper for these inkjet machines also helps. The large machines cost hundreds of thousands of dollars. I am interested in the consumer grade models coming out for desktop publishing, especially ones that will print on 12" x 18" paper. They may offer near photo quality and greatly reduced maintenance and consumables compared to color laser printers. Their advertised cost per copy is half that of a laser printer. Here is a [Buyer's Lab comparison test](#) between this inkjet and two comparable laser models by Lexmark and Ricoh.



These two [Hewlett Packard Office Jet Pro X and Enterprise inkjets](#) have *pagewide* non-moving print heads. In draft mode they can do 70ppm, otherwise 42ppm with automatic duplexing. A graphics intensive document slows down the print speed. Resolution quality is 1200 x 1200, and 1200 x 2400dpi. Both have network connectivity, and the first is wireless. The more expensive one on the right is a class "A" device, meaning it could cause electrical interference with other equipment if used in a home environment. Aftermarket rebuilt cartridges reduce the price of individual cartridges from \$119 to as low as \$37. The black cartridge makes 9000+ prints, and the colors 6,200+. An independent testing lab ran these machines for 150 and 200 thousand copies without a jam. A higher capacity input paper tray is available. I feel the machine on the

right could be the neatest quick printing, reasonable quality, low cost per copy, desktop full color printer on the market right now. Their prices were even temporarily cut in half. I expect that 12" x 18" or 13" by 19" models will be made that will be good enough to replace office laser printers. Making full color gospel tracts on a printing press would take real skill, but almost anyone with basic computer ability could do acceptable evangelism work on printers like these. I noticed they aren't advertised as *photo* printers. For large commercial printers, continuous paper feed (paper on a big roll) *inkjet web presses* (and now, *sheet fed*) are available but prices start at 600,000 dollars! Sheet fed models are now being made as well. Hopefully office models will come out for \$5000 or less. The above models have gone on sale for half price. Thus, their lowest price model dropped down to \$299 US dollars! Evidently, in 2016, the 36 page per minute multifunction model was on close out at *Staples* for \$100!

Another Inkjet alternative is the Riso company's Comcolor. Four separate non moving print heads, one for each of the primary colors making up full color printing, image 100+ pages a minute at 300 x up to 900 dpi quality. The sheets are *duplexed* (automatic printing of backsides of the sheets), and the accuracy of registration between front and back sides is 1/16". They even have models that handle 11" x 17" or larger sheets. The monthly duty cycle (a measure of reliability) is quite high at hundreds thousands of copies a month. When I talked to a distributor, I found out that a used or *open box* machine that prints legal size was \$10,000, and each of the four ink cartridges were \$500! I am guessing that the tabloid-size machine costs \$20,000, which is too high for my budget. However, for what this machine does, and its speed, it may be one of the only options available to a small print shop owner.

Conclusions: I use the Epson inkjet printers for limited edition, photo quality prints on Costco Wholesale's Kirkland Photo paper. I also use them for printing labels directly onto *inkjet printable* CD and DVD disks. Note that newer HP computers have built in *lightscribe* technology for labeling CDs compatible with their system. Please note that inkjet inks not labeled *pigmented* or *uv (ultra violet)*, will not be fade resistant in bright sunlight, or resistant to smearing from contact with water. I had a watery eye condition and dripped a tear onto an inkjet imaged book cover, then tried to wipe the water off with my finger and the black ink smeared. I had to make another cover for that book. The newest Epson inkjet printers now have ink tanks on the side like a bulk feed system. The larger capacity of ink allows them to print a lot more cartridges before adding ink. Even though they still have a moving print head, it would be easy to buy cheaper aftermarket ink refill bottles from places like www.cisinks.com.

Here is a caution regarding buying used Epson printers. After so many copies, a red flashing light appears and a message on the display states that the machine has reached the end of its lifecycle. Epson feels the waste ink felt pads in the bottom of the printer are saturated and pose a danger of ink leaking outside the printer. They also figure some of the parts are starting to wear out. Two times now I have been able to

reset the internal counter and get our Stylus Photo R320 printer going again. I searched the internet for a reset procedure. I was able to have the machine on and simultaneously press the start button, stop button, and ink/paper button and hold them down for ten seconds. The display then said that the counter had been reset. How simple is that!

I use the more expensive color laser printer for the inside pages and covers of paperback books, as well as making [laser film positives](#) on clear polyester material from which aluminum metal plates are imaged using a flip-top light exposure box. The laser printer does good quality with good speed in full color on almost any paper, plus postcard stock up to 14 point thick. Non-glossy card stock can be printed and laminated and come out shinny. Laser does not have the "see through" problem of inkjet when printing double sided. Laser makes limited edition sample tracts similar to what one would do on a printing press, only without the hours of setup and color registration required for a printing press. The new compact *Oki Data* laser printer has a firth color, white, and a straight through paper path that allows it to do 16 point thick card stock. An envelope feeder attachment enables printing full color envelopes a box at a time. On the press, the uneven three layer surface of the envelope makes it harder to print even two colors at the same time with the *Press Specialties* aftermarket envelope feeder.

The printing press excels on two colors exact registration work at speeds up to 10,000 an hour verses the modern office laser's maximum 50 pages a minute. The image used to make the press plates comes from the color laser printer, and if no picture dots are lost (dissolved out by the plate developer chemistry), the press output for two color work looks as good as the laser output, and the colors that the Pantone Matching System spot colors (that the laser has to simulate from its 4 process color toners), can be exactly matched with the press by using store-bought Pantone number inks, and the Pantone Matching System swatch book of colors. The press does almost exact registration on paper from sheet to sheet within .005" in one direction (up and down?), and .007" in the other direction (side to side?). The press plates last for 40 to 100,000 copies, almost making the hours of setup and registering the colors and washing up the press after the job, seem worth the effort. By the press method, tracts can be produced for a penny or less a sheet, not counting the cost of the paper. When one makes film positives for press spot colors, separating the colors with a *Post Script* software printer driver for the laser printer, and then making metal press plates from the films, the output from the press can look better than the same document printed on laser printer. A drawback is that the laser films seem to stretch, probably due to the heat of the fuser unit in the laser printer that warps or slightly distorts the film. The letters and images seem just as sharp, but the two spot colors don't always exactly register together on a two color press. In my opinion, using the laser film method to make metal plates prevents one from fully utilizing the accuracy the press is capable of. One is limited to doing two color exact registration work, (and no full color, 4 process colors) on

a press, even though the press could do it with better quality films from an expensive [image setter](#) professional imaging machine. Also, laser color separation variations make it unwise to print text in two colors on the same line. The bottom line is that I would prefer a low cost per copy office machine that requires almost no setup, prints directly from the computer with no delay, and has front to back registration capability near that of the printing press. Unfortunately, I haven't yet found such a machine, even though I would be willing to pay five or six thousand dollars for one.

Free Training Videos

Five years have gone by since I first wrote this book. I recall the saying that "A picture is worth a thousand words." I was aware that a training video would be a lot more welcomed and understandable by the reader than the detailed step by step instructions found in the next chapters. Some of the [Quicktime Movie](#) clip format training CDs put out by [VTC](#) (video training company) for desktop publishing using Adobe Photoshop and Indesign CS software are a lot of information to grasp in a short amount of time, and the videos cost about \$100 each. Over an hour of training can somehow be made to fit on a Compact Disk!

I watched the rise of You Tube free online videos with clear picture and audio quality. More than one billion people visit the YouTube site every day. It is the largest destination in the world, attracting people from more than 88 countries and in 76 different languages. Approximately 81 percent of U.S. millenials (18-34) use it regularly, and it's grown at least 50 percent every year for the past three years. According to its website, YouTube is the largest online video destination in the world and third most visited website overall. The site exceeds two billion views a day—nearly double the prime time audience of all three major U.S. television networks combined.

I learned first-hand that making and uploading desktop training videos to YouTube is relatively easy with no cost involved except my labor. I investigated and found a free download trial version software from Microsoft titled [Encoder Screen capture](#). I set up a free video upload account with www.youtube.com. I paid for the 2015 version of [Nero software](#) for editing videos and *ripping* recorded video file formats so they are acceptable to YouTube. I turned out I didn't need the Nero software. The Microsoft computer screen capture program encoder (recoder) have onscreen click on buttons for start, stop, and pause. It comes with its own converter to [WMV file format](#) which is ready to upload to YouTube as is. I have been able to make videos up to 17 minutes in length. The program records all my actions on the computer that display on my computer monitor, along with sound through my headset with built in microphone. I am allowed to make videos up to ten minutes in length, even though YouTube allows me to upload files longer than 10 minutes. Microsoft allows setting the video quality level. I knew that if I picked too high a bit rate, a user with a slow internet connection might experience annoying pauses while the internet connection buffers or plays catch-up, after which the video play continues. (Verizon DSL in our area is a maximum of 2.88 [mbps](#) [megabits per second]). By comparison, the [Roku](#) internet movie watching video box (which we have connected to television) desires 3.5 mbps, but works for us at the 2.88 speed with no glitches or interruptions on newer movies.

I have made twelve videos so far, and would like to do more. I used the accompanying *Expressions* free software to convert the screen capture to [.wmv](#) (windows media video) file format which is an acceptable format for uploading to the

You Tube website. These files can also be played on a PC computer using the Windows Media Player. I was not satisfied with the video playback quality after the conversion, so, on the fifth listed recording in the list on our website www.tracts4u.com, I increased the recording quality, and would like to increase it even further. As a sample of what I have done, I recommend watching video #9 titled [Add a Form Field to a PDF Document 4 Contact Information](#). In making the videos, I can open still photos saved on my computer so I have less verbal explaining to do. The You Tube video postings have a thumbnail (small picture) of what the video is about as well as a brief written description. The following is a list of the free training videos made and posted on You Tube so far (as of May 2016). The special text in orange is the URL link to each video. When one goes online (connects to the Internet), and copies and pastes or types in this link address into the address bar at the top of one's internet browser (e.g., [Mozilla Firefox](#)), then presses the enter key on the keyboard, one is taken directly to the ready to watch video at the www.youtube.com website. If one is reading the PDF e-book version of this CEP book, then one might be able to hold down the *Ctrl* key in the bottom left corner of the computer keyboard, which left clicking computer mouse with the other hand. mouse click on the orange hypertext word link and have the video come up automatically. One can also go to our website www.tracts4u.com, click on the *Free Video Training* tab at the top of the home page. When the page listing the videos and their descriptions opens up, one can then click on the orange title of a listed video and be taken to the place on the internet where the video can be watched.

May 2016 Update - The twelfth video was 22 minutes long and when I tried to upload it to You Tube, the audio quality was marginal, but the video did not display right. I couldn't resolve the issues. I searched the internet and found a comparison review of other screen capture software that cost money. Snagit 12 was voted the best and I downloaded their thirty day free trial. It did a better video and sound recording with almost no complicated settings. It recorded and saved in the popular MPEG 4 file format. I could connect with the You Tube video upload site with one click of a button! The software costs \$44.95 plus \$8.95 if one wants a CD copy, and it can be installed on two computers. I redid the twelfth video and easily uploaded MPEG 4 190 megabyte, 17 minute video. The result had good audio and acceptable video in the full screen viewing mode!

[Free Training Videos](#)

Free YouTube videos made with Snagit 12 Screen Capture, are now being offered to help you use Desktop Publishing to design and publish Christian books, booklets, gospel tracts, and CD audio recordings. Read a brief description of each listing and click on the orange hypertext to immediately begin watching the video. It is not necessary to download the video. An internet connection is required. Note: If you right click the mouse with the cursor over the orange text links to videos and choose *Open in new*

private window, you can return to this website when you close the YouTube video window. Also, starting with #5 below, the viewing quality of the videos has been improved. Thus, one can click on the brackets button at the lower right hand corner of the YouTube viewing window to watch the videos in full screen mode. To exit the full screen mode and return to the smaller sharper image window, press the *Esc* key in the top left hand corner of the keyboard.

In the comb bind printed book, the DVD on the inside of the back cover contains most of the videos in a combination of MPEG4, and XESC file format. If one right clicks the mouse on an XESC file format, and goes to Open With, and then Windows Media Player, he should be able to view those videos on a PC computer.

1. [Scanning Art to Computer Medium](#) – Designing and printing documents will involve placing pictures into the document. If the items to be added are printed matter, they first have to be converted to a digital computer medium using a flat bed scanner. Here is a demonstration of capturing artwork for a tract cover, then using Adobe Photoshop CS5 to size, adjust, and save the document for later use in the Adobe Indesign CS5 page layout program. About 10.5 minutes long
2. [Desktop Publishing Office Equipment](#) – Computers, printers (color laser & ink jets), scanner. About 7.5 minutes long
3. [Desktop Publishing in Home Bindery Equipment](#) – Smaller jobs such as booklets and business cards can be done in the home with the right finishing equipment pictured here. About 7 minutes long.
4. [Portable Digital Voice Recording](#) – Using the Zoom H2 digital voice recorder. First in a series. Additional videos will show how to edit the sound track using the Free Audacity open source software, export the file, then record it to an inkjet printable CD and design and print on a label. About 6 minutes long.
5. [Voice Editing with Audacity Software](#) – Opening a voice recording on an SD memory card on the computer and editing it using the free download open source Audacity software, then exporting and saving the file for burning onto an Audio CD with a custom printed label. about 9.5 minutes long.
6. [Burning a Voice Recording to CD using Nero](#) – A voice message recorded on a digital device to an SD memory card was transferred to the computer and edited. Now it is burned onto a CD using Nero Express software. The CD can then be played on any CD player. This training Video is about 8 minutes long.
7. [Designing & Printing a CD Label](#) – Designing & Labeling a CD with Epson inkjet software and CD printer. About 6 minutes long.
8. [Making PDF Documents from MS Word, Publisher, & Indesign](#) – Converting Desktop Publishing documents to the free download universal Adobe Acrobat PDF medium for quality viewing and printing. About 13.5 minutes long.

9. [Add a Form Field to a PDF Document 4 Contact Information](#) – Adding a Form Field to a PDF document so a recipient can add personalized contact information using the free version PDF program. About 9.15 minutes long.
10. [Overcoming PDF Making Errors](#) – Press Quality conversions of documents from Adobe Indesign to PDF don't always turn out right, even when using Acrobat Professional to do it. By using *Export* instead of *Print*, and not compressing the images, one can overcome this problem and still get a *Press Quality* PDF. About 6.46 minutes long.
11. [Using OCR Software to Turn Printed Text into Fresh Text](#) - An Optical Character Recognition program can simplify the reprint of older books by processing PDF document images into editable Microsoft Word documents for easy editing and posting online as a smaller, more manageable file size.
12. [Making PDF Interactive e-book](#) - In Microsoft Word 2007 add bookmarks, pictures, & hyperlinks to additional online, then make a PDF from Word that retains the links.
13. [Negative to Digital Foreign Language Document](#) - Converting an old graphic arts negative document to a digital and printable computer document using Microsoft Word and Publisher.
14. [Adding a Pantone Matching System “Spot Color” to a Graphic using Adobe Photoshop CS5](#) – In addition to adding color text, one can also enhance a document by changing the “placed” graphics by adding a solid color to them.
15. [Placing the Two Color Graphics made in Photoshop into Indesign](#) – Then add colored text, and “preview” the color separations before printing the document with the Postscript software printer driver.
16. [Converting Graphic Images into 2 Color Duotones](#) – Use Adobe Photoshop CS5 to change a gray scale photograph, or art picture into a composite of two designated Pantone Matching System colors. The colors will match the text in the document so it can be printed in one pass through a two color printing press.
17. [QR Codes Enhance Printed Matter](#) – QR Codes can be generated for free and added to printed matter as links to websites and additional information found on the Internet. Downloading a free QR Code reader App on a tablet or smart phone, uses the device's camera to take one to the online address hidden in the code.
18. [Poster Making by Tiling in Indesign CS5](#) - Wide Format and Plotter printers for making larger posters cost \$800 or more. An alternative is to use the "Tiling" feature in Adobe Indesign CS5. The document is printed in pieces on common letter or legal size sheets, then assembled like a puzzle and laminated. Here is an example of how it's done.

19. [Network External Hard Drive](#) - After years of using a USB external hard drive and a Network Hard drive, the Network drive is my choice for the following reasons.
20. [E-tract from 4 Print Document](#) - Turn a laser printer tract document into a read order PDF interactive e-tract for reaching more people at less expense. Includes posting the e-tract on a WordPress based website.

Free Training for Microsoft Office Software

(Word, Publisher, Excel, Outlook, PowerPoint, Publisher, OneNote, Skype for Business, Store Share and Sync. Files)

1. [Free Microsoft Software You Tube Video Tutorials by Sali Kaceli](#)

A listing of eighteen easy-to-follow full video tutorials on Microsoft Office prepared and developed by Sali Kaceli. Everything you need to know for your job in the corporate environment or classroom or personal career. Tutorials with an accent by Sali Kac

2. [Microsoft Office 2016 Quick Start Training/Introduction](#)
3. [Publisher Videos and Tutorials](#)
4. [Microsoft Publisher Quick Video Tutorial](#), [Publisher 2010](#), [Publisher 2010](#)

Audio Recording Tutorial

Adobe Desktop Publishing Software Free Online Training

1. [Free 13 hour Photoshop Course for Beginners— Adobe Blogs](#)
2. [Beginners Adobe Photoshop Tutorials—Adobe KnowHow](#)
3. [Free Adobe Tutorials - Adobe Training | ALISON](#)
4. [Best Free Online Photoshop Courses - SkilledUp](#)
5. [Free New Adobe CS6 Tutorials: 30+ Hours of Online Video...](#)
6. [Six Place to Learn Photoshop for Free \(or Almost Free...](#)
7. [Learn Photoshop - Online Tutorial - You Tube](#) 7:39 minutes
8. [44 Brilliant Indesign Tutorials](#)
9. [The Complete Beginner's Guide to Adobe Indesign CS5](#) You Tube videos?
10. [Adobe Indesign for Beginner](#) - Official Adobe courses

11. [Using the Print Booklet Feature in Indesign CS5](#)
12. [Introduction to Adobe Acrobat PDFs](#)
13. [Acrobat XI Tutorials | How To | Adobe TV](#)
14. [How to Create an Interactive PDF in Indesign](#)
15. Tiling in Indesign for Large Posters and Signs:
 - 1) [How to Tile Print with Adobe Indesign | eHow](#)
 - 2) [Intro to Graphic Design - Indesign Tutorial on Tiling](#)
 - 3) [How to Tile in Indesign.mov - YouTube](#)
 - 4) [Using Tiling in Indesign CS5 - YouTube](#)
16. [Using the Tools](#) in the Tools Palette in Adobe Indesign

Other Computer Related Software & Hardware - Free Online Training

Voice to Computer Text Voice Recognition Software

1. [Instructional Videos - Nuance](#)
2. [How to use Dragon Naturally Speaking - Tips and Tricks](#)
3. [Dragon Naturally Speaking Video Guide - Training Video](#)

Scanner - [Using the Epson Perfection V500 Scanner](#)

Digital Camera - [Best Free Online Photography Courses and Tutorials](#)

[Transferring Photos from an iPhone to a PC Computer](#)

[Better phone pictures & transferring iphone pictures to PC computer](#)

Audacity Free Audio Editing Software & Training

1. [Audacity Software Download](#)
2. [Audacity Tutorials - Audacity Manual](#)
3. [Beginner Tutorials for Free Audacity sound editing](#)
4. [Free Audacity Tutorials](#)
5. [Audacity Tutorial - Beginner - Part 1 - YouTube](#)
6. [Audacity Tutorial Part 1 - YouTube](#)

Professional Paid Online Training for Graphic Arts Computer Software

1. Adobe Products like the [CS5 Design Standard](#) used by HIS Print Media Ministries:

<http://training.adobe.com/training.html>

<https://helpx.adobe.com/learning.html>

lynda.com - Free 10 day [Microsoft Office online training trial](#) ([Word](#), [Access](#), [Excel](#), [Powerpoint](#))

[Training Made Simple](#)

[Train Simple](#)

Website Making Software & Training

[Download WordPress](#)

[WordPress Beginner Videos - Free WordPress Video Tutorials](#)

[21 Best Free WordPress CMS Courses and Tutorials](#)

[WordPress 101 Tutorials - iThemes](#)

[Complete WordPress Training for Beginners | Udemy](#)

Training / Instructions For Printing and Bindery Machines

1. Folding, Perforating, and Scoring: Award winning Success Blog from Tech-Ni-Fold — [Training Videos](#), [5 Tips for Beginners](#), and links to Other Bindery Topics List, [Bindery Success Tips e-mail Subscription](#) - These links are free.
[Paper Folding Machine Tutorial by MBM](#)
[Martin Yale P7200 Desktop Paper Folding Machine](#)
[Rollem Champion 990 user's manual](#)
[Rollem Champion 990 Perforating Demonstration - YouTube](#)
2. [Sheetfed Offset Training Curriculum](#) by Printing Industries of America
3. [Home Made Perfect Bound Book](#) by Rachel Cozy. Also by Go Media:
 - [Choosing the Right Binding Type](#)
 - [Hardcover Bound Book Tutorial](#)
 - [Sewn Bound Book Tutorial](#)
 - [Coptic Stitch Binding Tutorial](#)
 - [Spiral Bound Book Tutorial](#)
4. [Padding Presses and Padding Compound](#)
5. [PDF Manual for Challenge Titan 200 paper cutter](#)
6. [Collating Equipment \(User\) Guide - General Graphics](#)

Other - Printing Related

[Good News Press, Inc](#) - Physical training in offset printing for Missions

[Paper - How it is Made, & Kinds and Weights](#)

[Printing Terms Glossary](#)

[Sheetfed Offset Troubleshooting Guide](#)

[The Offset Pressman Blogspot](#) - Printing problems - causes and solutions

[Glossary of Printing Terms](#) by Ripon Printers

[Press Tips for Running Polyester Plates](#) (toner based from a laser printer) - by Xante

Free Desktop Publishing Software - Internet Download

Word Processing - [Open Office](#) - <http://www.openoffice.org/download/>

Audio Editing - [Audacity](#) - <https://sourceforge.net/projects/audacity/>

Bible Study - [e-Sword](#) - <http://www.e-sword.net/downloads.html>

Online Bibles - [BibleGateway](#) - www.biblegateway.com

Christian Evangelism Online Resources

Living Waters - www.livingwaters.com

Billy Graham Evangelistic Association - [How to Share Your Faith](#)

Discipleship Training and Follow-up for New Converts

[Harvestime International Network](#) - www.harvestime.org

www.realmiracles.org

[Discipleship Tools](#) - <http://www.discipleshiptools.org>

Free Bibles

[Bibles for America](#): Free Recovery Version Bibles as well as Christian literature throughout the United States

[How to Obtain a Free Bible](#) - An guide to getting a Bible

[Daily Bible Reading using the KJV](#) - www.biblestudytools.com

Tract Publishers - Free & for Sale

Lists Only of Free Tract Distributors

World Christian Tract Directory - <http://www.tractlist.com>

World Christian Tract Ministry - http://www.tractministry.com/free_tracts.html

[Free Gospel Tracts Sent Via Snail Mail](#) - This is only a List of Sources - Please don't e-mail Steve Patterson for the tracts

Free - Through the mail, or by downloading PDF documents to print your own tracts

Free Full Color Tracts - <http://www.tracts4u.org>

Word of Life Tracts - <http://www.wordsoflifetracts.com/order-free-tracts/>

World Missionary Press - Free Topical Scripture booklets
<http://www.wmpress.org>

[Free Gospel Tracts - Sharing the Gospel Can Be Easy](#) - Billy Graham

Bible Tracts, Inc. - Free - <http://www.bibletractsincl.org/available-tracts/tracts/>

[Fellowship Tract League](#) - Free

Liberty Gospel Tracts - <http://www.libertygospeltracts.com/>

[Evangelism Explosion International](#) - Quality read online tracts, or free download PDFs

[Pastor John's House](#) - 10 Free tracts per person (72 titles to choose from) - additional tracts sold on Ebay

[Cartoon Tracts](#) - Printed in black and White

For Sale

[American Tract Society / Good News Publishers](#) -
<https://www.crossway.org/tracts/>

Tract League - Almost 300 titles in stock - <http://tractleague.com>

How To Convert Black & White Camera Ready Hard Copy Documents to Printing Press Plates Using a Scanner, Computer with Adobe Photoshop, Laser Printer, and Metal Plate Exposure Box.

Warning Note: *This is a long document / chapter because it gives detailed step by step procedures so a novice working alone can hopefully catch on and learn the procedure with the least amount of frustration.*

An easier and cheaper method - Having to have a [graphics arts camera](#), a [darkroom](#), light sensitive photographic negative film, and chemistry that goes bad and may be hazardous waste is no longer necessary to the small printer operating out of his or her garage or home. The computer will convert photographs into halftones necessary for the offset printing press, and no stripping of negatives into masks or having to fill in unwanted pin holes in developed negatives. Accurate registration of the laser film image to the metal plate is assured by using two pins made from sawed off #20D carpenter's nails the size of the "pinbar" fastening holes in the metal plate, after laser film has been punched using a hand held leather and plastic hole punch for a 5/32" hole. To adapt the document to a particular offset printing press, one will need to know the "plate bend" for the press, and the "gripper bite" or non printable area where the input paper grippers on the impression cylinder of the press hold the paper to pull it through (1/4 to 3/8").

Equipment used to do this: Pentium 4 1.6 GHZ CPU or faster PC computer running Windows XP Professional with Adobe Photoshop CS 2, and Adobe Acrobat Professional 8 or higher installed, and 1 Gigabyte of RAM memory. 1200 by 1200dpi optical resolution Scanner with a high dynamic range of 3.2. We currently use the Epson perfection V500 Photo recommended by PC Magazine. As of 2016, a [model V550](#) is now out. The software for this scanner has a "[Twain](#)" driver that allows one to access the scanner through the Adobe Photoshop program. HP 5000 tabloid monochrome laser printer with parallel port to USB cable for connection to computer. [Kimotodesk](#) 12" by 20" laser film. Positive Development metal plates. A [Nu Arc Ultra Plus flip top plate maker](#) with a 3000 watt mercury vapor light bulb. This machine runs on 220 volts AC power. Note that the modern computers don't have a parallel printer port to use the older HP 5000 laser printer. One can connect the printer using the [Ethernet port](#), or use a [USB to parallel adapter cord](#).

The Original or Hard Copy Document/Artwork - The tract or artwork to be converted should not have jagged edges on the lettering when viewed with a 10x printer's magnifying [loop](#), and the pictures should be photographs and not made of dots. The paper color should be white, but lighter pastel colored paper will work if a document is not camera ready art, but a printed copy. All previously printed artwork should be line art

and not [halftones](#) made of dots because scanning pictures made of halftone or stochastic dots can result in an unwanted [moiré pattern](#) in the pictures. Also, black text will be better than light colored text. Ideally, one would want to make a new document using a page layout program like Adobe Indesign where you type new text and import/place separately scanned photographs or pictures from a [digital camera](#) into “picture boxes” in the page layout program. That way one can plan for a 5% white halftone dot in the heavy solids or shadow areas of the ready to print picture, and 5% black dots in the highlight areas. Also, the file size of the created document would be smaller than that of a scanned document. Using an OCR (optical character recognition) software such as [OmniPage Professional](#) would allow one to convert scanned text of common languages with standard “romance” alphabet characters (e.g., English, French, German, Spanish) to fresh text without retyping the document, and in some cases could take a complicated Adobe Indesign hardcopy printed document and convert it into a Microsoft Word computer document all in one step! **The problem is that some languages like Oriya, a province of India, have rare fonts that may not even be on computer yet, so they can't be retyped by non professional desktop publishers. These are documents that have to be reproduced by high quality scanning.**

It should be noted here that laser printers naturally make better printable [halftone dots](#) when they come with a [Postscript printer driver](#). The HP5000 postscript printer software, in conjunction with earlier versions of [Adobe Photoshop](#) picture editing software, allows custom adjustment of halftone curves when printing the laser film. Most inkjet printer print smaller “stochastic dots” because they don't come with postscript computer software drivers, and the small dots are dissolved away by the caustic/acidic plate developer chemistry. Even if one buys an aftermarket “rip” software that makes halftone dots for the inkjet printer, the new inkjets with pigment based rather than dye based inks don't print or dry well on just any kind of film positive or overhead transparency material. The one disadvantage of the laser printer is that it doesn't make as dark a solid where a lot of toner is laid down. One can try to get around this by not designing documents with large solid areas of color, or by making the area a “screen” of dots rather than a solid.

Scanning the document – *The steps listed from here on are detailed to make it easier to follow.*

Turn on the [scanner](#) and computer and open the Adobe Photoshop CS2 or later Program.

Place the artwork or original face down on the clean scanner glass in the upper right hand corner of the glass, and close the lid.

In Photoshop, click on the “File” pull down menu at the top left and go down to “import” then across to the name of the scanner you are using. The “twain” driver opens the software window for the software that came with the scanner.

In the scanner software window (not Photoshop), choose “Grayscale” & “1200dpi”. Click on the “scan” button. If you are not using the whole area of the scanner glass, you may want to click on preview and draw a marquee around just the area you want to scan.

After scan is complete, the document appears in Photoshop. 1200dpi makes the file size of the finished document over 100 megabytes per letter size page, but when it is converted to a “press quality” Adobe Acrobat PDF document, the file size goes down to about 2 megabytes per page with good quality, but a small enough file size to post the document on a website for quick free downloading, reading, and use by other printers using Adobe Acrobat Reader version 15 which anyone can download for free from <https://get.adobe.com/reader/>. If one wants to add text to a scanned document such as adding a website address, or changing a mailing address, this would be done in Photoshop before making the PDF.

In Photoshop, at the pull down menus across the top, click on “image”, go down to “adjustments”, then across to “levels”. In the window that opens, use the white arrow slider at the right to slide to the left to eliminate unwanted background image until the background behind text is white. Scanned photographs that are not line art should have some dots in the highlight or white areas which can be seen by using the magnifying glass tool in the tools pallet and clicking to enlarge the image; or go to “view” in the pull down menu, then down to “zoom in”. Next, make the image darker for the solids, by sliding the black arrow on the left (in the ‘levels’ window) to the right. If you slide too far, the characters of a foreign alphabet may plug up.

Get rid of unwanted black border marks on the document by using the marquee tool to draw a box around the whole image you want to keep (starting in the upper left corner next to the edge of the good image, click the left mouse button and hold the button down while dragging at an angle down and right until the dashed box covers the whole image you want to keep, but not the unwanted border. Release the mouse button. In the pull down menu across the top of the Photoshop program, select “image” and go down to “crop”. Note: If one is scanning a lot of similar pages, as in reproducing a printed book, one can do a "preview" in the scanner software of the first page, then use the histogram adjustment sliders to make the background lighter, eliminating unwanted background haze for all successive pages in the group.

Now it is time to get rid of all other unwanted background such as dirt specks on the scanner glass. For this, magnify the document to about 400% and use the hand tool or scroll bars along the sides of the program to move the document to the top left corner. In the tool pallet, pick the “eraser” tool and adjust the size/diameter of the erasing circle using the brush button near the top left corner of the program. The darkness of the tool and sharpness can also be selected there. Using the scroll bars, slowly move the document sideways and then down to find unwanted image. Place the cursor circle over the unwanted image and click to delete it or click and drag for image that is larger than the diameter of the circle. To delete larger areas, one can draw a marquee box

using the marquee tool and press delete. If the area becomes black instead of white, go to “edit” then “undo” in the pull down menu. Then go to the bottom left of the tools pallet and click so as to switch the overlapping white and black squares. If you find a black area of good image that needs more black in it, click on and use the “paint brush” tool in the tools pallet.

Now it’s time to straighten the image, usually done by putting a blue line from the ruler at the margins just at the bottom of a line of text in the document. First make sure the ruler margins are showing. If they are not, go to “view” in the pull down menu then down to “rulers”. Move the mouse pointer into the ruler area and click and drag into the document area and a blue line is pulled out to the point you want it (at the bottom of a line of text), then release the left mouse button. If the document is crooked, the document needs to be “rotated”. In the pull down menu, go across to “image” and then down to “rotate canvas” and then across to “arbitrary” In the new window that opens up click on either “clockwise” or “counterclockwise” and type in the amount as a decimal that you want the document to rotate, then click the “ok” button. The normal amount of rotation is usually less than 1%. If the document consists of quadrants of material corresponding to pages of text in a cut and folded document, the different final pages (now being displayed as one sheet) can be rotated individually by drawing a marquee dotted line box around just the area you want to straighten, then going to across to “edit” in the pull down menu, then down to “transform”, then across to “rotate”.

Now it is time to adjust the information on the individual pages to look centered, and to allow for the needed “[gripper bite](#)” or no print area where the printing press bites onto the paper to pull it through the printing cylinders. First print out a copy of the document and fold it to look like the finished cut and folded tract or document. Go to “file” on the pull down menu, then “print one copy”. Determine which areas of text or image need to move to look centered, and by how much. To do this, you will need blue line guides pulled out of the rulers and into the center of the document. On a letter size sheet in the “portrait” mode, for example, click inside the left margin ruler area and drag out a blue line to the 4 ¼” point by watching the top ruler as you draw the line. If the press requires a 3/8” gripper bite, then draw two more lines out and put one 3/8” before and 3/8” after the 4 ¼” center mark. Do the same with the length of the document. Now pull down two more blue lines from the top margin ruler and place one 3/8” down from the top of the document, and the other 3/8” (or less if you are trying to get a church address to fit at the bottom. You now have four quadrants/areas in which to center the text or graphics.

Move the information in a quadrant on the page by drawing a dashed box around the area you want to move using the marquee tool in the top left corner of the tools pallet.

Next, with the outline box still showing, click on the “move” tool to the right of the “marquee tool in the tools pallet. Now you can use the arrow keys on the keyboard to move the selected area by small increments, or, perhaps, with the move tool selected,

you can click the left mouse button and drag the image to where you want it. This second method is faster, but a courser adjustment.

If you like, to get a more realistic view of your adjustments, you can print out more single copies (“file” in pull down menu, then “print one copy”), and cut and fold the paper to see if the final size document looks good.

It is time now to add the plate bend where the metal plate for the printing press leaves the solid metal backing of round the plate cylinder, and curves around to attach to the clamp, “pinbar” pins, or slotted pins to which attach and hold down the plate. Different presses have different plate bend dimensions. I will use 7/8” for demonstration purposes.

The document on the computer screen is shorter than the length of the metal plate, so the canvas size surrounding the document has to be enlarged from a letter size to a legal or tabloid size. Here I will enlarge it to 12” by 20” size since that is the maximum laser film size my HP5000 monochrome laser printer can make, and that is the size of the Acorn brand laser film I ordered. If your laser printer won’t print a tabloid or larger size sheet, it will still print the document, but clip off the excess which is ok since there is no document in that area (extending beyond legal size). It is important to note here that most laser printers have a no print margin also which is usually 3/16” to ¼”. By using the 12” by 20” laser film, the document will work in burning a plate for any press that can print a full bleed tabloid (11” by 17”) sheet providing the gripper margin and plate bend are ok for that press.

Make the canvas size of the Photoshop document larger by going to “view” in the pull down menus, then to “canvas size”. In the new window that opens up type in the width and height of the film positive you plan to use to make a metal plate or the maximum size paper/film your laser printer can handle. For example, I also have a Lanier lp126cn color laser printer. For that I would type in 8.5 “inches” for width, and 20 “inches for height, then click “ok” to close that window.

Now click in the top ruler and drag down two more blue lines, one at a time, setting the first one at the [plate bend](#) measurement for your press (for example, 7/8”). The second blue line will be for the gripper bite or no print top margin area of the document being printed. This blue line will be placed the additional distance of the gripper bite beyond the plate bend line. On my Hamada 550 2 color press, the gripper margin is 5/16+”, so my second blue line will go down 7/8” + 5/16” or at 1 3/16”. When the canvas size was enlarged, the document should have stayed centered side to side, but now the top margin is too much and the scanned document image needs to be moved up so the highest point of image in the document is at the same point it was before the canvas size of the document was increased to the laser film size or the maximum printable width of your laser printer. To do this, use (click on) the “marquee” tool in upper left corner of the tools pallet, and move the mouse cursor/point to the upper left corner of

the image and click and drag down and to the right to make a dashed outline box that covers the whole image in the document, but not the white space beyond the image.

Now click on the move tool in the tools pallet and use only the “up” arrow key on the keyboard to move the document up until the uppermost part of the image/text is the same measurement down from the blue line gripper bend mark as the distance from the top of the document to the beginning of image/text before you enlarged the canvas size. You can also determine this distance by measuring it with a ruler on a printed copy you made of the document before the canvas size was enlarged to the film positive size. When you have adjusted the image up, the image must not extend beyond the gripper margin limit blue line you made.

Adding Text or New Contact Information to the Document - The Photoshop program has a [text tool](#) in the tools pallet which allows you to draw a “text box” by clicking and dragging with the mouse, then typing in the box starting where the flashing cursor is located. When the text box is highlighted or has squares at the corners, it can be moved using the arrow keys on the keyboard, or enlarged by clicking and dragging on one of the little boxes around the perimeter. The task bar above the pull down menus allows you to select the point size of the type, the type of font, and the sharpness of the lettering (this is how you get a bold face type?). When you make a text box, a second layer with a “T” in it appears in the layers pallet. When working on the non text parts of the document, one must click on “background” in the “layers” pallet in order to do the work, or go down the *Layers* pull down menu tab to Merge Visible, or Flatten Image.

On the last document I scanned, I only needed to add the website address (something new that didn’t exist years ago when the document was first designed and printed). In this case, I had to experiment to find a font or typeface and sharpness that matched the existing text. I also had to adjust the position of just the scanned address before adding the website address so that the end result (all the address text together) would look centered in its area of the page. Remember also that you need to have at least 1/8” of space from the bottom of the address to the bottom of the printed sheet; otherwise, if your cutter is off or the registration of your printing press not accurate, you might not have enough bottom margin on the finished printed, cut and folded tract or document. I moved just the scanned address information text by drawing a marquee around it with the “marquee” tool, and then using the move tool and keyboard arrows to move the address where I wanted it to look the best and to make room for the additional line of text (the website address). If you are adding so much information that it won’t all fit, you should draw a marquee around the whole address, then press the “delete” key on your computer keyboard to eliminate that area of image without moving the rest of the document out of position or alignment. Then draw a text box in the cleared area and select a condensed (e.g., Arial Narrow) typeface, or a smaller size type point size to get more information in the same space. However, if type smaller than 6 point size is used,

it may not print clearly on some laser printers, and it may be too small for some people to read without glasses.

Work and Tumble, or Work and Turn – Laying out a Document so it Prints with One Press Plate Instead of Two Plates.

A four page tract with a cut and folded size of 4 ¼" wide by 5 ½" tall can be made to print "2 up" (two per letter size sheet) on one, rather than two printing plates, by making it a work and tumble. The same is true of a "4 up" smaller tract with a finished size of 2 ¾" wide by 4 ¼" tall by making it a "work and turn". Making one or the other means that only one printing plate is used, and when the paper is turned or tumbled 180 degrees, the backside of the sheet can be printed with accurate registration of the image without having to adjust the press plate cylinder to make a new alignment of the image.

To make a work and tumble from a single finished 4 ¼" wide by 5 ½" tall tract, open the tract flat and scan the outsides, and then the insides as a second scan. When scanning the inside, scan it upside down. The two scans will be two documents or windows in Photoshop and you should be able to select "select" from the pull down menu, then go down to "all", then select "edit" from the pull down menu and go down to "cut". The document or image disappears and goes to the "clipboard" on the computer where you can't see it. Then go to the other document or the scan of the outside and make sure the canvas size is letter or legal or tabloid size by going to "image" in the pull down menu, then down to "canvas size", then changing the dimensions there to make enough room for the hidden image that will be "pasted" into the document on a separate "layer" from the "clipboard". In the first scan of the outside of the tract, after you have adjusted the canvas size, go to "edit" in the pull down menus, then down to "paste". The inside part of the tract appears along with the outside, but has to be moved into position. In the "layers" pallet make sure the new layer (not "background") is blue or selected or "highlighted". Use the "move" tool in the upper right hand corner of the tools pallet, then use the keyboard arrow keys to move the document into position using the blue lines you placed at the center of the document as a guide. A simpler approach is to scan two unfolded identical tracts together at the same time with the inside of the second tract against the scanner glass and upside down below the outside facing normally above it with the two tracts held together with clear tape in the area beyond the image where the two tracts touch each other.

When you go to make a final "save as" from the "file" pull down menu to give the document a name and a location on your hard drive where you can find it in the future, you may want to go to "layers" in the pull down menu and go down to "flatten image". This will merge the layers into one to make the document a smaller file size before you make a PDF of it for e-mailing to someone; but there may be the disadvantage of not being able to edit the text you added.

One last scanning tip. You may be able to use “filter” in the pull down menu, then go down to “sharpen” and magnify your image before you do this and see if the edges of your text in the scanned image are made smoother or less blurry.

Sept. 2015 Note: About the year 2000, when I first started converting hard copy or pre printed documents to computer medium, I didn't know how to fully utilize the Adobe Photoshop program. Following the graphic arts tradition of pasting text and art pieces on a copy board using a light table (or drafting board) and a T square and triangle, I assembled what the industry called *camera ready artwork*. Later I realized that I could combine pieces and text in Photoshop where each added or placed piece went on a new layer. By selecting a layer and drawing a dotted rectangle around the artwork with *Marquee* item selection tool, I could then click on the *Move* tool and use the keyboard arrow keys to move the art object in small increments in four directions. I could go down the *Layer* pull down menu and merge the layers, then still move individual pieces. I could also use *Image* and *Rotation* or *Edit* and *Free Transform*. to twist and straighten or *Warp* images to improve the document quality without the need of a *T square*. I found it even easier to align the various parts in the Adobe Indesign page layout program using similar tools, including *Effects* in the *Object* pull down menu. I used to physically assemble all the parts on a paste pr poster board, then scan the result for my computer document that would be used to print a laser film from which I would image a printing press plate.

Now I realize that I don't have to do that much hand assembly work when I can use the computer to do it! My wife and I took comb-bind textbooks that were repeatedly copied photocopied, since the 1970's, apparently, without maintaining a set of master copies to reproduce the books from by the old method of laying each page on the glass of a photo copy machine. The results were successively deteriorating text quality, unwanted background spots from dirt on the copier glass, drooping lines of text, and even missing portions of letters. By using our advanced knowledge of Photoshop, we were able to make the printed copy look better than the originals we were given to print from. The documents are now on computer medium for future printings. The file size of the books is rather large, but we can convert the collective scanned images of each book page to a *Standard* quality PDF book document so much smaller in file size that it can be used to post on a website as an *e-book*. A further step would be to try and use an OCR (optical character recognition) computer software program to convert the improved *camera ready* book image documents to fresh computer text. After correcting a few misinterpreted words by the program, one would have the equivalent of having retyped the whole document in the familiar, editable Microsoft Word program, with a file size of about two megabytes or less, well suitable for posting on the internet for an *online* university. Also adjusting the PDF making setting to be compatible with the later versions of Adobe Acrobat Reader, will further reduce the file size of the document for a quicker internet download of the converted to PDF computer document.

A Work and Tumble job layout sample - In April of 2016, Stephen from New Zealand e-mailed me about finishing the design of the two tracts he had written and laid out for A4 size paper in the Microsoft Word [word processing program](#). He had each side of the tract on a separate page, and I could tell right away he could combine the two pages into one with the second page information placed in the lower half of the first page, only upside down. The result is that one can print the Gospel tract from a one page computer document, then flip the paper 180 degrees on the long side, and print the same image again. The paper is cut in half and folded in thirds to make two tracts per sheet. When a film and printing plate is made for an offset printing press, one need only make one metal plate per color of ink (instead of two), and only have to register the image to the paper being printed once rather than twice (when a separate plate is used for the tract's backside. Below is a reduced size (to fit on this page) .tif file format image of the finished tract document.

So What Must I Do To Go To Heaven?

Entry into heaven is receive by faith. Faith is not head knowledge. Saving faith is declaring that Jesus is Lord, believing & trusting in what God has done for you.

The Bible says:

Romans 10:9-12 If you declare with your mouth "Jesus is Lord," and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For it is with your heart that you believe and are justified, and it is with your mouth that you profess your faith and are saved.

A suggested prayer you can declare out loud sincerely:

Dear God, I admit I am a sinner & I realize I cannot save myself. I am sorry & I repent from all my sinful ways. I declare that Jesus is Lord. I believed it's your love, mercy & grace through Jesus shedding his blood, death & resurrection that saves me from eternal hell. Thank you for cleansing & forgiving all my sins. By faith I put my trust in Jesus alone for my eternity in heaven. Come into my life now, help me know you, obey you and turn from my sinful ways. In Jesus name, Amen.

If you have said that prayer the bible says:

John 1:12 But as many as received Him, to them He gave the right to become children of God, to those who believe in His name.

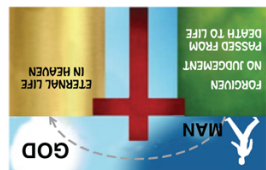
The next thing to do is to be baptized. Contact your local church pastor who can assist you with baptism.

The Bible says:

Acts 8:12 But when Philip proclaimed the good news about the kingdom of God and about the name of Jesus the Messiah, men and women believed and were baptized. ...

Evil ways. Romans 3:25 For God presented Jesus as the sacrifice for sin. People are made right with God when they believe that Jesus sacrificed his life, shedding his blood. John 5:24 Truly, truly I said to you, he who hears my word & believes Him who sent me has never- lasting life & does not come into judgement but has passed from death into life.

The Bible says:



5. Because God is also LOVE, INTERLUDE & GRACIOUS, He does not want man to be in hell. So God sacrificed his son Jesus who is both God & man, who took our sins, shed his blood, died & man, who took our sins, shed his blood, died on the cross, was buried, rose on the 3rd day & ascended to heaven. By this our sins were forgiven & we passed from the second death into eternal life in heaven.

Tell Your Loved Ones & Friends Before It's Too Late!

There are 2 instances people will miss going to heaven.

1. When people die suddenly without any chance to hear & receive God's gift of eternal life. E.g. heart attack, freak accident, plane crash, earth quake, etc...
2. When Jesus returns suddenly to earth to receive all who believe in Him to heaven. It's too late at that time.

The Bible says:

Matthew 24:39-44 That is how it will be at the coming of the Son of Man. Two men will be in the field; one will be taken and the other left. Two women will be grinding with a hand mill; one will be taken and the other left. So you also must be ready, because the Son of Man will come at an hour when you do not expect him.

2 Corinthians 6:2 For he says, "In the time of my favor I heard you, and in the day of salvation I helped you." I tell you, NOW is the time of God's favor, NOW is the day of salvation.

Contact us at:

entry2heaven@gmail.com

1. If you have said that prayer. We would like to send you information on how you can know and experience God's peace and joy in your everyday life.
2. If you would like to distribute or donate to printing these tracts so that others will know God's gift of eternal life in heaven & be saved from eternal hell.

Distributed by:



Mark 9:48 In hell worms that eat the body never die, and the fire is never put out. Revelation 14:10-15 This is the second death, the lake of fire, and if anyone's name was not found in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire. Hebrews 9:27 And it is appointed for man to die once, and after this the judgement. Romans 3:23 For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God. Ephesians 2:8,9 For by grace you have been saved through faith, it is NOT your own doing, it is the gift of God, lest anyone should boast.

The Bible says:



1. In the beginning when God created man, they had a good relationship. However that relationship was broken when man sinned against (dis-obeyed) God. Because God is HOLY & JUST sin must be dealt with. So man was separated and will face judgement at the end of life.

Galatians 2:16 Yet we know that a person is made right with God by faith in Jesus Christ, NOT by obeying the law. And we have believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be made right with God because of our faith in Christ, NOT because we have obeyed the law. For NO ONE will ever be made right with God by obeying the law.

The Bible says:



7. Man thinks he can go to heaven by obeying the 10 commandments, going to church or tithing, fasting, praying, punishing oneself, charity works, etc. However the bible says entry into heaven is a gift from God. There is nothing we can do to save ourselves.

Making a PDF (Adobe Acrobat Reader) Document from a Photoshop, Page Layout Program, or Microsoft Office document

Why? – A 1200dpi quality scanned image is over 100 megabytes per letter size page which is too large to send as an e-mail attachment or to post on a website where it would take an abnormal amount of time to upload or download. The same document, converted to a “press quality” PDF format is universally acceptable to any computer having the [Adobe Acrobat Reader](#) program available for free as a short download from the www.adobe.com website. One can even get permission from Adobe to distribute the reader program with your PDF documents to save the recipient from having to download it from adobe (in cases where they might not have internet access to do the download, the program can be transferred in a camera flash memory card, a thumb drive, portable hard drive, CD, or DVD.) Also, without the full version of Acrobat, one can only open the document and not alter the text content by typing. Also, using the full version necessary to make the conversion to a PDF, can allow the creator to insert an invisible text box in which the recipient who has only the limited Acrobat Reader, to click in the area of that box and type in a custom address or Church contact information for his local area where the tracts are being distributed. To perform the following conversion to PDF one will need the full version of Adobe Acrobat, or an equivalent such as [Scan Soft PDF maker](#) that comes with the [Omnipage Professional](#) OCR program.

Open the program that created the document (e.g. Photoshop, [Jasc Paint Shop Pro](#), Adobe Indesign, Microsoft Word, [Word Perfect](#), [Open Office](#), [Quark Xpress](#), [Adobe Pagemaker](#)), then open the document to be converted to PDF. Go to “File” in the pull down menu, then down to “Print” In the window that opens, for the printer, choose Adobe PDF (usually at the top of the list). In the same window, click on the “properties” button. When the new window opens, you should be on the “Adobe PDF Settings” tab. Under “default settings” choose “[Press Quality](#)”. In the list of checked boxes on the left, uncheck the box “Rely on system fonts only; do not use document fonts”. Doing this prevents the receiving computer from being unable to display typed fonts in the document that are not installed on the receiving computer. Click on the “layout” tab and choose either “portrait” or “landscape”. Now click on the “Paper/Quality” tab then click on the “black and white” bullet or circle next to the words. Click on the “advanced” button. In the new window make sure the highest output quality of your laser printer is selected. In my case, my scanned document was 1200 dpi and my HP5000 monochrome tabloid size laser printer can output 1200dpi, so I selected “1200dpi”. Also, select the paper size of the document you are converting (letter, legal, tabloid, or “postscript custom page size” if Photoshop “[canvas size](#)” of your document was enlarged to 12” by 20”. The “Edit Custom Page Size” button will open a window where you can type in the exact dimensions.

At this point you need to decide if the PDF document will be used to print on a laser printer, or to make a film positive from which a metal plate will be made for the printing press. For making a laser film positive, we need to do a “flip horizontal” or select “yes” under “mirror output” in the typed list under “Postscript Options” (a drop down list which is opened by clicking on the check box to the left with a “+” sign in it if the additional options aren’t showing. “Mirror image” makes the typing “read wrong” or backwards. When the film positive is flipped over to read right for exposing the metal plate, the toner is now on the bottom of the film, closer to the metal surface to eliminate any fuzziness or magnification caused by the thickness of the film if the toner were on top of the film. Click on the “OK” button to close the window. Now the “Print” window is showing. Click on the “print” button. The computer starts making the PDF document and then a window opens for you to give a name to the document and choose a place on the hard drive of your computer (or an external hard drive attached to the computer. To keep the computer’s main “C” drive from getting overloaded, keeping the operating system and programs on the main drive is recommended, while storing all documents on a [high speed external hard drive](#) (7200rpm with a “[fire wire](#)”, “[USB 2.0 or 3.0](#)”, or “[SATA](#)” interface/ cable; or [Ethernet](#) cable for network drives like the Western Digital *My Book*). We are currently using the Western Digital 2 terabyte *My Book Live* external network storage drive connected to our Belkin N600 wireless “n” [router](#) which makes the network of home computers wireless. Our newest Epson Artisan wide format network printer is wireless.

When the PDF document has been created, your computer will open the Adobe Acrobat program and then the newly created PDF document so you can check it for clarity and accuracy of reproduction. If you use the drop down menu and go to “Document Properties” you will see that the file size of the document is now only a few megabytes!

Note: I encountered a problem where the two color separations made in making a PDF from Adobe Indesign CS2 showed unwanted “artifacts” bulging out from the edges of a few words of magenta text. This was not a fault of Acrobat Professional, but something in the color separations part of the Indesign print software. I could make a composite CMYK or RGB color PDF from the same Indesign document and the type was ok, but then some parts of the artwork on that page (the cement between the bricks) was missing. Evidently, making a perfect PDF isn’t always guaranteed so checking the PDF you made in the Acrobat program is recommended.

In my experience, there are times when Acrobat 9 Professional will not properly convert a special effects graphic intensive Indesign document to PDF. I found two ways around this problem. The first is, in the Adobe Indesign CS5 *File* pull down menu, go down to *Export*, rather than *Print*, followed by *PDF*, as the printer designation. In the new window that opens when Clicking on *Export*, under *Save as type:*, choose JPEG. Click the *Save* button to close that window and open the next window where you decide

whether you are making a lower quality image of the Indesign document for someone to approve it, or, to make an online reading document (*Low or Medium* and 200 dpi, *RGB* color space, quality settings); or, a document to be printed from on a quality color laser printer or printing press (*High or Maximum, 1200 dpi* settings). Then click on Export and find and view the converted JPEG image document in Adobe Photoshop, or equivalent picture viewing software. The resulting document will be quality, but a larger file size than an equivalent PDF file format document. The second alternate method of making a PDF without errors is to go down the *File* menu in Indesign to *Export*, but, under *Save as Type*., choose *Adobe PDF*. Click on *Save* to close that window. In the next window that opens, save the document. In the third window that opens, click on *Compression* in the list on the left. In the center of the window change the *Color Images, Grayscale Images, and Monochrome Images* to *None*. Locate and open the converted document file in the free internet download program Adobe Acrobat Reader 11, or an equivalent aftermarket PDF reader. In the CD bargain software bin at an office supply store, I found a PDF making software for \$4! Microsoft Office Word and Publisher 2010 come with a built in PDF converter button. Also, there is a free online upgrade for Office 2007 for this. The new free [Apache Open Office](#) version 4.11 alternative to Microsoft Office, includes a PDF converter.

My reasoning, in following the above steps is that, if the ingredients of the conversion are not compressed, there will be fewer or no errors in the results. Since true page layout programs cost hundreds of dollars and most computer users don't design graphics rich documents, they won't buy these programs. That makes a potential barrier of communication between the desktop publisher and the clients he or she designs documents for. Converting the complex document to an image or PDF, opens a world-wide standard or medium for sharing documents.

Using the Full Version of the Adobe Acrobat Computer Program to Make a Text Box in a Document so Recipients having only the Free Acrobat Reader, can Type a Custom Address / Contact Information in the Box

The Standard Acrobat Reader (now in version 11) is a free download from the Adobe website www.adobe.com. It allows one to open PDF documents, and to fill in form documents like tax papers with type in the box or on the line "fields". The full version (e.g., Acrobat 8 Professional) allows one to make these type in the blank space fields. One can also, it appears, if he has a full version OCR ([Optical Character Recognition software](#)) like Abby Fine Reader or Omnipage Pro) to export PDF (Adobe Acrobat) documents back into a word processing program where they can be edited.

Here I am showing you how to use the full version of Acrobat to make a hidden text box for a church address or contact information in a white area at the end of a tract. Then recipient of the document can, with only the Acrobat Reader, click in that area, see a flashing text insertion "cursor" appear, then type lines of pre determined point size text

with the ability to make each line a regular, **bold** or *italicized* style. It won't matter whether the adding an address capability is being done to a document made in a page layout program before it was converted to PDF, or whether it was made by scanning a hard copy document into Adobe Photoshop then turning it into a PDF.

Begin by Opening the full version of Acrobat. Here I am using version 8 Professional. In the pull down menu, go to "File" then "Open" then locate and open the PDF document you wish to create a "hidden" add text box in. For my test, I went to the www.tracts4u.com website and opened the "[KYF 2nd ed 96 percent](#)" document because on the first "signature" (first page of the document) on the back page of the tract booklet there is a black box with "Complements of:" in it – a designated place for a Church address.

In the pull down menus across the top of the [Acrobat 9 Professional](#) program, I went to "Tools" then down to "Fields", then to the right and down to "Text Field Tool". Clicking on "Text Field Tool" changes the mouse pointer arrow or cursor into a set of small cross hairs.

Move the cross hairs cursor to where you want to draw a box for inserting text, then left click the computer mouse and drag down and across and let go when the box is the size you want. The box will now have the words "Text 1" in it. Click once inside the box and the box will turn a red color. You can resize the box by moving the cursor over one of the little red squares on the perimeter of the box then clicking the mouse and dragging that line in or out to resize the box. Clicking and dragging diagonally on a corner of the box enlarges or shrinks the box proportionally (the width and height move by the same amount).

Now "double click" the mouse in the box, and a new window opens titled "Text Field Properties". Under the "General" tab, next to "Form field:", select "Visible". Now click on the "Appearance" Tab. The "Border Color" and "Fill Color" settings should have a red slash through the check box. I selected "6 point" for "Font Size" since the KYF address box is so small. I was able to get 4 lines of text in that area using 6 point. For "Font" I selected "Helvetica". If your computer doesn't have Helvetica, "Arial" may be more common, and "Arial Narrow" allows more text to be put on a line. For type color I selected "Black" since people printing a document on a monochrome (black only) printer, can't print a color; (even though the computer may create it, but it would turn from a color to a gray when printed on a monochrome printer).

Go to the "Options" tab in the "Text Field Properties" window and check only the boxes "Multi-line", "Allow Rich Text Formatting", and "Check Spelling". Also Choose one of the three text block alignment options: left, center, right. On the KYF document, I chose "Left". On other larger tracts with more room for an address, like the "Why John 3:16?" Spanish version located under the "Products" tab of the www.tracts4u.com website, I would choose "Center".

Click on the next tab, “Actions”, I left the settings as is with “Mouse Up” and “Execute a File”.

On the next tab, “Format”, I left it as is with “None” showing.

On the last two tabs, “Validate” and “Calculate”, I left them as is with a green dot in “Filed is not validated”.

Now Test if you can type in the box you made. First click on the “I beam/black arrow” button at the top of the Acrobat program to make the red/black text insertion box you made go into hiding. This changes the mouse pointer/cursor into an “I beam” for inserting text.

Place the “I beam” cursor in the upper left corner of where your hidden text box starts, and a flashing text insertion point appears. Type something on the first line. I typed in “HIS Print Media Ministries”. I decided I wanted this to be bold face type, so, before I began typing, I right clicked the mouse at the place the cursor was flashing and a drop down menu opened and I moved the cursor down to “Text Style”, then to the right and clicked on “bold”. When I typed the first line it was done in bold. I didn’t want the second line to be bold, but regular. At the end of the first line I typed in, I hit the “Enter” key on the keyboard, and the cursor moved to the beginning of the next line. If the cursor doesn’t move when you do this and the computer speaker makes a noise, use the “Down Arrow” key on the computer keyboard. At that point I right clicked the mouse and went down to “Text Styles” again, then across to “Clear Formatting”. The rest of the lines I typed were regular typeface.

Now you can see that the text goes in the appropriate hidden box. You may want to print a copy of that page of the document to make sure the text box you made doesn’t print with the text and that the text does print.

Now click and drag across the text you inserted as a test and press the “delete” key on the keyboard. Go to “File” in the pull down menu and “save” the changes to the document you made. If you want to go back and make changes to your hidden text box in the full version of Acrobat, you will have to go to “Tools” on the pull down menus, then down to “Fields”, then across to “Text Field Tool”. When you click on that the hidden text box(s) in the document will become visible and you can double click in them and edit them.

Note: In the *Text Field Properties* window, under the *General* tab, under *Form Field*, I chose from the list, *Hidden But Printable*. Under the *Actions* tab, for *Trigger*, I chose Mouse Enter. Under *Select Action*, I chose *Show/Hide a Field*. My interpretation is that a reader of the PDF on the computer will move the computer mouse cursor over the area where the added text field is located and it will become visible, and the words *Add Church Contact Info Here* will be visible in the box, and a flashing I beam cursor will appear showing that text can be typed inside the field. I believe that, when the document is printed with the added text inside the field, the reader added text will print

with the rest of the document, but the form field box will not be printed. You should tell the recipient of the document that:

1. There is a hidden text insertion box there.
2. One must click in that area with the mouse pointer (it turns into an “I beam” when moved into the area of the hidden text box) to start typing.
3. To change the style of the type (regular, bold, Italic, etc.), one must right click on the flashing cursor on that line, then go down to “Type Style” and across to desired selection; or click and drag over the line of type after it has been typed, then right click and go down to “Type Style”.

The growing trend now (2012), is electronic multi-media publications made to be read on computers, computer hand held *tablets*, and *smart phones*. These are called [E-books](#). The simplest form is a read order Adobe Acrobat Reader PDF file. I stated making these by converting my existing page layout documents from something good for printers, to something for readers. I first made a new Adobe Indesign CS5 document with a page size in Document Setup and Layout & Margins that matches a single page or column in the printer’s document. I then add blank pages. I select a page to copy and insert into the new read order document. I choose the black arrow toll from the Indesign tools palette, and draw a marquee around all the items on the page to highlight or select all the items on a page. I then go to *Object* in the pull down menu and choose group. I then go to the *Edit* pull down menu and go down to *copy*. I go to the first blank page in the new document and paste in the contents with *paste* located under the *Edit* pull down menu. After transferring or copying the whole document and saving it, I go to File pull down menu and then Print, then Adobe PDF. I go to Properties and choose *Standard* for quality rather than *Press Quality*, because computer screens can only display something like 72dpi resolution. The PDF file is a lot smaller than the Indesign file and will take less time for someone to download or open from my website to read. After reading the documents under the new *E-book & E-tract* headings I made on our website, one can choose to e-mail the document to someone else as an attachment, go to the printer’s version of the document and make the printed document to distribute, or contact us to have the documents printed for and shipped to them for a fee.

I have seen PDF making software in a bargain bin at an office supplies store for as low as \$4. A software titled *Win2PDF* is available for free for evaluation or non-commercial use at: www.win2pdf.com.

In October of 2015, my wife and I were asked to make 15 copies of a 330 page letter half size paperback book, converting it to a letter size comb bind book with a custom cover for a Bible University. It took days of work, even though the we copied from was of good quality. Cutting the glued spine off so the pages lay flat in the scanner would have helped. I made a test and found that scanning at 600 dpi 8bit gray scale was better that the 300dpi we had previously been doing on other books. Scanning at 600 dpi results in

each page being 23 megabyte tiff file format image. The scanned pages were cleaned, straightened, and enlarged to letter size in Adobe Photoshop CS5, then *placed* in the proper order into Adobe Indesign.

The resulting book document file size was a whopping 10+ gigabytes, more than the available [RAM](#) working memory in my computer. I knew from experience that I would not be able to print to the color laser printer from such a big file size job as the printing speed would slow down. I had learned that if I made a PDF of the document, it would transfer to the printer faster and print faster. I also knew that the print to PDF choices in my printer driver software allowed choosing a range of quality settings ranging from [Smallest File Size to Standard, High Quality Print, and Press Quality](#). I learned that if I *optimized* the scanned images of the pages *placed* in Indesign document, the file size would be reduced, but the printed images could look fuzzy and not sharp. I was right about that.

I also wanted to make a read order [PDF Interactive e-book](#) to put on a CD disk, or post on the University's website should they decide to offer online courses. This would mean drastically reducing the PDF file size. I tried making a *Standard* quality PDF with *Optimized* images. The file size was reduced to an amazing 75 megabytes (approximate number), which would easily fit on a CD ROM disk, but was probably too large for a downloadable from the internet e-book. (The free Word Press software we used to create our website has a maximum file upload size of 100 megabytes) I magnified this PDF document in Adobe Acrobat Professional 9. I decided it wasn't good enough quality for printing the requested fifteen books. I then tried the *High Quality Print* conversion to PDF and it was OK. I may have also tried the *Press Quality Setting* with a complete download of the images and no *Optimize*. The result was a file size in the 200 megabyte range. In my opinion, it printed the books at the printer's maximum speed and the quality was as good as the sample page I had printed directly from the Indesign document without converting it to a PDF. The file size had been reduced from 10,200 megabytes down to less than 300 megabytes. This shows the value of the PDF file format. First, It can reduce file size (while maintaining readability) for posting the document on a website for downloading or online reading, or sending it by e-mail attachment. Second, it has become a universal file format that works on PC and Mac computers, as well as smart phones and various electronic tablet formats or brands. Thirdly, the basis Acrobat Reader software is available as a free internet download from the website www.adobe.com.

Here is an example of making a *press quality* PDF document from my Adobe Indesign page layout document. I began helping the Free Tract Society of Los Angeles by designing two color tract documents for them to print. A woman named Priscilla had written a three-fold letter size testimony tract in Microsoft Word. FTS referred her to me. I transferred her information to Adobe Indesign where I could make it a two color document preferred by Free Tract. When I made a *press quality* PDF using the

Indesign and color laser printer *Post Script* print software, I was able to choose *Adobe PDF*, *negative*, and *flip horizontal (emulsion side down)*, *trapping* (an overlap where the colors meet), and *separations*, where I chose the two Pantone Matching System *spot* colors I used in the document. The *embedded* into the document images and fonts were included in the PDF. After viewing the resulting PDF in the Adobe Acrobat Program on my computer, I sent the document by e-mail attachment to a company in Southern California that uses an expensive [*image setter*](#) machine that converts a computer document to pressman's negative. They mail the negatives to FTS in another city, and bill them. FTS strips the negatives into a yellow paper mask and uses the negatives to transfer the image to metal printing plates by way of a light exposure box. I prefer to do the computer designing, and the Free Tract Society gets their hands dirty running the printing press. The ability to make a PDF document helped make this all possible.

You probably noticed the blue underlined text throughout this book document. These are clickable [*URL hyperlinks*](#) to places or further information on the Internet or World Wide Web. They can be accessed when one is reading the book on a computer or tablet/SMART electronic device that can connect to the internet by a cable connection, or wirelessly by [*WiFi*](#). When one holds the mouse cursor over the special writing then holds down the control key on the keyboard and clicks the computer mouse, the reader is taken to the place on the Internet where the extra information is located displayed. I believe, that on a *smart* phone or tablet with a touch screen, one simply taps a finger on the blue *hyperlinked* text to go online to view the additional information. The reason I am mentioning this is that, when a book document containing these [*hyperlinks*](#) is exported or printed from Microsoft Word to a [*PDF Interactive*](#), document, the *hyperlinks* can be made to carry over into the Adobe Acrobat document, making an interactive e-book.

With the Word document containing the hyperlinks open or displayed on the computer screen, click on the circle in the upper left hand corner (Microsoft Word version 2007) of the program window. Go down to *Save As*, then across to *PDF*. A new window opens for you to choose where you want to save the PDF document being created, and give it a name. If one goes down to *Print*, instead, and then chooses *PDF*, he can choose [*Optimize*](#) to make the document a smaller file size (of acceptable display quality) for a faster internet download or transfer of the document. When the document is opened in Adobe Acrobat Reader, the blue hyperlink text appears. When one puts the computer mouse cursor over the text, a hand icon appears. Then click with the mouse and, by internet, the extra content is downloaded and displayed. The type of additional material can be audio, video, text, or HTML (Internet coding language for display of online material).

March 2016 Update - In scanning university textbooks to make PDF e-books of a small but readable file size for posting on the internet for online students, I found I got the best

compromise of acceptable readable quality and smaller file size, if I used Acrobat Professional 9 custom adjustments as follows:

JPEG compression: Automatic

Quality: Medium

Resolution: 144 dpi.

Compatibility with earlier versions of Acrobat: Acrobat version 9 or later.

If pictures look fuzzy, increasing the resolution to 300 may solve the problem.

Making a Laser Film Positive from a Computer Document

The laser printer must be connected to the computer and turned on. One will use the “bypass tray” for the thicker and larger laser film material. The following steps will be based on the [HP Laserjet 5000](#). In the page layout, word processing, or Photo processing program, Choose the “File” pull down menu and go down to “print”. In the “printer” window that opens, under “Name” select from the list “HP Laserjet 5000 PS. You want to use the postscript level 3 driver if one is available for your computer as it allows you to do the “flip horizontal” and make decent size and dark enough “halftone dots” that convert photographs to printable medium. Click on the “properties” button. You should be in a new window on the “Layout” tab. Select either “portrait” or “landscape”, print only on one side. Click on the “Paper/Quality” tab. IN the new window, next to “Media Source” select “Tray 1 manual”. Next to “Media”, choose “cardstock”. Click on the “Advanced” button and select the highest quality settings, for example, “Pro Rez 1200”. If the document you are printing from is not a PDF that is already a read wrong or “flip horizontal” document as you look at it on the computer screen, then you will want to select, under “Postscript Options”, “Mirrored Image: Yes”. Click the “Ok” button to close the window. Click the next window’s “Ok” button to send the document to the printer. Open and fold out the manual feed trays (input and output) on the turned on and warmed up printer, then insert the film positive material down to the paper stop and adjust the paper side guides so the paper is not loose in the tray.



Press the green “Go” button. How long the printer takes to receive and process the information from the computer and begin printing depends on the speed of the CPU processor chip in the printer, the amount of RAM memory installed, the type of connection to the computer (a Category 5 network connection with a crossover cable to a single computer or a hub for multiple computers, or a USB to parallel converter cable will be faster than a parallel to parallel connection. Some modern computers no longer have a “parallel printer port”). I have the maximum 100 megabytes of RAM in the HP5000. Even so, in the past, on a slower computer (900 MHZ CPU), with only a Parallel to Parallel connection, a high quality scanned prison art document that was over 100 megabytes in file size, sometimes took over 30 minutes to print a single page! The HP5000 is a slower printer because it was made in about 2000 and only has a 166MHZ speed CPU.

Check the printed film positive for darkness of image, especially in heavy solid areas, and for detail in the highlight areas of images (there should be some dots throughout the white areas of artwork, but not in the background of text unless someone purposely typed text over a screened or picture background). The Image can be darkened by spraying the toner side of the film with either White Rain brand hair spray, or Krylon brand clear satin acrylic (item number 1919?), or Sprayway [Toner Aid](#) aerosol. The spray fuses the toner together to make it darker, but using too much can make the

image fuzzy. Trying to darken the solids with a Sharpie black marking pen doesn't seem to help as the slight difference in shades of black between the toner and the pen can show on the exposed and developed metal plate. The manufacture of the metal plate developer chemistry told me one could put "[Rubylith](#)" or a piece of golden rod masking sheet over the solid black area to keep it from being exposed in the plate maker. On positive development metal plates, areas not exposed to the bright exposure light don't soften and dissolve out by the developer chemistry.

Look also for unwanted or stray toner particles in the printed film positive/laser film. They can probably be removed by scraping them off with a safety razor blade or Xacto brand knife. If not, there are deletion pens (fine tipped and wide tipped) that quickly dissolve the unwanted artifacts or alignment cross hairs off the plate. Be sure to use plate cleaner on a cotton pad to wipe the area after using the deletion pen, or the area could attract ink.

Note: If the text is dark on the film positive, but the "halftones" (pictures converted to press printable medium by using dots), are lacking a sufficient amount of dots (10%) in the highlight areas, one might want to go back to the finished Photoshop document made from a scanned image and draw a marquee around just the picture using the mouse and marquee tool. Then just that area or picture can be darkened to make more dots in the highlight area by using the adjustment sliders found under the "Image" pull down menu, then "Adjust Levels". On documents where the picture was "placed" for a stored place on the computer into a "picture box" in a page layout program like Adobe Indesign, one can go to the "Links" pallet, locate the image you want to adjust, click on it to select it, then click on the arrow in the upper right corner of the Links pallet and go down to "unembed file". Then go to "edit original" and click on it. The Photoshop or picture editing program will open, then the image so you can adjust it. After making the desired adjustments in the photo editing program, go to "File" and down to "save" to save the new version where it is being saved on your computer's hard drive. When you do this, the result automatically shows in Adobe Indesign. Then go back to the links pallet, click on the arrow in the upper right corner, and go down to and click on "embed file". Doing this makes sure all images stay with the document and don't have to be sent in a separate folder along with the document, when sending the document to someone else.

2012 update regarding *The Poor Man's Image Setter*

By using the 1999 or later HP 5000N or 5100N wide format monochrome laser printer, one can make film positives on 12" by 20" (or 12" x 18" or smaller) non photographic clear acetate or polyester film. The legal size film material can also be used. The film is then used to transfer the image to a positive development aluminum metal plate of the required size for the offset printing press one is using. The image will have to have about 7/8+" of top margin above the artwork or text at the top of the page to allow for gripper bite and plate bend. This is a non printable area. The gripper bite is

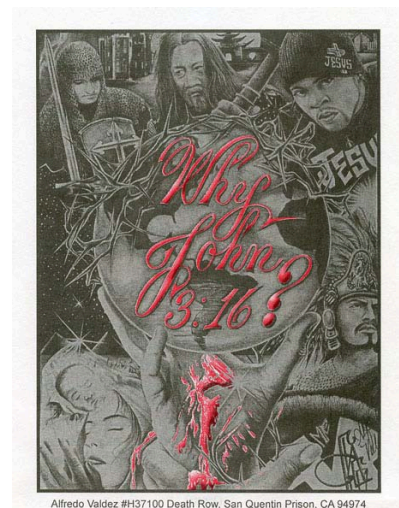
the 1/4 to 3/8" at the top of the sheet where the press bites onto the paper and carries it through to the output tray. Too little no print area means that some of the type will be so high up on the plate cylinder of the press that there will not be a solid backing beneath the plate, or beneath the blanket on the blanket cylinder. Placing the image too low on the film and plate will result in an unwanted horizontal line of ink at the top of the sheet that develops after running as few as 600 sheets.

When using the HP machine to image the film, one chooses custom page size for the 12" x 20" film. The film is placed in the manual feed tray, as a *flip horizontal*, using *cardstock* as the type of material being printed on. The HP machine is available used for about \$400. Get the maximum RAM (random access memory), which is 100 megabytes for the model 5000. This machine makes nice uniform sized solid halftone dots for artwork images and photos that will not be dissolved out by the caustic developer solution that dissolved out the background that was exposed to the strong light of the plate maker box (e.g., Nu Ark 100).

2016 update - Now, over fifteen years have passed since the HP5000 came out, and there may be better choices in finding an inexpensive way of getting the computer document onto a metal plate for a printing press. There are even polyester plates that are run directly through the laser printer, but they may only print up to 5,000 copies, and are not recommended for printing multiple colors in the same document.

Also, the HP does not do dense solids on film. Sometimes a text area will ghost into an adjacent picture. A way around this is to design documents that don't have large solid areas, or to screen back or lighten the solids to make a percentage of solid black. I suggest trying a 90% screen. Another HP problem is that the software drivers were originally made for a Windows 98 or Windows XP operating system that existed in 2002. Now, with Windows 7 Home Premium, it is more difficult to get laser printer to print with the *postscript* software printer driver, especially when the printer has a *Jet Direct* hardware card installed which makes the printer networkable through a category 5 or 6 *Ethernet* cable. The printer is so old it has a [Centronics parallel cable](#) connection, and no USB connection. Modern computers no longer have parallel printer ports. The answer is to get a [Centronics to USB adapter cable](#) made by Epson or Belkin (\$20 or more). HP makes a universal printer driver for the 5000 printer, but it doesn't have the ability to do a flip horizontal or spot color separations. There is still a postscript level 2 driver to do this.

One solution is to make separate computer documents, coloring the unwanted text white so it does show, but keeps the rest of the colors in position, then making the color you want black along with the picture or graphic a



Alfredo Valdez #H37100 Death Row, San Quentin Prison, CA 94974

grayscale mode in Adobe Photoshop, rather than an RGB or CMYK. Also, this older printer has a slower speed and less RAM, so larger file size documents may take 5 or more minutes to print!

Disgusted with trying to get the HP 5000 printer to work with my modern Windows 7 operating system computer, I switched to my 2007 Ricoh 12" x 18" color laser printer. Its drawback is that it makes fainter [stochastic marks](#) rather than *halftone* dots out of graphics and photos. If the screened images are not at least a 35% screen (the HP could do a 20% screen), the faint marks used to make pictures or screens would be dissolved out by the [bp plate developing chemistry](#), leaving no highlight dots or a non uniform screen . When I made the images darker in Adobe Photoshop to make more (and hopefully darker, more solid stochastic) dots, the image became *muddy* looking due to not enough *contrast* or not enough *brightness* (see example on the right of the previous page). The images on film may look too dark, but may still print ok as some dots may dissolve away. Expose the positive development metal plate for as short a time as possible, with the developing chemistry able to dissolve out the exposed background within 20 seconds. Then wipe the developer off with distilled water with a sponge right away. Dry the plate with a hair dryer. The plate could print as many as 100,000 copies. The plates are capable of a range of a 2% highlight dot to a 98% solid, but, using laser films, that range is less due to the caustic plate developer. On the Nu Arc brand [mercury vapor lamp](#) exposure box I use, I can use a 1.2 unit exposure time. This makes the solids as dark as possible, and yet allows the background to easily dissolve out when the plate is developed. Preserve the plate with a thin layer of process gum, or put the plate on the printing press right away.

A comparison note here is that, when one compares, side by side, the same printed images, one made from a [film positive](#) using the HP 5000 and its halftone dots, and the other from the Ricoh with its stochastic marks, the properly made Ricoh Color Laser printer picture looks better because the smaller stochastic dots show more detail and smoother gradations in the image. Older versions of Adobe Photoshop made it easy to manipulate the halftone dot size used in making an image for the HP5000. Now, the newer Photoshop CS5 version software has that change capability hidden (harder to find). The result is that smaller images have too large a dot size and look coarse.

A third option, was to use a wide format Epson printer like the Stylus Photo 1430 that I bought new for about \$269. It can feed and image a 13" by 19" film of a different coating than that used with the laser printer method of image setting. Like the Ricoh, the Epson does Stochastic dots which are too fine and too small to survive the positive metal plate developing solution. Thus, the Epson can do line art and text, but not pictures or screens unless one buys and installs a companion computer [RIP software](#) that makes larger *halftone* dots used by offset printers. The newer Epson inkjet printers' standard printer driver software does allow one to do a read wrong or flip horizontal, which places the image on the film closer to the metal plate when exposing the plate.

The standard non postscript, non [RIP software](#) cannot do color separations. A work around would be to print to PDF from the program the document was designed in selecting *separations*, then print the color separated PDF document using the inkjet printer driver. A few years ago, I downloaded a free trial of the RIP software for Epson printers from [iproof systems](#) in Florida, but I couldn't get it to work. It would cost up to \$500 to buy. The dot sizes of the screens can be adjusted, which is good, giving one the choice of stochastic or halftone dots, but the text quality is not as good at the interpolated 1200dpi of the HP or the 600 by 9600dpi of the Ricoh. On less expensive wide format Epson printers, the software can't utilize the highest quality setting the printer is capable of doing. Also, because the paper feeding system of cheaper Epson inkjets is not as smooth, one is limited to screens of 133 lpi or less. I am assuming that the inkjet RIP software can make a nice dense solid better than the laser printer. I was surprised that, when I made a cover document blue background plate using the Ricoh color laser, the area looked solid and uniform enough, unlike the HP5000. If there had been a problem, I would have screened the solid back to about 95%. On a smaller offset printing press with fewer ink form rollers, a screen near 100% might end up a solid anyway.

My conclusion is to use the HP5000, avoiding heavy solids in my computer designed document, and avoiding thumbnail sized images. Expensive high speed color and monochrome inkjet printers with non moving print heads and low maintenance, are now being used in the printing industry by book manufactures and others, partly due to their [variable data \(VDP\)](#) from page to page capability. When sheet fed models for home use come out, I would like to get one with the idea of moving away from the skill and time involved in using offset presses. Examples of office versions of this emerging technology are desktop machines by [Memjet](#), and the [Officejet Pro X and Executive series by Hewlett Packard](#).

September 2015 update:

We were asked to reproduce a two color Spanish tract booklet titled *Como Obtener Pas de Dios*, a version of the Billy Graham Evangelistic Association's [Steps to Peace with God](#). Like a similar booklet produced years ago by [the Navigators organization](#), several of the pages contain areas of solid color which has been a "no no" for me and printers used to using negatives to make metal plates. A "service bureau" like [www.filmoutput.com](#), has high quality [image setters](#) that can make negatives or positives with dense solids and sharp text at 2400 [dpi](#). I hadn't been able to do this using in home inkjets or laser printers. I would design on the computer tract documents for the Free Tract Society of Los Angeles, then send the computer file by using the [FTP \(file transfer protocol\)](#) upload capability on the service providers website, or by sending files as e-mail attachments. The printed result made from their negatives was that there was an unacceptable white gap between two colors where they joined in graphic images.

The service told me this happened because their [RIP](#) (raster image processor) software must be told to include a [trap](#) (slight overlap) of one color over the other where the two colors meet. Also, getting sixteen film positives made (8 of each of the two colors) for this Spanish booklet would cost \$15 each for a legal size film. My wife and I agreed that this would be too expensive for us, so I set out to re-examine what I could do with the more modern machines we had on hand, and newer brands of laser and inkjet film material. Here are the results, along with the good news that I am pleased with my experiments, and told the customer I believed we will be able to make 30,000 of these book in a quality manner with the resources we currently have.

We did print and deliver the job, but it was probably the hardest to print job I have had to do since we bought the larger Ryobi 3302 twin tower two color press. The paper registration from sheet to sheet was good if one didn't print over 7,000 an hour. The document was designed with heavy solids of ink which printed better than I expected, but there was white type (a *reverse*) in the solids of blue and green. The lettering began to plug up with surrounding



ink. I rubbed the plate with the chemical *True Blue* by Varn, which helped, along with stopping every 700 to 1000 copies to clean the plate and blanket. A horizontal fuzzy line of green ink appeared near the top of one page, and I couldn't get rid of it. A press repairman at Print and Finishing Solutions told me that the Crestline brand continuous watering system on our presses required the water to be kept chilled. I hope not to do this booklet job again, but if I do, I will certainly cool the fountain solution in the refrigerator and wrap frozen *blue ice* packets around the water bottles. I had tried this in the past before we got an air conditioner. The air conditioner caused its own problems as moving air near the press evaporates water off the surface of the printing plates, causing unwanted background ink to print on the paper. The repairman also agreed with me that, when using laser films from which metal plates are made, one should not expect to be able to get more than one plate to register together exactly. He also said that trying to do full color CMYK would not work with this laser film system.

The secretary of the Spanish Church wasn't fluent in English and there was a communication barrier. I had told her that if I didn't feel we were going to get good quality, I would stop the job and refund their \$1000 deposit. When we drove 170 miles to deliver the job, I placed all the boxes of booklets in a meeting room at the church. Rosalinda picked out a printed booklet, sat down, and began to compare it page by page with the version they had been using until their supply ran out, their pastor moved, and they lost track of where they had gotten the booklets made. My wife and I were watching with suspense. Harriet was praying she wouldn't find a mistake. She got

through the inside of the back cover and stopped, thinking she was done. To my wife's horror I suggested she might also want to check the back of the cover. She then replied, "It's OK".

We don't want to go through that again! I learned enough from the problems we had with that job, including bindery work screw ups, that I may consider reprinting this job. One observation is that the paper made with [color lock](#) technology prints a dramatically darker solid, without applying additional ink. To try and apply enough ink to make it dark could plug up the reversed white text in the surrounding blue solid of the cover. Here are some experiments I made to test if we could do this Spanish booklet tract job that required large areas of uniform solid color or a lighter screen tint of the solid, and a gradient or progressively lighter tint from the top of the page downward.

First, I had bought an [Epson Artisan 1430](#) with 13" x 19" paper or film output. It can output a text sharpness of 1440 x 5880 dpi, which is as sharp as laser printer text, and on Kimoto brand inkjet clear film (available from the Kelly Paper Company), it can do uniform solids for positive development metal press plates, but not dense enough for negatives for negative development metal press plates. I tried printing a gradient (a background color transition from light to dark spread over about two inches), a requirement for reproducing the Spanish booklet, and the fine inkjet dots dissolved together to make a blur, and the transition area had a green cast to it, even though it was printed as a grayscale.

To get around this, one needs a [software RIP](#) for the printer driver to make larger, denser uniform *halftone* dots that convert a continuous tone screen or artwork into a non photographic printable medium. Such RIP software sold by the Genie graphic arts supply company or US Silkscreen, or [iproof systems](#), cost \$500 or more. I feel iproof is the best choice, even though, on a free trial download of their software, I wasn't able to choose the highest resolution settings, presumably because the finer dots would merge together and plug up the image, due to limitations of coated polyester film material.

Another possible issue, Ted at *iproof* told me about, is lesser quality Epson inkjets do not have as accurate and consistent a paper feed system as the more expensive don't Professional models. Without the RIP software, the standard Epson non *postscript* printer driver software is not capable of doing the spot color separations designed into Adobe Indesign page layout program documents. There is a way around this. One prints to Adobe PDF and chooses color separations. The resulting PDF document will be a flip horizontal color separated document that prints as a grayscale. The question I have is, on my cheaper Epson printer, when I overlap the printed color separation films, on a printer's *light table*, do the colors align, and is there a trap where the colors meet? It appears that the registration capability of my Epson 1430 is as good as that of my color laser printer that has a postscript color separation software driver. The inkjet accuracy of match between colors may actually be better because there is no fuser unit that could distort the polyester film material due to heat.

I was able to use the next to the highest quality setting for the Epson 1430 (1440 x 2880 dpi?). The [Kimoto](#) brand [Silkjet SC4 inkjet film](#) gave me a slightly darker solid than the US Silkscreen brand film. Please note that the inkjet ink type used should be [dye based and not pigment based](#), although the www.kimototech.com website states that their *Silkjet UC5* Inkjet film can also be used with pigmented ink. Without a RIP software to make *halftone dots*, is only good for solids and text - no screens, gradients, or pictures. The Kimoto inkjet printers are scheduled to be discontinued.

A new inkjet development is printing an image directly onto a polyester material printing plate. One can make 10,000+ copies per plate, and fine screen halftone graphics are possible (up to 150 dpi?) if a RIP software is used. The brand name is [Geniejet](#). An Epson printer that uses an [Ultra Krome K3 inkset](#) with *vivid magenta*, is required. The cheapest model seems to be the 2880 at about \$600. Compare this to \$300 for the Epson 1430 that I bought. Also, after being imaged, the plates have to be baked in an electric heater that looks like a laminator. The price of a Geniejet system starts at \$1800. Their RIP also works with their inkjet film positive material. I requested samples of their printed film and plates, but haven't received any. Since I like to print at least a box of two sided tracts at a time, or a run length of 10,000 copies with the two colors in exact registration, I am wondering if the polyester plates will stretch and go out of registration. Also, years ago, when I had used Mitsubishi brand *mega* plates made with an Itek 430 camera, I would get unwanted background ink when using colored inks.

The salesman told me the Geniejet system will have accurate enough registration for color separations, but what does he mean by that - spot color titles or headings, or the exact registration of black outlines around text that I am now doing with laser films? The big advantage of the [Geniejet inkjet printing plate technology](#) is that one would be able to maintain a wider range of dots in the highlights and solids. When one has to go to film, and then to a metal plate, the caustic plate developer chemistry dissolves out highlight dots. This requires my designing documents without highlight dots between 0% and 10%. On a laser printer that doesn't make halftone dots, like our Ricoh Aficio SP C811dn, one has to experiment and not design the graphics on the computer document so the background is either too dark (making the pictures look muddy or lacking contrast), or too light (resulting on *blowouts*, where there is no 5% dot in the highlight areas of a picture). Ted, at www.iproofsystems.com, told me that only the more expensive Epson printers have a paper feeding system accurate enough to make multicolor film positive separations for exact registration work. I wouldn't try to use a cheaper model for color separations work.

A newer development is using an inkjet to print directly onto a metal press plate. The plate surface would have to first be coated with a material that the inkjet could print on without the dots swelling or not drying. One could then expose the light sensitive positive development plate and then dissolve the ink and coating away, leaving only the unexposed areas of the plate that were protected from the strong exposing light by the

coating of ink. Some methods, don't use a light sensitive treated plate, but just the bare grained aluminum. the [Glunz and Jensen](#) company uses an Epson 4000 inkjet printer and a single color proprietary ink formula. I heard a bad review by a buyer of this product. The [GenieJet](#) salesman admitted that some people were trying to image metal plates rather than polyester plates with an inkjet. He said it is a messy operation. the [Presstek](#) company sells one of these plate makers, but the image only holds up for 10,000 copies on a printing press unless it is baked after being imaged. I found that baking an imaged aluminum press plate that was rinsed in high mineral content well water, baked the deposits on the plate so they picked up ink in the non image areas - a no no!

Another technology is a desktop printer that looks like an inkjet, but is actually a [dye sublimation](#) process where the cartridges are ribbons and small pins tap on the ribbon and transfer the ink to the film. I did get film samples from this from the Kimoto company. Their text is sharp, and their blacks darker and more uniform on their film material, but the halftone screens for their graphics or images are coarse (60 to 80 dpi). Their system costs \$5,000. I read that they will discontinue selling their printers.

About the year 1999 I bought an [HP 5000 monochrome laser printer](#) because it made halftone dots and was tested and proven to be one of the better computer to film machines of its day. I can't say that that still applies today. The HP, when printing to clear polyester film does not do uniform solids, and is darker at the borders of solids. Also, when a graphic is adjacent to text, a ghost image of the text can be reprinted in the graphic. Also, the HP makes solid outlines/edges around knockouts for my second color in the document. Another menacing problem is that new versions of computer operating system and newer versions of the Adobe Photoshop program make it more difficult, if not impossible to choose a fine halftone screen of 120dpi or 133 dpi. Also, in using the HP printer software driver, it freezes, and I have to do a "ctrl+alt+delete" keyboard combination as a work around for the problem. I decided against using HP for jobs involving solid areas of color.

I bought some [Kimotodesk laserfilm](#) material from the [Kelly Paper Company](#). I imaged it on my Ricoh color laser printer using the bypass tray and a "thick 3" paper type. I am impressed with the uniform solids I can get. The black image is not dense black, but can be darkened slightly using the *Sprayway* brand aerosol [Toner Aide](#). The density is not good enough to be considered a negative, and has minute imperfections of clear showing when looked at under a 16x magnifying loop, but I believe these spots will plug up or fill in when ink is applied to these areas of the plate on the printing press. On their website, Kimoto states regarding their laser film I just bought, "Kimodesk is well suited for multi-color screen printing jobs when tight registration is critical." Their inkjet films work best with printers like Epson that use [piezo print head](#) technology.



I was learning how to make *gradients* in Adobe Indesign CS5, and had the highlight dots start at 0%. I then imaged a metal test plate from the film, and developed it. The starting point of the gradient highlight was barely visible with the loop. I then found out I could go to the *Object* pull down menu in the software, then to *Effects*, then to [Gradient Feather](#). By clicking on the slider for the *highlight* or lightest point of the *linear* gradient, I could then type in 25% as my starting point. I could do the same in the solid, so I made that 90%. I printed another film, and I can tell the dots are uniform and will probably not dissolve out if I expose the plate at 1.4 units and spend as little time as possible developing the plate with the chemistry before I wash the chemistry off with distilled water. This is the drawback of the Ricoh laser printer that doesn't print uniform density round halftone dots. It does even screens better than the HP5000, and the text is just as sharp, even down to a 4 or 5 point size. One just has to experiment more with the highlight dots to find a setting where dots will not be dissolved away by the developer chemistry. For making a non gradient screen on our Ricoh color laser printer, I would not go below a 45% screen. On the current gradient I am doing, I think I will get by with the 25% starting point of the screen. If the screen is made too light, and some dots dissolve out, the screen will not look even. On the opposite end of the spectrum, I figured that if I didn't try to print a solid, but chose a 90 or 95% screen instead, the solid would appear more uniform, even if the printed page was lighter due to some fine *pinholes* of white showing through the screen. This wasn't true - making a near solid screen didn't make a more uniform screen, especially on the HP5000 printer. When films for this job were printed on the Ricoh laser printer, I did get by with a good 90% screen. When I exposed and developed the metal pres plate, I still had highlight dots where the gradient joined the green box of reversed text below it. When the two colors (Reflex Blue and Pantone Green) were printed on the press, green silhouettes almost exactly matched the background screen. I was hoping there would be more of an overlap or trap of the green over the background screen.

Yet another alternative, is not using film, but translucent white paper, like the [Gilcrest](#) brand sample I was given. It may be true that printing on paper with the laser printer yields a denser and more uniform solid, but the paper isn't as clear as the film, so, when I made and developed a metal plate sample, some unwanted background appeared in the non image area. To get this to go away, one would expose the plate longer (up to 1.8 units from 1.4 units). This makes the background dissolve away easier, but the solids designed in the document will not be as dense. Also, the longer exposure means that more highlight area dots will probably be dissolved out. Metal plates are capable of a 2% to 98% dot, so getting good screens and halftone pictures have more to do with the process than the plate.

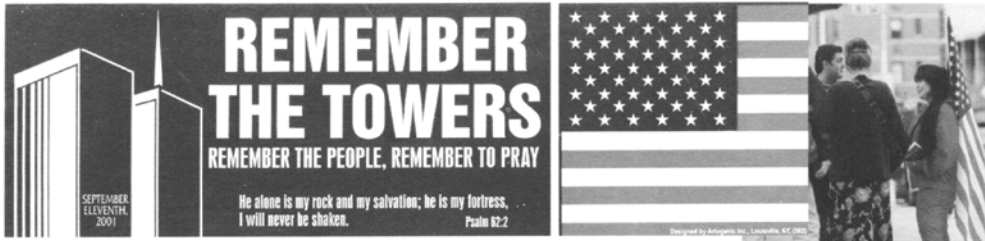
In developing the plate, I use a photographers stainless steel tray. I hold up one corner slightly with my left hand. I spray on the positive plate developer with a spray bottle. I then wait about 5 seconds and begin using a 4 x 4" cotton pad and

counterclockwise circular motions to wipe off the developer, starting with the top of the plate where I first began using the spray. I apply distilled water using a sponge, to the plate to remove the remaining developer residue. A cotton pad soaked in distilled water can also be used. I had to stop using well water for this because the minerals in the water would leave deposits on the plate when I dried it off with a hair dryer to rub on a coating of process gum as a plate preserver and anti-oxidizer. The mineral deposits of *hard water* would result in the plate picking up unwanted background image on the printing press, requiring an deletion pen or plate cleaning solution.

Concluding the topic of CTP (computer to press printing plate imaging solutions, there are two more expensive options. First, Mitsubishi makes a desktop [Digiplater thermal imaging machine](#) that, in conjunction with their RIP software, can make paper plates that print up to 5,000 copies with a dot range from 5% to 95%. The halftone pictures are limited to 120dpi, and the text sharpness 1200dpi. I don't believe one can use these paper plates for exact registration of multiple colors. The machine costs about \$16,000, the plate and film rolls over \$250, and an additional hub for the film rolls costs over \$250. The films, when used to image metal plates, lose highlight dots under 10% and shadow dots above 90%. The films are supposed to be accurate enough for exact registration of multiple colors. My preferred choice is a used factory recertified Prestek [Dimensions 425 Excel](#) machine that sells for at least \$11,000. The image is made on a metal plate at a high 2540 dpi for text and (up to 200 dpi?) for halftone pictures. The imaged plate requires only a water wash, and the plates print up to 100,000 copies. The drawback here is that the imaging unit costs \$3000 to replace if it goes bad, and therefore some companies using this product pay the product distributor a maintenance fee. Prestek also sells a system, the [JT Inkjet CTP](#), that images metal press plates with an Epson printer. The plates print 5,000 copies, and when baked, 20,000 copies. The system cost under \$5,000.

After my recent testing of our existing methods, I have a renewed faith that we can get good quality the way we have been doing things, if we switch to the [Kimotodesk laser film](#), which we have done. For unknown reasons, we have fond on past jobs on longer paper than letter size (e.g., using legal size 20 pound weight paper to print small tract booklets four to a sheet, the registration of the cross hairs (cross hair marks for aligning a two color exact registration job on the printing press), the marks cannot be made to align exactly, but the document can still be adjusted to get good registration between colors. Problem situations could be black outlines around titles, duotone (two color) pictures, and no overlap or trapping of one color over the other. I have an acceptable quality plate making system that doesn't cost a lot of money, but takes extra skill and time to get to that good result. I try to be grateful for what I have, but am also believing God for a used recertified Prestek Dimensions CTP system with no chemical developer, no hazardous waste, no film step (with its accompanying 220 volt plate

exposure box, good halftone dots for graphics, excellent solids, and no loss of highlight dots, and plates that will run up to 100,000 copies.



**WHEN YOU READ THIS I WILL ALREADY
BE BACK IN NEW YORK
I HAVE BEEN IN NYC FOR THE LAST 30
DAYS SINCE 9/14
AND HAVE RETURNED FOR 2 MORE
MONTHS OUTREACH**

Dear Precious Friends and Ministry Family,

If you are not on our email list, you may not know I have been in New York City since September 14th. As soon as I heard about the attack, I immediately made reservations to fly in and help my friends Pastor Rick and Arlene Del Rio, who have a church close to GROUND ZERO. That night Pastor Rick took me and about 20 others down to the Trade Center site (GROUND ZERO). The press was not even able to go there!

Pastor Rick was the first Pastor at GROUND ZERO at 10 AM September 11th. Immediately he began helping with rescue and ministry to the Police and Firefighters. I had just flown in, not knowing what to expect but ready to dig for bodies, take the rescue workers water, or what ever needed to be done.

Pastor Rick went on to the morgue, with some other people. I felt led to stay by the Millennium Hotel at GROUND ZERO, and was able to pray with the FIREMAN, POLICE AND ARMY



Arlene Del Rio, Fireman, Sondra, Mark Johnson, Charlie Walker went to precincts and prayed for Fireman and gave out Gospel Literature, Bibles, and Prayer Cards and Children's letters of encouragement.

Sondra Berry Young went singing and witnessing in Union Square, NY with her Flag. Dr. John Witcher MD on left



Fireman and Sondra, holding bookmark on Psalm 91. Several thousand were donated by Barbara Williams, Watchman Ministries. He said he was going to memorize this and wear it in his hat. These were distributed all over NY.



Arlene Del Rio, Fireman Tom with Medical supplies donated by Heidi & Bob Ruiz for Ground Zero. They also donated teddy bears, flags, and camera



Sondra Berry Young Ministries
A Division of Jesus to America Evangelistic Foundation
P.O. Box 92802
Pasadena, California 91109 USA
Address Correction Requested

Non-Profit
Organization
PAID
Pasadena, CA
PermitNo.400

In 2001, it was easy to make good halftone pictures using Photoshop. The non digital camera photos were scanned to computer medium and converted into 120 dpi halftones for a small *duplicator* printing press. The photos were then placed in the Adobe Pagemaker page layout program. Film positives were made on the HP 5000 monochrome laser printer, from which positive development metal press plates were made using a NuArc brand light exposure box. As long as there were no heavy solids in the document, the press printed result, captured here by a scanner, was very acceptable. Now, with the newer versions of Photoshop, I haven't been able to get the same good results or fine halftone dots.

October 2016 update – I decided to make 20,000 more of the Spanish tract *¿Porque Juan 3:16?* which has fine dots in the highlight areas of the prison art cover. I made a new set of laser film positives from the same computer document, one for each of the two colors. I exposed the plate from the film for a minimum time of 1.4 units. I sprayed on the positive plate developer in a tray, then used counter clockwise circular motions to wipe the whole area. I quickly wiped off the developer with a sponge soaked in distilled water. I took the plate out of the tray and wiped it off with a clean cotton pad. I coated the plate with process gum (diluted gum Arabic) as a preservative, then dried the surface with a hair dryer just long enough to eliminate all moisture on the plate surface. I examined the highlight dots or marks with a 16 power magnifying loop. There was no *blowout* – I had some marks throughout the highlights, and there was still detail in the dark tones. The one drawback was that I had a two color exact registration printing press, but where I had placed red and black text on the same line, the red couldn't be made to align perfectly in all areas of the job. I learned it is best, when using laser film, not to design a job with colored words for emphasis.



Making a Positive Development Metal Plate for an Offset Printing Press, from Toner Imaged Laser Film

Note: One can use what are called “Laser Plates” for short run jobs that don’t require exact registration between multiple colors. These plates are made from polyester with a coating. Since these plates can’t have pinbar fastening holes before they go through the laser printer, one would have to buy a [“pinbar” plate punch](#) which costs up to \$400, or have a press with a spring clamp on the plate cylinder for attaching the plate. The tail end of the material could be held down by putting glue from a “glue stick” on the backside of the plate, the last inch at the bottom. One can buy glue on aluminum stiffener strips with pre punched holes for the top edge of these plates so the attaching pins don't rip out the mounting holes in the plate. Larger presses like the Ryobi 3302 come with a designated plate punch. Aluminum stiffener strips are available to stick to the top edge of these plates so they last longer. They last for 2,000 copies and could do up to 20,000 copies if they are baked or heat treated after being imaged in a laser printer. The polyester plates used to require special fountain solution, but now the pink color extra strength universal type can be used. A solution rubbed on the surface removes unwanted stray toner. The “ph” or acid/alkaline” state of the fountain solution used to have to be kept at exactly 4.5 to keep the background (non printing area) from picking up ink, but I am told they are less fussy now. Also, finger prints could be made on these plates if the printed surface was touched just after the plate came out of the laser printer while it was still warm.

I like the positive development metal plates for two color presses as the metal plates can be reused, and some brands print over 100,000 copies before they wear out (the image on the plate begins to deteriorate). A [deletion pen](#) is made for removing unwanted image such as color registration marks, and the two colors stay registered together since the aluminum material doesn’t appear to stretch. There are also image addition pens, but I no longer use them. These positive development metal plates must not come in contact with alcohol which dissolves the image. Certain brand plate cleaners other than FPC could be a danger here. For accurate registration in punching a metal plate, align the imaged film positive over the metal plate and punch both at the same time.

Registering the Film Positive to the Metal Plate During Exposure

Since the plate bend and gripper margin were included in making the document on the computer, align the top edge of the film positive with the top of the metal plate. Our Ryobi 3200 single color press uses *pinbar* plates - they have a row of punched holes across the top and bottom. Now center the plate over the film or vice-versa depending on which is larger, and use two pieces of clear tape to tape the two together after

aligning them. Put the tape in the “plate bend” or “pinbar” area at the top where the tape won't affect the exposure area.

To avoid the need for using the clear tape when making additional plates in the future from the same film positive, use a hand held plastic/cardboard/leather hole puncher to punch through the two outermost holes in the top of the metal plate that overlap the film positive. Shorten two #20D carpenter's nails to about ¼” long and taper the leading edges and insert them from the underside of the metal plate and through the two holes you punched in the laser film. Not all metal plates can be imaged on both sides, so have the emulsion side of the plate facing up and the toner side of the film positive facing down ("emulsion side down"). Then, when you view the image, it will be read right and not backwards. Since the plates are light sensitive, they should not be left out in room light for long periods, especially before being exposed. Store them in a dark place.

Now we have a larger 12” by 18” two color twin tower printing press that does not have *pinbar* holes across the plate top and bottom for attaching it to the press's plate cylinders. A punch comes with the press. One can center the approximately 13” wide plate (side to side) over the registration notches made by the punch notches, (along with a 5mm diameter round registration hole and a rectangular registration hole. Then set the punch side guide adjustment. Now center the 12” wide film positive (side to side), and add a thin stop as a side guide for the film material. The home improvement store will sell 5mm diameter pins used to hold up shelves in bookcases. Cut off a 2” by 13” strip of old printing plate, punch holes in it, insert two furniture pins and tape them to the aluminum sheet metal jig so they are held in place. Make sure the pins stick up only enough to go through the printing plate and the film positive material. If the pins are too tall, the pins will prevent the exposure box vacuum pump from squeezing the materials tight together in the area surrounding the pins and some unwanted background image can appear when developing the plate.



I found that I was having to twist the plates on the bigger Ryobi 3302 press toward the non operator side at the tail end to get the image square with the paper being printed on. At first I thought there was something wrong with the press. Lately, I have been punching both the plate and the film positive, but eyeballing the side of the film and making sure it is parallel with the plate when I expose the image onto it with the plate exposure box. Thus I no longer need the pin register system, as long as the film is centered side to side, even with the top of the plate, and the edges are parallel. Now I spend a lot less time trying to adjust the image on printed sheet since it is closer to what it should be when I put the two plates on the press plate cylinder(s). A Press repairman

at Print and Finishing Solutions suggested I lay the film over the unexposed plate, and punch the film and plate together at the same time. The film is so thin, that, when punching it by itself, it may buckle against the head stop. I was also told that laser films are not capable of giving perfect registration between multiple colors. I agree, but I can still get acceptable two color exact registration work between two colors.

Calibrating the Plate maker

The plate maker exposure time needs to be calibrated for the brand of positive development plates being used. The objective is to make as short enough exposure to make a good solid and yet have dots in a lightly screened tint area, and have the developer chemistry dissolve out all exposed or unwanted background in about 30 seconds. Leaving the developer solution on the plate surface too long could dissolve out highlight halftone or screen/tint dots, or could eventually dissolve the surface of the aluminum! For example, I needed to make a new plate of the signature from the [Seven Things God Wants Us to Know](#) tract booklet that has two cliffs with the cross of Christ being a bridge from the dark screened cliff to the lighter screened side where God dwells. I tried making the film positive on the Ricoh laser printer and the dot pattern was finer than the dots made by the HP 5000 monochrome laser printer recommended for this purpose. I let the developer sit on the exposed plate surface too long before removing it and all the lighter screen disappeared. I remade the film positive on the HP5000 and exposed another metal plate and sprayed the developer on the surface evenly with a spray bottle, but rubbed it less with a cotton pad and washed it off sooner, and kept the whole screen. The plate manufacturer should be able to furnish an exposure guide made on a small section of laser film with a rectangular box that is solid black and a box with a light screen in it (made by using fewer dots). I cut up an unexposed plate into sections the size of the piece of film positive and tried various exposure times until I got what I wanted. On my Nu Arc model Ft26V3UP Ultra-Plus Flip Top Plate maker (operating on a designated 220 volt outlet with a 3,000 watt mercury vapor bulb), this turned out to be an exposure time of 1.8 units. I later determined that, in actual production, a 1.4 unit exposure time is better because the background still dissolves out easily in the developer and the highlight dots are less apt to dissolve out.



Open the glass lid of the plate exposure box, and clean it on both sides. Turn on the machine. Place the taped or pinned together new plate (emulsion side up) and film positive (toner side down) on the rubber mat in the center. Close and secure the glass lid. Turn on the vacuum pump until the gauge reads as high as it wants to go, 20 to 30 in. Hg. being normal. Push down on the locking lever and swivel the vacuum frame 180 degrees until it locks in place. Punch in the determined exposure time on the keypad (1.4 units with this machine), and then press the "T" button on the pad to start the

exposure. You will hear the additional noise (above the vacuum pump) of the transformer as the light comes on and gets bright as seen through the cracks of the vacuum frame. The orange exposing light on the control panel is lit. When the exposure is finished (you hear a click), flip the vacuum frame around again until it locks in place, turn off the vacuum, open the lid, take out the exposed plate and film positive, and separate the two. During this time, the plate should not be exposed to bright light.

Developing the Exposed Plate

The *Positive Plate Developer BP* is made by Process Solutions, Inc. in East Longmeadow, Maine, USA. One should wear a nose and mouth paper mask when working with this chemistry as breathing the vapors will make one cough. A customer service employee told me I could apply it with a 4 x 4" cotton pad using counterclockwise circular motions. It could be poured into a tray and the plate - floated in the tray, and then the solution put in a different container and capped. A portion of fresh developer would be added to the used solution to keep it strong. Developing time takes about 30 seconds and is achieved when all the unwanted background (non image area) has been dissolved away. I like the hand whipping application better as it seems to use less solution. When the used solution takes too long to develop a plate (it begins to eat into the surface of the aluminum if left on the plate too long), it can be put down the drain while diluting or mixing it with water. When the image has been removed by the developer, the developer must be quickly removed from the plate surface. I found I had to use [distilled water](#) for this because the ranch well water supplying the print shop had too many minerals in it.

When one uses a hair dryer to dry the plates that are not washed in distilled water, the baked mineral deposits can attract unwanted ink in the background or non printing areas of the plate. I was told that some positive plates (blue colored coating?) can be baked for three minutes in an oven preheated to 450 degrees which extends the run life of the plate to as many as a million copies or impressions before it wears out. I was later told by someone else that one must coat the plate surface with a special solution before baking. Now I only use the hair dryer long enough to evaporate the moisture off the plate surface, then coat the plate with process gum (diluted gum Arabic) to prevent oxidation of the aluminum during storage, then dry the plate again. If the aluminum oxidizes, it will develop spots on the metal surface that will pick up unwanted background ink during printing. It is my belief that these positive development plates are still somewhat light sensitive even after being exposed and developed and preserved, so they should not be stored in a brightly lighted area.

Newer plate making technologies

As already mentioned, Special Polyester material can be run through the laser printer and used as a press printing [laser plate](#) to make up to 10,000 copies. A company named [Kimoto](#) uses a ribbon thermal printer that looks like a wide format inkjet printer,

and RIP software to make polyester printing plates, or polyester films from which to make metal plates using a plate exposure box. The problem is that this method makes coarse dot halftone graphics (80 dpi) or simulated pictures. Also its close registration between multiple colors capability is only for "spot colors", which I interpret to be colored headings. An improved system is the [Mitsubishi thermal Digiplate plate and film positive maker](#). It can make finer dot pictures up to a maximum of 120dpi used on duplicator presses. Larger presses can utilize finer halftones (picture images) of 130 or 150 dpi. Their text sharpness is 1200 dpi. The paper plates made with this machine can achieve a wider range of highlight to solid dots making up images, than their films can do because, in developing the plates exposed with a film, the developer chemistry that dissolves out the unwanted background also dissolves away some of the image. The Mitsubishi machine with computer RIP software costs a minimum of \$16,000. The Genie company has found a way to use certain model Epson wide format inkjets that use an [Ultrachrome K3](#) Ink set type with vivid magenta. When one images their "[geniejet](#)" polyester plate, he can get high quality. The plate has to be properly baked, and can then print up to 10,000 copies with registration good enough for "spot colors". This system comes with a RIP software since Epson printers don't make printer's halftone dots without the RIP. Film positives can also be made. The system of printer, dryer, RIP software, and a set of plates costs \$1,800+. The minimum Epson Printer would be the Stylus Photo 2880. I was told this system has accurate enough registration to print full color (four color process) documents, but I am not convinced and am waiting for samples of their product.

The product I am most enthused about is the [Presstek Dimensions](#) CTP imagesetter which takes computer documents and images them onto metal plates at high quality with only a water wash. The system needs a RIP station computer, needs to run on 220 volts, and needs a water connection and possibly a drain. I could have gotten one of these for \$11,000 used. Afterward, I saw an advertisement in a printer's magazine showing the company selling recertified used versions of this system. I was told that the digital laser imaging device inside the CTP (computer to metal plate) machine, would cost \$3,000 to replace if it went bad, and that one would want to have a factory representative service contract with a machine like this. A salesman at Halliday Sales told me the Presstek aluminum plates can now print up to 100,000 copies. Prestek requires that one use only their brand of plates at higher prices. Now competitors [Agfa](#), [Fuji film](#), and [Kodak](#) make chemistry free machines as well.

An associate printing and training ministry, Good News Press, is experimenting with printing right onto treated (light sensitive) metal printing plates, with an inkjet printer. This eliminates a step, the film positive. I was told by a Genie brand technical representative that this is a messy process. Presstek has an Epson [JT inkjet printer](#) that prints directly on metal plates, but the run length of the plates is not very high, even

when they are baked. They say their system is capable of doing multicolor separations for full color jobs requiring four plates, one for each CMYK primary color.

My conclusion is to keep using the [laser films](#) to expose metal plates. The catch is to make the computer image on the film dark enough so as not to lose highlight picture dots, but not so dark that the background prints as a gray and the picture looks muddy with little contrast. Since laser printers don't do good solids in film, one does not design a solid into the document, but uses a 90% screen or tint which the laser printer can uniformly print. When making screens of a color, one uses a 30 to 40% tint. a lighter screen than that may not be uniform because some of the dots will dissolve away by the plate developer chemistry. I have designed exact registration two color separation jobs on the computer for our quality Ryobi 3302 two color press with a paper input registration table consisting of a side jogger and head stop that has an image variation from sheet to sheet of .004" to .007". I print a simulated composite print on the color laser printer before making two color film separations. After the job has been printed on the press using properly imaged films, the laser copy and the press output are very similar in quality. Setting up the press takes a lot of time, but it prints tracts two or more to a page at 6 to 8 thousand copies an hour verses the color laser printers 40 copies a minute at over twice the cost per copy of printing on the press (i.e., 7 or more cents per tract instead of 3 cents or less).

I had been printing a two color English language tract designed in Adobe Indesign. A Cambodian church located in Signal Hill, California wanted me to print a Cambodian language version nicely laid out in [Microsoft Word 2007](#). By drawing text boxes with no border, for graphics and text, one can insert a picture, or type in text, then select the box and use the arrow keys on the computer keyboard to move the parts of the document around in small increments to make the document look centered in its columns after printing and folding. This church wanted 5,000 of this tract which would mean separating the spot colors for two film positives and two aluminum offset printing press plates. In other words, it would be too expensive to print that large a quantity on the color laser printer. There were two complications, when I attempted to convert the document to a printing press document. First, The software printer driver for our laser printer that works with Microsoft Word doesn't allow one to use the normally optional choice *Postscript* driver which can easily do spot color separations - i.e., print out two films with only one color per sheet. I decided I would copy the Cambodian Khmer font text out of the Word document and paste it in place of the English text in the nicely laid out English two color Indesign document for this same tract. But, no matter how I tried, the pasted text would not display right in Indesign, which was second complication. I wouldn't be able to use the familiar route of making an Indesign document and printing the films with the *Postscript* printer driver. I ended up printing the document from Microsoft Word with a full color cover graphic. The tracts were printed in a timely manner and successfully passed out at a Cambodian festival in a park. Some of the text

boxes containing text were not large enough and some of the descending parts of their language did not display something I wouldn't have caught unless I knew how to read their Asian language.

Since I don't give up easy, I first tried making the cover graphic a grayscale for Pantone Matching System's #469 medium brown. Microsoft Word doesn't work with the [PMS designated color system](#). I then decided to select and make white all the non brown text. The paragraph headings were in brown, with no brown and black text on the same line. I made a second computer copy of the document for the black text and selected all the brown text and colored it white. This way it stays in position on the page and doesn't show when the black plate document is printed. I went to all the trouble of making two films from the two Word document copies, one for each color. I made the metal press plates from the films using the plate exposure box. A third problem came up when I couldn't print the Word documents *read wrong* or [flip horizontal](#). Doing that puts the toner on the laser printer imaged film closer to the plate surface which makes a slightly sharper image than if the image on the film is read right and sitting on top the film, about .003" above the plate surface when the plate is exposed by the NuArc brand light exposure box. I put the two plates on the two color exact registration printing press, and, to my surprise, the position of the two colors of text, in relation to each other on the sheet, was not even close. I don't know what I did wrong, but I learned not to do that same way again!

The Film Positive to Metal Press Plate, Step by Step in Pictures



Open lid on plate exposure box. Clean glass lid inside and out. Exposure time was determined to be 1.4 units for positive plate brand I use.



A 3000 watt mercury vapor bulb costing over \$100 runs on a 220 volt electrical circuit to expose aluminum printing press plates. One must use cotton gloves when handling the bulb.



Turn on the power by pressing the power button.



Set the exposure time by pressing keypad. Decimal is automatically inserted. Exposure time is pre determined by using a marked film positive supplied by a film positive manufacturer. A plate is cut into small rectangles that are exposed at varying times, then developed, and examined with a magnifying loop. The developer must easily dissolve out the exposed unwanted background, while leaving the small 5% highlight dot in making up the tint of the solid.



Before exposure, film image is centered side to side on the light sensitive plate, and even with the top edge of the plate. The punched holes align the plate when it is mounted on the press plate cylinder, and two additional small holes keep the film straight during exposure.



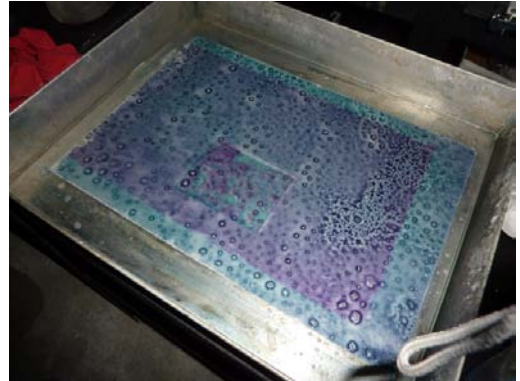
Plate & film aligned to each other by punch marks, and centered in exposure box. Image is read right looking down, but laser printed *flip horizontal* on underside of film so toner is closest to plate surface and distortion from thickness of film is eliminated. Two handles are locked before vacuum is turned on to eliminate air between plate and film surfaces. When maximum vacuum is reached as indicated on the gauge, the black lever on the right is pulled downward and the top of the machine is flipped 180° where it is held in position by a detent. Then the letter T on the keypad is pressed to start the exposure. When the time is up, the exposure stops.



Developing the Plate



Positive plate developer is sprayed over the whole plate surface, beginning at top left corner. Wait about 20 seconds for exposed unwanted background to be dissolved. Solution will make one cough, so wear a mask.



Using counterclockwise circular motions, quickly scrub the plate surface, starting in the upper left hand corner. The next step (no picture) is to remove the developer using a sponge dipped in distilled water. Tap water with minerals in it could attract ink to unwanted areas while printing.



A coating of process gum (diluted gum Arabic) is applied to the plated surface to prevent the aluminum being oxidized by prolonged exposure to the air. Oxidation spots can attract unwanted ink to the plate surface while printing. The plate is dried but not baked with a hair dryer. If one were to use well water with a high mineral content and bake the plate, the resulting mineral deposits would definitely pick up unwanted ink.



When finished, use a magnifying loop to make sure there are some highlight halftone dots in the picture or artwork.

Converting a Previously Printed Hard Copy Two Color Tract to Computer/Digital Medium, then to Two Color Separations for Printing Press Reprinting

The previous article was on converting a black and white hard copy document to computer so as to print to a laser printer or inkjet or make film positives from which to make metal printing plates for an offset printing press. Now I go a step further, taking a two color previously printed tract and converting it to digital for printing on a color laser printer or inkjet, then separating the colors for two printing plates, converting them to a black or grayscale, to reproduce it on an offset printing press. Ideally, one should start with camera ready artwork and scan that at 1200 by 1200 dpi or higher quality to make a digital document. Since my color laser printers don't really print over 1200 dpi, the 1200dpi Canon scanner from the year 2000 or so seemed adequate. Actually, when we began reproducing hard copy textbooks and converting them to computer or digital medium, we found that 300 dpi quality is sufficient. One could scan the graphics art negatives made from the camera ready artwork using a regular flatbed scanner, but if the pictures have already been converted to dots by using a halftone screen when the pictures were converted to a printable medium using the photographic darkroom process, then trying to scan that negative picture made of halftone dots to make more dots to make it digital, could cause an undesirable conflict of dots "more" pattern. Some scanner software has a "[descreen](#)" option check box that helps prevent this. It should be noted that scanning regular non half tone negatives of pictures requires a special scanner with a lid that has a back light in it. A regular photographic negative made up of silver halides, or a 35mm slide would have too much contrast if scanned on a regular scanner. When the Canoscan scanner quit working, in 2013 we upgraded to the Epson Perfection V500 Photo which has a special lid and backlight for slides and non graphic arts camera negatives. Using the camera ready art would probably mean that the two colors of a two color document for a two color press already had the colors separated and the parts of the document where the darker color prints over a knockout in the underlying color would have a built in "[trap](#)" or slight overlap of the top color, such as a black lettering title, to accommodate any misalignment in the registration of the two colors while printing which would result in an unwanted white gap or outline between the two colors where they meet.

The two drawbacks of the scanning method of making new tracts are: 1. I could not figure out how, in Adobe Photoshop, to get the one color to trap over the underlying color. When this is created from scratch on the computer in a page layout program like Adobe Indesign, there is built in trapping. In Photoshop, this is an option, but only when working in the [CMYK mode](#). After several different unsuccessful attempts to create a trap, I found a solution. The trap or overlap of colors where they touch each other when printed on a two color printing press should be about 1/32", maybe as little as 1/64". The

pull down menu regarding [trapping colors for a commercial printing press](#) notes that too much overlap could result in the mixing of the colors. Adobe Photoshop traps colors by expanding the border of the underlying lighter color where it meets the darker color printed on top of it or in the white space “knockout created for the second color so the two colors of wet ink don’t mix and allow that mixed color to migrate back to the two separate printing heads or units through the common blanket cylinder that both plate cylinders print to. When one has made a separate document or document page or image of just the underlying of the two colors, one can use the “rubber stamp” tool in the tools pallet of Adobe Photoshop to add the 1/32” more color where the two colors meet. Select the rubber stamp tool and a very small brush size in the brushes pallet at the top left of the Photoshop program window. With the computer mouse, move the cursor to an area at the edge of where you want to add or expand the border of the underlying color by 1/32” to create the overlap or trap when printing on the printing press. Then hold the “Alt” key down on the keyboard and click the mouse. A sample of the document color in that area is selected. Now move the round cursor or brush to the border and click and drag in short strokes to add 1/32” of the same color. If the area where the two colors meet is a straight line, then select the [“Marquis” tool](#) and with the mouse draw a narrow rectangle over the color to be expanded, near the edge. Go to “Edit”, then down to “Copy”, then do a “Paste”. Now use the arrow keys on the keyboard and you can move the pasted area over until the border is expanded by the 1/32” desired amount. 2. The lettering will not be as sharp when scanned, as when printed directly at the printer’s highest resolution. **The problem is that most computers don’t have all the fonts for foreign languages, and even if they did, one would have to have a different keyboard or virtual onscreen keyboard to type that font/ language.** One answer is to find out what foreign language fonts are on your computer, and if necessary, put the Windows XP Professional operating system installation disk in the computer and install the [Asian and Middle Eastern fonts](#). Then someone in one of these foreign countries for which you have the font, can type the tract on their computer and email it to you as a [Notepad](#), [Word Pad](#), or Microsoft Office Word document, and you can copy the text out of Word and paste it into a text box in the Adobe Indesign page layout program. When you have designed the tract, you can use the full version of Adobe Acrobat to make a PDF of the document and send it back to the translator as an e-mail attachment so they can proof it for errors and approve it for printing.

In working with a two color preprinted hard copy document being converted to computer or digital medium to then reprint the tract on a color laser printer, Inkjet, or make film positives then metal plates for printing press printing, one should start by making sure the two colors are known pantone matching system colors and they are a uniform solid or screen. Digital screens have a uniform patten of white dots inserted in the solid to make it a [“screen/tint”](#), that will appear lighter or a “shade” of the solid color.

As an example of a tract that was converted to digital by scanning and assembling the parts in Adobe Indesign, see [Who Is Jesus? in Hebrew](#) posted on the www.tracts4u.com website. The two colors are a PMS 185 red for the one printing plate, and a PMS Reflex Blue screened back to about 15% so the title stands out better and less blue ink is used. The savings in cyan toner when printing this on a color laser printer will be greater using the screen than a solid PMS color.

First scan the two color artwork part of the document (that cannot be recreated by typing in a page layout program because it is a foreign language you don't have the font or keyboard for). I scan all text at the highest resolution my scanner can do, which is 1200 dpi and I use the color mode. The scanner software is accessed through File and then Import in the Adobe Photoshop program, then choosing the scanner hooked up to the computer. When the color artwork appears in Photoshop, the two colors must first be made uniform throughout the art piece, and the scanned image must be sized to fit in the appropriate allocated space when laying out the document later in Photoshop.

Using the [Who is Jesus?](#) document as an example, I clicked on the magic wand tool to select it, then used the mouse to put the cursor over the red Hebrew text of the title. I then held down the "Alt" key on the keyboard and clicked the mouse in the red area. Some or all of the red title from the particular letter clicked on is selected. How much of it is selected is determined by the "tolerance" slider at the top of the Photoshop program window. By selecting "Similar" in the "select" pull down menu, or by holding down the shift key and clicking with the mouse in all remaining red areas, one can get all the red selected without selecting the color next to or adjoining it. With all the red selected, click on the paint bucket tool in the Photoshop tools pallet. Go down with the cursor to the overlapping white and black squares at the bottom of the tools pallet and double click. This will open up the ["color libraries"](#) window of available colors. Choose "solid" and "pantone", the find and click on #185 red. The red appears in place of one of the two squares at the bottom of the tools pallet. Click ok to close the colors pallet. Now move the Paint Bucket cursor with the mouse into one of the lettering areas where the selected document/ artwork red shows movement. Make sure the tolerance and opacity settings at the top in Photoshop are at 100%. Begin clicking in the red areas until the previous or existing red has been replaced with the new more uniform PMS 185 red. Now go to "Select" then down to "Deselect"

Now use the [Magic Wand tool](#) to select the blue screen and then use "Similar" from the "Select" pull down menu, along with adjusting the tolerance slider until all or most of the blue is selected. When the document was scanned, some of the blue text printed on the back of the cover page showed up and could not be satisfactorily adjusted out using "Adjustments" then "Levels". I am trying to get the blue screened background color to be one uniform blue and not show any of the text from the printing on the inside of the tract on the backside of the cover page. Hopefully one can get all the blue but no red title selected and then use the paint bucket tool and replace all the blue at once. I couldn't

accomplish that, so I fixed the remaining darker blue areas from the text on the backside showing through by using the rubber stamp tool and picking the lighter blue by holding down the shift key and clicking the mouse and then stamping for painting over the darker blue with the lighter blue with short clicks and strokes. Dragging too long with the tool cursor could begin to paint another color as the area that is selecting a color sample is off to the side as a cross hairs and moves along with the cursor, and if that cross hairs goes over the white of one of the question marks in this document, then the cursor begins to paint white where I want blue so I have to stop and reselect by the shift key and mouse click a new sample of the lighter blue I want before continuing to click and drag to paint further.

Once the two colors (PMS 185 red and Reflex Blue screened back to 15% using the opacity slider) on the document cover are smooth and uniform, they are ready to be deleted individually (or, changed to white) to separate the color into two documents for two separate offset press printing plates. To do this, use the magic wand tool and the Alt key on the keyboard to select the color to be removed then press delete. If you don't get all of it the first try, then click again on other parts of that color until only the one color is left.

Now the 1200 dpi quality colored artwork is sized to fit in the allotted cover space in the Photoshop legal size layout document that hasn't been created yet. I want this cover to bleed to the edge on all four sides after the document is printed, folded and trimmed. I have to allow for a press gripper bite of at least 5/16" plus 1/16" trim off of art on the top bottom, and gripper edge (the narrow end of the sheet of paper being fed into the printing press). The side of the artwork that touches the fold must extend about 1/32" around the edge of the fold to make up for inconsistencies on the folding machine's accuracy from fold to fold. After achieving the desired artwork dimension (in this case of the [Hebrew tract](#), 3 11/32" wide by 4" high), I go to Image and down to Image size in Photoshop and type in the dimensions I want, trying to get what I want without changing the relationship or scale between the width and height. Now the artwork is ready to be copied and pasted into a new Photoshop layout document for printing on a color laser printer. The text is scanned at 1200 dpi and turned into black if it is a colored ink to save toner. The change to black is made by going to Adjustments and then down to Adjust Levels in Photoshop after doing Adjustments, Mode, Grayscale. Greatly enlarging the document will allow one to see when the text is black, but the edges not fuzzy. The [Eraser tool](#) is used in the Photoshop tool pallet to erase unwanted marks. When the opposite color square is clicked on at the bottom of the tools pallet, then one can use the eraser tool to add black to fix missing black in letters. Changing the Photoshop document from a [CMYK](#) or [RGB](#) scanned image to a [Grayscale](#), works for the screened blue, but possibly lightens the shade of the screen, and lightens the original reflex blue lettering. The text that is now a grayscale is darkened using the sliders in the Photoshop program found by going down the "Image" pull down menu to

“Adjust Levels”. For the Red lettering the [Magic Wand tool](#) is used to select each portion of red, then pouring in black to replace it using the Paint Bucket tool.

Now it is time to make a legal size landscape orientation document, with no printing blue layout grids, used to assemble the scanned and cleaned pieces into a document looking like the original with the cover art positioned for a three edge trim so it bleeds to all four sides after folding, and the columns of text have proper equal margins of about $\frac{1}{4}$ ” all around, centering these columns in the four panels created by the two folds made in the printed, and trimmed (with the paper cutter) document. In Adobe Photoshop, go to the “File” pull down menu, then to “New”. Type in the document dimensions for a legal size sheet since this *Hebrew* tract is laid out two per legal size sheet. Width is 14” and height is 8.5”. Left margin is $\frac{5}{16}$ ” which is the minimum gripper bite found on many printing presses. The other three margins are set to $\frac{1}{4}$ ”. In the pull down menu, click on “View and go down to “Rulers” to show rulers in the top and left margins. With the mouse pointer in the ruler area, click and drag out blue lines that are placed as layout guides that do not show when printed. From the left margin, put one at $\frac{3}{8}$ ” which is where the document will start after a $\frac{1}{16}$ ” bleed is trimmed off the face of the cover. (note: The Hebrew language reads from right to left so in this document the cover is placed on the left end rather than the right end.)

Now we need to divide the area between the $\frac{3}{8}$ ” line and the $13\frac{3}{4}$ ” into four equal quadrants or parts. Each quadrant will be approximately $3\frac{11}{32}$ ” wide. Put a line in the middle, then two more half way at the $\frac{1}{4}$ and $\frac{3}{4}$ distance. Now put additional blue lines $\frac{1}{4}$ ” to each side of these blue lines. This makes side margin guidelines for the four columns of text that will be “placed” into the document from where they are stored in a common folder on the computer. Don’t forget a blue line at $\frac{3}{4}$ ” from “0” mark. This is to center the text column printed on the back of the cover panel. Now place horizontal blue lines by clicking and dragging them out of the top ruler margin. Place one at $4\frac{3}{16}$ ” and another at $4\frac{7}{16}$ ” These are the trim marks for bottom of the cover to make it bleed off the edge of the trimmed tract after printing. Now place two more trim blue lines for the top of the cover (there are two because document is two per sheet – a “work and turn”). The first goes at $\frac{5}{16}$ ” and the lower one at $8\frac{3}{16}$ ”. Two more lines go $\frac{1}{4}$ ” in from the ones you just placed to give top and bottom margins for the columns of text to be placed. Pull down two more blue lines and place them $\frac{1}{4}$ ” from the two horizontal blue lines that were placed $\frac{1}{16}$ ” from the center of the document. Now go to “File” and then “Save As” and name the document, saving it to the *Who Is Jesus?* Hebrew Tract folder you previously created. I named it [“WIJ Hebrew 2 up 4 clr lzt printer”](#).

Now we “place” the parts into the document. Go to “File” and down to “Place”. Browse to the folder and then color cover document you saved on the computer. Click OK and the cover is put into the layout, but not in the proper position. While the cover is still selected, use the keyboard arrow keys to move the color cover to the upper left quadrant. When in position, there will be a $\frac{1}{16}$ ” trim area at the top, bottom of the

artwork, and left side. In other words, the cover artwork edge at the top with stop at the blue line 5/16" down from the top of the document window. The right side of the cover may have to be stretched by clicking on the little square in the middle of the right edge black line and dragging that line to the right 1/32" so it slightly extends beyond the first quarter panel fold blue line that has two 1/4" blue lines on either side of it. This extra width will prevent white showing when the folder accuracy varies from tract to tract. When the cover is fitted in the surrounding markers (the left marker is the 5/16" margin marker line which may be a purple color), double click on it and click yes and it becomes part of the layout document.

Now go to "File" then "Place" again and browse to the 3 columns of text that go next to the cover you finished placing. Look at the document in the scanner to make sure you have the right text portion. When you place this piece of image, it may not be the right size (it may be too large) You then have to use the hand tool or "View" and "Zoom Out" to find the bottom right corner of the image you are placing. Then put the mouse pointer on the lower corner, click, hold the shift key down with a finger from the other hand and drag the corner at a diagonal up and left to make the document smaller. Make the left of the three text columns the right size width to fit in the quadrant adjoining the cover art. The arrow keys will move all three columns of text together as they are one image. Double click on the image to deselect it so it becomes part of the document and stays in place. To center the second column of text, use the Marquis tool in the upper left corner of the tools pallet. With the mouse, click and drag a dotted square around the second column of *Hebrew* text. Now go to "Edit" in the pull down menu then down to "transform" and to the right to "scale". Now that column can be moved into position inside the four blue line guideline boundaries in the third quadrant over from the left, using the arrow keys on the keyboard. If the width needs to be changed slightly, you can click and drag on the small square on the line at right. When the text is in place double click on it or go to "Select" in the pull down menu and then down to "deselect". If the text appears to be crooked, you can place the mouse cursor at a corner and click and rotate the text to straighten it. Now draw a marquis around the third column of text and move it into position and then "deselect it".

The lower half of the document has four quadrants and the text is placed upside down with the column with the title on the left end below the cover art. Placing the remaining text upside down makes the document a work and turn which allows printing two tracts per sheet from the same set of printing plates on the press, with only a 180 degree flip of the paper on the short edge and using the same gripper edge used in printing the first side. (cover image into press first). To verify that the cover and text columns are properly centered in their quadrants with approximately 1/4" of white space surrounding each column, it is best to print a two sided copy on a color laser printer, trim the document on a hand operated paper shear, then fold it and use the marquis tool and "[Free Transform](#)" to move the column images separately for best fit and look. Make

sure the image on the cover goes to at least the center of the right folded edge. If not, use "[Free Transform](#)" and make the document a bit wider by dragging the right side of the cover art to the right slightly. You will find that a regular size hand paper cutter can't cut down the 14" length of the legal size document unless you first fold it in half. Save the perfected document.

Making the Two Color Document into Two Separate Documents, One for Each Color.

Use the “View” then the “Zoom In”, or the magnifying tool in the tools pallet to enlarge the document until just the two color cover art appears on the screen. In the “File” pull down menu go to “Save As”, and make a new folder titled “[WIJ Hebrew 2 color press separations](#)”. Open that folder and type in “WIJ Hebrew blue plate”, then click save or ok to close that window. Select the magic wand tool from the tools pallet. Move the mouse cursor over one of the red segments of the red Hebrew title art. Hold down the “Alt” key, and click the left mouse button. The red area is selected. Now go to “Select” in the pull down menu and go down to “Similar”. All parts of the red title lettering should now be selected. Now press the “delete” key on the keyboard and the red is dropped out and white takes its place. Go to “File” and then “Save” the blue plate document you are working on. Now the blue should be turned to gray. Click “Image in the pull down menu then “Mode” then move the cursor to the right and select “Grayscale”. Save the document again. At this point you may want to add 1/32” of additional gray screen where the blue image will touch the red when printed on a two color printing press. Not adding a “choke” might result in the possibility of a thin white outline showing between the red and blue art on the finished printed tract since in the present state of design the red title is going to be an exact fit into the white knockout in the blue background. To add the trap edge, enlarge the blue plate document to see just part of the area at a time where the blue will touch the red. Look at the original you scanned from as a guide.

This particular tract is difficult because the white question marks that also border on the red don’t need to be changed, so don’t put any blue in those areas. Now select the rubber stamp tool from the tools pallet and a very small brush stroke (top left corner area of the Photoshop program window. You can get an idea of the size of the brush you choose by comparing the size of the circle cursor to the ruler markings at the top of the document. A 1/64th to 1/32nd inch diameter is desired to prevent unwanted mixing of the two wet colors on the common blanket cylinder on the printing press. Now move the rubber stamp tool cursor alongside where you want to choke the white knockout (make it smaller so the red ink laid down after the blue slightly overlaps. Hold down the “Alt” key on the keyboard and click the mouse to select a color sample to paint with. Note that depending where you click the cursor to select a sample, a small cross hairs trails the brush as you click and drag to paint, and if this cross hairs moves over a white area of one of the white question mark on the cover, you will be painting white and not blue. You can go to “Edit” then “Undo” to revert back to a previous state. The later versions of Photoshop allow going back several steps depending on the amount of [RAM memory](#) installed on the computer being used. When you have the document artwork very enlarged, you may notice cloudiness in what you thought were pure white areas. You can use the “[Eraser](#)” tool in the tools pallet and an appropriate brush size to carefully

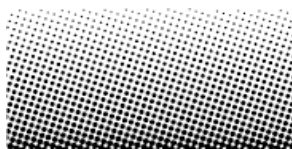
erase this fuzz, turning that area to pure white. When you get all the white lettering areas that touch the blue choked by about 1/32", you can later print a red plate and the blue plate color separated images, overlap them with the red printed as black image under the blue screen plate printed as black but looking gray. Hold the two up to a strong light source coming from behind such as a light table, and check the overlap to make sure there is no white showing where the two colors meet.

Now we make the red plate and change the red to black. Reopen the finished and saved color laser printer document titled WIJ Hebrew 2 up 4 clr lizr. In the File pull down menu, go down to "Save As" and rename the document: WIJ Hebrew red plate 4 2 clr press. Use the [Magnifying Glass tool](#) in Photoshop, or chose "View in the pull down menu and go to "Zoom In". You want only the cover art portion of the document (the upper left quadrant) to be showing. Now choose the [Magic Wand tool](#) from the tools pallet. With the left button on the mouse, click somewhere in the blue background. If the tolerance slider is in the maximum tolerance position (set at 100%), then most if not all of the blue will be selected on the first click. Now press the "Delete" key on the keyboard and the background you selected disappears. Put the magic wand cursor over any remaining blue areas and continue clicking and deleting until all the blue is gone. Now go to "File" then "Save". Now move the Magic Wand tool cursor over the middle of one of the red pieces that make up the red lettering of the Hebrew title and click with the mouse. You may have to hold down the shift or alt key while clicking with the Magic Wand tool, to get the area to select. Then hold down the Shift key on the keyboard while you click on additional red pieces until the whole title is selected. An alternate method is to use the [Magic Wand tool](#) to select the red in one piece then go to "Select" in the pull down menu and down to "Similar". Either way, when all the red is selected, switch to the [Paint Bucket tool](#) in the tools pallet. Then look at the small overlapping white and black squares at the bottom (left corner) of the tools pallet and click on them so that the black is on top of the white where the two squares overlap. Now move the Paint Bucket cursor over each selected piece of red title and click and black color pours in to replace the red. When all the red has been replaced with black, you should do another "File" then "Save".

Now we need to get rid of the black text outside the cover quadrant as the text will be printed in Reflex Blue along with the blue part of the cover on the Blue plate. Zoom out the document until the whole document is fitting on the screen. Select the Marquis tool in the upper left corner of the tools pallet. Place the cursor "cross hairs" above and to the left of the column of text in the second quadrant to the right of the cover, then left click the mouse and holding down the button, drag at an angle down and to the right to make the dotted Marquis box around all the text you can. You will be able to get everything except the column of text in the lower left quadrant. Now press the "Delete" key on the keyboard and the image of columns of text inside the marquis disappears, leaving white space in that area. Now use the Marquis tool again to eliminate the text

column directly below the cover art quadrant. Now all that should show in this document is the title lettering in the upper left quadrant, the title being black in color. In the “Layer” pull down menu, go down to and click on “[merge visible](#)” This will merge the various layers into one layer which will make the file size of the document smaller. Go again to the “File” pull down menu and click on “Save.”

Now I suggest you print out a copy on the laser printer of the black plate and the blue plate in the “black and white” mode in the printer software window. Align the two printed sheets with the title on the underside and hold the two sheets up to a light source from behind and look through and verify that there is a trap in all the areas where the blue cover background art touches the red over title pieces. If any white gaps show, there is not enough trap and one may want to modify the blue plate cover art by adding more blue in that area using the [Clone Stamp tool](#). Remember when printing out these two documents on acetate to make a film positive, a laser printer will do a better job than an inkjet printer where there are screens because the laser printer uses a “Postscript” printer driver that makes bigger “halftone” like dots required for printing images on offset printing presses. Very few inkjets have a software “[RIP](#)” or [Postscript driver](#) that makes pictures into [halftones](#),



the strong developer development aluminum remember, when and without it, the dots are so small chemistry to develop positive plates dissolves the dots away. Also making the film positive to print the image on the acetate as a “mirror image” or, “flip horizontal”, options found in the Postscript printer driver for the particular laser printer you are printing to. Evidently inexpensive laser printers don’t have Postscript drivers either. “[Mirror Image](#)” puts the toner against the aluminum surface when exposing the image to the plate in a plate exposing box, so the result is a sharper image. Also, when aligning the printed film positive over the unexposed metal plate, a “plate bend” dimension (e.g., 7/8” on a Hamada 550 press) must be added between the short side of the plate and the short side beginning of the film positive material. The required [gripper bite](#) of ¼” to 3/8” for pulling the paper through the press should already be designed into the document as the margin along the short edge of the document on one end.

Adding Spot Color Titles to a One Color Tract Document, or a Document with Two Color Artwork, but One Color Text

The document worked on above, *Who Is Jesus?* in Hebrew has a two color cover but only one color of message or text. As an added attraction, main headings can be put in the same color as the cover title. Look at the posted tract document, [Why John 3:16?](#) In this document one goes a step beyond just printing the cover artwork in two colors, to also printing the main headings of sections of text or key Bible Verses in one of the two colors. This is easily accomplished, whether in Microsoft Office Word, or Adobe Indesign by dragging over the text you don't want to show and changing it to the color white, then changing the color you want to black so it doesn't turn to a gray when printed as a black and white (if it was originally made in a color). For Example, if you will look at the posted document [Why John 3:16 English 2 color separations for a printing press](#), you will see how, in addition to the red blood plate for the cover artwork, some red parts of the text, and the "sinner's prayer" were also added by simply selecting the unwanted text and making it a white color. Doing the opposite would make text for the black plate where the red text was changed to white. By changing the color of the text, the text stays in position so the registration of the two printed colors will look as good as it does on the same type document designed for the color laser printer that prints all the colors at the same time. The *Why John 3:16?* was harder to do because the two colors of the cover art were separated in Photoshop, then saved as Tiff file format images and then "placed" into a "picture box" in the Adobe Indesign page layout program. To get the red blood on the red plate document to fit inside the dropped out white area made for it in the black plate document, I had to experiment by printing a black plate copy on the laser printer, then successive red plate documents on the same laser printer, selecting and moving with the keyboard arrow keys, the red blood art until, when the two overlapping printed document pages are held up to the light and one looks through, the blood centers in the white knocked out area of the black artwork plate. This artwork was originally drawn with the red not touching the black, so there is no need for a "trap" or overlap of colors when making this 2 color separation for a printing press. More recently, after I had separated the red blood from the black using Adobe Photoshop, I could not figure out how to change the resulting two sets of CMYK art to spot colors – a pms #185 red and a black. The answer is to change the colored and separated art in Photoshop, under *Image, Mode*, to 8 bit grayscale. Then the artwork matches the type that has been colored black. When printing from the Adobe Indesign CS5 page layout program to a laser printer with an Adobe Postscript driver, one can choose *Separations* in the *Print* window, then choose from a list of all the colors being used in the document. One can still use a black and white or monochrome no postscript printer by making all the graphics and text for each desire color black. Some printer, though, may not offer *flip horizontal* which, when exposing a positive development metal plate for a printing

press, puts the toner emulsion closer to the plate surface for greater sharpness in the image transfer.

I was asked to print the [Cambodian language How to Live Forever - There is Only One Way tract](#), from a Microsoft word document sent me by e-mail. After the [Khmer font](#) was sent me, and placed into the fonts folder on my computer, the text of the document displayed correctly, with the heading titles in a brown color. Because the columns of text were all done in text boxes, I was able to use the arrow keys on the keyboard to move the parts slightly and print successive copies on the laser printer to get a cut and folded tract to look good. Because the customer was willing to buy 5,000 copies if I printed them in two colors on our printing press, I decided to go a step further and make spot color separations on a 12" x 18" size document, the size of my laser film used for imaging a press printing plate. I first tried to copy the strange looking font from Word into the Indesign page layout program that gives me the most flexibility, and the postscript driver to separate the two colors. The text wouldn't copy and paste into Indesign. I then re-colored one of the two Word document colors to be white so it wouldn't show and saved that as the document for one press film. I then did the opposite with the other color. The resulting films looked good, but I couldn't do a flip horizontal to put the toner side of the film closest to the metal to reduce distortion. I then made metal plates, but when I tried printing the two color document on the press, the two colors could not be made to align properly. I gave up printing the job on the press and made 500+ copies on our color laser printer, getting them printed and shipped in time to be passed out at an Cambodian festival in a park in Southern California. Because I don't give up easy, I had wasted a lot of time trying to make a spot color document in Microsoft Word acceptable for a printing press. As carefully as I worked, I couldn't do it. I write this to say that it is better to use the laser printer or inkjet for multi color documents made in Microsoft Word. A One color document would not be a problem for making a press laser film, except that one could not do the [flip horizontal](#), unless he first converted the document to a *press quality* Adobe PDF file format.

Two Color Press Printed Tract to Computer with New Text, Then to Two Color Separations for Quality Printing Press Reprinting

The [Who Is Jesus?](#) English document is used as an example here. The text was in a **font and language that could be remade on the computer, including the cover title.** To fix the cover, I first tried using Adobe Photoshop to eliminate the scanned title, and then I filled in the background underneath. I used the magic wand tool, paint bucket, rubber stamp, and band aid tools to smooth out the blue cover background. One can, in Adobe Photoshop CS2, go to the Image pull down menu then to Adjustments, then to Replace Color. When the background is selected, the color appears at the top. At the bottom of the Replace Color window, one can go to the color libraries and pick another color. I picked Cyan or Process Blue as I found out the four primary colors will carry over into the Adobe Indesign page layout program if one of the four primary colors is chosen to make or clean up artwork. The Helps file says one can save the document in the "[Multi Channel composite mode](#)" as a [DSC 2.0](#) format document and the Photoshop colors will carry over and display in the page layout program when the artwork made in Photoshop is saved as DCS 2.0 and "Placed" into the page layout program. I could only get the process colors to carry over. In making a color laser printer full color document, it doesn't matter what color the placed document is, but when making only two colors for color separations for a two color printing press, the imported art needs to be one of the four primary CMYK process colors.

After all this work, I realized I could just use the box tool in Indesign to draw a cover background then pick a pantone fill color (two color choices are allowed for a two color press document) so I chose Pantone Reflex blue for the cover background and body text, and PMS 186 red for the Title and sub titles. Trying to place the scanned background from Photoshop into Indesign had resulted in too large a file size, rough edges on the question marks, and the background blue not being uniform, and one of my laser printers not printing clean white question marks. I searched through the various typefaces or fonts and gathered a variety of typed question marks, using the previously printed cover art of the tract as a visual guide for style and size and placement in the cover background. I colored the question marks white in the swatches pallet, and moved them over the Reflex Blue cover background. Since I knew that the laser printer generally doesn't do well printing large solid color areas on film positive material (from which I make positive exposure metal plates in the exposure box), I screened back or "Tinted" the blue to 50% using the tools at the bottom of the Swatches pallet in Adobe Indesign. This made a uniform and smooth screen when printed on the color laser printer. The lesson learned here is that it is better (sharper images and smaller file sizes and known PMS colors) to remake the cover art from scratch rather than try and scan it from a previously printed tract and reuse it. The [Adobe Illustrator](#) Program can be used to reproduce smooth geometric shapes or Traces of the artwork.

Also, there are font sets such as [Wing dings](#), and [Ding bats](#) that have various shapes already made. The page layout program will drop out the underlying color in the background where the title overlaps it and will supply a Trap between the two colors by choking the background for a slight overlap of colors to prevent white space from showing due to poor registration on the printing press. I did find that some typefaces or fonts are copyrighted and thus will hinder the making of a PDF from the finished Indesign document. The error code that appears in making the PDF will tell you which font won't work and you substitute it with another. Also, when making a PDF for the color laser printer, the drop shadow on the cover title had to be eliminated. The drop shadow did work when making color separations for the two color printing press.

First I created the two color document for the color laser printer, two tracts per legal size sheet. I used black text and black drop shadow since I wasn't limited to just two colors. I also made the sub titles in the Reflex blue. Then I did "Select All" from the Edit pull down menu, copied the entire document, and pasted it into a new document layout that was a 12" by 20" landscape document, the size of my laser film. The larger than legal size is helpful as one can then have more room on the length to add the 7/8" plate bend required for the printing press. I could have used a legal size piece of "Acorn Laser Film", but I would have to move the film down the 7/8" when exposing the metal plate and it would be harder to get it straight. Using the larger film allows me to simply align the edge of the film with the edge of the aluminum plate, center it side to side using the pinbar holes in the plate as a guide, and then hold it in place with clear tape during the exposure. After the legal document is pasted into the 12" x 20" document, one can use the computer mouse to click and pull [blue lines](#) out of the ruler margins to center the document and add an additional 7/8" plate bend on the right end. With the whole document selected, the keyboard arrow keys move the information around until it is in position which is centered top and bottom, and the text on the right 7/8" plate bend plus 5/16" gripper bite from the documents right margin to the beginning of the cover artwork. When the document is printed using the Postscript printer driver and [Separations Preview](#) and Mirror Image are chosen, the printed copy is black and read wrong.

Now, here are step by step instructions on how to recreate the sample [Who Is Jesus?](#) English document on a computer, for a color laser printer with built in duplexer, using the previously printed tract as a visual guide. This section will be followed by instructions making the document into only two colors, and separating the colors when making the PDF from the Adobe Indesign page layout program. A PDF is made because it can be used / opened by any computer having sufficient memory and the free (by download from www.adobe.com website) Adobe Acrobat Reader program. To make a PDF requires the full version of Acrobat which is expensive.

The [Who Is Jesus?](#) document produced on a two color printing press, has been totally remade on the computer so there is no need to scan and use the artwork on the previously printed cover. In the case of foreign language versions that don't use

[romance languages](#) fonts/lettering, the text of these tracts can still be reproduced by scanning. The first step is to make the document for a color laser printer. Since a color laser can print full color (unlike a small offset printing press) we can use more colors for greater attractiveness in the document. However, the main body text will be made black instead of the former Reflex Blue because the price of the black toner cartridges is about 1/3 the price of the three primary color cartridges. Adobe Photoshop will not be used in making this document because the text and cover are being reproduced from scratch. The Page layout program being used for this is Adobe Indesign CS2. Please note that I have since upgraded to CS5 which allows one to preview color separations before printing. [Quark X Press](#) or [Adobe Pagemaker](#), or possibly Microsoft Office Word could also be used. Open the [Adobe Indesign](#) Program by clicking on the *Start* icon in the corner of the Windows operating system desktop. Go to All Programs then Adobe then Indesign CS2. When the program is open, in the File pull down menu, choose New. In the file pull down menu go down to Document Setup. The document is laid out two per legal size sheet. For paper size pick Legal. For orientation, click on the landscape icon (one on the right). Width should read 14" and the height 8.5". Uncheck the *Facing Pages* box. Type 2 in number of pages as the second page is the same information / document necessary for the color laser printers that have a built in duplexer. For the left and right margins, type in 5/16". For the top and bottom settings, type in 1/4". Click on OK. The document window opens. Now we will draw blue lines by clicking in the rulers along the margins and dragging out blue lines to establish equal size quadrants to put the pages of text in, as well as the cover. If the [rulers](#) aren't showing go to the View pull down menu and click on Show Rulers. Click in the top ruler margin and pull a center blue line down to 4.25. Place additional blue lines 1/16" above and below the center mark. The 1/8" area down the center will trim out to allow the cover to bleed to the edge on both tracts since the tracts are laid out two per sheet. Because the document is in English and the text reads from left to right, the cover is placed on the right end of the legal size sheet. The upper half of the page is the cover side reading right side up, and the bottom half is the inside of the tract placed upside down. This makes a work and turn document so that on a printing press only one set of printing plates is required and the paper is simply flipped 180 degrees on the short edge when printing the backside. However, we will type the bottom half upside right and then turn it upside down to make it easier to type and proof read. From the top ruler area, click and draw down and place two more blue non printing layout guidelines, placing them 1/16" inside the top and bottom pink margin settings. These pints are the document edges after the two tracts are trimmed out for a full bleed cover. Now click again and drag down two more blue lines, placing then 5/16" in from the two lines you just put in place. This is the 5/16" margin between the text and the edge of the sheet after the tract document is printed and trimmed.

Now click with the mouse and pull blue lines out of the left ruler and place the first 1/16" in from the 5/16" right pink margin line. This point is 3/8" in from the right margin and will allow a 1/16" cover face trim to make it bleed to the edge, plus a 5/16" no print white area for the printing press gripper bite. Now place a blue line half way between the 3/8" right margin blue line and the "0" mark or left edge of the document. This point should be at the 6 13/16ths" point on the top ruler. Now place two blue lines 5/16" from each side of this center line. Now we need to divide the document into quarters with two more blue lines. These are not 1/4 of the 14" sheet because of the 5/16" press gripper and 1/16" face trim on the cover. The location on the top ruler of these two blue lines should be a hair over 3 3/8" and a hair under 10 1/4". Now place additional blue lines 5/16" on both sides of these two lines to serve as text margins. The right margin or quarter panel needs a 5/16" blue line text margin marker also so place a blue line at a hair over 9 7/8".

Reproducing the Cover of the [Who Is Jesus?](#) English version tract. The background is going to be Reflex Blue and screened back or tinted to 60% to save toner and to prevent the laser printer from printing a possible blotchy solid on a film positive color separation for a printing press to be made later. Using the [rectangle tool](#) in the Adobe [Indesign tools pallet](#), draw a box by placing the cross hairs at 1/4" down from the top of the document and at about 10 1/8"+, or just to the left of the blue vertical blue line coming down there. We want the cover to extend to the middle of the fold on the tract or a hair more so no white will show when it is folded. Now click the mouse and drag down and to the right so that the lower right corner of the box you are drawing is 4 1/4" down from the top of the document and at about the 13 5/8" point on the horizontal ruler. Unclick the mouse. In the lower area of the tools pallet, click on the two squares and select colors in the list so that the border of the box is none and the box is reflex blue. The Reflex Blue color is found by first displaying the [Swatches pallet](#). In the Window pull down menu go down to Swatches and then check on it and the Swatches pallet appears. Below the red X in the upper right corner there is a circle with a triangle in it. Click on that triangle then in the window that opens, click on New Color Swatch. For Color Type pick Spot. For [Color Mode](#) pick, from the list that appears when you click, Pantone Solid Uncoated. The list of possible pantone colors appears. Right after Pantone 279U, click on Reflex Blue, then OK. This places the Reflex Blue as an additional color at the bottom of the Swatches pallet. With the rectangle you drew selected (by clicking inside it), click on the two overlapping squares in the tools pallet or Swatches pallet so that the solid square is on top or in front of the border square now from the list click on Reflex Blue. In the [Tint](#) area of the Swatches pallet, change the percentage to 60%.

Now we Insert the various size white question marks of various fonts, over the blue background. Select The text tool in the tools pallet. Click and drag a text box inside the blue background. First make the main question mark that goes in the center. In the

Type pull down menu select CAC Moose if you have that typeface. Select 250 for point size. Hold down the shift key on the keyboard and type the question mark. Click at the beginning of the question mark and drag across it to select it, then choose Paper for the color from the Swatches pallet. We want to put a black drop shadow on this question mark to make it appear to stand out from the blue background. Switch to the black arrow tool in the tools pallet, then click on the white question mark you made to select the bounding text box for it. Go to Object in the pull down menus along the top of the Adobe Indesign Program and go down to [Drop Shadow](#). Click on the drop shadow box and select black for the color and change the percentage to 45% and the numbers for offset and blur and the other adjustments to .05, then click on OK. Now, using the original cover design printed by End-time Handmaidens, use the text box tool to draw text boxes, select different fonts, and type sizes and type in smaller question marks. Be aware that some fonts are copyrighted and will not work when trying to make an Adobe Acrobat PDF out of the Adobe Indesign file. In the Swatches pallet, change the color of the question marks to white and place them appropriately around the main large question mark you made and put in the center of the cover.

Now we add the red *Who Is Jesus?* title. This red will be a Pantone #185, so in the Swatches pallet in Indesign, click on the triangle inside the small circle below the red x in the upper right area of the pallet. Now, in the new window that opens, with ["New Color Swatch"](#) showing after Swatch Name, select "Spot" for Color Type and "Pantone Solid Uncoated" for Color Mode. In the white box after the word PANTONE, type in "186" and click on "OK". This adds the 186 color to the bottom of the Swatches pallet. Now, in the cover art quadrant of the document, with the Text tool selected, use the mouse to click and drag a text box about as large as the blue background. In the Character pallet or Type pull down menu go down to CAC Moose and "Regular". For point size pick "60". Where the text tool cursor is flashing type in *Who Is Jesus?*, pressing the Enter key after each word so it goes on its own line. Click on the black arrow tool in the tools pallet, then click in the red text you just made and use the keyboard arrow keys to move the title around until it looks centered. Now, with the text box still selected go to the "Object" pull down menu and go down to "Drop Shadow". Check the "Drop Shadow" box. Select "Multiply". "Opacity is 75%. X and Y offsets are .05" and blur is .0694 in. Color is "Swatches" and 185u rather than black because we are working toward a two color only press documents, the two color separations being 186 red and Reflex Blue. Click on "OK" to close the Drop Shadow window. The cover of the tract is now finished.

Now we insert the text. Pages 1-4 will go upside down and begin beneath the cover, because the job is a "work & turn" which means that only one set of press plates is required, the document printing two per sheet when the sheet is flipped on the short edge and run through the press a second time. Because it is too hard to work upside down, we will type the text upside right and then use the "Transform" pallet feature to

turn it upside down. I experimented and found that an 8 point type size would allow me to get all the text into the document. I chose the Arial font because it is easy to read and perhaps the most commonly used font there is. Following the inner blue guidelines below the cover in the document, select the text box tool and click and drag down and right at an angle to create a text box that touches these blue lines on all four sides. Since I am first making the document for a color laser printer before I change it for two color separations for a printing press, I can use the additional color black for text as the black toner is about a third the price of color toner. The first thing to type is the title in 186 red in all capitals and centered side to side. With the text insertion point I beam cursor flashing in the upper left corner of the text box you made, go to the top of the main Indesign page and choose Arial and 8 point for type settings in at the upper left. In the "Paragraph Styles" pallet (if it is not showing go to the Window pull down menu and click on Type and Tables, then to the right to Character), click on the icon for centered text. In the Swatches pallet, click on Pantone 186 U. Holding the shift key down to make all capital letters, type *WHO IS JESUS?*. Hit the Enter key on the keyboard, then with the mouse click on the icon in the Paragraph pallet for justified margins. Select Pantone Reflex Blue U in the Swatches pallet, hold the shift key down and type in the first subheading, "CREATION". Press the enter key, and select "Black from the Swatches pallet. Press the space bar three times to indent and begin typing the message. When you have typed down to the bottom blue guide line, you may find that the last word "it" in the sentence doesn't quite make it to the end of the right margin. If this is the case, click and drag across the whole line of text and go to the "Character" pallet and change the adjustments at "AV" until the text in that last line is the same length as the lines above it. Press the enter key, then go to the "Layout" pull down menu and down to "Numbering and Section Options. In the window that opens, see that "[Automatic Page Numbering](#)" is selected and click on OK. Each time you make a text box and get to the bottom and do this the a page number will be placed in the document and you will select it by clicking and dragging over it then change it to the number you want. For this column the proper number is "1". Now click on the black arrow tool in the Tools pallet then in the "[Transform](#)" pallet tab next to "Paragraph", go to the angle icon adjustment and click on the "0" degrees and go down to "180 degrees". This turns the text box and its contents upside down in the right hand quadrant below the cover.

Now draw a text box with the mouse and the text box tool inside the blue line guides in the column to the left of page one and type in page 2 content and turn it upside down until all four pages are typed in upside down in the bottom half of the document with page numbers centered at the bottom of each column or page. Page 5 will be in the upper left quadrant reading right side up. The blue section title *JESUS RESURRECTED* will be the last line (except for the page number) on that page. I would have preferred to have it in the next column at the top, but then all the text wouldn't fit in the document. When you get to last page, page 7, the font for the 186 red prayer is

Arial Narrow so the text all fits. Please note in the Paragraph pallet, the first adjust area down on the left side. When you click with the text insertion cursor in from of a line or word, the adjustment here gives additional between the lines spacing to further help the text all fit. I use this to add a bit more space at the beginning of a paragraph or subheading.

Now save and print the document on both sides using an inkjet or laser printer. Trim the ¼+” off the face or right side end of the cover so the background bleeds to the edge, and fold it half so it will fit in a hand shear paper cutter and cut it in half the long way so you have two tracts. Fold each piece in half again so the cover is on the outside and the fold edge on the left. Now trim about ¼” off the top and 1/16” off the bottom of each tract so the cover bleeds to the edge on all four sides. Each of the four quadrants should be of equal width, the cover should barely curve around the fold onto page 7, and all the margins in each column or page should be equal and about ¼”. If not, click on the text box with the mouse and the black arrow tool for each page of text that is not centered and move it with the keyboard arrow keys to get the layout looking symmetrical. Now the document is ready for printing on a color laser printer. Because some printers that have built in duplexers don't print the backside in the same position as it is laid out on the computer, you may have to click on “Edit” in the program pull down menu and go down to “Select All” then use the arrow keys to make the back side match the front side when the document is trimmed and folded.

Now it is time to make the document two colors only and do “flip horizontal” color separations for film positives for metal plates for a printing press. First of all, the current document made for a color laser printer has three colors, PMS 185 red, Pantone Reflex Blue, and Black. We want only two colors so are going to change all black text to Reflex Blue. With the Adobe Indesign CS2 program open and the document “Who is Jesus 4 clr lsr printer” open, select the text tool, then click and drag over all the black text and while each area or segment is selected, go to the swatches pallet and change the color of the text from black to reflex blue by using the mouse cursor to click on the reflex blue swatch. Then, to make the document look better, click and drag across all the Reflex Blue sub title text a sentence at a time and while it is highlighted or selected, click on the Pantone 185, to change these subtitles to red. Now save the document.

Now it is time to preview the color separations of the document to make sure in advance it will look right when printed to film positives. Go to Windows pull down menu then down to Output, then across to [Separations Preview](#) to open and display this pallet. In this pallet, click on View: Separations. The list of colors displays with an eye to the left of each. Click on all the eyes but the Reflex Blue and 185 red to shut them off from view. Now click on the 185 red, and you see what the Reflex blue plate for the printing press will look like. Does it look like you wanted? Now do the reverse to display only the red plate information.

Now it's time to select the whole document and copy it to a tabloid or 11" high by 17" wide layout document so the plate bend for the press can be added. If you only have a laser printer that will print up to legal size, then you will have to skip this step and print the separations on letter size film positives and manually move the document on film to allow for or add the 7/8" or more plate bend for the offset press you are using. Since I now have two laser printers capable to printing on 12 by 18 film positive material, and I want to be sure the document will be straight when burning or exposing the image to the metal plate, I am transferring the legal size document to the larger tabloid page layout size document. With the legal size document open, do Edit, then Select All, then Copy, which copies the document to the computer's "[clip board](#)". Now go File and New then Document and choose landscape and tabloid. Click and drag a blue line out of the left ruler and place it 7/8" from the right margin. This is the plate bend. This is the line where the imaginary edge of the sheet will go. Measure the distance from the right edge to the beginning of artwork or text in the legal size document and place a second blue line from the left ruler margin the measured distance in from the previous blue line on the right of the document. This is where the text or artwork begins. Now, in the tabloid layout go to Edit then Paste and the document pastes into the larger tabloid size background. What you pasted should be selected or highlighted, so move it within the new document to get the text or artwork on the right to start or end right at the inner of the two blue lines. Also make sure there is even space above and below the document. Save the document with a new name like two color tabloid 4 film positives.

Now it is time to print the color separations. Go to file, then print, and select the appropriate printer. Load the film positive material in the manual feed tray of the printer. You should have selected the Post Script printer driver, preferably Level 3. In the print window under Output, select [Separations](#), then uncheck all but the PMS 185 and Reflex Blue. Do click on flip horizontal which puts the toner side of the film positive material right against the metal place when it is being exposed for maximum sharpness. The trapping setting should be Application Built in. Select print colors in black if available, pick tabloid for paper size and card stock for paper type. Put the film positive material in the manual feed tray and press the print button in the software. Make sure the graphics are a dark black in solid areas. Spraying the toner side with Krylon brand Acrylic clear spray (or [Toner Aide by Sprayway](#)) paint will make the heavy solid areas of image denser. If one uses [Kimotodesk brand polyester laser film](#), he can make/design solid ink areas into a document. I designed the gripper byte and plate bend into the document, then when you go to expose the image onto the metal plate, then you should be able to align the edge of the plate with the film positive before closing the lid and turning on the vacuum to the exposure box.

2015 Update - After attempting to color separate a Cambodian tract job into two [spot colors](#) using Microsoft Word, and Microsoft Publisher, I decided I won't try doing that again. I was given a sixteen page two color Spanish booklet tract to reproduce. I

retyped the text and made new gradients and solid background colors in Indesign. I had to scan the graphics at 600 dpi, then, In Adobe Photoshop CS5, I used the magic wand tool at a low *tolerance* setting of about 5 or 10 percent, to select and delete the unwanted second color. I clicked on the two color squares at the bottom of the tools pallet, then under color libraries, chose the Pantone Green or Reflex Blue standard colors. Then, using the paint bucket tool, I was able to pour that color into areas of the graphic containing the scan of that same printed color. This restored, the original document color to a limited extent, because the color mode was still RGB, not a [monotone](#) PMS (Pantone Matching System) color. To my surprise, although the graphics looked like spot colors when *placed* into the Adobe Indesign page layout program, they disappear when printing spot color separation films on our laser printer. When I opened the color separations pallet in Indesign, I saw that the graphic did appear when one of the four [CMYK](#) process color listings were checked, but not when only the one spot color was checked.

To remedy this problem, I clicked on the problem graphic in Indesign and unembedded it. I then asked to edit the graphic with Photoshop. The graphic opened up in Photoshop in [RGB mode](#). Under the *Image* pull down menu, I went to *Mode*, then *Grayscale*. A new window warned me that the change would alter the colors and it did. When the color information was discarded, the result was a gray, rather than a black. I went to the *Image* menu again, then to *Levels*. In the new adjustment window, I began to slide the adjuster on the left to the right to darken the image. I move it just enough to make a black. Moving the adjuster further to the right would cause the graphic to develop fuzzy edges or thicken. In the silhouette of a man with a thin gap of white between his legs, the white would begin to disappear if I moved the shadows slider all the way to the right, and the graphics would probably not retain their sharp edges. Also, sliding the adjuster further to the left may cause unwanted background spots to appear in the highlight tones of the image.

Now I needed to change the black graphic to a *monotone* PMS Pantone Green color with a .psd file extension. Again, I went to the *Image* pull down menu, then to the right and down to *Duotone*. In the new widow that opened, I selected *Monotone*. I clicked on the white square which opened up the color library. I picked *Pantone Green*, then closed the window and saved the graphic using *Save as*, and adding *pantone green* to the name. I then down sized the Photoshop program window and upsized the Indesign program window. I clicked on the graphic in the open booklet document that was an RGB that needed to be swapped for the monotone Pantone green graphic. The existing RGB graphic is now highlighted in blue in the *Links* pallet. I click on the upper right corner of that pallet and go down to *Relink*. In the new window that opens, I find the monotone version of the graphic, click on it, and then click on *Open* to close that window. Now I once again click on the upper right corner of the *Links* pallet in Indesign, and go down to [Embed Graphic](#) or *Embed all Instances...* Since my booklet is laid out

four to a legal size page, I go through the same procedure to relink all four instances of the graphic. Inside the *Separations* pallet, I turn separations on, and unclick the view for all colors except the pantone green listed at the bottom. The formerly missing graphic now shows with other pantone green elements on the document page that contains the graphic. I had to do this with two other graphics *placed* into the document from a stored Photoshop graphic.

Please note that the order of colors listed in the [Separations pallet](#), and also under the *Separations* tab in the Postscript printer driver window, shows the sequence in which colors are to be printed on the sheet of paper. I had thought that the large area of the Reflex Blue color on the tract booklet cover would lay down after the thin rectangle of pantone green, but not so, according to the list, since the Reflex Blue is listed above the Pantone Green. That means that I must pay closer attention in the future when printing two color jobs on our twin tower two color printing press. In this case, I will put the Reflex Blue in the inking system closest to the paper input section of the press. The Pantone green will be put in the ink fountain of the inking system closest to the paper output end of the printing press. Printing the inks in the right order should help facilitate a better finished look when a slight trapping of one color over the other (to prevent gaps of white between mating colors) is built into the job by the Indesign program.

Please note here, that when two different color mating graphics are *placed* into Indesign from Photoshop where the graphics were scanned and separated from a hard copy (previously printed document), I have to use the paintbrush tool in Photoshop and multiple *layers* to hand draw an additional outline around one of the documents for a trap of the two colors. In the current case of my booklet, since Indesign supplied the background color or gradient, I believe it makes its own trap. One last word. When I printed out the laser films (from which to make metal plates), there were areas of heavy solids of color. If there were scratches or pinholes of white in the printed film pages, I had to remake that film. Using a black felt tipped marker to cover the holes doesn't always work because the plate development is sensitive enough to recognize and show the slightly darker areas made by the marking pen.

Using OCR to Convert Hard Copy Documents to Computer Medium

An OCR ([optical character recognition](#)) program on one's computer, along with a scanner or high quality digital camera can speed up the conversion to computer medium of hard copy "camera ready" documents previously converted to negative development aluminum plates through the use of the photographic process which required a graphic arts camera, darkroom, and chemistry with a limited shelf life. Pictures had to be converted to a press printable medium by converting them into "halftone" dot patterns using darkroom screens. Now the computer does this in conjunction with a "postscript" printer driver. The modern OCR program such as [Abbyy Fine Reader Pro 12](#), or [OmniPage Pro 18](#) by Nuance, can be a time saving help in eliminating the Darkroom and Graphics Arts camera which took skill to use. It is hard to believe, but an OCR program can:

1. Take a complicated Adobe Indesign Page Layout Program document with columns, graphics, and pictures that has been converted to a PDF Adobe Acrobat document, and change it to an editable, look alike Microsoft Word document that I don't think MS Word can make!
2. Convert a PDF (Adobe Acrobat) document to a word processing document from the "Export" Subheading in the "File" drop down menu in the Acrobat Professional program.
3. Take a digital picture of a document made with a camera of 6 megapixel or higher quality, import it into the OCR program, and convert it to editable text.
4. Take a scanned and converted document and convert it to another language.
5. Using the computer speaker(s), read to you the document scanned and converted into the other language!

First, let us try and convert a [PDF](#) document to a Microsoft Word document using Adobe Acrobat Professional version 8. Open the Acrobat Pro program and then a PDF document. I used the PDF "Printing Instructions Table of Contents." In the "File" pull down menu, I went down to "Export" and then across to "Word Document". A window opened up asking me to save the document after it had been converted, so I made a "New Folder" and named it "Experiments". As I waited, I could see a progress window showing me the conversion was being made. I then opened Microsoft Word and then went to the place where the document had been saved and it appeared there with the MS Word "icon" so I knew it had made the conversion. When I opened the document in Word, it was all there, and editable, but the formatting or placement of text on the page was not quite right. Before I had had a "text box" on the right to get the page numbers

to display correctly. The converted document put individual text boxes around each page number, which was ok since I could click with the mouse on the areas of text, which made a visible blue box around that text portion. I could then move the mouse pointer to the perimeter of the box and click and move the text and the box to where I wanted it on the page. It appears that the PDF to MS Word conversion from within Acrobat 9 Professional didn't result in editable new text, but simply made images of blocks of text in text boxes in Word 2007.

Next I opened the PDF document [How To Prosper](#) by Prince Handley. Because this is a "[Work & Tumble](#)" document, half the text is upside down so one can print it on a printing press using only one instead of two plates, by just flipping the document 180 degrees. The OCR made the conversion, but made all the text facing right side up. It kept the four quadrants of text, and the lines of text were reasonably in the same position as in the Acrobat document.

Now I opened a PDF of the *Butterfly* tract ([A Vital Decision...](#)) located in the "Products" section of the www.tracts4u.com website. This document has full color pictures and Title lettering artwork made in Photoshop and converted to an image. The quality and positioning of the pictures and front page art was very good. Some of the Blue text went out of position, but this text could be clicked on and moved back in place. Amazing!

A couple of years ago, I had downloaded the trial version of Abby Fine Reader Pro OCR. I used it to perfectly convert the [Prayer Changes Everything](#) threefold tract with colored pictures and art and text in columns to a Microsoft Word document. Perhaps Opening the OCR Program rather than Acrobat Professional and importing the PDF and converting it would allow more adjustments and give more accurate results. I tried exporting the [Prayer Changes Everything](#) tract from Acrobat 8 professional to Microsoft Word and formatting on the page got messed up because Word didn't open it as a "landscape" orientation and I couldn't change the orientation once the unacceptable conversion had been made and was opened in Word. I will now make the PDF to Word conversion from within the Omnipage Pro 16 program, and see if the results are acceptable.

I opened Omnipage 16 Professional Program on the computer and clicked on File and then New, then Load File. I navigated on my "J" drive or eternal hard drive to the PDF of the [Who Am I?](#) tract. When the document appeared, I clicked on Automatic and the program began scanning the document and converting it to picture and text while maintaining the page layout. Next I did *Copy to Clipboard*. Then I opened the Microsoft Word Program and went *File New Blank Document* in the *Landscape* mode, accessed through the *Layout and Margins* tab. When the blank document window had opened, I went to the Home Tab and did a paste from the clipboard. The tract pasted properly into two Microsoft Word pages with some spelling errors or extra spaces in words, but I could click and drag over these with the mouse cursor to correct any misspelling. Since

the Title had contained a drop shadow, it didn't appear right in Word, and I would have had to retype the title and possibly not have the option of having a drop shadow. The quadrants of text and colors of type were properly maintained or carried over from the PDF. Then I opened Adobe Indesign CS and new document in Landscape orientation and ½" margins all around and did an Edit then Paste. The text was imported, but not formatted or in colors. Thus, going from PDF to Microsoft Word was more fruitful, or, would be a better choice for trying to make a document like the PDF document that could be edited or changed. Otherwise the PDF could be opened in the full version of Acrobat and perhaps a text box be added to put in a Church address, or contact information.

After I had disconnected my computer and reconnected it the OCR program didn't want to access the scanner until I reconnected it and restarted the computer. I had gotten a quote on a piece of equipment that was done in Microsoft Office Excel and attached to an e-mail. I opened the attachment, printed the document, then signed the contract and scanned it at a low resolution of 150 dpi and sent it back as an e-mail attachment. I took the printed black and white copy of the scanned and signed contract and put it back in the scanner. In the Omni Page 16 Pro OCR program I went to file and down to Get Page, then Scan Grayscale. The third tab to the right said Automatic and I clicked on the arrow and when down to Form. Then I went back to the tab before, Get Page and clicked on the colored button to begin the scan. Then the proof reader opened up and showed me items like my signature that the program didn't know what to do with, and I clicked on the Ignore button. Then I went to the fourth menu over and clicked on Copy To Clipboard. I opened up Microsoft Office Word 2007 and when the cursor was flashing in a new document, I was on the Home tab and did a Paste and the document appeared almost like the original I had scanned. Where there was a line for numbers to be typed in there was a gray box which I found out was for me to click there and be able to type in numbers if I wanted to. Hopefully these gray areas don't print.

I prefer to convert a PDF document to Microsoft Word 2007 using the OCR rather than scanning a high quality printed copy as I feel some quality would be lost in the reproduction of pictures and graphics, but not the text. To further experiment, I took my *His Print Media Ministries* full color business card, printed at the highest possible resolution on the Epson R320 inkjet printer, and decided to scan it through the OCR program and see what happens. The business cards are 12 up or 12 to a letter size sheet. I went to Load Pages and selected Scan Color. The proof reader opened after the scan and I went through teach trouble spot and either hit Ignore All or made the correction and clicked on Change All. At the next step, I did Copy to [Clipboard](#). I Opened Microsoft Word 2007 and set the margins for .125" and the orientation for landscape. In the Home tab I clicked on paste. The formatted document appeared in Word with some items needing to be changed. I tried the same thing in Adobe Indesign and all I got was for some text to transfer over.

The conclusion is that [Omnipage OCR](#) works best with [Microsoft Word](#). For Page Layout programs, it is best to use it to capture text with the idea of not having to retype it. Perhaps it would be better to go from OCR to MS Word, and then to a text box in a page layout program. I think the pictures should be scanned into Photoshop, cleaned up, saved on the computer and Placed into either Word or a page layout program. The OCR will be used for languages with [Romance](#) characters / letters / alphabets such as French, Spanish English, German, Italian. And yes, I think it is better to convert from a PDF document using the OCR, rather than a hard copy document. When I tried to convert an image of text taken with a digital camera, it didn't work with my [Canon Powershot Digital Elph](#), because its resolution is 5 megapixel and a 6 megapixel is required. The Senior Pastor and I tried his Kodak 12 megapixel and it seemed to work. I add here that I had tried to copy a book document using a [Xerox Documate scanner](#) that duplexes and has an auto document feeder and do this using the Omnipage 17 Professional OCR program. I noticed the Xerox scanner did a fairly fast scanning job, but the digestion of the material took quite a while since I am using a computer with an older Pentium 4 CPU running at 1.8 MHZ. Since the book was not a good quality copy to begin with, having been reproduced multiple as a school textbook using a copier machine, the end result is that it was not worth trying to use the OCR with that book as there were too many unrecognized or imperfectly recognized characters.

In conclusion, here is a perfect example of an efficient use of the OCR program. When typesetting the chapter on Follow Up, I wanted to add the *Holy Spirit Inspired Prayer for Personal Growth*. When I looked for it on my computer hard drive, I found it as two jpeg format scanned images of a previously typed and printed document. I opened Omnipage Pro 17, then imported each image separately and clicked on the recognize tab and document began to highlight in yellow from top to bottom, converting the image of text to editable text while maintaining the page formatting. There were no errors. I then used the mouse cursor to select the entire text and copy it to the hidden computer [Clipboard](#). I then put my cursor in the book document where I wanted to insert the text and did Edit, then Paste. I did the same with the second page. Wow! Previously, I had drawn an insert text box in Microsoft Word 2007, then used insert picture and placed the two images in the document, but they did not display as the same font size text and the text wasn't sharp, and the two images took up over eight megabytes of file size space in the document!

September 2015 update - An accredited Bible University approached us again about making ten copies of five of their comb-bind books. In the past, the books had been repeatedly copied using a copy machine and the lines of text were fuzzy and not straight. It took my wife and I days to scan each page of a book and straighten it in Adobe Photoshop and eliminate unwanted spots in the background. I first searched the internet to see if any of these books had already been converted to computer, which would save us a lot of work if we could just download a PDF of the book from the

internet and print from the read order PDF. We were able to do that with a Biblical Counseling guide. I noticed that the latest set of books to copy and put on computer medium had cleaner text and straighter lines, with simple formatting, something an OCR software might handle. I had not had success years ago with an OCR and an automated scanner made by Xerox, connected to an older slow computer. I felt impressed to examine the software CD that came with my newer [Epson Perfection V500 Photo scanner](#). It contained [Abbyy Fine Reader Sprint 2003](#). I installed the software. An employee in the disabled students department of the city college where I worked had told me that the Abbyy brand software was easier to use than the Omnipage brand OCR I now have. He was right. I can simply scan a book page and it is turned into a fresh editable text Microsoft Word page that looks like the original. I was able to scan the pages as an 8 bit grayscale at 300 dpi. As a result, the whole converted document was less than 2 megabytes in file size. That made it suitable for a read order PDF interactive e-book to post on a website for an online version of the university. In Microsoft Word 2007, the wavy red lines under suspect words enabled me to quickly check for spelling errors.



Making a new book document from the [comb-bound](#) hard copy was hindered by my not knowing how to scan successive pages into the same Microsoft Word book document I had started when I scanned the first book page. The scanned pages came out a different font than the original, which meant that the text took more space on the page when converted to the font I wanted. I then took all the separate scanned to a Word page documents and converted them to PDF file format. This took away the editing capability not included with the standard free download Adobe Acrobat Reader software.

I learned something new in this process. After installing the Sprint OCR software, when I would scan a page, it would automatically save as a PDF instead of a tiff image. Using the full version of Acrobat 9 Professional, I was able to open the PDF of the first scanned page, and then insert the other PDF pages which I stored in one folder as I scanned them. I took a similar style Microsoft Word book cover document, and changed the title and made it a PDF and inserted it into the document. I was able to convert a blank Word page to PDF and save it as a blank page to insert when needed in the Acrobat book document to make all chapter starts and odd numbered pages print on the right hand side.

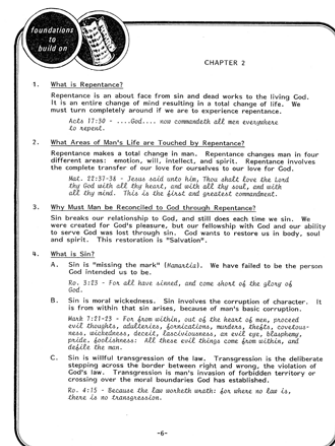
I then decided to download the free 30 day trial full version 12 of the [Abby Fine Reader Professional](#) software to see if it would do a better job with one textbook that had pictures and a larger [drop capital letter](#) at the beginning of each section. I imported one of the whole scanned to PDF books I had made. After the OCR read all the pages, I was not satisfied with the results - it would take more time than it was worth to fix all the *drop caps*, along with places where the software didn't properly interpret a dash "-". The full version software would cost over \$100, and my conclusion is that complications that

come with using the more expensive version show that what I thought was the best and easiest to use software on the market, doesn't work as well for my purposes as I had expected. The simple *Sprint* edition I essentially got for free with the purchase of a scanner, did work exceptionally well for one of the books, and it had a three button process - scan a page, read or interpret the page, and convert the result to a [.docx file](#) extension which is a Word format. It appears that, had I made more work for myself by failing to see and use the setup option of scanning successive pages to the same Word book document I started with the first page, that would have saved me hours of work I did making a PDF book instead of a Word document, and the text would have been editable.

April 2016 Update - The Bible University we are reproducing textbooks for got permission from their [Accreditation](#) organization to start an online university. The hard copy books I had scanned to computer medium would be too large a file size for uploading and downloading from the internet, and the content couldn't be updated or edited. I was asked to take three of their publications and convert them to a Microsoft Word document. One can then export the word document to an Adobe Acrobat PDF for those students who don't have the Microsoft Word word processing program. I don't type fast, so retyping the documents was unthinkable. I did find the following solution, that, although slow, gives a quality result. I have a YouTube training video of this process (just Ctrl + Click [here](#)), but I will also describe it here in the book for those reading the printed edition.

First, the pages of the book are scanned at 300 dpi as a grayscale, and not a "bitmapped" image, because the latter has jagged edges, and is not manageable in Adobe Photoshop. Some scanners allow one to scan the book pages directly to PDF with the touch of a button. In [Adobe Photoshop](#) CS5, I straightened the images and removed unwanted background. In the current situation I found I had to also use Photoshop to remove the page border and chapter start logo. I saved all the no border PDF pages in a separate folder on my computer's external hard drive.

Next I opened up Microsoft Word and started a new letter size document. Then I opened up the [Omnipage 17](#) OCR program and set it to the 1-2-3 mode. I go to Get Image, and select page one of the document. For each successive page, the program remembers where the needed pages are stored and shows me a list of them. Then I click on the processing button and the document is scanned and turned into text and appears on the right side of the computer screen, showing me the first suspect word that it thinks may be spelled wrong. The program didn't like the Bible verses which were in the Italic typeface. Rather than try to correct each word, I opened



the [e-sword Bible verse search program](#), chose the King James Version, and looked up the verse and copied it to the computer clipboard and then pasted it into the OCR editor. On the left of the OCR screen is a picture of the page being worked on so I can see what the fresh text is supposed to look like. The Program does not allow me to change the color of text, but I can use the triangle sliders at the top of the window to adjust where blocks of text start or end (i.e., left and right margins) I can also justify the text (make equal margins), and choose which typeface I want (e.g., Bold, Italic, Underlined). When I have made all the necessary type and formatting of type changes so the fresh text page looks like the sample on the left, I click the finish or 3rd step button and tell the program I want to copy the page to the [computer clipboard](#), and state that I want *flowing page*. This will ensure that the text I paste into the word processing can adjust from one page to the next should someone decide to add or remove text.

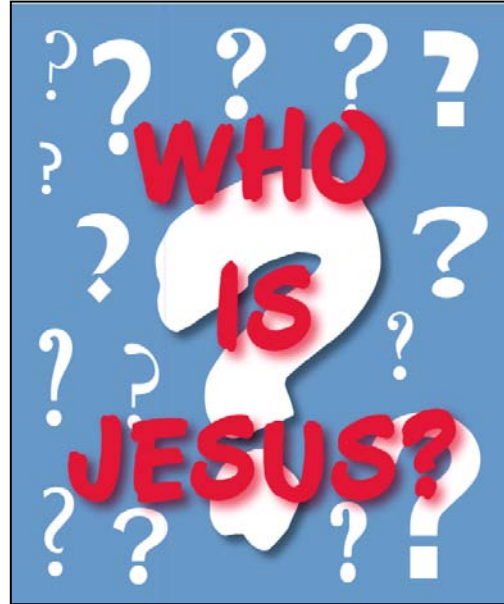
Now I open the new Microsoft Word 2007 document I created. I click the cursor in upper left corner of the page, then right click the computer mouse and choose paste. The information stored on the clipboard from the OCR program flows into the page. The page number at the bottom is in its own text box. I select that by clicking on it and then press delete because Word is making its own page numbers. The Bible verse references which were in blue are highlighted and changed to black. Some of the Scripture verse lines are too close together. Under the *Home* tab, I double click on *Paragraph*, then, under *Line Spacing*, I change *Multiple* to *Single*. Also, the Spacing between paragraphs is not what I want, so I adjust that under *Paragraph* also by changing *Before* to 6pt. Lastly, I click the mouse at the bottom of the page, then go to the *Insert* tab in the task bar, then click on *Blank Page*. Now I am ready to go back to the OCR program and recognize and edit the next book page and copy it to the clipboard.

This process is repeated until the whole book is reproduced. Now the resulting file size of the book is about 1 megabyte compared to the 50 or so megabytes (8 megabytes per page) it was using the scanning only reproduction method in which the scanned PDF pages are assembled together using Acrobat Professional, or, placed as images into pages in a page layout program. Now, having used the OCR, the document is fully editable. The OCR also carries over the graphics in their own text boxes so they can be selected in Word and moved to the desired position on the page using the arrow keys on the computer keyboard. I do not like how slow this PDF to fresh text process is, but the process of doing it is predictable and consistent. Some hard copy documents that don't have graphics or borders, and have a font the OCR programs likes, make for a faster conversion to a Microsoft Word document. For the book cover, I already had a custom Microsoft Word page I had made. I use that as a template for the different books, and change the title and author information. I then click and drag the mouse to

select everything, and copy it to the clipboard, then paste it into a blank page in my new book document.

Note: The efficiency or speed of the OCR program is linked to the power of the computer being used. Click here for [computer requirements](#) for using Nuance's Omnipage.

Duotones and Screens



Although the printing presses talked about here are only two colors with exact registration, one can add the illusion of additional colors by utilizing [screen tints](#) of the existing colors, as well as different kind of screens such as [gradients](#) and [sunbursts](#) where the screen of one of the two main colors starts out solid and then as it spreads out, become an increasing lighter shade. In addition, Adobe Photoshop allows one to take a one color or black and white digital photo and change it to a combination of the two press colors being used. This is called a [Duotone](#) and is accessed through the Image pull down menu, going to Mode and then across and down to Duotone. The tract “It’s Your Move” posted on the website had a cover picture of two men playing a game of chess. I scanned this black and white photo out of a chess book from the library and made a duotone out of it in Adobe Photoshop.

Adobe Photoshop CS Helps states regarding Duotones:

Duotone mode creates monotone, duotone (two-color), tritone (three-color), and quadtone (four-color) grayscale images using one to four custom inks.

You can create [monotones, duotones, tritones, and quadtones](#) in Photoshop. [Monotones](#) are grayscale images printed with a single, nonblack ink. Duotones, tritones, and quadtones are grayscale images printed with two, three, and four inks. In these images, colored inks, rather than different shades of gray, are used to reproduce tinted grays. For the purposes of this discussion, duotone refers to monotones, tritones, and quadtones as well as duotones.

Duotones increase the tonal range of a grayscale image. Although a [grayscale](#) reproduction can display up to 256 levels of gray, a printing press can reproduce only

about 50 levels of gray per ink. For this reason, a grayscale image printed with only black ink can look significantly coarser than the same image printed with two, three, or four inks, each individual ink reproducing up to 50 levels of gray.

Sometimes duotones are printed using a black ink and a gray ink—the black for shadows and the gray for mid tones and highlights. The parts of a digital photo or artwork can be adjusted in Photoshop, by changing the [Histogram](#) located under the *Image* tab, and the subheading *Levels*. using the More frequently, duotones are printed using a colored ink for the highlight color. This technique produces an image with a slight tint and significantly increases the dynamic range of the image. Duotones are ideal for two-color print jobs with a spot color (such as a [Pantone](#) Color) used for accent.

Because [duotones](#) use different color inks to reproduce different gray levels, they are treated in Photoshop as single-channel, 8 bit, grayscale images. In Duotone mode, you do not have direct access to the individual image channels (as in RGB, CMYK, and Lab modes). Instead, you manipulate the channels through the curves in the Duotone Options dialog box.

Here is how I did it, and how to separate the completed document into the two main colors, Black and Pantone Reflex Blue for making film positives on a laser printer, that can be used for making two positive development aluminum printing plates for a two color offset printing press. It should be noted that, since laser printer have a drawback of not doing good uniformly dark solids in printing on film positive material, it may be better to change the solid to a high percentage screen so the laser printer reproduces it without a problem and with uniformity. I did this when I made the background blue for the cover of the [Who Is Jesus?](#) Tract also posted on the [tracts4u.com](#) website.

Scan the single color, black and white printed picture out of the book at no more than 600 dpi. Place the book on the scanner glass so the picture is in the scanner glass area and is not crooked. Open Adobe Photoshop and go to File and then down to Import and then select the scanner you are using. The "[Twain](#)" software driver that came with the scanner allows it to be accessed through various picture processing programs. Since the picture you are scanning was printed on a press and not a photograph, it is already made of "halftone" dots. To avoid a conflict or "moiré" pattern in trying to make a digital (made of dots) picture from a "halftone, utilize the "[descreen](#)" feature in the scanner software. Scan at no more than 600 dpi, in grayscale mode. If you scanned as a black and white, you couldn't edit the picture in Photoshop unless you first went to Image then Mode then grayscale. Size the picture proportionally to what you want by going Image and then down to Image Size. Use Image then Adjustments then Levels to move the sliders to make the picture look good. Save the picture in the folder for this particular tract being made, [It's Your Move](#), a subfolder under "Tracts". With the picture open in Photoshop, go to Image then Mode then Duotone. You will find a window that reads Duotone Options. You can chose a foreground and background colors.

Since I will be printing the tract containing this picture in Black and Pantone Reflex Blue, I chose these colors. You can do this also by clicking on the small squares in the Color pallet. There are percentage sliders there and I slid the black slider all the way to the right to get full black. You should now be able to save the picture and rename it with a duotone designation. If you save it in [EPS](#) format, I believe the two colors chosen will carry over into Adobe Indesign when the picture is placed there. If not, pick two of the four the process colors. Then when you type the text in Indesign, also use the same one of the primary CMYK colors for the additional color to black. When you go to print the document as [color separations](#), you can choose to print only these two colors, and you can print them “mirror image (read wrong, or emulsion side down) and print the color as black when printing them to two film positives for making positive development printing plates.

In 2015, I got around to printing on the printing press five or more tracts I had written and laid out on the computer. Four of them had duotone graphics made dark enough that that the fine halftone dots or marks making up highlight areas of the document wouldn't completely dissolve away in the caustic plate developer solution and leave what I call *blowouts* - areas with no dots when all graphics, ideally, should have a 5% black dot in the lightest areas of least ink, and a 5% white dot in the shadow or solid areas of most ink being used. I laid a press printed copy of the duotone tract next to a laser printers output of the same documents. The press quality looked as good as the laser print! I had expected to lose quality due to dots dissolving out, the laser film not being able to print good solids, and [dot gain](#) caused by the swelling or spreading out of the ink after it is squeezed onto the porous paper. On the other hand, I felt that the films made from my 1999 HP 5000 monochrome laser printer had graphics that were too course - one could actually see the dots making up the pictures or artwork. I had tried to manipulate the dot sizes of the two colors of the duotone in Adobe Photoshop CS5. In one case I was successful, but in other cases, when I changed the [Screen Angles](#) settings, an awful looking [moiré pattern](#) emerged, caused by an improper pairing of the two sets of dots for the two colors making up the *duotone* image. In earlier versions of Adobe Photoshop that came out in about the year 2000, I was able to successfully use plug in screen values of 120, 133, and 150 dpi that were supplied to me when I purchased the CTP plate making system purchased in the year 1999. Now I can only admire the beautiful grayscale one color halftone pictures I had been able to print on the printing press in earlier days of my printing experience. For a lack of knowledge of how to use the newer version CS5 Photoshop, I decided I don't know what I am doing when I attempt to design finer screens to be printed out on film using the older HP 5000 printer which has the advantage of making denser round *halftone* dots compared to the Ricoh tabloid laser printer which uses small lines/marks to convert pictures from continuous tone photographs to a printing press imitation of a photo using dots. I could manipulate a

one color or *grayscale* picture in Photoshop and not have it look bad when I printed it on the press. I found an online training video on [making halftones in Photoshop](#).

Attempting to manipulate a duotone is a different story since there are two sets of dots that, if not properly matched, bring out the ugly *moiré* pattern for which I have to remake the halftone in Adobe Indesign using the default settings, make two new films on the laser printer, and two new metal plates. Doing all that could add hours to a job. Now, when there is a conflict of dots, I revert the graphic or picture back to a monotone (one color). I still print the document in two colors, but make the single color graphic a colored ink rather than the accompanying black ink used for the main *body* text of the tract message.

I was asked to reproduce a booklet that has a linear [gradient](#) on page three. The reflex blue color bleeds off the top edge after a trim with the cutter. The color started as almost a solid at the top and went down 2/3rds of the page where it met a text box with a Pantone Green color fill. By clicking on the box in Adobe Indesign for the gradient, I was able to go to the *Object* pull down menu, then to *Effects* and then *Gradient Feather*. By clicking on the highlight and shadow (starting and ending) triangles in the software, I was able to make the darkest color at the top 90% of a solid, and the beginning or feather area at the bottom a 25% dot. This combination, I believe, gave me a smoother near solid at the top, and a definite bottom ending point line of dots that would not dissolve away in the developer chemistry after I had exposed the aluminum printing plate from a polyester laser film positive I made in our 12" x 18" output color laser printer.

Document Enhancement - Adding Photos, Art, and Graphics

Years ago my *spiritual mother* told me I had latent or unused art ability in me. My sister had gotten a four year university degree in Art, but it seemed I couldn't draw. We appeared on the local Frank Web children's TV show to demonstrate a toy my Dad had invented, and we had to draw something. Ugh! I believe now that the Lord was saying that I have the ability to create artistic and evangelistic documents from pre-existing art pieces or pictures, using the computer and its graphics programs Adobe Photoshop and Indesign, to combine the pieces into an attractive and attention getting tract document. Ideas, mental pictures, will come to me for making tracts or improving the looks of tracts will come to me. When I start on the project, as when I began this book, the Lord moves through me to make the attractive soul winning literature found on the CD at the back of this book. For example, I was able to make a crossword puzzle on how to identify the Messiah titled [Messiah's Identity Revealed](#).

In the early 1980's. some in town were protesting the construction of the Diablo Canyon Nuclear Power Plant. I knew the Spanish word Diablo is Devil in English, so I decided to capitalize on the public issue and use it to draw attention to our need to be free from Satan's destruction by invoking Jesus Christ as our personal Lord and Master. I had a friend draw a sketch from a photo of the power plant. I had an instant [electrostatic plate](#) making system for the table top offset printing press and was able to make a camera ready paste up document which I put in the Ricoh copier to make a printing plate. After the first printing, I got the idea of making a red color artist's line art rendition of the Devil to print beneath the text or as a background image light enough in color so one could still easily read the message. My sister did the artwork with Satan's arm reaching up to the corner of the page. On the front side or cover one could see red boney fingers in the bottom corner as if the Devil had his fingers curled around the edge of the sheet of paper. My *spiritual mother* praised me for having the maturity and spiritual understanding of the Bible to be able to create such a tract.

Later, after reading books by the German Christian Psychologist, [Dr. Kurt Koch](#), with 20,000 case histories in his files about the dangers of being involved in the occult, and it's direct and detrimental connection with the Devil and demons, resulting in *occult subjection* (unwanted side effects or bondage); I wrote a similar tract backed by testimonies titled, [Are You Playing With Satan?](#) The Holy Spirit within me reminded me of a picture I had seen in a book on the game of chess I had found at the library. I had used, by scanning it into my computer, a black and white printed photograph of two men playing the game and waiting for the other to make the next move. I titled that tract, [It's Your Move!](#) I converted that picture to a Reflex Blue and Black *duotone* for a two color exact registration printing press. The second picture I used for this dangers of the occult tract was a painting from the middle ages. It showed a man playing chess with the Devil while an Angel of God watched. The shapes of the black and white playing pieces

showed this was a battle between good and evil and implied it was a battle for the souls of men.

After printing this tract on an inkjet, then a monochrome, then a color laser printer, I got the idea I used before of printing a Devil on the tract inside behind the text message. My revivalist minister friend and I were walking through the downtown mall when we saw two realistic plastic or Styrofoam statues of the Devil on each side of a storefront. I took three pictures with my digital camera at close range and later downloaded them to my computer. I was able to open one of them in Adobe Photoshop and carefully erase the storefront background to leave just the hideous creature. I sized it to fit nicely on the inside panel of the tract document. I went to the *Image* pull down menu and down to *Adjustments*, then, [Levels](#), where I used the middle and right of the three horizontal sliders to lighten the image until it wouldn't interfere with reading the text printed across or in front of the image. I saved the doctored image on my computer. I opened the tract document I had already created in Adobe Indesign and used the picture box tool to draw a box without a border. I went to the *File* pull down menu then to [Place](#), located the picture where I had saved it and opened it into the box. Under the *Object* pull down menu, with the image selected, I went to *Arrange* then *Send to Back* to put the text in front of the picture.

The text can always be made to read over the background image, but in some cases where more than one image is involved, one may have to make one of the images have a transparent background so as not to conflict with the other image. This is done by going to the layers pallet in Photoshop and clicking on the *Background*, then going to the *Layers* pull down menu and down to *Duplicate Layer*, then clicking on and dragging the background in the layers pallet to the small trash can in that pallet. If the background is still visible as white, use the *Magic Wand* tool and click on the background and press delete until it has disappeared and a checkered black and white background replaces the white. Then save the picture as a *Tiff* file format and check the *Save [Transparency](#)* box. Note that the transparent background image will not import into all page layout or word processing programs, but works fine in Adobe Indesign. I did notice that, in converting some Indesign documents to PDF, the graphics didn't convert right. I suspect the problem was the transparency. I found a work around by adjusting the conversion so there was no compression of the image, or by exporting the document as a high quality tiff image rather than a PDF. The later route made a large file size.

I printed this tract as a two color duotone (PMS 185 red and Pantone black) on the printing press. The devil image had looked good when printed on a polyester film positive from which a metal press plate was made, but the plate developer dissolved away so many of the dots making up the picture, the image in the printed copy was faint and barely visible. I should have darkened the graphic in Photoshop (*Image - Adjustments - Levels*) and made a new film and another plate.

(by going to File, then New, then Folder; or clicking on the manila folder icon in the file folder window) you create titled *Pictures & Artwork*. You should have all pictures in the document in this folder because it would be necessary when taking it to a service bureau to have negatives made for negative development printing plates, or if the Document is made in Adobe Indesign and taken to another computer. It is a good practice, after each picture or piece of art or graphic is placed in Adobe Indesign from the Pictures folder where you put the graphics items you prepared and sized beforehand in Adobe Photoshop), to go to the [Links pallet in Indesign](#) and click on the picture you just inserted (you identify it by the name you previously gave it when you saved it), then go to the arrow inside the small circle at the top right hand corner of the Links pallet and go down to *Embed File*. This way the graphics stay with the file, especially when one converts the document to a PDF file using the full version of Adobe Acrobat. In Microsoft Word, the inserted pictures or objects seem to stay with the document when it is moved from one computer to another. Some Clip Art on CDs are vector based or made mathematically like documents created in Adobe Illustrator. These graphics are a small file size and can be greatly enlarged or resized with no loss of quality. Pictures are sized and adjusted and saved in and using Photoshop before inserting them in a typing program or page layout program because, for example, pictures taken with my 5 megapixel camera, when opened in Photoshop, are way too large at about 14" wide, and the resolution is too low at 72 dpi. One uses Photoshop to make the picture smaller proportionally while increasing the resolution to 200dpi or more. Trying to make a document of super high quality pictures is not necessary and will slow down the speed of the laser printer in printing the document.

Now, in Adobe Indesign, with the document you are creating open, click on the picture box tool (it is a square with an X in it), then use the mouse to draw a text box where you want to place the picture in the document. The Stroke pallet and outline icon in the colors pallet allow you to put a border on the picture being inserted. With the picture box highlighted or selected, go to the *File* pull down menu and go down to *Place*. Browse to the place on your computer where the associated pictures folder is for document, and pick the picture you want and then click on open, and the picture inserts. The black arrow tool allows you to size the bounding box around the inserted picture. The white arrow tool allows you to click on the picture and resize it within the bounding box. To resize it proportionally (maintaining the original height and width ratio) hold the shift key down when clicking and dragging on a corner of the brown box outline around the picture. Pictures usually go on a layer of depth beneath text, but if they don't, go to *Object*, then *Arrange*, then *Send to Back*. When the black arrow tool is selected you can click on the picture and move it around within the document with the keyboard arrow keys, or possibly just click within the box and drag the picture to where you want it. In Microsoft Office Word 2007, place the cursor in the document where you want the picture to be inserted, then go to *Insert*, then *Picture*. *Browse* to find the picture on your

computer and then click on *Open* to insert it. The picture can be formatted by either right clicking on it and choosing an option from the list such as *add caption*, or clicking on the picture and then clicking on the *Format* tab at the top of the program toward the right. The picture can be adjusted in relation to the text around it this way, but a better way is to first go to *Insert*, then *Text Box*, then go to the bottom of that window and click on *Draw Text Box*. With the mouse draw a text box to put the picture in. A flashing cursor appears inside the box you drew, and the box has a black outline around it, and the *Format* tab opens. In the format tab, where it says *Shape Outline*, click on *None* to remove the box outline. Now, with the cursor flashing inside the phantom box, go to *Insert*, then *Picture*. Browse to find the picture or graphic you want, and double click on it and it is placed into the document inside the box. You can hold down the shift key and size the picture proportionally. You can click just outside the picture, or on the picture border and select the bounding text box with a blue line connecting the small squares around the border. Click on this border and only the small squares are visible. Now you can use the keyboard arrow keys to move the text box with the picture in it in small increments without the rest of the document in the immediate area going wacko!

Preparing the photos for the Page Layout or Word processing Program

My Friend Joe sent me pictures for the sound system chapter of this book (not included in this edition) as e-mail attachments, and then on a CD Rom disk. I put the disk in the computer and it auto recognized. I chose *Open Folder to View Files*. I saw the pictures in a list by number only. If I had the current version of Adobe Photoshop Elements, I could have opened them in that and had them all display to look at, but my older version wouldn't allow me to register it, so I opened Adobe Photoshop CS2 and then used the *File* pull down menu and went to *Open*, then browsed and clicked on the first listed picture on the CD. You can also right click on the listed item on the CD and go to [Windows Picture Previewer](#). When I opened each picture it needed to be lightened a bit, so I went to the *Image* pull down menu and went to *Adjustments*, then to the right to [Levels](#). I moved the middle or midtone slider to the left to slightly lighten the picture. If A picture has already been placed in a Microsoft Word Document, one can right click on it and go to format and adjust the brightness and contrast sliders in that new window; or, click on the photo to select it, then go to *Format* tab at the top of the program and then at the left at the top click on *Brightness* then go down to 10 percent and click and the photo instantly lightens by that much.

The pictures sent me had been well cropped when the digital camera photographs were taken, but I still wanted to crop some of them further. I selected the dotted square *Marquis* tool from the tools pallet then clicked and dragged the mouse and cursor to draw a box around the area I wanted. I then went to *Image* and down to [Crop](#). Since the pictures hadn't been edited yet since they were taken and copied to me, the size or widths were 12 to 14" which is too big to fit in the document, and the resolution was 72 dpi, fine for viewing on the computer screen but not enough for a quality printer. I had

thought the pictures would go in to a letter half booklet instruction manual on how to use and set up the sound system, so I decided to make them 4 ½” wide which would give me a ½” margin on both sides. I went to the *Image* pull down menu then to [Image Size](#). I made sure the three boxes at the bottom of the adjustment window were checked to maintain aspect ratio or constrain proportions, and to resample the image. I typed in 4.5” for width and the height changed automatically to match. For resolution, I upped the dpi from 72 to 200. I don’t want too high a resolution or the book file size will be so big a printer with little RAM memory will pause when printing the document. Now I do a *File* then down to *Save As* and give the picture a name I type in and select a location to store or save it on my computer. In this case, under the main heading of *Books* on my eternal J drive, I have a folder *David’s Book*. Inside that folder I have a folder titled *Book Pictures*. Inside that is another folder titled *Inkjet and Sound System*. The folder inside that is *Fender pd250 pictures*. These new folders are created by clicking on the manila folder icon inside an open folder window, or going to the file pull down menu in that window and clicking on new and then folder or *Create New Folder*. Click in the bracketed area after the created folder or drag across the *New Folder* text, then type in the name of the new folder and then click in the folder icon to open that folder where you give the picture you are saving a name and tell the computer which file format you want to save it as (e.g., Photoshop [PSD](#), [TIFF](#), [JPEG](#)). I prefer the TIFF file format for higher quality graphics. One can also add compression to this file format. The Microsoft Word program does not want to insert pictures with transparent backgrounds, with .psd file format. Also, in placing thumbnail images on a Word Press based website, one should not use PDF images.

When I opened the sound system setup section in the Microsoft Word book document, I found it was a letter size document and that I would do better to put two smaller pictures side by side rather than one 4½” wide picture in the middle. In the Microsoft Word Book document, I put the cursor where I wanted to insert a picture and made sure I had hit a few *Enter* keyboard strokes to make room for the picture. I went to *Insert* then across to *Text Box*, then down to *Draw Text Box*. The mouse cursor switched to a cross hair. I clicked and dragged to make a box big enough to include the picture. I went to *Format*, then clicked on none under *Shape Outline* to get rid of the border around the picture bounding box. Now I clicked inside the box and got the I beam cursor back, then went to *Insert*, then *Picture*, then browsed to find the picture I wanted, then clicked on open or double clicked on the picture name and it went into the box. I then right clicked on the picture and went to [Add Caption](#) and typed in a name. Now I clicked on the picture and put the mouse pointer on a corner of the highlighted picture, held down the shift key and dragged at an angle to make the picture the size I wanted. Next I clicked on the picture border or just outside it to get the bounding box. Then I clicked on the border of the outer box and the connecting blue lines between the boundary squares went away and I could move the picture with the arrow keys on the

keyboard, or move the cursor near the edge of the highlighted outer box and get a different looking *Move* cursor which would allow me to click and drag the whole bounding box and picture with the mouse.

I add here that one can use Photoshop to remove unwanted objects in a photo. For example, Joe sent me a picture of his inkjet printers on shelves, but there was a medicine bottle sitting on a white surface in the foreground. I went to the [Eraser tool](#) in the tools pallet and adjusted the size of the brush or circle in the upper left portion of the program and then clicked and dragged to eliminate or erase the unwanted medicine bottle. In another example, I took a picture of Jerry and Joni Leonard for the back cover of their book and found that between their heads, in the background on the nearby street, there was a woman sitting at the bus stop. I used the [Clone Stamp tool](#) along with the *Alt* key and was able to select adjacent material then click and draw short strokes to copy that material over the woman and the bus stop. When I considered adding the fixed picture to this book, I could not tell that it has been altered, so I left it out.

Another valuable tool in Photoshop is *Select* pull down menu, then *Similar*. When I scanned in the hard copy of *How you can Stop Diablo* to make a *thumbnail* image to show what I did with the red devil background insert, I had trouble getting the picture dark enough without some blue showing through from the printed other side of what I had scanned. In other words, the scanner picked up a residue of the other side of the document. Putting a black sheet of paper behind the document against the scanner lid could help with this I believe. I used the [magic wand tool](#) and then the *Tolerance* slider adjuster and selected some of this blue I didn't want to show. Then I went to *Select*, and down to *Similar*, and all that unwanted blue in the background became selected, and I was able to press the *Delete* key on the keyboard and get rid of all of it!

Adding hard copy photos using the scanner

Make sure the scanner is turned on and connected and that the unlock for the mechanism is in the *Open* position. A *Twain* software driver that comes with the scanner allows it to be accessed through Adobe Photoshop. In Photoshop, I go down the *File* pull down menu to *Import*, and then across to the name of my scanner, *Canoscan FB1200s*. Now the scanner utility window opens. I put a hard copy photograph on the glass of the scanner in the upper right hand corner, and close the lid. I choose 8 bit grayscale or *Grayscale* for black and white images, and *color* for full color photos. For resolution I choose 300 to 600 dpi unless the picture is small and I want to enlarge it in which case I choose 1200 dpi. Pictures being made for a printing press plate of a small press don't need to be over 120 dpi, and for color laser printers 200dpi seems fine. When too fine a screen or halftone is chosen for a small [duplicator](#) printing press that doesn't have [bearers](#) to keep the pressure constant between the blanket and plate and impression cylinders, then the small white space between the halftone dots is easily overloaded with ink and plugs up and the picture can look muddy or too dark. We

were given a simple rule in school to govern how images should be scanned: “Double the line screen at which the image will be printed, and you will derive the number of dots per inch at which the image should be scanned.” If the item being scanned is a previously printed picture not made by the photographic silver halide photographic paper process, then you will need to click the [Descrreen](#) box in the scanner software or try various resolutions until there is no conflict of dots or *Moiré* pattern that doesn’t look good. Now click on the scan button and the image is captured and opens in Photoshop. Close the scanner software window. Doctor the photo if necessary by rotating it, cropping it, adjusting the levels etc., then save it on your computer. If a photo was taken in dim light and is dark, then it will be necessary to go to *Image*, then *Adjust*, then *Hue and Saturation* since lightening dark photos makes them faded or pastel.

My scanner stopped working, and there was no driver for the newer Windows 7 operating system on our newer computers. I bought the [Epson Perfection V500 Photo](#) recommended by *PC Magazine*. It can also handle 35mm and 2 ¼” slides and negatives. I would have preferred a scanner that would do letter size graphic arts negatives so all the negatives on hand from the old days of darkroom and stripping could be converted to digital computer documents. Here is a link to a YouTube video on [using this Epson scanner](#).

Precautions with a Digital Camera

Digital cameras have plenty of adjustments and do not necessarily take perfect photos just because they are called *Point and Shoot Cameras*. When taking pictures in dim light, the older models had a lower [ISO number](#) or shutter speed and without a flash going off, the image is easily blurred. I was told in a photography class that a tripod should always be used. I tried to take a picture of a three dimensional plaque on the wall for the cover of the [How To Live Forever](#) tract, but I couldn’t hold the camera steady because I had no tripod with me. I got the idea to take the plaque off the wall and put both the plaque and the camera on a desk top and then I got a steady picture. Digital cameras have a digital timer delay feature so the camera delays going off so the camera stops shaking before the picture is taken. If one still doesn’t have a digital camera, you can request a CD of the pictures when you have the film developed. These digitized pictures will be 72 dpi, but a large size and you can reduce the size and up the dpi. Some of the photos in this book, like the one in the *Supplies* chapter were made that way. The CD option used to cost an additional \$5. The digital photos I take with my 5 megapixel [Canon Power Shot Digital Elph](#) come out at a large width of about 14”, and a lower resolution of 72 dpi, but they can be fixed the same way, by decreasing the size under *Image Size* and increasing the resolution to about 200 dpi. In a small picture on a business card, I would go with a 600 dpi resolution. Small low resolution [thumbnail](#) pictures for fast download and display when making websites should probably be saved in the JPEG file format, as the website creation program may not like working with other picture file formats like PDF or Tiff. Digital Camera pictures are recorded on a

[memory card](#) within the camera that is removable. To transfer the pictures to the computer from the camera, one can buy an appropriate *USB Patch Cord*, or remove the memory card and place it in a *card reader* attached to the computer through a USB port. This device shows up as a separate drive under *My Computer*. Be careful here as after you have transferred or copied all the photos to the computer, the program that assisted you in doing this may ask if you want to delete all the photos from your camera card, something I don't like to do until I am sure they are on the computer.

I close this chapter by saying that one can move data or pictures on the page of a page layout program like Adobe Indesign by selecting the black arrow key and drawing an imaginary box around all you want to move which groups it all together temporarily, allows you to then use the keyboard arrow keys to move the selected items. This is helpful when adjusting the print centering on a color laser printers like my two Ricoh printers - when they duplex the sheet to print the backsides, don't print the backsides centered like I laid them out in the computer program. So I have to make a special version document by trial and error of printing a sheet at a time (both sides) then making slight adjustments until the cut and folded tract is centered properly on both sides of the sheet. One can also highlight or select an object or group of objects and then type in new numbers for the X and Y coordinates in the [Transform pallet in Indesign](#) which is part of the *Paragraph* pallet. This moves items within the document by thousandths or finer of an inch, whereas the keyboard arrow keys seem to move objects about .004" at a time. In Adobe Indesign, if one wants to edit a photo in the document, he can click on it, then go to the links pallet and click on the small arrow within the circle in the upper right corner of the pallet and go down to *Unembed File*, followed by *Edit Original* which opens the picture in Photoshop where you make changes and when you do a *File*, then *Save* when you are done, the file is changed and automatically updated in Indesign!

Here is a [link to a video](#) by [eHow](#) on transferring photos taken on an Apple [iPhone](#) to a PC Computer. We had an issue with this when a missionary who liked to take a lot of photos of his travels with his phone, came to visit. He told us that an Apple smart phone doesn't have a removable [microSD memory card](#) to add extra storage capacity so Apple wants their customers to store their digital pictures on the [iCloud](#) by way of a cellular connection. This video shows how to access those "in the cloud" pictures so they can be used in desktop publishing on our Windows based computer. An additional training tool tells [How to Access iCloud Drive Files from Any Device](#).

Can you name one good thing the Devil has done for anyone?

Former Satanist high priest Mike Warnke says he looked in the mirror one day and realized Satan hadn't given him all he had promised. (See his book, *The Satan Seller*)

Mary Kathrine Baxter was given a visionary tour of Hell, Satan's headquarters, over a thirty night period. In her bestseller book, *A Divine Revelation of Hell*, she points out that the Devil thinks so little of those who have chosen to serve him, that when the sorcery and witchcraft instructors get to Hell, he lets the people they taught help torture their former teachers.

Former Spiritualist medium Raphael Gasson, who barely got out alive, said in his book, *The Challenging Counterfeit*, that the so called supernatural gifts from Satan are merely imitations of God's true gifts of the Holy spirit.

Johanna Michaelson, author of *The Beautiful Side of Evil*, participated in over a hundred psychic surgeries in Mexico and thought it had to be from God since it appeared to be doing good, until she tried to read the Bible and kept falling asleep.

Another lady drew pictures of demons who tormented her during a stay in a mental ward. Even Satan himself appeared. Although enticingly beautiful in appearance, she said he is "the epitome of hate", never to be trusted. - 1 Pet. 5:8

Victor F. Ernest in, *I Talked With Spirits*, tells how he followed the Bible's command (1 John 4:1-3) to challenge the source of the spirit that had been speaking through the medium and acting as a messenger from God. When Victor asked, "Do you believe that Jesus Christ died on the cross and shed his blood for the remission of the sins of the world?", the medium was catapulted out of his chair and lay unconscious on the floor. That was victor's last seance. (see 2 Corinthians 11:14)

Dr. Kurt Koch, after compiling 20,000 case histories of people involved in various forms of occult activity, noted a pattern of people becoming "occultly subjected", or suffering unwanted side effects such as family sickness, strange noises in the home, and objects flying around in the house, to name a few. In the preface to one of his books, *The Devil's Alphabet*, he wrote "The Devil is a versatile and many sided demagogue. To the cultist and religionist he offers the very help of Heaven. To the rationalist and atheist he says, 'I'm not there, I don't even exist.'"

St. James tells us in the Bible (James 1:17) that "whatever is good and perfect comes to us from God".

Playing with the imposter, Satan, can only take us down to "the unquenchable fires of Hell...where all are salted with fire." - Mark 9:44-46

Songwriter/singer Bob Dylan sings, "Everybody's gotta serve somebody", meaning Jesus Christ or Satan. What most of us don't realize is that God's Word the Bible says everyone is under Satan's grasp to some degree until we call on the Name of the highest power, the Lord Jesus Christ, to save us. - see Acts 2:21; Ephesians 2:1-3; 1 John 5:19; Colossians 1:10

The Apostle Paul told King Agrippa that Jesus Christ appeared to him and appointed him to open the eyes of the world "to their true condition so that they may repent and live in the light of God instead of Satan's darkness, so they may receive forgiveness for their sins and God's inheritance" (Acts 26:18) which is Eternal life with God in Heaven through personal faith in Jesus Christ.

Then why serve him?!

Can you name one good thing the Devil has done for anyone?

Former Satanist high priest Mike Warnke says he looked in the mirror one day and realized Satan hadn't given him all he had promised. (See his book, *The Satan Seller*)

Mary Kathrine Baxter was given a visionary tour of Hell, Satan's headquarters, over a thirty night period. In her bestseller book, *A Divine Revelation of Hell*, she points out that the Devil thinks so little of those who have chosen to serve him, that when the sorcery and witchcraft instructors get to Hell, he lets the people they taught help torture their former teachers.

Former Spiritualist medium Raphael Gasson, who barely got out alive, said in his book, *The Challenging Counterfeit*, that the so called supernatural gifts from Satan are merely imitations of God's true gifts of the Holy spirit.

Johanna Michaelson, author of *The Beautiful Side of Evil*, participated in over a hundred psychic surgeries in Mexico and thought it had to be from God since it appeared to be doing good, until she tried to read the Bible and kept falling asleep.

Another lady drew pictures of demons who tormented her during a stay in a mental ward. Even Satan himself appeared. Although enticingly beautiful in appearance, she said he is "the epitome of hate", never to be trusted. - 1 Pet. 5:8

Victor F. Ernest in, *I Talked With Spirits*, tells how he followed the Bible's command (1 John 4:1-3) to challenge the source of the spirit that had been speaking through the medium and acting as a messenger from God. When Victor asked, "Do you believe that Jesus Christ died on the cross and shed his blood for the remission of the sins of the world?", the medium was catapulted out of his chair and lay unconscious on the floor. That was victor's last seance. (see 2 Corinthians 11:14)

Dr. Kurt Koch, after compiling 20,000 case histories of people involved in various forms of occult activity, noted a pattern of people becoming "occultly subjected", or suffering unwanted side effects such as family sickness, strange noises in the home, and objects flying around in the house, to name a few. In the preface to one of his books, *The Devil's Alphabet*, he wrote "The Devil is a versatile and many sided demagogue. To the cultist and religionist he offers the very help of Heaven. To the rationalist and atheist he says, 'I'm not there, I don't even exist.'"

St. James tells us in the Bible (James 1:17) that "whatever is good and perfect comes to us from God".

Playing with the imposter, Satan, can only take us down to "the unquenchable fires of Hell...where all are salted with fire." - Mark 9:44-46

Songwriter/singer Bob Dylan sings, "Everybody's gotta serve somebody", meaning Jesus Christ or Satan. What most of us don't realize is that God's Word the Bible says everyone is under Satan's grasp to some degree until we call on the Name of the highest power, the Lord Jesus Christ, to save us. - see Acts 2:21; Ephesians 2:1-3; 1 John 5:19; Colossians 1:10

The Apostle Paul told King Agrippa that Jesus Christ appeared to him and appointed him to open the eyes of the world "to their true condition so that they may repent and live in the light of God instead of Satan's darkness, so they may receive forgiveness for their sins and God's inheritance" (Acts 26:18) which is Eternal life with God in Heaven through personal faith in Jesus Christ.

Then why serve him?!

A picture screened back or lightened to serve as a background graphic or picture beneath text, must be made light enough in Adobe Photoshop that the text is not hard to read, but dark enough that the positive metal plate developer solution doesn't further lighten the image (by dissolving away weak dots) until the image is barely visible. This side by side comparison shows what the image looked like when the image was like on the film positive used to make the metal plate in the light exposure box, and what the printed copy looked like after the plate was developed. Sadly, I had the two color job all registered on the press and the laser printer for making the film was at a different address, so I ran the job anyway when I could have taken more time, darkened the graphic using the computer and made new films and then two new plates, one for each color of the duotone. This illustration shows that using a laser printer to make films for metal plates is a cheaper but older technology - a part of a poor man's CTP ([computer to plate](#)) system. The metal plate is capable of a dot range from 2% to 98%, so the fault is in the development process, and limitations of trying to print on a clear acetate with a color laser printer. The newer Prestek Dimensions CTP (computer to metal plate with only a water wash), evidently doesn't lose dots, but these machines, used but recertified, cost \$11,000 or more. Their plates print up to 100,000 copies. The cheaper, [Geniejet system](#), sold through DAA, using an [Epson 2880 inkjet printer](#), plate dryer, with polyester plates, RIP software to make press printable halftone pictures with a respectable dot range of 5% to 95%, costs \$1800, and prints 10,000 copies per plate. My wife and I, wanting to conserve money until our business becomes more profitable, agreed to stick with the laser plate system, which requires more time and guesswork to avoid a picture or graphic becoming too light, or too dark in the highlight dot areas.

Using Dragon Naturally Speaking Preferred 10 (*Dictation to Typed Text*) Software

Because I do not type faster than 35 words per minute, I purchased [Dragon Naturally Speaking Preferred software](#). The parent company, [Nuance](#), advertizes that their voice recognition software is three times faster than typing. It had gone on sale for \$50 off with rebate and I got it for \$49. It also came with an approved microphone headset. A review stated that the file size of the program is large at over one gigabyte of required space on ones computer hard drive. I installed the software without a real problem. It is important to follow the program in analyzing your voice after the program has been installed and before you start actively using it. What I'm telling you now is actually what is being dictated by my voice. I'm somewhat happy with this software; it seems to be fast enough. It is supposed to capture up to 100 or more words a minute and I am normally a fast talker. I would say, based on past experience that this software is best for a person of having above average intelligence if he decides to use the formatting commands such as "capitalize that". these kind of things have to be put in an order to capture the formatting when you are dictating to make it look like something that you typed. In my thinking, the place this software comes in handy is, possibly, a person could read something faster from a book, than he could type it.

A chapter in my book, [What it Means to be Born Again - Understanding God's Plan of Salvation](#), was adapted from an article I had written in 1981. It had too many additions handwritten in the margins for me to scan it using the OCR software to make fresh text out of it, and it took days for me to type the 30 pages into the computer in my spare time. Some people that I know have a beautiful testimony but not much education and they don't type or use computers. In writing a book for them, in hind sight it would be less work to use this program rather than try listen to them speak in their southern, Tennessee accent and type it is as they talk. This isn't going to be much of a book chapter, except to show the need for this software as a time saver in making a book or testimony tract.

As an example of this, a minister friend of mine and his wife, Jerry and Joni Leonard felt the Lord wanted them to write a book about their experiences, as they had been operating in a miraculous [Smith Wigglesworth](#) type anointing for years, and had been given the ability to impart this anointing for ministry to others. When asked about his book *Ever Increasing Faith*, Wigglesworth confessed that he had never read it. The book had been made by transcribing to text various sermons he had delivered. Evidently he was incapable or reading. Jerry Leonard said people have gotten healed just reading his book titled [That's No Problem for the Lord!](#) Jerry, although he had his own successful barber shop with his brother in Taft California, only has an eighth grade education. After asking God for an anointing to do the work, he was able to start his book by recording onto cassette tapes. From that point his daughter, who was a

schoolteacher, was able to transcribe his voice off the cassette tapes by typing it into a computer using the [Corel Word Perfect software](#). When I received the computer document, I had WordPerfect on my computer, but I wasn't familiar with how to use it. I was able to use Microsoft Word to import or open it, converting it to a word document which strangely, would display on my computer, but not the Senior Pastor's computer. He was able, though, to use my computer to add the page numbers, table of contents, etc. I designed the cover. Since the accuracy of this program (Dragon Naturally Speaking) has improved over the years, I feel it imperative to have this software along with other software in preparing people's testimonies to be put into book form or made into printed tracts. It would probably be feasible for them to make an audio CD testimony and that could be imported into Dragon Naturally speaking and transcribed into editable computer text. I noticed that, with my particular computer, which was a Pentium 4 processor at 1.8 MHz with 1.5 GB of RAM memory, the program concluded that my computer must be a little slow and it showed the features I could have utilized if I had a faster computer. The four older computers I was using when I wrote this were 2002 IBM Net Vista models and were satisfactory for my needs, but they will not do high definition television or play the new Blue Ray 1080p DVDs that require a 2.8MHZ processor and a high definition digital computer monitor, and HD video card in the computer. In 2010 I began using HP Pavilion elite HPE computers with Intel i7 core processors, 8 gigabytes of [RAM](#) (working memory), and larger 25"LCD monitors. The Dragon speech recognition software should run at full speed with the updated computers. Note that the 2016 computers are significantly improved from 2010.

To get started with the program, click on start, then go to All Programs, then Dragon Naturally Speaking 10. A [task bar](#) opens, and a red microphone icon appears in the lower right of the desktop task bar. Red means it is in the stopped mode. Now open a new blank document in Microsoft Word and wait for the cursor to flash in the document. Put on and adjust the headset which plugs in both to the output of your sound system out on the computer or an earphone jack on your computer speaker system. The pink jack is for the microphone in on your computer. I used an extension patch cord since my computer is below the desk near the floor. When you press the "+" key on the numeric keypad portion of your computer keyboard, the microphone icon in the task bar turns green and when you start speaking what you say goes into a yellow area on the screen as the program interprets it and then with a slight delay, the text types into Microsoft Word. Spell checker will show you problems to correct, and, until you learn how to add punctuation commands (some are automatic), you can add the punctuation using the keyboard after you dictate. It will take patience and practice to get this process of recording to text to flow smoothly and with a minimum of errors. I would think that a Prophet using this program could develop it to where he could do spontaneous prophecy and have it be recorded in written form quickly and easily. The program

probably has a Helps menu, or tutorial on the installation DVD. Here are three online links for help in using this "voice to typed text" software:

1. [Instructional Videos - Nuance](#)
2. [How to use Dragon Naturally Speaking - Tips and Tricks](#)
3. [Dragon Naturally Speaking Video Guide - Training Video](#)

Banners, Posters, and Signs



We will rejoice in thy salvation, and in the name of our God we will set up *our banners*: the LORD fulfill all thy petitions. – Psalm 20:5

For a street Evangelist like me, the “Signs of the Times” may be a framed sign hanging from one’s shoulders, front and back. For the [Isla Vista, CA annual Halloween bash](#) in the 1980s that drew up to 30,000 people, I used stencils and felt tipped markers to make the sign *No God, No Peace; Know God, Know Peace*. I have a funny saying, about my preaching ability, that I made up: “I may not be able to draw a crowd; but a crowd can sure draw me!” There are other ways of reaching people than preaching from a pulpit, and getting a city permit to set up a prayer table with large signs under it between the legs, in one of these ways. When A frame signs that were on top the gas pumps at Exxon where I worked were discarded, I took one and fastened it to the roof of my car and put about three bumper stickers on each side, sayings like: *Get Smart, Investigate Jesus*; or, *If God Seems Far Away, Guess Who Moved?* Then, when I advanced to a newer car, I got this idea for putting a roll up window shade in the back window attached to a string and eye loops so I could pull it up and down from a string above the driver’s side door. I made the sign from either stencils or vinyl stick on lettering. The first version message read: *Jesus Christ, An Adventure With God In the Now Of Your Life*. The second version, on three lines, read: *Right Now, You Can Be Born Again, Ask Jesus*. To promote the Campus Christian Fellowship meeting at the local City College I was attending, I made a handmade 8’ paper kite and used poster paint to write on it “God is Alive in Room T8”. I was going to use a weather balloon and paint on that and blow it up with the exhaust from my motorcycle engine, but the exhaust evidently burned holes in the rubber. My Dad used to buy weather balloons at the Army Surplus store and we would fill them with natural gas from the meter at the side of the house, and then we would launch the balloons and watch them until they disappeared.

Now, with a computer and a page layout program like [Adobe Indesign](#) or [Quark Xpress](#), one can make a large document and use the “[tiling](#)” feature in the print window to divide the sign up into smaller letter, legal or tabloid size “tiles” that are printed on a normal laser or inkjet printer and then assembled like a jigsaw puzzle using the alignment marks on each sheet and paper glue and tape on the back. I try to make the signs 24” wide so I can laminate them on my [GBC](#) brand wide format double sided laminator. This protects the sign from getting dirty. To make the sign lie flat, I buy poster board at Staples or Office Max that is about 1/8” thick and either 20” by 30”, or

30" by 40". What follows is a step by step explanation of how to make one of these. For this example, I have chosen to use the [World's Most Important Prayer](#) sign (made by *tiling*) shown in the small picture at the start of this chapter, and also posted as a downloadable PDF document on the www.tracts4u.com website. First I decided I want the sign to fit between the legs of the card table I put out on the main street downtown, as I had had larger signs but a policeman had asked me to take them down off the display easels I had them on and put them against the fence until I got a city permit and found out what the proper size limit is. I made the sign document for the *World's Most Important Prayer* 24" high by 33" wide.

1. Open the Adobe Indesign CS2 or later program and close the identification window in the middle.
2. In the File pull down menu, go down to [Document Setup](#). Pick "Custom" for page size and type in 33 for width and 24 for height. Orientation is Landscape. Go to the Layout pull down menu and down to Margins and Columns. Type in 1" for all four sides, and 1 for Column
3. Make sure the rulers are showing at the top and left margins. If not, go to View pull down menu, then click on Show [Rulers](#).
4. Click with the mouse in the left side ruler area and draw out three blue line guides, one at a time. The first goes at the middle of the document or 16 ½", with the other two 1" from that on both sides.
5. Select the Text tool in the tools pallet. Starting in the left top margin corner, 1" in and 1" down, click with the mouse cursor and drag to the right and down to make a box that matches the margin borders for the left half of the document. In the [Paragraph Pallet](#), click on the icon for centered text. In the Character Pallet, select CAC Moose for font, and 110point for type size. In the [Swatches Pallet](#), click on the two overlapping white squares to select PMS 185 red for fill color and Black for outline. To get the PMS 185 red to appear in the swatches pallet, go to the small triangle in the circle in the upper right of the pallet and click on it and select Spot, and Pantone Solid Uncoated. Then type in 185 and click on OK.
6. Place the mouse text insertion I beam cursor in the left side text box you made and click. Type in capital and lower case letters, *World's Most Important Prayer* on two lines.
7. Hit the keyboard Enter key twice, then in the [Paragraph Pallet](#) click on the Left position icon for the type (even edge of text as you type several lines). In the Swatches pallet, click on the upper small square and choose black for fill color. Click the lower square and choose none for outline. In the Character pallet, set the point size to 100.
8. Type in the Prayer in black in English: "Dear Jesus..."
9. Select the Black Arrow tool in the tools pallet and click in the text box you just typed in to select it.
10. Go to the Object pull down menu and down to [Drop Shadow](#). Click in the white check box to select Drop Shadow. Under Mode select Multiply. For Opacity type in 45. For x and Y offset, type in .0972". For Blur type in .0694" for Color pick Swatches and choose Black. Click on OK
11. Now for the Spanish Prayer, select the Black Arrow tool in the tools pallet, then click on the text box on the left you just made to select it.

12. Go to the Edit pull down menu and click on Copy. Click the mouse in the right half of the document and do Edit and then Paste. Use the keyboard arrow keys or the click and drag of the mouse to move the second text box (a duplicate of the first) into position with a 1" border around it.
13. Select the [Text tool](#) in the tools pallet and click and drag over the red text to replace it by typing in Spanish, then the black text to replace it with Spanish. The drop shadow should change from the English to the Spanish. Certain words like Demé will require an accented character. These are found in the Glyphs pallet. Open that Pallet by going to the Type pull down menu and then down to Glyphs. Put the cursor, with the text tool selected, at the point you want to insert the special accented character. Go to the Glyphs pallet and find that kind of an "é" and double click on it and it is inserted into the document at the point of the cursor. In Microsoft Word, for those typing the text of a document in Word and then cutting and pasting it into the Indesign page layout program, find these characters by going to Insert and then across to Symbol and click then click on the desired character or More Symbols at the bottom to see more.
14. Now it is time to print the document as tiles in Indesign. Save the document. You should print it on Index card stock in a color laser printer in the manual feed tray due to the thicker paper. You will print the document on multiple letter size sheets. In the File pull down menu, go down to Print. In the next window select the name of your printer (trying to use the Postscript driver that came with your printer). Under Paper Size select Letter. Orientation is Landscape.
15. Under Setup, check Tile, and Auto, and Overlap 2.44" Output is Composite CMYK. If you vary the overlap and click on the tile square again, you can watch the preview drawing and adjust the amount of overlap so the document just fits without a sliver of it going onto additional tiles or sheets of paper. on Under Graphics select Optimized Subsampling. Under Font, and Downloads, select Complete. Chose Postscript level 3 if it is available as an option.
16. Load Index card stock in the manual feed tray of the printer (at least 12 sheets are required). On my printer, the image prints on the bottom side of the sheet. Click on the Print button with the laser printer turned on and warmed up and the sheets print out.
17. Layout the sheets on a table like puzzle pieces. Using a hand paler sheet, you will cut off the left and bottom edges of each sheet up to a trim marker on the sheet. Assemble the sheets in horizontal rows, trying to tape the back but not the front in taping then together. Remember the sheets overlap by over 2". You can also use a glue stick to glue the sheets together.
18. Assemble the rows of pieces together. When the whole puzzle is together, you may need to take an Xacto knife and a yardstick and trim the two sides and top of the document to get it down to 33" wide by 24" tall.

19. Now turn on the Laminator and warm it up. I like to run it on the slow speed for maximum adhesion of the plastic to the front and back surfaces of the sign. Make sure the sign is started straight because, after you start the laminator rollers moving after the ready lamp is lit, there is not much margin for error on the sides.
20. Trim the laminated sign down to about 1/8" from the edge of the paper and no closer so moisture will get in through the seams.
21. Use clear boxing tape to tape the sign to a foam board backing no larger, in this case than 34 by 24" so it will fit between the legs of the card table to meet the City's ordinance for a downtown table display. I like to make a width of the strapping tape go around all the edges for greater protection. If the sign is curled after going through the laminator, you can roll it up in a direction opposite the curl to help straighten it up. Velcro strips (loop and hook fabric fasteners) can secure the sign to table legs so it can be easily removed time and again.

Note: If you use the existing PDF sign documents posted on the www.tracts4u.com website by downloading them, you can just print them out without having to design them: [WMIP English and Spanish](#),

Here are some links to online training on how to use the Tiling feature in Indesign:

1. [How to Tile Print with Adobe Indesign | eHow](#)
2. [Intro to Graphic Design - Indesign Tutorial on Tiling](#)
3. [How to Tile in Indesign.mov - YouTube](#)
4. [Using Tiling in Indesign CS5 - YouTube](#)

Note 2: Large format inkjet printers (24"+) are being sold by Epson, HP, and other companies, but they cost thousands of dollars, and are beyond the budget of a print shop like ours. They would eliminate the need for using *tiling* smaller sheets to make a large poster. Here is a link to these kind of printers:

Wide Format [13" by 44" size inkjet printers comparison and review](#)

Large Format [36" to 64" wide models comparison](#)



CD Audio Tracts

I have been fascinated by an audio CD of testimonies of people who wouldn't ordinarily have believed in the Lord, but had life threatening health problems that resulted in their having out of body or near death experiences that compelled them to find the Lord. Dr. Maurice Rawlings, a leading cardiologist who wrote the books, *Beyond Death's Door*, and *To Hell and Back*, narrates the CD. The CD has a beautifully designed printed label. I found the CD at www.freecdtracts.com. This website provide the downloadable CD label graphics, and the audio content files. Most computers have a CD burner and Epson model 300, [320](http://www.epson.com), and 1430 six color inkjet printers can print right on the white or silver surface printable CDs. Epson has a free download [Print CD](#)



software for their printers. A friend found me a used 300 at the thrift store for \$20, and I was given a 320. I bought the 1430 at Staples for about \$150 on sale. used Blank media is available at low prices from www.tigerdirect.com and www.fillserv.com. I have a hand held Zoom H2 solid state hand held audio recorder that records in mp3 or wav format and has four microphones for recording two people, an interviewer, and a person giving a testimony. The audio files record onto an SD memory card and hours can be recorded on a single card like the ones that are used in Digital cameras. Some cameras can also record the audio. These files are easily transferred to the computer through a USB adapter cable or memory card reader that may be built into the computer. For faster duplication, [TEAC](#) and other companies make CD duplicators with robotic arms that can be set up to work unattended and make 50 to 100 CDs at a time and even print the labels on. Cheaper semi automatic recorders and printers are sold at Fry's Electronics such as the [Dymo DiskPainter CD/DVD printer](#) that costs (MSRP) \$280. When I had a prayer table downtown, I liked having these attractive audio testimony CDs on the table to give away.

Most newer CD players play mp3 music which is equivalent to cassette tape quality, but takes up less recording space than a WAV or 16 bit CD music format, so one can get up to 130 minutes of acceptable quality audio on a single CD and on a couple of DVDs, one can get the whole audio Bible! One can have an audio testimony section on a website like www.tracts4u.com, and, using the Word Press designed website that doesn't require the knowledge of html code, can easily attach audio mp3 files stored on one's computer. An added Adobe Flash player can allow a website visitor to listen to the testimonies while visiting the website without having to have any kind of audio player software on his or her computer. Also, most computer operating systems have a built in software audio recorder that only requires a microphone to be plugged into the pink microphone jack on the back of the computer. A free download sound editing software called [Audacity](#) allows one to import sound files and easily edit and amplify them in Audacity's own format, and then export the finished file as a [WAV](#), [WMA](#) (Windows Media Audio), or with the downloadable Lame plug in to the program, export the file as an mp3 which is a popular music format among young people who carry light weight solid state mp3 recorders, with I consider this a fascinating ministry equivalent to printed tracts that should not be ignored.

I was so excited about the quality mp3 file format audio tracts for CD made from the Trinity Broadcasting Network VHS video titled [To Hell and Back](#), that I made a new page on my website titled [Hell is for Real](#) where I posted the sound clips which play when clicked on by way of a built in software audio player. I countered the bad news with another new page on which I placed the audio portion of a DVD video sermon I did, titled [Am I going to Heaven?](#) that was shown on public access television.



April 2016 Update - I used my 2008 Zoom H2 portable 4 microphone SD card recorder (2008 edition) to record a memorial service from the speaker's podium. I used 4 channel stereo. I could have recorded directly to mp3, but used .WAV file format. I used the free open source [Audacity](#) sound editing software to equalize the volume of the four tracts, then exported to WAV and mp3 file formats. When exporting, the four tracts are mixed into two channel stereo. The Microsoft format WAV file was over one [gigabyte](#) in file size, so it went onto a DVD, along with pictures of the meeting and the life of the man who died. The length of the recording was over two hours. A fellow minister working with Audio and video production wanted the recording on a CD as an mp3. Audacity uses a [Lame software](#) plug-in to convert to mp3. I had mistakenly thought that one couldn't fit more than 130 minutes on a 700 megabyte capacity CD, but I was wrong. The output for over 2 hours was only about 144 megabytes. Mathematics says I could have fit 9.7 hours on the CD! mp3 quality levels vary from 64bit to 256 bit. Can older home CD players play mp3 CDs?

Audacity Free Audio Editing Software & Training

1. [Audacity Software Download](#)
2. [Audacity Tutorials - Audacity Manual](#)
3. [Beginner Tutorials for Free Audacity sound editing](#)
4. [Free Audacity Tutorials](#)
5. [Audacity Tutorial - Beginner - Part 1 - YouTube](#)
6. [Audacity Tutorial Part 1 - YouTube](#)

Booklet Making



I was given an O&M [Series 60 booklet maker](#) made by [Plockmatic](#). I was making collated sets of the booklet tract *Seven Things God Wants Us To Know* posted on the [tracts4u.com](#) website. I would then hand separate the sets and hand feed them into the booklet maker which staples each set in two places, then folds the letter size set of saddle stitch stapled sheets in half and stacks them in the output of the machine. The newer model can staple 22 sheets to make an 88 page letter half booklet. This machine, can make 211 booklets before the staplers have to be refilled. More expensive models have staple cartridges that hold 5,000 staples per cartridge. The best machines feed the staple wire from spools and form the staples. They are called stitcher heads. The [Hohner brand stitcher](#) models are more reliable and can be adjusted for thicker booklets than our base model which can only handle sets of about 10 sheets and a cover. If the maximum 24-26 sheets are stitched, the booklet will look better with a face trim after stitching and folding. Some booklet making systems like the plockmatic system 88 and 102, come with a built in knife blade trimmer. A regular printers paper cutter can trip 5 booklets at a time if clamps are attached to the back gauge to hold the booklets flat because the stapled side is thicker due to the fold.



The base model booklet maker may have to have the paper adjuster knob taped in place as the constant hammering of the paper against the stop at the bottom of the input slot eventually changes the adjustment and the booklet no longer staples and folds in the center. Also, one may want to lubricate the surfaces the paper contacts with silicone spray to reduce jams. I wanted to cut

down cost per booklet from 20+cents to as low as 10 cents, so I saved money from working 40+ hours a week at a regular care giving job, and bought a used [Plockmatic model 310](#) 10 bin electric collator. Now I can print the full color cover on the color laser printer, and make film positives for the other five signatures, then positive development metal plates for the printing press which can print black copy at over 6,000 an hour at a cost of a cent or less per copy. Doing this required the good used electric collator which I paid \$1,000 for. The collator staggers the sets as they come out for ease of picking them up one at a time when feeding them into the manual feed booklet maker.



If I were mass producing tract booklets like the *Know Your Future* ones posted on the tracts4u.com website, I would buy a good used booklet making system consisting of collator interfaced to a booklet maker that is a stitcher not a stapler, and a face trimmer on the output. I would print them four to a page on legal size paper on a two color exact registration legal or tabloid sided press, laying the booklets out so there is a ¼" galley trim between the top set of booklets and the bottom set of booklets. If one could afford a wide format booklet making system like the [Duplo system 5000](#), one could buy two extra stitcher heads and staple and fold four booklets at a time at thousands an hour!



Then one would get a good used [Rollem Champion 990](#) slitter /perforator/ scoring machine and have it outfitted to slit out all 4 booklets at once with two ¼" galley slitters and four regular slitter wheel sets. Trying to trim stapled booklets on a regular paper cutter is too time consuming, but could be done if one buys a pair

of hold down clamps that fasten to the back gage of the cutter to compress the stapled end. I got these at [Print Finishing Solutions](#) in Placentia, CA for \$30+. They also have good prices on paper cutter blades, and they sell reconditioned good used bindery equipment examined by knowledgeable repair and maintenance staff. It should be noted that cheaper booklet makers with two staplers can only handle about 10 sheets in a booklet, and can only do about 20 booklets a minute. The number of pages it can handle is also partly limited by the fact that these machines can only handle ¼" or 5/16" premade staples. The stapling positions are preset for common booklet sizes like letter half and letter. Thus, one should design the small booklets so that one staple goes in

each booklet and somewhere near the center (top and bottom). More expensive systems allow variable positioning of the staples along the booklet spine, and can make booklets containing up to 100 pages. Without a booklet making system with a connected collator, and a slitting machine, one would be better off to not try to make booklet tracts as it would take too much time. Most booklet makers can handle tabloid or letter size sheets resulting in letter size or letter half size finished booklets. The booklets are laid out on the computer as signatures or two page spreads. Imposition is used for putting the matching page numbers together. Some computer printer software automatically makes a booklet out of sequential pages in a word document. One can also copy and paste Adobe Acrobat PDFs of the pages into two per page picture boxes on signatures in a page layout program like Adobe Indesign. As an example of imposition layout, for a 36 page booklet, the cover signature would consist of two side by side letter size pages of a document with the cover on the right side being the page 1 with no page number on it, and the left hand side of that signature would be page 36. In a booklet, the odd page numbers are always on the right side and if necessary, a blank page is inserted at the end of a chapter to make the chapter start be on the right and an odd numbered page. Inside the cover, which may be a thicker material or card stock, would not be a page number. The second page signature page set would be pages 34,1 on the front of the sheet and 2,33 on the back of it. When the center of the booklet is reached, one will see the ends of the staples, and the two page numbers will be sequential with the odd number on the right. An example of page numbers for the center for a 36 page booklet (cover not being numbered) would be 8,9.

Modern laser printers come with a custom software printer driver that allows one to make a booklet in read order in the Microsoft Word word processing program, then choose options in the printer software for a booklet. The printer software automatically matches or pairs the pages for the booklet. Ricoh, an office printer manufacturer, titles their driver [RCPS](#). One can also design a letter size read order document and print a letter half size booklet. This feature Works for the laser printer which duplexes and collates the pages into booklet sets; but, when one is printing the job on a printing press because a lot of copies are being printed, one must lay out the letter half pages in text boxes, and use the page layout software program to manually group the matching pages on letter size pages in the computer document. Then the signatures have to be printed from film positives from the laser printer, or negatives from an image setter or service bureau, and collated by hand or electric collator. Thus, for short runs, using the laser printer is easier, and one can add color pictures, although this substantially increases the cost due to the extra use of the more expensive color toners. For booklet or book insides that are all black and white text, no color, one tells the printed to print in grayscale mode or to print all text as black. For small booklet tracts, I have concluded that the laser printer is used to make samples only. The [toner](#) is not as durable as oil based press ink, the pantone colors don't match exactly because the laser printer is

trying to make a solid color from the four primary colors, and the toner can crack when the pages are folded or creased. Also, the registration accuracy of the laser printer, from page to page is acceptable, but not near perfect like a printing press. By using the laser printer to make two color separations for a printing press (possibly including a two graphics, one can get better quality from the printing press than the laser printer at twice the speed (6,000+ copies an hour verses the laser printers 40 to 50 copies a minute (2,400 an hour).

Booklets of more pages than the booklet maker can handle are bound with a heavy duty [mechanical/electrical saddle stitch stapler](#) where the sheets are first folded, then collated together, then stapled one staple at a time. Light duty saddle stitch staplers that are triggered with a foot switch and clamp to the side of a desk or table are also available for lighter booklets assembled at a slower



pace. As a last resort, one can still buy deep throat hand staplers and put two together on a wood base and staple the booklets flat and then hand fold them in half. Using two angle brackets attached to the wood can act as side guides to keep the booklet centered when stapling.

Depending on the booklet maker, one can staple and fold in half 10 to 26 sheets, which is equivalent to 40 to 100 pages. For more pages, using a “Perfect Binder” (paperback book making machine) should be considered.

We bought a used 1994 Plockmatic System 8800 Booklet Maker Pro. It would have been better to get the next model #102 since it can take a letter size sheet the narrow way, making a 4.25” x 8.5” or shorter booklet. Our machine can’t do the smaller Know Your Future tract booklets as we had hoped. Our system has a face trimmer, a nice feature which saves having to trim booklets a few at a time in the paper cutter. (For manual face trimming see chapter on Bindery Work.) Our system uses rolls of flat wire segments that are formed into staples. This is better than the 211 preformed staples that go in an office stapler, but not as nice as a more expensive machine that has *stitchers* that cut and form the staples from a spool of wire. A good system should also be able to hook up to an 8 or 10 bin electric collator. On our system, I was told that the mating patch cable is no longer made and we can’t find one. I think it best to buy a working stitcher, trimmer, collator system. Don’t hope to find and add the other pieces later.

A kind of a miracle happened here with our better booklet maker. A company named [CFS products](#) (copy and finishing solutions) has a branch here in the town where we live. Unknown to us, the lead Plockmatic service advisor for the nation, Matt Bond, is working out of this office. The delivery man for our larger printing press had also brought the booklet making system. I was busy with the remodel of our Quonset hut print shop, so I agreed to buy the used machine for over \$4,000. As it turned out, when

I finally got around to trying the machine, it didn't work. I tried to get the seller to take it back, but months had gone by they declined. The help you sell it middle man had told the seller that the machine must have been OK because he hadn't heard from me a week after the sale and delivery. The Lord once told me, "I am a Master at taking the devil's tricks and turning them into things that glorify me." In addition the Book of Romans tells us that when we love God are fitting into His plans for our lives, He causes "all things to work together for good", even in the difficult circumstance we encounter.

I got in touch with Matt Bond and put the machine on a trailer and took it to his business. He told me what was wrong with it and I tried to do most of the repairs myself to save us from paying a big service charge. As it turned out there was **no** service charge. I had to pay \$75 for a motor assembly on the input end of the booklet maker, and as instructed, I installed it in place of the broken motor. It took a while, but the machine worked. It sat more months without use and belts had to be replaced and sensors cleaned and adjusted. The machine was working properly, but it wouldn't work in tandem with our ten bin paper collator made by the same manufacturer due to the missing and no longer manufactured patch cord. This cord also had an electronic circuit box that isolated the ground to prevent interference from static electricity buildup from the paper passing through the machine.

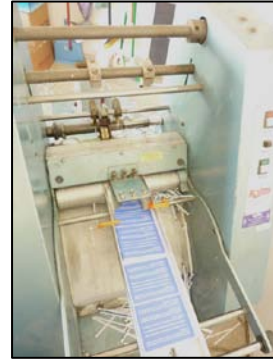
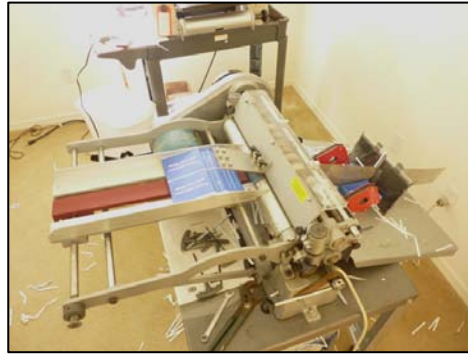
I visited CFS to pick up some plastics sticks for our electro hydraulic paper cutter. The man at the desk asked if I would like to speak with Matt Bond who was also there. I said "Yes." Matt was excited to see me. They had moved to their new location, and he had ordered some parts from the Plockmatic supplier. To his surprise, he had received one of the formerly non-existing connector cables to our collator. He had another customer that wanted it really bad, and would pay \$300+ for it. Mat suggested I take the cable home, make a list of the parts, including the resistors and integrated circuit on the circuit board. There was also an electronics parts supplier in the area that was going to go out of business soon. My wife's engineer son helped me identify the needed parts.

Booklet making Equipment



Rollem Mini & Champion 990 are used to trim booklets to make covers a *full bleed*. Also scores book Covers at folds for Paperback book maker (Perfectbinder), and perforates. The intake feeders can be adjusted so a small stack feed through rapidly without a jam.





I took a length of yellow foam from the Dollar Tree store, and cut sections to put around the shafts to make less room for trim scraps to collect and get in the gears. A nylon wire tie, on the smaller diameter shaft in the foreground, keeps the foam from slipping; and the rotating end of the tie propels scraps out of the area and makes the thin plastic container lid vibrate so the scraps move downward and outward, hopefully, over the edge into a large plastic container below. The thin magnetic side guide was covered with aluminum duct tape, and positioned so a minimum of scrap gets in the booklet receiving tray.



The parts supplier had them all. Using the parts, and a soldering gun, and my experience from high school electronics class, I made a duplicate cable. I first found out that the factory cable didn't want to work. Mat and I worked together over the phone to solve some machine switch position issues, I adjusted the height of the collator for a best match of the paper feed. The two machines began working together, and I was able to return the original cable to Matt in good condition. The Favor of God was in this project,

even though there were setbacks, but in the end, with God on our side, we win!

In August of 2015 we were asked to reproduce the Spanish two color booklet titled [*Cómo Obtener Paz con Dios*](#) (*How to Find Peace with God*), from a hard copy sample. We managed to print 25,000+ with acceptable quality, and sell 20,000 with a custom church address for 10¢ each. It was probably the hardest job we have done on our larger two color press. First, the booklets required a trim on three sides to make the graphics *bleed* to all sides after a face trim and top and bottom trim. Secondly, we could find no existing computer document for this tract, and had to work from a single professionally printed hard copy. I scanned the pages with graphics at 600 dpi, 24 bit

color. I used the magic wand tool in Adobe Photoshop CS5 to select and delete the second color. Under *Image*, and then *Mode*, I was able to change the graphic to a grayscale. Then under *Duotone* I chose *Monotone*, clicked on *Color Libraries*, and picked a *Pantone Matching System* color *Swatch* with *Solid Uncoated*. This carries the color information over into the Adobe Indesign page layout program. If the second color is able to be recreated in Indesign, it is supposed to provide a built in trap of the one color over the other color when color separations for press films are made. On the press, it was hard to get the colors to match and not leave white gaps. I am of the opinion that, when both color graphics from a previously printed copy are scanned and separated in Adobe Photoshop, one should manually, using the [paint brush tool](#), add an additional thin border around the graphic. This should assure there will be a trap when films and plates are made for the printing press.

I retyped all the text in Indesign and sent the reproduction sample printed on the color laser printer, to the customer who was an older church secretary with limited English speaking ability. The church was nice enough to pay for half the job in advance. I used a previous four to a page tract booklet computer document as a template. The legal size (14") paper would cut in half, with the top half having the necessary 5/16" no print gripper margin where the press clamps onto the sheet to pull it through the press. The bottom half of the sheet, would have a 5/16" margin below the bottom booklet. This way the spacing between the two sets of two booklets would be the same and the staples would go in the center of each booklet for the top and bottom sets. I allowed about 1/4" outside margin on each side for the face trim. By printing the computer document on a laser film wider than the printed sheet, i.e., an 11" x 17" film for an 8.5" x 14" sheet of paper, the laser printers need for a 3/16" no print area margin on the sides was not an issue. The center cut between booklets had to be 1/4" because the lower wheels that match the two upper slitting wheels on the Rollem Champion 990 are a non adjustable 1/4".

The semi-automatic hand fed [Plockmatic series 60](#) booklet maker didn't accurately fold all the booklets after I managed to adjust the machine so both staplers stapled exactly in the middle of the booklet. The staplers could be adjusted side to side along a bar, but the five matching anvils below that form the staple ends to chinch the sheets together, were not in the right preset positions to center both booklets. I took the anvil bar out of the machine and drilled two additional 3/16" holes. I then moved an unused anvil to the new custom position. This enabled me to do the bottom two booklets on the sheet and then the top two booklets by feeding them into the booklet maker from the opposite edge. The Rollem Mini set with one slitting roller set had the same face trim setting for all the booklets. The Rollem Champion 990, once set for a set of two, with the side guides adjuster set in the middle of the range, could be easily screwed 5/16" to slit apart the top set of booklets after having been first set up for the bottom set.

Before any booklets could be face trimmed or slit apart, I had to take a handful of booklets and look at the staples. If a booklet had a staple that was not in the center of the fold (see the third booklet from the right in the picture), the booklet had to be taken out of the stack and refolded by hand, to be straight when trimmed. For a while I didn't think this would matter, and a lot of booklets went through the Rollem Champion 990 machine crooked, which made them not sellable. Printing these booklets had a separate set of issues. The white reverse type in a solid color background began to plug up with unwanted ink. I was also getting an unwanted mark across the top of the sheets that was not going to trim off. Seeing no solution at the time, I had to print additional books to get enough good ones, throwing away the top half of the set. There was unwanted background haze or toning of ink. These issues may be discussed in the chapter on room temperature control.

Helpful Online Article - [Using the Print Booklet Feature in Adobe Indesign CS5](#)

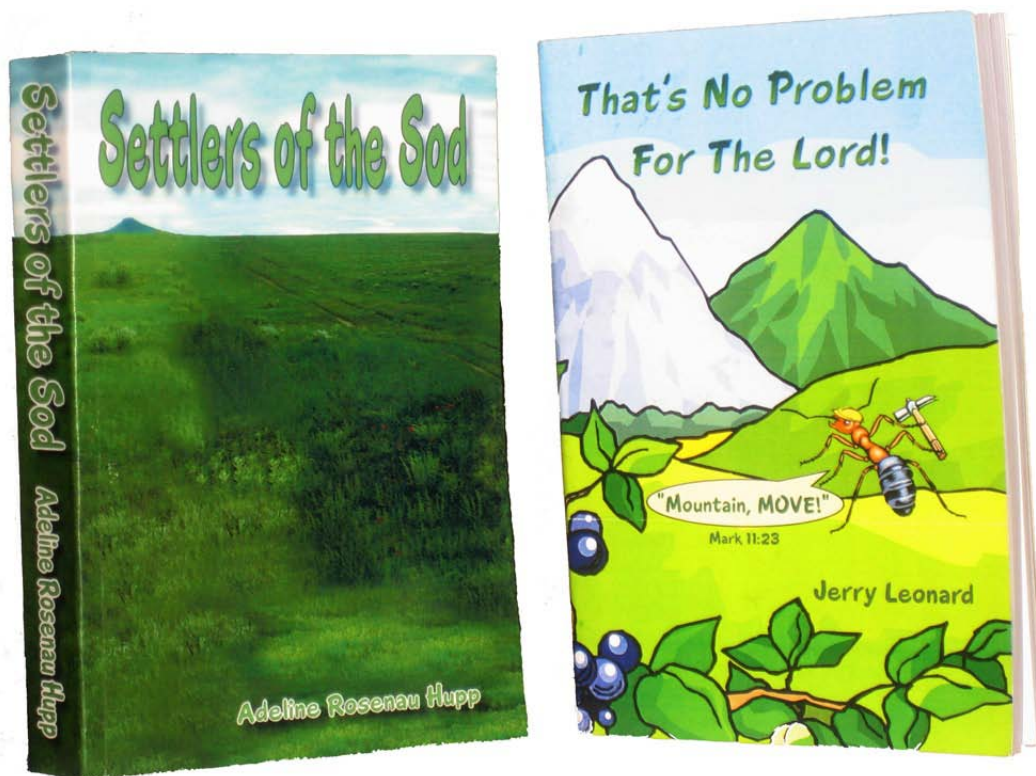


The third booklet from the right did not staple in the center of the fold. It will have to be refolded by hand so the margins will be equal after a face trip. If a booklet is misaligned after going through the booklet maker, and not taken out and fixed, it could look like the picture the left after going through the top and bottom slitter.



prisoners in Brazil received tracts we printed and mailed to distributors (national pastors and evangelists) through Handley World Services

Paperback Book Making



Making paperbacks requires a machine that costs \$5,000 or more. A ministry associate of mine paid for a Boway brand [Model 970v](#) made in China that was new but costs thousands of dollars less than known brands. The local church I was ordained through bought it from [Advanced Document Systems and Service](#) in Gardena, California. The machine clamps a set of printed double sided book content, runs it across a notching and milling wheel with tungsten carbide tipped blades for lasting sharpness. This roughs up the spine so the melted glue applied in the next stage will stick well. The glue comes in hard chips of different formulations depending on the thickness of the book being bound. After passing over the glue applicator rollers picking up the melted glue from the reservoir below, the clamped book contents move the middle over a cover lying flat. The cover rises to meet the book spine with glue on it and two flat plates come together to “nip” the sides of the cover about ¼” up from the spine, then hold the cover in place momentarily until the glue is cooled and solid enough to hold together at which time the clamps move away and release the book and one removes it by hand from the machine’s output. Using the machine is a semi-skilled task since there are adjustments for glue tank height adjustment, cover height to



book content adjustment, and timing adjustments as well as variable glue temperature settings. A glue temperature of 142 degrees seems to work well with the white colored [glue chips](#) purchased from the [Brackett Company](#). At this temperature, a smooth surface is maintained on the application roller. When enough glue has been applied, it should appear at both top and bottom of the spine after clamping the cover. Too much glue, can result in a rounded spine. Too little glue means you can open the book clear down to the glue, and pages could fall out. Having about 1/32" thick of glue in the spine area after trimming the book on three sides is good because then the book snaps shut and stays shut when not reading it. Also, the glue should extend beyond the score or corner marks on the cover by about 1/4". This helps keep the book from separating from the cover.

I like to quickly clamp the book spine in the paper cutter as soon as it is released from the book binding machine (before the glue is fully dry) so it is firmly pressed together during the time I am binding the next book. I believe this makes for sharper bends or neater corners. I use the mechanical hand operated Triumph 4705 18" cutter for this. I find a smooth piece of smooth wood about the width or thickness of the book and place the wood against the back gauge of the cutter because the back gauge can't come forward enough. I want to clamp an area about 3/8". The hand wheel on top the cutter determines the pressure. I use my two hands and press down on the book when the machine clamps the cover, but sometimes a hump or air pocket gets in the spine. I heat this area from the outside with a hair dryer which melts the glue again, and I smooth it out with my finger. If there are air holes in top and bottom of the spine of the book, I use an electric household glue gun that uses glue sticks to fill in the holes.



After the glue has hardened, the top, bottom and face need a 1/6" or more trim for the edges to look good. The face is trimmed first, using my hydraulic cutter with the magnetic 1/4" thick cushion fastened to the underside of the pressure clamp. The pad prevents an unwanted crease on the cover surface after the cut has been made. A cut guide light beam shines down the side of the book and onto the plastic cutting stick the knife blade will strike against. I can look on the top of edge of the book when making the face trim, follow the light beam down and determine if the trim will be enough to cut in all desired places before making the cut. A letter half book is 5.5" wide. I determined I could make a minimum amount trim with the digital readout set to 5.47". The second trim is the top of the book. Since the paper cutter knife moves sideways as it cuts, it must engage the spine edge first or it can tear the spine away from the book. This is why the top is trimmed off with the front cover of the book facing up, and the bottom trimmed off with the back of the book facing up. My hydraulic cutter made vertical

wrinkles in the top and bottom areas of the spine, even when I changed to a brand new sharp blade. I solved this by doing the top and bottom trims on the hand operated cutter, also using the magnetic rubber cushion.

A full bleed cover printed on a color laser printer that can only print on letter or legal size card stock, will require more of a trim, since there is a 3/16" border where the laser printer cannot print to the edge. Using the smaller capacity laser printer, 1/4" comes off the face and 1/4" off the top and bottom, resulting in a trimmed book that is about 8" tall by 5 1/4" wide, and can be up to 2" thick for the *Boway* perfect binding (paperback book making) machine I am using which equates to about 500 sheets of 20lb paper, or a book of just under 1000 pages. A letter / legal size color laser printer should be able to feed a precut letter half stack of paper for a book the narrow way. A tabloid printer like mine cannot feed that small a sheet so the book is laid out two per sheet and cut in half afterward. Printing the book two up probably saves time and wear and tear on the printers imaging unit and photo receptor belt. I wasn't able to get Microsoft Word to lay out the document two up but I was able to print it on the one half of the sheet in reverse order then flip the stack on the long side and run it through again in straight order to make the two books per sheet. This should not be attempted unless the printer has a reliable feed system that won't pick up a double or blank sheet. When the book document has been printed in duplex mode, the book should be fanned through before binding it to find any blank sheets and replace them by just printing those two sheets in "range" in the printer's software window on the computer. Our page layout program, Adobe Indesign CS5, has a book designing capability, but my wife and I haven't yet figured out how to layout the books two to a page. What we did on our last book printing (April 2012), is to first make the book document as a letter half size in Microsoft Office Word 2007, then make a Press Quality PDF of the document. We then make a letter landscape document in Indesign, draw letter half sized text boxes, and "place" the PDF pages from Microsoft Word into the Indesign document, adding more pages as necessary. We use the links pallet to embed all the PDF images into the document. Our Indesign layout under "document setup", in the "file" pull down menu, is "facing pages". Our outside margins are 5/8" (book face edge) and the wider spine side or "inside margins are 3/4" or more. The spine side is wider to compensate for some paper being ground off for a rougher surface for the glue to stick to, and because it is harder to read down in the crack in the middle of a thick book.

The best paper to use in making paperback books seems to be [KromeKote Digital C1s](#) 10 point short grain which can be purchased at [Kelley Paper Company](#) or [Xpedx](#) and comes in tabloid or 12" by 18" sizes. A 250 sheet package of this paper costs about \$55 or more. This is the maximum size my Ricoh tabloid color laser printer can handle in the bypass tray, unless I use the manufacturer's [RCPS printer driver](#) which can do banners up to 12" x 43" and custom sizes in between. To get these custom sizes one would probably have to buy the paper in parent size sheets and cut them down using a

larger paper cutter. Xerox makes an equivalent coated one side book cover card stock *Digital Color Expressions* that is a lot cheaper and works and looks just as good.

The length of cover material that a laser printer can print determines how many pages can be in the book, along with the maximum input opening of the perfect binder, which is 2" on the *Boway*. For example, in making a letter size book, using the 12" by 18" sheet, one needs two no print area margins of 3/16" plus the two 8.5" widths of the front and back. This totals to 17 3/8" which when subtracted from the 18" cover length leaves a spine width of 5/8" or about 150 pages of 20lb weight paper. The RCPS printer driver that came with my Ricoh tabloid size color laser printer can handle documents / banners on paper up to 43" long, but one would have to buy the paper in parent size sheets and have it cut down on a large paper cutter.

The inside of the cover stock is not coated so the glue will stick better, but it can still be printed on with information about the author, etc. The grain of the cover stock must be short so it doesn't buckle or have lumps in it along the two folds. One might be able to use the thicker 12 point cover stock, but may want to pre score the two right angle fold points on a hand scoring machine or paper folder with scoring wheels to make for a cleaner corner bend. I think scoring is essential, but requires more setup and experimentation time to get square folds. Also, the cover is scored on the outside. If the score depth is too deep, the paper may crack open along the bend.

In laying out the cover one should examine a trimmed and bound book to make sure the cover title is centered side to side, the title down the spine is centered both ways, and the background artwork wraps around the front and the spine but only shows about 1/32" on the backside. Some of this is adjustable by the cover position adjusters on the perfect binder or where it is sitting when the book contents passes over it. The UPC barcode symbol should be at least 1/4" from both trimmed edges on the back cover. I spray the printed cover outside with Krylon gloss acrylic spray paint available at Wall Mart. My mother had told me that, in the past, some of the cover toner had worn off during the shipping of books that were individually mailed.

My actual cost for printing books, no labor but materials only, is about \$5 or more for a letter half 215 page book with full color cover and black only text and no pictures; or \$10 for a 583 page book with color pictures throughout. We sell these books to the author for \$10 and \$15. The author sells the thicker book for \$25+ \$5 shipping and handling. One may think he can get self published cheaper through a larger company like Tate Publishing or Xulon. What one doesn't realize is that we have made the book ready to print, while these other companies charge \$500 to \$900 to put one book together along with an ISBN number! A book made to be sold should have a UPC barcode on it that is specifically for books which is sold in lots of 10 from the Bowker Company which works with the Library of Congress as the designated representative for the United States. Such will contain an ISBN number integrated into the barcode. Technically, a published work is copy right protected, but one can also obtain an official

registered copyright by following the instructions and paying the fee and submitting the documents as explained on the Library of Congress Internet website.

About 2014, we purchased a made in USA 12" wide small double sided laminator with the heating elements built inside the rollers, a newer design. When we sprayed the printed covers with a clear surface protector coating in a spray can, we were told that some of the shipped books had stuck together. When we next tried using the 25" wide older GBC brand laminator, with *horseshoe* heating elements, that had been donated to us. Using its .003" polyester film, the material either wouldn't stick well to the printed cover stock, or the stock would curl and not lay flat when the books were bound. On the new smaller machine we use a roll of .0014" glossy film material fed to the top heating roller only, but while leaving the bottom roller heated to prevent unwanted air bubbles from forming between the laminate and the digital card stock. The temperature was set to about 250°. The cover stock being used is 12" wide and the laminate 11 3/4" wide. This is ideal because one does not have to trim laminate on all four sides, only on the two ends. We allow about 1/2" of space between covers when doing the laminating. the roll of material cost over \$150, but holds over a thousand feet of material.

We found out we could also use the laminator for the picture side of post cards printed on 14 point card stock. With the added thickness of the lamination, the card thickness is about .015", .016" being the Post Office's upper thickness limit. Because the laminate is so thin, and the heaters are built into the rollers, the material laminated lays flat when it exists the cooling fans of the machine.



Pro Lam P1200 double sided laminator being used to put a protective .0014" thick glossy film on the outside of book covers. The heating element inside the rollers design allows for a faster feed speed at 250° less, with no annoying curl of the finished product. Film material is 11.75" wide centered on 12" x 18" digital cover stock at 10 or 12pt thickness.



Five essential pieces of equipment for making paperback books:

Laminator - Adds protective coating to digitally printed covers

Scoring machine - Helps cover make two clean 90° folds at the edges of the book spine.



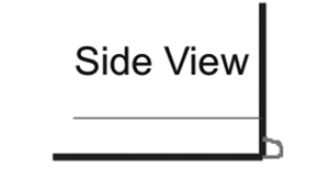
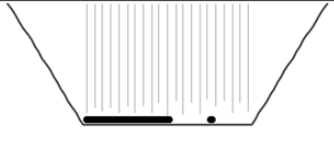


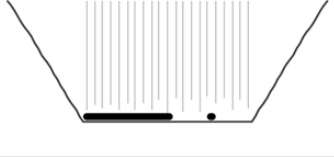

Perfectbinder - This one, made in China, cost only \$5,000 and handles books 2" thick. There are several adjustments, and skill is required to make a good looking book. Other brands cost a lot more money.



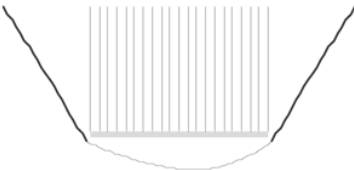


Paper cutter, hand operated - Clamp holds book together longer until glue dries. Also used for 3 edge trims on each book.

Shrink wrapper - Seals books in plastic for shipping, and keeps them from being distorted.

Below are illustrations/explanations of spine problems when Perfect Binding

1: books spines

1		Wedge.	Book block slipped in clamp or installed incorrect. Initial height too low. Table not level.
2		Nail head.	Nipping bars too loose, adhesive too thick, Nipping table too high. Severe: nipping bars not closing
3	<p>Side View</p> 	Waterfall.	Excess glue on Roller, Glue pot set too high.
4		Honeycomb glue film.	Out of glue, not enough glue thickness final nip table height to high.
5		Concave spine.	Stock moving in clamp, Finish height too low. Glue thickness to low
6		Rough edge.	Initial table height too low, excess grinding
7		Uneven glue film.	Glue thickness too thin or out of glue. Roller scraper gap set too large.
8		Mushroom spine.	Finish height too high/too much glue.

9		Wrinkled cover. On the spine only	Initial height too low/finish height too high. Too much glue
10		Cavity spine.	Coated stock slips in clamp, finish height too low/high, initial height too low. Glue thickness too low
11		Round cover.	Insufficient adhesive, cover material too thick, pre-score, finish height too low. Nipping pressure too low
12		Rails or uneven Cover	Covers scored in wrong place
13	 Side View	Adhesive not filling in voids.	Adhesive too thick/old/cold Initial height too low, notching blade too high,
14		Partial cavity spine	Glue level too low, applicator running out of glue.

Spiel and Associates has a nice [YouTube Video demonstration](#) of their table top Digibinder Automatic paperback book and pad making machine

Online Helps for Perfect Binding:

[Operator's Manual for PBS -6000 Perfect Binding Machine 4 a small print shop](#)

[Twenty Tips for Perfect Binding Success](#)

[Perfect Binding \(Hot Melt\) Problem Solver](#)

[Q & A - Challenges in Perfect Binding](#)

[Bracket Hot Melt Padding Machine - Adhesive ~ Padding Troubleshooting Guide](#)

[Designing for Perfect Binding](#)

[Tips and Tricks Adhesive Binding](#)

[Binding Adhesives - EVA Hot Melt and PUR](#)

[Perfect Binding Cover Layout Tips](#)

[Guidelines for Designing Perfect Bound Publications](#)

[Saddle Stitching vs. Perfect Binding](#)

Perfect Binding Machine Manufacturers:

1. [CP Bourg](#)
2. [Horizon](#)
3. [Duplo](#)
4. [Muller Martini](#)
5. [Wohlenberg](#)
6. [NewBind](#)
7. [SpielAssociates, Inc.](#)

Paperback Book Making - Step by Step with Pictures



Two sided book covers are printed on the coated one side tabloid or 12" x 18" 10 point Digital cover stock on a quality color laser printer. The book insides are also printed on a laser printer in grayscale if there are no color pictures. The cost of color is 6 times that of black & white. A 1.5 mil thick glossy polyester laminate is applied to the glossy outside only.



A gap is placed between covers as they are fed into the 12" laminator so covers don't overlap. The width of the laminate is less than the cover stock width so film doesn't stick to roller surface. The heating elements are located inside the top & bottom rollers enabling more expensive non curling nylon material to also be used. Normally, for one sided jobs, the bottom heating element is turned off. I found it necessary to leave it on. Roller temperature is adjustable. I use 200+°. The cover inside is not coated and not laminated so the paperback binding glue sticks better. After laminating, covers are separated & trimmed to paper edge with scissors.



Laminated and trimmed book covers are creased on the outside at the two spine edges with #4 scoring wheels. This procedure results in two ridges showing on the inside of the cover. Scoring is necessary to get two smooth 90° folds after binding the book. With scoring, one can use short or long grain cover stock. One measures the printed book inside as a starting point, binds one book, and makes the gap slightly wider as necessary for a good look according to the drawings shown previously in this chapter.



The book cover is trimmed down in the paper cutter before putting it in the output end of the book binding machine. These steps are not shown, but the top and bottom are trimmed to the edges of the printed outside, a dimension of 8.5". The ends are trimmed to leave about 1" beyond the face of the bound book. A center of the spine printed mark is aligned with the red pointer arrow on the machine. The printed cover is inserted with the outside facing down and the top of the cover facing the glue box. Two metal fingers, and a left side guide hold the cover in place, along with two strong small magnets at the bottom.



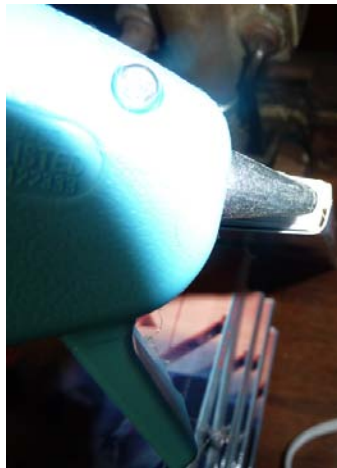
The book block (printed inside content) 8.5" x 5.5", is inserted between the input clamps. When in *automatic mode*, the block is moved to the left to touch the adjustable magnetic stop, it passes a sensor which tightly closes the clamps, then moves carriage on a path over the spine roughing grinder, then over the hot glue (135°F) rollers, then over the flat cover, which rises and clamps around the book until the glue begins to harden and the book is released to be removed by hand. To make a tighter bind, I quickly remove the book and clamp it in the hand operated paper cutter close by. A thin block of wood the same thickness of the book, placed under the cutter clamp squares the book's spine until the glue is really hardened. The book is released and the spine appearance examined and compared with the drawings in the chart in this chapter.



Glue rollers apply melted glue chips to roughened book spine on its way to cover. In idle mode, indicator marks show proper glue level. Nippers push cover up 1/4" above spine and then clamp and momentarily hold sides of cover to book block.



A *Triumph* brand 18" hand paper cutter with screw down clamp adds additional gluing time under pressure to the three areas of the book glued by the *perfect binding* machine. A wood block almost the height of the spine adds even pressure to the back of the spine not clamped by the cutter. The book is forced and held against the wood against the cutter back gauge before clamping.

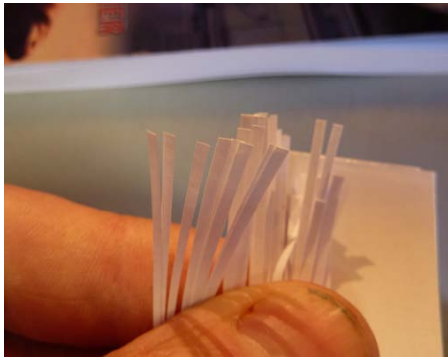


Ends of books should have square corners and glue extending to the edge. Additional glue can be added to fill in voids with an electric hand held glue stick gun. Before books are trimmed on three sides to make a smooth and sellable edge, the bulge of excess glue is removed with a razor blade. Otherwise a fixed trim dimension for a stack of books cannot be established.

Final Three Trims – face, top, bottom



A magnetic cushion is attached to the pressure clamp of the Challenge Titan 200 electric hydraulic cutter to eliminate unwanted clamp marks. The keypad makes adjustments to a thousandth of an inch. When the clamp is held down with the foot pedal, a thin light shows where the blade will cut. The cover art must bleed to the edge on three sides, and enough edge be trimmed to leave a smooth surface. The cut must be enough to work for a stack of books.



Look at width of trim. If any pieces are as thin as hair, not enough is being cut off and cutting a stack of books will not leave a smooth surface on every one. Re-trimming requires taking off an additional .020". Having to change the bottom trim dimension, will affect the last trim, the top. Notice that the front cover faces down. The cutter blade moves down at an angle and could tear the spine area if the book were facing up. Below is a picture of the final, top, trim. On thicker books like my mother's 583 page family biography on 22 lb paper, one might shrink wrap the book to protect it for shipping in a padded envelope at the cheaper USPS Media Mail rate.



In conclusion, there are multiple adjustments to be made on the book binding machine that are not shown in these pictures – namely, the glue temperature, clamping the book block so it centers top and bottom over the cover, the height of the glue box, leveling adjusters for the output cover clamp, firmness of the clamping, and duration of clamping. All these variables were adjusted by trial and error before taking these pictures. Even the instruction manual for the binding machine states it takes practice to get good results, something I found out by my own hours of experience. Thus, this book binding process, along with laying out the cover document on a computer, requires skill. My conclusion is that one should plan to make at least 50 copies of a book to make the binding session profitable. When all setting were right, including the score width of the spine area, my brother and I worked a half hour straight on the same book pictured here, without problems, getting very good quality. For just a few books at a time, I recommend making a comb bind edition of the book, which is more reliable and less problematic; and the book can be designed in Microsoft Word.

Additional Equipment that can be used in a home:



[Dahle](#) 17" hand operated paper cutter - lighter duty, but accurate
[Martin Yale](#) electric 11" x 17"+ friction feed paper cutter
O & M ([Plockmatic](#)) Series 60 semi automated electric booklet maker.
The Model 61 looks similar and connects to the Plockmatic 310 10 bin collator

Comb Binding Quick Reference Capacity & Diameter Guide (Based On 20# Paper)

3/16" (4.76 mm) – 12 Sheets
1/4" (6.35 mm) – 20 Sheets
5/16" (7.94 mm) – 40 Sheets
3/8" (9.53 mm) – 55 Sheets
7/16" (11.11 mm) – 70 Sheets
1/2" (12.7 mm) – 90 Sheets
9/16" (14.29 mm) – 100 Sheets
5/8" (15.88 mm) – 120 Sheets
3/4" (19.05 mm) – 150 Sheets
7/8" (22.23 mm) – 170 Sheets
1" (25.4 mm) – 200 Sheets
1 1/8" (28.58 mm) – 220 Sheets
1 1/4" (31.75 mm) – 230 Sheets
1 1/2" (38.1 mm) – 290 Sheets
1 3/4" (44.45 mm) – 360 Sheets
2" (50.8 mm) – 425 Sheets

Reproducing Comb Bound Textbooks

I decided to [comb bind](#) limited edition (small number of copies being printed) books rather than make them into paperback books with a glue binding because *perfect binding* requires skill. The covers have to be [scored](#) in two places to make clean looking corners. The place of the two scores depends on the number of pages in the book. One has to experiment to get the scores in the right place. Paperback books have to have a trim on three sides after binding. A novice can use comb bind to make books. If one wants to have a protective coating on the covers done with a laminator on paperback books, one can buy a cheap "Purple Cow" or other brand [pouch laminator](#) for under \$40. One puts the covers in the pocket, laminates then, then round the corners if desired. The covers will be slightly larger than the book content.



My wife and I were asked to reproduce letter size textbooks for *Endtime Ministries International Bible University* (emibu.org) The highest quality way would be to retype all the pages in Microsoft Word, maintaining the formatting, but the books were over 100 pages – too much typing for a person like me who types at less than forty words a minute. A shortcut would be to scan the pages at 300dpi, then run them through an OCR (optical character recognition) software program like [Omnipage](#) or [Abby Fine Reader](#). Such could turn a whole page into fresh computer editable text with the same page layout formatting. As an experiment, I had used the internet to download the free trial version of Abbey Fine Reader. I took a three-fold brochure layout tract made with the Adobe Indesign page layout program. I then exported it to the PDF format. I opened the PDF of the tract in [Abby Fine Reader](#), processed it, and output it as a new Microsoft Word document. It looked perfect when opened in Word 2007. I was truly amazed! In this case that wouldn't work. The University had been formed in the 1970s, and books were being reproduced by a photocopy machine on a monthly rental contract. The text on many pages was not straight, and successive copying had caused the letters to thicken like bold face type.

In 2016, I again tried the OCR, this time using the [Omnipage 17](#) program. It did not like italicized typeface, or Script fonts. I found out that a previously printed book could be successfully converted to fresh text in some cases, depending on the font that was used when the hard copy document was made. The Times New Roman font seemed to do the best. The result was that I only needed to read through the converted to Microsoft Word document and look for wavy red underlines which indicate a possible misspelled word. I had used a scanner to capture the book pages which were then imported into the OCR program. If one had the document in [Adobe Acrobat](#) PDF format, and wanted to convert it to fresh text, he could submit that to the OCR and avoid having to scan book pages. Also, with the full version of Acrobat Professional 9, I was able to export a PDF to Microsoft Word, and could have exported it to [Rich Text Format](#). The result

wasn't perfect, especially where captions had been typed below pictures, but the spelling was good.

I decided to scan each page at 300 dpi, using [Adobe Photoshop](#) CS5 to straighten and sharpen each page as well as clean up messes made by stray toner from the copy machine using the eraser tool. I would start a sequential page letter size document layout in Adobe Indesign, drawing picture boxes into which I would *place* the scanned in read order pages from the folder I had saved them in on my external hard drive in .tif file format. If the resulting file size of the scanned and assembled book wasn't too large, I could print it on my laser printer as a [grayscale](#) document at a machine cost of about 1.2 cent per page, at near the maximum forty pages per minute speed. Larger file sizes slow down the printing speed of a document depending on the [RAM memory](#) in the laser printer, and the speed of the CPU (central processing unit) electronic integrated circuit. I could make one sided books into double sided pages to make the books thinner, using half the amount of paper. I would use [Vellum Bristol](#) 67lb weight cover stock, printing the covers separately as a color document. As an option, one can include the color cover in the document, but print the color pages separately and collate them into the main body which would be printed as a grayscale. Non color pages must be printed as a grayscale, because the cost of using RGB or CMYK color mode on our laser printer is 6.6 cents versus 1.2 cents per page. In the color mode, the printer tries to use additional colors to the black toner to print the black text. The color toner cartridges cost twice as much as the black cartridges (\$180+ versus \$80). I could even use the automated [Ricoh RCPS](#) non postscript printer driver to automatically make the booklets two to a letter size sheet, further reducing the cost. We have a machine to punch the rectangular slots in the margin for installing the combs to newly printed copies (See picture at end of this chapter). At first, I asked the ministers heading the university to do the punching since I know how slow going the process is. Then I changed my mind. My wife and I did a three week project, and, no matter how careful we were, some pages got punched wrong and had to be reprinted and re-punched. This would be difficult if not done in house.

I started the project by removing the comb from the book I was given to reproduce. Now the pages can be laid flat on the scanner glass one at a time. If one is going to convert a paperback book to com bind, he should, with permission from the customer, cut the glued left side of the book off (up to 1/8" using a guillotine paper cutter). The books contained some color charts and grayscale illustration pages at the front of the book. I found some quality computer files of those pages, and didn't have to scan them.

I scanned each page as a grayscale at 300 dpi, giving each the initials *PDT* for the book title *Present Day Truth*, along with the page number printed on the bottom of the page. I scanned the pages in read order and saved them in a common folder on the computer hard drive. One should use the scanner software to make a preview of the page to be scanned. In the preview window, use the [marquis tool](#) to make a border

around the area to be scanned. Do not be concerned with trying to change the margins dimensions or size of the pages being scanned - that is unnecessary work since the Adobe Indesign page layout program allows one to move images around on a page and to even resize the image using the [White Arrow Tool](#) in the tools pallet. Also, using the *histogram* graph in the scanner preview window, slide the right arrow to the left until the unwanted background haze is removed. The scanner should be set to 8 bit grayscale mode and 300 dpi, because the next lower setting of *black and white*, although a smaller file size, can't be edited in Photoshop, and the text edges will be jagged due to it being a [bitmapped](#) image.

I tried saving each scanned page in one of two file formats, [PDF](#) and [.tif](#). I noticed that each page is about eight [megabytes](#) in file size when opened in Adobe Photoshop. Going the PDF route allows one to open the first page in Acrobat Professional, then, under the *Document* pull down menu, insert the other PDF pages to end up with a read order book. The problem with this method is that, when one opens a page in Photoshop to straighten it and remove unwanted background, the areas of deleted background appear as a black and gray checkerboard of small squares, and it is harder to use the erase tool. Saving each page in .tif format means one must have a page layout program like Adobe Indesign and do *file*, then [place](#) to import the pages into the document. The page to be added loads into the mouse cursor or pointer as a thumbnail image. One then moves the cursor to the top corner of the Indesign page, then left clicks the mouse and the image appears on the page in full size and is centered using the arrow keys on the keyboard. One can simply move the selected page side to side to place the 1/4" wider margin for the comb on the desired side. Usually, with odd numbered pages on the right side of an open book, the wider margin goes on the left. If one is converting a single side document to two sided, saving a scanned page in PDF file format would be a problem if one tried to assemble the pages in Adobe Acrobat Professional, because the pages can't be moved from side to side to get the needed extra right side margin for the even numbered pages. My conclusion is to assemble the book pages together in Adobe Indesign rather than Acrobat. One can still place PDF file format scanned pages into Indesign.

Here is the procedure I use with Adobe Photoshop CS5 to prepare the scanned paged for placing into Adobe Indesign page layout program. First, under the *File* pull down menu, go to *Open* and find and open the page to be edited. Second, straighten the text on the page. Go to the *Edit* pull down menu, then clicked on [Transform](#), then go to right to [Rotate](#). When I place the mouse cursor at the bottom right corner of the selected image, cursor arrows appear. I clicked and dragged to the side to rotate and straighten the text. For a more exact alignment, use the black arrow tool in the tools pallet, then click in the upper ruler with the mouse and drag down a blue line over the image for a straightness guide bar.

The scanning process caused some of the binding punched holes to appear as an unwanted part of the image, and on occasion, the bottom edge of the page appears as a black line. I clicked on the dotted square [marquis tool](#), then used the mouse on all side margins to make rectangles around unwanted image, then press delete. When asked, I told the program to replace the area with white. After the text is straight on the page, the side margin (beginning point of the text on each line) may be crooked. While the image is still selected or highlighted from the last procedure of [Rotate](#), go to the *Edit* pull down menu again then to [Transform](#), then across to the right and down to *Skew*. Using the mouse, click on the bottom corner where the document is sticking out to the side too far, and drag the mouse sideways until the column of text has a straight side parallel to the side border. In some cases where books were repeatedly reproduced by copiers, but not from the same original, the lines of text will become warped. Under *Edit*, *Transform*, one can go to the right and down to [Warp](#). By clicking and dragging the mouse on any part of the highlighted document, one can skew the document to make the lines of text straight again, and have the text still be readable when one *Applies* the changes.

Next, I wanted to try and sharpen the text. Under the [Filter](#) pull down menu, I could go down to [Sharpen](#), but that didn't seem to make much of a difference. Instead, I went to the *Image* pull down menu, then down to [Adjustments](#), then across to [Levels](#). In the new window that appears I can adjust the three slider arrows. The white arrow on the right, when slid to the left, removes unwanted gray or black background haze, the highlights. On the bottom adjustment bar with two adjusters, sliding the black arrow on the left to the right will sharpen the letters, but also lighten them. If one uses the magnifier tool before making an adjustment, it is easier to see the changes being made. I like to magnify the document, then slide the right slider to the left until all unwanted background is removed, then click on and slide the middle adjuster back to the middle to make sure the lettering is dark enough to read when printed on the laser printer.

Successive photocopying of the image before it was given to me to scan resulted in some words or letters being almost unreadable. Most common is for the center of the letter "e" to be filled in with black. I magnified those areas to about 400%, then picked [Eraser tool](#) with a brush size between two and four. By clicking on the overlapping black and white squares at the bottom of the tools pallet, I can switch between erasing unwanted black, and adding black.

Now I opened the Adobe Indesign page layout program. Under [Document Setup](#) located in the *File* pull down menu, I chose letter size portrait for document paper size and orientation. For margins, I selected .75" for top and bottom. The side of the document not being punched for the comb bind can be .75". I suggest measuring the width of the text on a page in the book being reproduced, then subtracting that number from 8.5 to find how much total margin area you have to work with. Allow .25" more margin on the side that will be punched. Thus, odd numbered pages will have a .75 to

1" margin on the left, and even numbered pages will have that margin on the right. Click on [Mirror Margins](#) in the Document Setup window so that the wider binding margin will appear on the proper side of the odd and even numbered pages added to the document. Keep in mind that, normally, odd numbered pages are on the right side of the open book, and even numbered pages on the left side; and chapters start on odd numbered pages which means that it is sometimes necessary to add and leave a blank even numbered page at the end of a chapter to get the next chapter to start on the right side with an odd numbered page number.

One can make a picture box (using the rectangle with an X in it tool in the tools pallet) for placing the scanned page image I labeled *PDT pg 1*, but it is not necessary, and that step can be eliminated. Click on the *File* pull down menu and go down to [place](#). Browse to find the scanned and saved image labeled PDT pg.1. Click on the item, to highlight it, then click on *Open*, and the image is loaded into the mouse cursor and appears as a [thumbnail](#) of the image being inserted into the document. Place the loaded cursor at the upper right corner of the blank Indesign page and left click the mouse and the full size image is placed on the page. By using the arrow keys on the keyboard, the image is positioned on the page. If the image is larger than the picture box, and not all the image is showing, one can click on the picture box and enlarge the box by clicking and dragging on the small squares that appear around the perimeter of the selected picture box.

A second solution is to select the white arrow tool then left click the mouse when the cursor is inside the picture box. Now a box with a brown border appears. While holding down the *Shift* key on the keyboard, click the mouse with the cursor on of the small white squares at the lower right corner of the brown box, then drag and the image is made larger or smaller proportionally without changing the height to width aspect ratio of the image. It is also possible to slightly distort an image to make it fit by not holding down the *Shift* key when changing the size of the image. One adds successive blank pages to the document by clicking on the *Layout* pull down menu and going to *Pages*, then across to *Add Page* or [Insert Pages](#). To improve appearance, we printed the front cover on an inkjet printer with the *photo* quality setting on Costco Wholesale's Kirkland glossy photo paper. The cover is not waterproof with a dye based ink set, but looks nicer that it does when printed on the color laser printer.

[Reducing the document file size](#) to make a PDF e-book for Posting on the Internet

When all the pages have been placed into the book document, saving it in a PDF (Adobe Acrobat Reader) file format may allow one to reduce the file size to that the document will print faster, and can be opened and read on most computers that have the free PFD reader program installed. If one used the full version of Acrobat, the file size of the document can be reduced even further, with some loss of quality, to make a read order e-book document that can be posted on a website on the internet for

downloading; or sold as something to be read on computers or screen smart phones and tablets, no printed hard copy necessary. Thus, this textbook we reproduced for a Bible University, in e-book format, could begin to fulfill their dream of offering an *Online (internet)* version of their university. The previously hard copy book from pages assembled together in Adobe Indesign, although saved as a PDF, is still too large a file size for an e-book. A website making program like the free open source [Word Press](#) that we use, allows us to put book files up to 100 megabytes on the internet. This might take too long for a person to download to their computer or SMART phone or tablet device. Trying to send a large scanned to computer book by e-mail attachment probably won't work because the file attachment limit is usually 20 megabytes, and sometimes 25. One answer is to subscribe to the free *cloud* storage services offered by Drop Box (www.dropbox.com), or Google Drive (www.googledrive.com). We have been using Drop Box to watch Christian movies sent us by a friend. One could also make the book document available on a USB thumb drive, or a CD or DVD.

The simpler way for the e-book textbook recipient, is to reduce the file size of the document. At about eight megabytes per scanned page, 100 pages would be 800 megabytes. When I recently *exported* from Indesign to [PDF Interactive](#) some book documents with a lot of pages, the resulting PDF file size was still 140+ megabytes. I experimented to get the file size smaller, yet have the document still be clear enough to read. When I did the export to PDF, I was given options, so I chose *Medium* for [JPEG quality](#), and 144dpi. At the next lower setting of about 90 dpi, the PDF text was too fuzzy, and harder to read. I got the readable PDF file size down to between 44 and 75 megabytes, depending on the size of the Indesign document I started with.

Another file size reducing method is to open the PDF in the full version of Acrobat Professional, go to *Document*, and then down to [Reduce File Size](#). The program scans and [Optimizes](#) the document and the file size is slightly reduced. In one case a document was reduced to less than fifteen megabytes. The lesson learned is that documents made to be posted on the internet as e-books should not be documents made by scanning and assembling the pages of previously printed books.



Electric Comb Bind Machine for \$20 at a Thrift Store

E-books

Here is a definition from the online (internet) Wikipedia Dictionary:

An **electronic book** (variously, **e-book**, **ebook**, **digital book**) is a book-length publication in digital form, consisting of text, images, or both, and produced on, published through, and readable on computers or other electronic devices.^[1] Sometimes the equivalent of a conventional printed [book](#), e-books can also be born digital. The *Oxford Dictionary of English* defines the e-book as "an electronic version of a printed book,"^[2] but e-books can and do exist without any printed equivalent. E-books are usually read on dedicated [e-book readers](#). Personal computers and some [mobile phones](#) can also be used to read e-books.

HIS Print Media Ministries has been able to make paperback books using a [perfect binding machine](#) that cost \$5,000, a used scoring machine at \$6,000+, and a \$6,000 hydraulic/electric paper cutter. Skill and trial and error are involved in this process, along with a 10% waste (on our last book making project). Shipping 20 of my mother's books by two [USPS Priority flat rate boxes](#) cost \$15.45 per box. When more books are ordered (possibly a year from now), I will have to reconfigure the scoring machine that pre-creates the book covers for good looking corners. To sell books through an known distributor would require giving them 55%. If my mother continued charging \$25 for the books, but had them produced through the Christian publisher Xulon, it would cost \$999 to make the first copy and \$13+ each additional book. I did the calculation, and making a profit didn't seem possible.

On the other hand, one could take the computer version of the book and convert it to a read order Adobe Acrobat PDF document at very little expense, and offer it as an E-book. One could prepay for a digital edition, then I could send the book to the buyer as an e-mail attachment. I talked to the Adobe software company, and evidently, one can take this PDF file book document and download it onto a tablet reading device or smart phone for portable reading on one of these portable devices (e.g., Amazon's *Kindle*, *Apples ipad 1 or 2*, or Barnes and Nobles' *Nook*). With the software upgrade to Adobe Indesign CS6 (\$125+), one can export the original book as an .epub document, which would allow for making the document interactive or multimedia capable by adding internet hyperlinks, sound clips and video clips. The Adobe website, <http://tv.adobe.com/show/learn-by-video/>, has free videos on how to do this. Adobe is also accepting pre-release orders of their [Digital Publishing Suite](#), a software which will support major subscription models like [Apple subscriptions](#) and [Google One Pass](#).

"Adobe Digital Publishing Suite provides professional publishers a set of turnkey hosted services, tools and viewer technologies to create, publish and sell digital content directly through leading mobile marketplaces and content aggregator partners. Built on the foundation of Adobe Creative Suite and Adobe Indesign CS5 software, Digital Publishing Suite enables the design and delivery of innovative publisher-branded reading experiences. As an end-to-end solution, the suite of tools allows customers to create, distribute, monetize and analyze rich digital content across the desktop and [tablet devices](#)."

Amazon.com says it is selling more digital books than hardback or paperback books! If one want to have a professional convert his book to an E-book, Publisher Services (provided by Bar Code Graphics) charges between \$130-\$380. I heard that one can upload a Microsoft Word book document to <https://www.createspace.com/> (an Amazon company) and [they make it into an e-book for their Kindle brand electronic readers](#). They can also make hard copies on demand. If one lets Amazon sell his e-book for \$3.99, he gets 2/3rds of the profit as royalties, and Amazon handles the orders and shipping. The can also help promote your book. How easy is that!

In conclusion, it seems less expensive and less labor intensive to make an E-book than to make a paperback book. E-books have certain advantages over paperback or hardback books. The size of the text being viewed can be enlarged for easier reading on a computer or portable device. They can be enhanced with video and sound. A disadvantage is that portable tablets or Electronic Book Readers can cost \$75 to over \$500, making them unaffordable to poorer people in third world countries. (These poorer people could still get internet access and read E-books on *smart phones*. The Pew study cited below found that “29% of readers of e-books consume their books on their cell phones.”) Nevertheless, the number of these portable reading devices is growing dramatically.

I read an e-mail article by Angela Watercutter (April 9, 2012) titled [Publishers Hustle to Make E-Books More Immersive](#). It states:“21 percent of Americans say they’ve read an e-book, according to a Pew Internet study released last week, and the Association of American Publishers says 114 million e-books were sold in 2010 (the most recent year for which numbers are available). Some 48.3 million iPads, Android tablets and e-readers were sold to U.S. Consumers in 2011, and about half that many were sold the year before, according to NPD Group. With so many tablets flooding the market, demand for e-books is only going to grow.”



In the New Testament, the Apostle Paul stated:

1 Corinthians 9:22b AMP To I have [*in short*] become all things to all men, that I might by all means (at all costs and in any and every way) save some [*by winning them to faith in Jesus Christ*].

Phillipians 1:18 KJV What then? notwithstanding, every way, whether in pretence, or in truth, Christ is preached; and I therein do rejoice, yea, and will rejoice.

It is my belief that we should fully utilize evolving multimedia technology to further the *good news* about Jesus Christ. Prime example is the [Jesus Film Project](#) by [Campus Crusade for Christ](#). The Jesus film has been translated or adapted into over 800 languages, is available for free viewing on the internet, and being shown all over the world by mobile video teams, first using 16mm film projectors, and now DVD projectors. God is showing His approval by displaying dramatic miracle healings in conjunction with the showing of this Bible based film.

As an example of the interactive capability of a [PDF e-book](#), I made some screen capture training videos and posted them for free on the internet at the YouTube website. The location or URL address of each video could be copied, then pasted into a list page on our website. One clicks on the colored hyperlinked text, and is taken to the beginning

frame of that video. I can even change the name of the hyperlink. When I made this book, I was able to copy and paste the contents of the website training video page into the book document and retain the internet link (go to the video) capability, providing the computer has [Wi-Fi](#) or internet access. I can make a PDF of the Microsoft Word book document, then, in the full version of Adobe Acrobat 9 Professional, I can change the internet addresses to hyperlinked text. More recently, I used *Export* and then *Acrobat PDF* in Word as an experiment, and the hyperlinks automatically appeared in the resulting PDF; and, accessing additional information on the subject being discussed, available through the Internet is even easier than it is in the Word document. When one moves the cursor over hyperlinked text in the PDF, a hand  icon appears and one simply left clicks the computer mouse. If the PDF wording is a www... URL address, the lettering is not blue, but when one moves the mouse cursor over it, a yellow box also appears containing the online address inside the box. When I moved the mouse cursor over the special text beginning with http://, the mouse icon also turned into a hand , and a yellow box appeared with the online address inside the box. When I click on the text link, the Adobe Acrobat Reader program I am viewing the document in, connects to the connected information posted on the internet. I also noticed, that using Acrobat Professional, I could create a video viewing box (Tools - Multimedia - Video), and link it either to internet content or a file stored on one's computer. When one goes down the *File* pull down menu to *Export*, he can attach additional files to the document. This implies that video or sound or flash video files can be incorporated into the PDF e-book and travel with the document without the need to access the internet. Find more information at:

[How to Add a URL Link in Acrobat 9](#)

[Adding Multimedia to PDFs - Acrobat Support](#)

[How to Create Adobe PDF E-books: Tutorial](#)

[Playing video, audio, and multimedia formats in PDFs](#)

[Controlling multimedia with Acrobat X - Acrobat forum](#)

[Creating work that wows with PDF Portfolios and Acrobat 9](#)

[Adobe Acrobat Pro 9: Adding multimedia to PDFs](#)

[Adobe Acrobat 9 Professional Training: Editing Content - You Tube](#)

[Adding Multimedia to Adobe Acrobat Pro PDF Documents](#)

[Inserting rich media into PDF documents](#)

[Adding Internal Links and Multimedia Elements](#)

[Acrobat 9 Pro: Creating Multimedia Projects](#) - A free intro to a paid course by [Lynda.com](#).

Here are some other statistics released by this same [Pew Research Center's Internet & American Life Project](#). I copied them from an internet article posted April 4, 2012 titled [The rise of e-reading](#):

“The increasing availability of e-content is prompting some to read more than in the past and to prefer buying books to borrowing them.” These nationally representative surveys “documented” “The growing popularity of e-books and the adoption of specialized e-book reading devices.”

“We at the Pew Research Center’s Internet and American Life Project reported that ownership of e-book readers among adults age 18 and older has nearly doubled from 10% of the population to 19% over the holiday gift giving season at the end of 2011, and ownership of tablet computers had surged a similar amount. In the final week of 2011 the e-book version of 42 of the top-selling 50 books on USA Today’s best-seller book list was outselling the paper version of the same book.”

“30% of those who read e-content say they now spend more time reading, and owners of tablets and e-book readers particularly stand out as reading more now.”

“The prevalence of e-book reading is markedly growing, but printed books still dominate the world of book readers.”

“There are four times more people reading e-books on a typical day now than was the case less than two years ago.”

“In head-to-head competition, people prefer e-books to printed books when they want speedy access and portability, but print wins out when people are reading to children and sharing books with others.”

“The rise of e-books in American culture is part of a larger story about a shift from printed to digital material. Using a broader definition of e-content in a survey ending in December 2011, some 43% of Americans age 16 and older say they have either read an e-book in the past year or have read other long form content such as magazines, journals, and news articles in digital format on an e-book reader, tablet computer, regular computer, or cell phone.”

Adding a clickable URL link in Microsoft Word 2007 and the PDF made from Word

In my opinion, sharing a book document in its digital form by e-mail attachment or posting it for downloading from a website, is superior to a printed book, because of the ease of sending it to someone by way of the internet (bypassing the post office), because so much more labor goes into making the physical book, and because the digital version can include clickable links to online definitions of words, online training videos, or instruction manuals and product information. With a DSL connection to the internet through a home telephone jack, one can access these additional e-book features almost instantly. In Microsoft Word, I can shorten long URL code characters to a word or two describing the subject matter of the linked information. The closest I could come to this in a printed edition of a book would be to display or type in all the information contained in the link. The reader would then have to, open up his web browser software to establish a connection to the internet. Then he would carefully type that information into the address bar of his internet browser, and press the enter key on the computer keyboard to go online to the URL destination to watch the video or read the additional information. When the hyperlink to a word or words in the Microsoft document is made, one places the mouse I beam cursor over the blue words and left clicks the computer mouse and the computer knows to connect to the internet and access the information.

When one makes and Adobe Acrobat PDF using the built in PDF creator that comes with Word 2010 and later and is a free add on to Word 2007, the hyperlinks are automatically transferred into the PDF document. One makes the PDF by:

- 1) Going to Save As from the circle in the upper left hand corner of Word, and then across to Adobe PDF.
- 2) Clicking on the circle, going down to Print, then across and up to the printer icon, which opens up the printer window where one chooses Adobe PDF from the printers in the list.

When the PDF is opened in Acrobat Reader, when one places the computer mouse over the blue text, a hand icon appears and one simply left clicks the mouse to access the additional online content.

One can make hyperlinks within the Adobe Acrobat Professional Program. This [link](#) tells how. It doesn't appear that one can change the name of the hyperlink to something simple when it is created directly in [Acrobat Professional 9](#). Therefore I prefer to make the links in a Microsoft Word document because I can designate the title I want for the URL coding embedded in the link. Then the links with their shortened text titles are carried over to PDF when saving the document in Word to PDF. I did notice, in Acrobat Professional 9, that if I click on the Advanced tab at the top and go down to Document Processing, then over to Create Links from URLs. Acrobat then goes through the document and identifies all text typed in URL format and makes it a link. The program says this step cannot be undone. Another avenue is to go down the Tool tab to Advanced Editing, then across to Link Tool. Note that one cannot add hyperlinks in the free version of Acrobat Reader.

Here is how to create a hyperlink in Microsoft Word 2007 to additional online information. I will use the blue word *link* in the preceding paragraph. I opened Firefox internet browser and in the search box typed *Adding a URL hyperlink in Acrobat 9*, then clicked in the Google icon as my search engine. A list of titles of articles and two videos came up. I watched the videos and felt they were too confusing. I felt the five step explanation pdf article listed as *How to Add a Link in Acrobat 9* ~~is~~ *How is OK* . I then right clicked on that title, and went down the list and clicked on *Copy Link Location*. This transfers the link to the computer's *clipboard* or temporary memory. In the Word document I clicked and dragged over the word *link* to select it. I then clicked on the *Insert* tab at the top left of the program window. I then clicked on *Hyperlink*. In the window that opens, in the *Address* window, I right clicked and clicked on the word *Paste* in the list. This inserts the long URL code language which looks like this: http://www.ehow.com/how_8043628_add-acrobat-9.html). At the top of the window, in the box that is titled *Text to Display* I can type in a simplified name or title for the URL link. in this case, I was satisfied with the word *link* already selected in the document, so I typed nothing in that box. I then clicked on OK to close the window. Now the word *link* is

colored blue and underlined. I hold down the Ctrl key on the keyboard and left click the computer mouse. The computer takes me to the article I had just read on the internet, confirming I had successfully made the hyperlink.

In the chapter that follows, I will bring your attention to the popularity of “social media” on the internet such as [Facebook](#), [Linkedin](#), [Hulu](#), and [Twitter](#). I was told that 80% of young people’s attention on this media is focused on on-line video such as that found on [youtube.com](#). The Apostle who ordained my wife and I into the ministry, has radio broadcasting experience, and now makes frequent *podcast* recordings made on his home computer that he posts on Twitter. Under the stage name *Prince Handley*, he has a following of 64,000 people. He told me by phone that he reaches 17,000 people a day and a million people a year by this twitter avenue alone.

See <https://twitter.com/princehandley?lang=pl>.

Below are some other terminology definitions taken from the Wikipedia online (internet) encyclopedia.:

Portable Document Format (PDF) is an [open standard](#) for document exchange. This [file format](#), created by [Adobe Systems](#) in 1993, is used for representing [documents](#) in a manner independent of [application software](#), [hardware](#), and [operating systems](#).^[2] Each PDF file encapsulates a complete description of a fixed-layout flat document, including the text, fonts, graphics, and other information needed to display it.

In 1991 [Adobe Systems](#) co-founder [John Warnock](#) outlined a system called "Camelot"^[3] that evolved into the Portable Document Format (PDF).

While the PDF specification has been available free of charge since at least 2001,^[4] PDF was originally a [proprietary format](#) controlled by Adobe. It was officially released as an [open standard](#) on July 1, 2008, and published by the [International Organization for Standardization](#) as [ISO 32000-1:2008](#).^{[1][5]} In 2008, Adobe published a Public Patent License to ISO 32000-1 granting a royalty-free rights for all patents owned by Adobe that are necessary to make, use, sell and distribute PDF compliant implementations.^[6]

EPUB (short for **electronic publication**; alternatively capitalized as **ePub**, **ePUB**, **EPub**, or **epub**, with "EPUB" preferred by the vendor) is a [free](#) and [open e-book](#) standard by the [International Digital Publishing Forum](#) (IDPF). Files have the extension *.epub*.

EPUB is designed for [reflowable content](#), meaning that the text display can be optimized for the particular display device used by the reader of the EPUB-formatted book, although EPUB now also supports fixed-layout content. The format is meant to function as a single format that publishers and conversion houses can use in-house, as well as for distribution and sale. It supersedes the [Open eBook](#) standard.

Android is a [Linux](#)-based [operating system for mobile devices](#) such as [smartphones](#) and [tablet computers](#). It is developed by the [Open Handset Alliance](#), led by Google, and other companies.^[2]

Google purchased the initial developer of the software, Android Inc., in 2005.^[7] The unveiling of the Android distribution in 2007 was announced with the founding of the Open Handset Alliance, a consortium of 86 [hardware](#), software, and [telecommunication](#) companies devoted to advancing [open standards](#) for mobile devices.^{[8][9][10][11]} Google releases the Android code as [open-source](#),

under the [Apache License](#).^[12] The [Android Open Source Project \(AOSP\)](#) is tasked with the maintenance and further development of Android.^[13]

Android has a large community of developers writing applications ("[apps](#)") that extend the functionality of the devices. Developers write primarily in a customized version of [Java](#).^[14] Apps can be downloaded from third-party sites or through online stores such as [Google Play](#) (formerly *Android Market*), the app store run by Google. As of February 2012 there were more than 450,000 apps available for Android, and the estimated number of applications downloaded from the Android Market as of December 2011 exceeded 10 billion.^{[15][16]}

Android was listed as the best-selling smartphone platform worldwide in Q4 2010 by [Canalys](#)^{[17][18]} with over 300 million Android devices in use by February 2012.^[19] According to Google's [Andy Rubin](#), as of February 2012 there are over 850,000 Android devices activated every day.^[20]

Utilizing Social Media – QR Codes and E-tracts

I became aware of the value of [social media](#) ([smart phones](#) and [tablets](#) with [internet access](#)) in bringing more people to Jesus Christ, at less expense due to the growing cost of postage in mailing gospel tracts overseas. Soon there will be as many social media devices as there are people in the world, and already a billion of these devices have internet access. Popular Mechanics magazine stated, regarding people using mobile or smart phones, by the end of 2010, five billion people or 75% of the world's population were subscribers. "People of developing nations, even those without an electric grid, can tap into the world's commerce and culture. After a scant eleven years of development the device seems to have limitless potential."



Thus, I began using [QR codes](#) which were developed by the Denso car manufacturer's parts supply company in Japan. I go to the website <http://www.gogqr.me>, and type in a URL (internet website address). I am given a high quality .85" QR code with that information embedded in it. I then designed 6 to a sheet ([Avery template #5164/8164](#)) all weather labels with a blue praying hands graphic and the words along the finger tips [World's Most Important Prayer](#). In the lower back of the hand area I placed the QR code graphic.

On our website, I created a new page heading titled [World's Most Important Prayer](#). I then used my solid state stereo recording device, the [Zoom H2](#), to record the [sinners prayer](#) (prayer of salvation) along with an introduction, and a prayer for the listener at the end. I paused between phrases so a listener could repeat after the speaker. When I uploaded the digital audio clip to this website page, it installed a software audio player with a clickable play button. I typed out the words of the prayer below the player. I had designed a discipleship or follow-up booklet, both in printable PDF format, and as a free download read order e-booklet .. I already had this document posted on the website. In the text below the audio player, I inserted hyperlinked orange text to the booklet documents online location, and invited the visitor this website page to click on the link that takes him or her to this ready to read online e-booklet titled [What it Means to be Born Again - Understanding God's Plan of Salvation](#).

I posted a free use PDF (Adobe acrobat reader document) of the [six to a page QR code stickers](#) I had made. The idea is to stick them in public places. A clear sticker, printed in the [flip horizontal](#) mode can be placed inside storefront windows and car windows. Hopefully a person will see the sticker and wonder what it is about, then use an internet accessible smart phone or tablet with a built in camera and the downloaded

[free QR code scanner app from Google](#) or the [Macintosh store](#), will take a picture of the QR code. The website page with the [audio player](#) will appear, one will click on the audio player and read what he is saying as he is speaking, and become a child of God through faith in Jesus Christ according to Romans 10:8-10 NIV:

It readers, "The message is very close at hand; it is on your lips and in your heart." And that message is the very message about faith that we preach: If you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved. For it is by believing in your heart that you are made right with God, and it is by confessing with your mouth that you are saved."

I persuaded "[Prince](#)" [Handley](#), a modern day apostle who ordained my wife and I into the ministry, to start putting [QR codes on tracts](#) we make for him that go to Brazil and Africa. I went on the internet to <http://www.goqr.me>, and typed in Handley's revised website he first designed in the late 1990s, <http://www.realmiracles.org>, which was getting 30 hits a second in about 2002. The free online converter quickly gave me a code graphic file to download. I placed it in my computer document for the Portuguese How to Win gospel tract titled *Como Vencer*. When I started printing the batch of 40,000 tracts on the one color printing press on light blue paper with Pantone *Reflex Blue* ink, the thought came to me that I had better test the code with our new LG brand touch screen tablet. If there is not enough contrast between the code and the background, the code might not scan correctly. I took a printed copy and took it with the tablet to the print shop door where there would be better internet reception through the Verizon 4G cell phone wireless network. I laid the paper on a stool, touched the QR scanner app icon, and began to hold the tablet's camera directly above the code. The software put brackets around the printed code, showing it had identified it, then gave me the correct URL internet address for the Handley website connected to the code. I took the tablet outside, and the tablet took me right to the home page of the redesigned website. I was so impressed!

e-tracts and PDF interactive- Ron Link, of [Good News Press, Inc.](#), told me that some people in other countries are making tracts that look OK to them, but are not quality by our standard as printers. Also, if we do the printing and shipping by USPS medium flat rate international priority, the shipping is about \$66 for 5,000 tracts. Thus I decided to start taking documents I post on the website for use by printers, and modifying them to make [read order e-tracts](#) that can be passed around instantly by way of the internet without making and shipping a printed copy, and at almost no cost except monthly internet and cell phone fees.

I start with the Adobe Indesign page layout program letter size document. I measure the size of each page of the tract. For example, a two per sheet double fold tract page or quarter panel measures 2.75" wide by 4.25" high. I then start a new document with those dimensions under [Document Setup](#). I make the margins 1/4" or less. I designate 8 pages for the document. I use the black arrow tool in the tools pallet to drag an imaginary text box around all the graphics and text on the tract title page or quadrant. This selects all the content together. I then do *object*, then down to *group*. next I do *edit* then *copy*. Placing the mouse cursor in the first page of the new e-tract document, I right click the mouse and go down to *paste*. Using the keyboard arrow keys, I center the content in the page. I repeat this procedure for the remaining seven pages, then save the new document and give it a name. I make sure that all the graphics are [embedded](#)

in the document so they will travel with it. I go down the *file* pull down menu to [export](#), then choose [PDF Interactive](#). I can lower the quality to *standard* if I want, which lowers the document file size which makes it attach faster as an e-mail attachment. It will also open faster for the recipient of the e-mail. In making the PDF I must uncheck the box that says something like *let receiving computer supply* fonts. In the full version of Adobe Acrobat Professional 9, I can go to *optimize*, then choose *wipe* and *left*. Now, on tablets with a touch sensitive screen, one can turn the pages of the document by touching the pages of the document with a finger tip and flicking the finger to the left to go to the next pages. One can also make e-booklets by this same method. Normally booklets are laid out as signatures with matching two up pages for a stapled booklet. With the non postscript RCPS software printer driver that came with my color laser printer, I can take an easier route and made a read order document in Microsoft Word where the text will automatically flow from one page to the next as one types. A booklet making feature in the printer software automatically does the [impagination](#) or pairing of the pages to print as collated, printed both sides, booklet sets.

Additional PDF Interactive Capabilities

On our website, I posted a list of [Free Training Videos](#) I uploaded to [YouTube](#) on [the Internet](#). I changed the titles of each video to make them *hyperlinked* text. Now, when a title, which appears in a different color than black, is clicked on with the computer mouse, the computer takes the viewer to the internet location of the video where one simply clicks on the play button. I decided to select and copy the website video listings page and paste it into the computer Microsoft Word 2007 document of this book. The appearance of the titles changed, but the [hyperlinks](#) carried over. Now, in the e-book version of this book, one can do a *Ctrl + Click* combination using the keyboard and mouse when the mouse cursor is positioned over a hypertext title, and the computer still takes the viewer to the video watching location. This feature can also be carried over into Adobe Acrobat when one is using the 9 professional version to designate the text as a hyperlink. One can also make links to stored documents offering more detail about a subject, as well as text links to audio recording clips.

There are specific software programs for converting Adobe Indesign documents to file formats for electronic book readers like the Amazon *Kindle* and [Kindle Fire](#), the Barnes and Noble [Nook](#), Apple computer's [iBook](#), and [Android](#) devices. When the iBook first came out, Scott Fresner, head of the US silk screening Institute, updated his printed manual of silkscreening by making an iBook version. I saw a demonstration and was really impressed with the touch screen [hyperlinks](#) to videos and additional (online) information on a topic. The problem I see here, is using the software to convert to these file formats, like the free [Apple's iAuthor software](#) which may have a [catch to it](#) . Here are instructions on how to use this [Apple software to create an interactive e-book](#) that only works with the iOS (Apple tablet) operating system software.

I purchased the Adobe CS5 standard software package in 2010. I found an "export to [e-pub](#) in the Adobe Indesign *File* pull down menu, but one has to upgrade to version [CS6](#) to correctly make the conversion for non Apple reading devices. In about 2008, the Adobe company who has the license for [Adobe Acrobat software](#), gave permission for the world to use their software which had been recognized as a an [ISO standard](#) universal communication method. My view is, since most if not all of the electronic reader devices being manufactured today can accept PDF, but not competitor's file

formats, I am going to stick with using [PDF interactive](#) for making [e-books](#), e-booklets, and e-tracts, because it is a universal format, and because I already have the software installed on my computer.

I experimented with what happens to a [URL](#) or internet address for a website or a document or video posted there, when it is put into Microsoft Word or Adobe Indesign, and then converted to a PDF Adobe Acrobat Reader document and posted on our website for others to read and/or download. When hyperlinked text is copied off our website and pasted into Microsoft Word. One can do a *Ctrl + Click* with the mouse cursor over the special text, and the reader is taken online directly to the location of the document or video. In website making software, one can make a hyperlink code for a post, and then change the letters and numbers to an identifying title. When the title is exported to Microsoft Word and then Acrobat using a PDF maker software like the one built into Microsoft word 2010, or Adobe Acrobat Professional, the special text transfers to Acrobat, and is actually easier to connect to the internet link, because, in Acrobat reader, when one moves the cursor over the special hyperlinked text or URL code, a hand appears, and one just clicks the mouse to follow the link. I could use the limited editing features in the full version of Acrobat to type in a URL address, and the address became a clickable link. I could not edit a URL code address in Acrobat and change its name to a title like I did in making my website. As I said, the hyperlinked text in Acrobat can link to a sound, a form to fill out, an audio recording, a tract document, a website or web page of a website, or a PDF e-book. Realize, that this link only works when one is reading the PDF document containing a link to internet information) on an electronic device that has the capability of connecting to the internet. If one prints out the PDF and then reads it, to get the link, he would have to type the special text in the address bar of his or her internet browser and then press the enter key. Now that I did these experiments, I am more enthused about PDF e-books, e-booklets, and e-tracts, than I was before. Here is a [link to a short video on making hyperlinks in Microsoft Word](#)

I acknowledge the existence and value of [Facebook](#), [Twitter](#), [LinkedIn](#), etc. One ministry associate, who once made quality fifteen minute radio broadcasts aired on radio stations, and one minute salvation commercials, now makes Twitter blog post audio recordings using his laptop computer and says he has a following of 117,000 followers - 17,000 listeners a day, or a million a year. (See www.twitter.com/princehandley). I am very impressed with the morally uplifting pictures and stories that appear on my wife Harriet's Facebook account, as well as the stunning graphics quality and the built in videos. Harriet set up our Facebook account, and I helped her find some pictures to post, but, other than that, I have nothing to report since I am not familiar with these other [social media](#) avenues.

I did set up a [LinkedIn account for myself](#) to inform the public of our graphic arts skills and services to the end that we work with more people doing God's work.

We should not forget videos of sermons and church services posted for free on the internet, or through more professional venues like high definition [Vimeo](#). An anointed minister I worked with called me with excitement to say that his meetings were being videotaped and posted on the internet, and that all one had to do to find them was to use the popular Google search engine and type in his name Phillip Gladden. In making his business cards, I decided to write out the actual [URL internet address for the homepage for his videos](#). There one finds a thumbnail image of each post and a brief

description. These people may have the potential to reach anyone in the world who understands the English language through the internet, but the quality of the posts leaves something to be desired. My associate started with a hand held camera someone found in a trash dumpster. There was no hard wired or [bluetooth wireless](#) sound connection between the speaker at the podium and the cameraman out in the audience. At least they got a start. Now, an internet radio minister has gifted Gladden with a \$6,000 camera.

In the 1980's I was involved in [Public Access Television](#), required by law to be provided in a larger city where there is a cable television network, because the airwaves are owned by the people. These productions have to meet a certain time frame and quality requirement. Getting a show spot on the cable public access channel costs \$100 a year. Training on using the cameras and doing the video editing to make a DVD of the proposed shows, is required. I took the camera training and was a guest speaker. In the city of Santa Barbara where I grew up, the average viewing audience was 8,000 people, I was told! When I worked at the city college, one of the fellow employees in a different department stopped by and told me he had seen me on TV. The pastor of a local church turned their show over to another associate of mine. They were blessed to have gotten the 10:30AM Sunday morning spot. I was able to be a Guest speaker and used the topic, [Am I going to Heaven?](#) Afterward, I was able to record the audio tract off the message portion of the DVD, convert it to a condensed file size [mp3 format](#), and post it on a new page on our website which has a built in [software audio player](#). The pastors of a church I worked with are very skilled in moviemaking for TV broadcasts

transferred to DVDs. They started out on Public Access Television, and are now plan to do increased quality shows worldwide via the internet, from their home, using six professional video cameras that were donated to their ministry. Before, they had been using the Cox Communications cable company equipment, and their own portable, but quality Panasonic camera with a [Three CCD](#) circuit, something armatures may not know existed or wouldn't spend the money to buy. I believe we should represent the Lord in a professional as well as anointed by God manner, to the best our ability.

Bindery Work



Folding Tracts

Without an electric folder, one should leave the folding of printed matter up to the recipient. My associate, Prince Handley, with years of tract mailing experience, says the tracts stay in better shape when mailed overseas when they are shipped flat rather than shipped folded, as the corners can get damaged. The more Modern folders can handle 14" by 20" sheets, have quieting shields, have more than one friction feed roller, or are vacuum pickup with an air spray between the sheets. Ear protection should be worn when folding as it is a noisy operation with many folders. When folding printed matter that has been printed on a printing press where the ink is not thoroughly dry, some ink will build up on the folding rollers and will have to be periodically cleaned off with press blanket wash or [rubber rejuvenator](#). The more expensive folders have automatic preset adjustments since trying to figure out how to make more than one fold in a document is confusing even though most folders have a chart on them that shows where to position the two fold plates for various types of folds and sizes of paper. Some may also come with a perforating and a scoring roller set on the output which is nice. The older single

friction feed roller electric [Martin Yale P7200 Desktop Paper Folding Machine](#) that was donated to our ministry wasn't very precise until I rebuilt it, and now the performance is amazing! The hardest fold, for me, was the letter fold into thirds. I decided I had to first not use the second fold plate by turning it around as in the picture below so I could determine which was the first fold and which direction to move the fold stop. The general guide shown below comes with the folder, but fine tuning the adjustments is still necessary.

SIMPLIFIED FOLDING CHART	TYPE OF FOLD	FOLD	FOLD				FOLD POSITION
			8 1/2 X 11	11 X 14	14 X 17	17 X 22	
<small> MAKE THE FOLD LINE APPROXIMATELY A HALF INCH FROM THE FOLD STOP IF THE FOLD STOP IS NOT NECESSARY </small>	LETTER FOLD	181	E	A	H	J	TWO FOLD POSITION
	FAN FOLD	182	V	B	Y	K	TWO FOLD POSITION
		283	F	I	X	L	TWO FOLD POSITION
	DOUBLE PARALLEL FOLD	284	G	C	Z	M	TWO FOLD POSITION
		285	W	D	L	N	TWO FOLD POSITION
	SINGLE FOLD	187	O	J	F	O	SINGLE FOLD POSITION
		286	D	D	D	L	SINGLE FOLD POSITION & ONE SCORING ROLLER
	FRENCH FOLD	188	G	C	F	L	SINGLE FOLD POSITION & ONE SCORING ROLLER
		287	D	C	F	L	SINGLE FOLD POSITION & ONE SCORING ROLLER
	DIAGONAL FOLD	189	O	I	F	L	SINGLE FOLD POSITION & ONE SCORING ROLLER
		288	D	C	F	L	SINGLE FOLD POSITION & ONE SCORING ROLLER



Scoring, Perforating, Slitting, Numbering

For under \$40 at an office supply store or Costco, one can get a mostly made of plastic hand operated machine for scoring, perforating and slitting, as well as cutting a rounded corner on a card. The official heavy duty machine for these additional operations (scoring, slitting, perforating) would be a [Rollem Champion 990](#) which properly outfitted in good used condition could cost up to \$6,000. Such is necessary for separating and trimming out multiple up tract booklets that have been through a booklet making system. The staple at the fold makes them not lie flat in a knife paper cutter making the operation too slow. The Rollem is ideally made for slitting single sheets but the Rollem USA salesman says it will slit thin booklets with full bleed covers as well. Trying to cut booklets on a regular paper cutter could result in nicking the blade by cutting a staple which would require the blade to be taken out and sharpened at a saw shop at a cost of \$16+. An upright Rollem model also has a number stamping assembly which is nice for tickets, but this upright model didn't seem satisfactory to me for slitting tract booklets. The manufacturer says this is because there is no place for the waste paper that is slit off to collect other than in the machine mechanism. In September 2009, I bought, on layaway, a factory refurbished Rollem Champion 990 18" model with a 1/4 " galley slitter, and two deep slitter blade sets for slitting out [Know Your Future booklets](#) two at a time, along with a perforating wheel set. Two sets of scoring wheels for pre-scoring book covers for paperback books would be a future addition. Even though I had no credit, The Rollem company allowed me to make a refundable \$1000 deposit. Next I made a payment of \$3000. That I authorized them to deliver the machine for free when they are in this area, along with some training. After delivery I would have two months to pay the remaining \$2000 in two payments. I ended up driving my truck to their USA



headquarters in Santa Ana, CA. Two employees and I tested slitting some booklet samples I had printed on the color laser printer. It worked fine. I later got the knife edge slitting wheels which gave a smoother cut than the right angle cutting surfaces. This is an example of how one can purchase equipment without using a credit card, but only a debit card, even if one's credit history has not been good.

Paper Cutter



The Triumph / Ideal model 4705 made in Germany is hand operated, cuts 18" wide, and over 300 sheets at a time. I have one and it is OK. A new blade costs about \$200. I bought the blade at [Print Finishing Solutions](#) in Placentia, CA. These machines sell used for up to \$2500. I paid \$500 for mine. It came with a stand to which I added casters so I can orient it for ease of use and park it out of the way when I am not using it, due to my limited floor space. It is necessary to have the 18" capacity model if you plan to make letter size

paperback books with a full bleed cover as the cover stock comes 12" x 18". The electric model operates on 110 volts, but weighs over 500 pounds. The even better model has a digital readout that reads to a hundredth of an inch. Perhaps the best model is electric / hydraulic, like the Challenge Titan 200, has a machined cast iron or aluminum bed surface, and costs \$6,000+ used. This was my choice since I want to be able to record cut numbers for booklet parts and re-punch in the same numbers to have all the booklet pages be the same size or dimensions when I'm done. The largest models like the Challenge Champion 305 MPC run on three phase 220 volts which a home shop is not going to have. The Model 305 has a key pad for punching in dimensions to a thousandth of an inch, but it is noisy.

About the year 2010, on a whim, my wife and I decided to go to an annual printing equipment vendors gathering in Orange County, CA. I took the trailer towing ball in faith we might bring something home – we did! We had been looking at the Challenge Titan 20" electric/hydraulic programmable cutter being used in franchise copy shops like Kinko's/Fed Ex. The machine is on casters for easy moving, compact, quiet (motor runs only when the cut button is pressed), and can be set to a thousandth of an inch. It runs on a designated 220 volt circuit, but requires single phase rather than three phase power. I was told it has to have 230-240 volts or the electronics will not work. The asking used price for these machines had been \$8,500. We talked to the corporation owner who told us to talk to another salesman and make an offer. At the same moment my wife and I both, independently, got the figure \$6,000, which was accepted. A customer had refused to buy a machine because the corner of the display was wrinkled, which made the machine available to us. It has turned out to be a really nice machine.

We got a *falsetto* clamp, and a [rubber pad magnetic cushion](#) for it so it wouldn't make marks when trimming bound paperback books. We try to cover all the equipment with movers quilts/blankets to protect them from rust and dust. One can record all the cut dimensions for a particular bindery job on a 3 x 5" card and punch in those exact dimensions the next time the job is run! We kept the manual Triumph cutter to be used to clamp freshly bound paperback books a little longer until the hot melt glue is solidified.

Using the Cutter

After cutting out the business cards I just made on the Ricoh color laser printer, I feel it is helpful to explain the proper method of doing this. The business cards didn't have a *full bleed* to the edges like the prayer cards on the CD included with this book, so I was able to lay them out in the *landscape* orientation, 12 up or 12 to a page, three columns, with 4 in each column. Sets of trim marks were placed at the four corners of the document, 3/16" in from the edge of the sheet (the printers no print area) and not extending past 1/4" which would cause them to appear on the cut cards. Trim marks along the top and bottom separate the three 3 1/2" wide columns, and trim marks down the sides separate the four 2" tall rows. After the business card document is finished on the front, I like to add a prayer on the back with the prayer in a PMS 185 color, printed as a CMYK color composite. Then one card is printed both sides. The laser printer doesn't register the image from sheet to sheet as well as a printing press, so I use the laser printers bypass or manual feed tray and don't use the duplex feature. Some laser printers can't feed the business card 12 point card stock through the paper drawers, and can't duplex it either. Be careful here, since the document is laid out as two pages for the two sides, and in printing each side, you must designate that you are only printing the one page, not both. After designing the document, print one sheet and cut it out on a hand sheer or roller blade cutter to check for equal margins. When adjusting the backside, a column at a time, the right column is the left column on the front of the document. Now print the job. On the color laser printer one could use [Kromekote C2S](#) which means the card stock has a high gloss finish on both sides. If a person's picture is on the card, one may want to use an inkjet printer and [Kirkland Photo Paper](#) from Costco and print at the highest quality the inkjet can do. Inkjets seem to have good registration from sheet to sheet. The photo paper is only glossy on the one side, so the backside would have to be printed on the laser printer since the inkjet does not like printing on the back of the photo paper. The second reason to use the inkjet is better photo quality than most laser printers. Now print the business cards. The backside is done by flipping the paper 180 degrees on the long side. One should use [long grain paper](#) for business cards as it makes them stiffer and less apt to bend. If the business cards had a [full bleed](#) like the [prayer cards with the Jesus drawing on the front](#), one would lay them out eight per letter size sheet, but the two cards on the right would stand on end. That job would be more complicated to trim out and will not be discussed here.

Before beginning the procedure for cutting out of business cards, two things are to be kept in mind. First, since the laser printer did not have perfect registration from sheet to sheet, the trim marks will not be all in the same location on every sheet. Secondly, we want to make successive cuts from the same edge of the stack to prevent a progressive skew error. Since business cards only have a margin of about 1/8", if the edge is cut crooked, it will be easily noticeable by the type not being straight or parallel with the edge of the card. Now adjust the cutter for the first cut, but don't use just one card as one card could go into the crack between the cutter side guide and its base or the slight curve at the base of the movable back gauge. We will not cut a stack of cards more than 1/8" thick either because the cut dimension may have to be changed slightly. As you lift the safety latch and lower the blade down to the surface of the top sheet, you can move the paper by loosening the hand wheel clamp and rotating the hand crank (counterclockwise for a deeper cut and clockwise for less of a cut). The knife blade edge should be splitting the trim mark you are cutting on after you have brought it down to rest on the top sheet, but have not cut through the sheet.

The first cut is cutting off the right hand column of four business cards. You will notice that the trim mark extends about 1/32" beyond the screwed down paper clamp bar. Before screwing down the clamp, make sure the stack of cardstock is jogged against the left side guide and the back gauge by tapping the side with the tips of your fingers.

One should have predetermined that the back gauge and the side guide are perpendicular (at 90 degrees) to each other. The two ways of checking this are to cut a sheet and fold it in half and see if both ends align at the corners. The other way is to put a single sheet in the cutter that is wide, such as a tabloid size (17" long), making a cut near the edge, then flipping the sheet on the long edge and cutting off about 1/8" if the cut strip is the same width on both ends, the cutter is properly adjusted. An adjustment set screw accessed from the left side of the cutter is a stop for how far the blade comes down. Thus, rather than replacing a worn plastic cutting stick below the blade, or having to take it out and rotate it to a fresh position, one may be able to turn the screw counterclockwise to lower the blade enough to cut through the whole sheet. When replacing the blade after sharpening or because it is worn out (reached the end of its adjustment and can't be sharpened any further), the sheet metal housing box around the blade is removed and the Allen screws removed. The blade must be removed and installed with two screw in bolts or handles, and the two or three adjustment set screws above the blade must be backed off to allow room for the new blade which is wider. The removed blade must be transferred and stored in a wood or plastic housing to avoid being injured or cut by it. When adjusting the new or sharpened blade, put it in with the two handle screws and pull it all the way up, then insert additional screws so the blade can't drop out. With these screws not fully tight and a new plastic cutting stick beneath the blade, one can put pieces of paper on the cutter table to cover the whole side to side

distance, and then lower the blade slowly and evenly tighten the set screws above the blade until it just cuts the test sheets. Tighten the mounting bolts, remove the installation handles, and reinstall the protective sheet metal cover.

Now back to cutting out the cards. After cutting off the last column on the right on a 1/8" thick test stack, fan through the cut stack and see if the cut, on average, came close to the middle of most of the trim marks. See how much the marks vary as a gauge of how accurate the registration is on your laser printer. If the cut location is satisfactory, but the right column off all the remaining business cards. The Triumph cutter can cut a stack over 2" thick as it is designed to cut a ream of paper at a time. If the blade is dull, it may *draw*, or move at a unwanted angle as it cuts.

The second cut is the top 1/4" across the long edge of the first two columns and the short edge of the third column. As we make these successive cuts, the same starting edge is going against the cutter back gauge to keep the cut parallel. The thirist cut is to make a strip of cards 2" wide, the bottom strip being 2 1/4" wide. Do this three times to make three strips. The fourth cut is trimming the bottom 1/4" off. Now set the adjuster on the cutter to 3 1/2" and trip the right edge off the four cards that were in the third column. You can double check yourself by looking to see that the trim marks visible down the side of the paper stack are outside the cutting area, and are in the narrow 1/4" margin trim. Now with the same 3 1/2" setting, cut the remaining strips apart by first cutting between the two cards. Lastly, cut the 1/4" off the left side of the four stacks of cards that formerly made up the left column. I noticed I had to change the dimension of these last two cuts slightly to get equal margins around the prayer on the back. This means the business cards won't all be exactly the same length, but if kept in stacks and rubber banded together, no one will know.



Booklets made from more than three sheets of paper (a 16+ page booklet), look better with a face trim. This trim requires that the stapled side of the booklet be held flat while making the trim. On some cutters, plastic safety guards don't allow putting a hand in this area of the back gauge. The cast brass bolt on set of clamps for about \$35 do the job. Trimming five booklets at a time works OK. Some cheaper cutters like Dahle brand, don't have these fins for attachment. In that case, spring clamps from an office supply store, are attached to the top and bottom near the fold. Keep in mind, in designing the booklet document, that there will be a face trip of up to 1/8".

Laminating

With the wide 25" laminator, we could make posters using tiling of letter, legal, or tabloid size sheets assembled and taped together like a puzzle. Lamination on both sides added some structural rigidity and kept the signs clean. This older donated equipment had horseshoe type heating elements which would not work for protecting paperback book covers because one had to use a slower speed and polyester film which tended to curl the product. We had tried spraying artwork protect ant on the outside of the book covers imaged on the 12" x 18" color laser printer, but the spray

didn't seem to fully dry and finished books would stick together when mailed together in a box. We then purchased the [Pro Lam P1200](#) which has the heating elements inside the rollers which heat up quicker and can handle thinner .0014" film at a faster rate of speed, resulting in no curling problem in the finished product and a good adhesion between the film and the digital 10 or 12 or 14 point thick card stock. It works nicely on multiple up 14 point full bleed post cards. The finished thickness is .015, just under the USPS maximum thickness of .016. Nylon film would be even better (more tolerant to weather and humidity changes), but is more expensive, and may not be available in the 11 3/4" width we ordered. A good laminator should have both a top and a bottom heater so one has the option of laminating both sides. We were getting air bubbles beneath the surface, on the top only lamination for paperback book covers, so we set the heater temperature at 250 for both rollers and the problem went away. As mentioned elsewhere, the laminator came in handy for putting a protective coating on the picture side of 4.25" x 6" smaller post cards.



Utilizing Volunteers to Saving Money, along with Quality Control to Down on Waste and Cost of Consumables

Visitors watching us work can feel that offering to help is the right thing to do. Experience has shown me that, since printing is a skilled trade, volunteers must be trained and tested, or they can slow down production. When I was working out of a garage, a black man who had spent time in prison needed work, so, in one day I was able to train him to run the Multigraphics 1218 one color offset printing press I was using at the time. He did a good job, but was out of money, so I paid him for his work.



On the other hand, when I was a pressman at the city college, one of the student workers, a nice Christian man, was given the job of making booklets out of the college's commencement program that I had printed, and my boss had collated. We neglected to tell the worker that the constant banging of the sets of paper against the stop at the bottom of the input of the booklet maker would turn the worm screw adjuster to where the booklet would no longer be stapling or folding in the center. This important job was misaligned by 1/8" and no one caught it until it was almost too late. The production supervisor was not happy. Afterward, I put a small ring clamp on the screw so it could be clamped in place stay in place for the duration of a job. If we had told the worker more about the machine, this problem could have been avoided.

More recently, we printed enough paper to make 30,000 Spanish booklet tracts, having to print an extra amount because the printing didn't go as expected. Two people volunteered to help with the bindery work, one with health issues, and an older woman with Alzheimer's memory loss. We were getting double covers, and out of order collating. Because the volunteers disrupted the concentration of my wife and I, and we didn't frequently examine the work of the helpers, My wife got the bottom set of booklets intermixed with the top set. The trim margins of the two sets were different. I assumed the untrimmed booklets were properly assembled when they got to me and I did the face trim and started on the top and bottom trim on a different machine before I noticed the problem. Also, the booklet maker had folded some of the booklets crooked, but I went ahead and trimmed them as is, not realizing that the text would appear crooked on the pages. We ended up looking at 23,000+ booklets individually for acceptability for a customer who had already paid \$1,000 down on the job. After we had managed to save 20,000 good enough booklets, and delivered them to the church 100+ miles away, the secretary, who had been communicating with us in broken English, pulled a booklet out of one of the boxes and began comparing it page by page with a previously printed booklet she had, looking for mistakes. I had told her that if I didn't feel I could do an

acceptable job, I would refund her money. My wife was sitting in a chair watching, praying the woman wouldn't find a mistake. She got through the inside of the back page and started to put the booklet down. I told her she had forgotten to read the printing on the back of the cover. No errors were found, and the job was accepted, but we learned some valuable lessons for future booklet printing. We now realize that volunteers don't have the years of experience we do, and have to be trained and monitored, if we let them help at all.

Another issue is an accident. Printing equipment has sharp slitting wheels, very sharp paper cutting blades, and press rollers posing a pinch hazard, and even a tungsten carbide tipped whirling saw blade in the paperback book making machine that mills and roughs up the book spine before applying the glue and the cover. My wife was trying to help me late one night by inserting the book blocks or insides, while I removed the bound book. Occasionally unwanted glue would collect on the carriage as it passed over the glue tank rollers. She was reaching down with her finger to remove some glue residue before the whirling blades had coasted to a stop. a notch of flesh was ground out of the middle of one of her fingers. We went to the emergency room which was paid for by her Medicare retirement and supplemental insurance. In the end, the alarming wound healed so well you can't tell which finger got bit. If this had happened to a younger volunteer, I would have felt obligated to pay the medical bill myself, since I had no medical coverage for business accidents. This accident and other accidents could be prevented if we carefully explain the dangers of operating the various pieces of machinery. Even though modern machinery has safety shields, accidents can still happen. Also, two people operating one machine to speed production may be dangerous.

Quality control is important and some companies hire a person to do just that. What follows are some specific things to watch for in doing a print job.

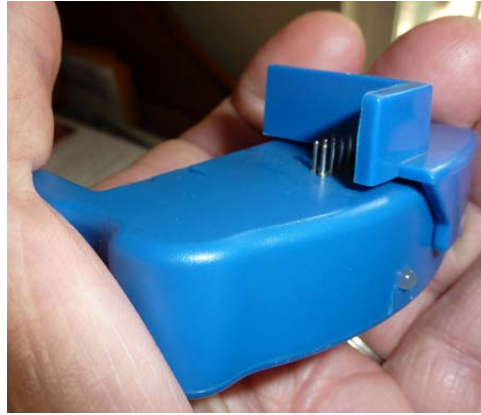
Before starting a printing job, make a "dummy" or mock booklet layout. Have another person look for spelling and grammatical errors. Spell Checkers on the computer don't catch everything. For Example, when I was doing a job for the Foundation for a local community college, the back of the cover of the scholarships available booklet read: "Would you Lie to Establish a Scholarship Fund?" when they intended to use the word "Like". Print a sample copy on the color laser printer before making a film positive from which to make a metal printing plate. When making color separations for a press the Adobe Indesign CS3 and later versions allow one to [preview the color separations](#) on the computer screen before printing them. Check for missing text, as it is easy in a page layout program on the computer to not have a text box pulled down all the way resulting in hidden text. In the table of contents of a book or booklet the chapter start pages listed should match what is actually found in the book as making changes after the first printing can move chapter starts to a different page. All chapter starts should also be on the right hand side of the book and be an odd numbered page (all odd

numbered pages being on the right half of the book). A blank page may have to be inserted at the end of a chapter to get the next chapter to start on an odd numbered page. Check to see that there is enough margin in the spine or bound area of the book and that the text doesn't curve around down into the spine area where it is hard to read.

Color laser printing is easy and beautiful but expensive. The manufacturer tells you what the cost per copy is which includes all consumables (for example, toner cartridges, waste toner bottle, imaging drums, and intermediate transfer belt or photo receptor belt assembly) but not the paper. On my Ricoh model Aficio c811dn, this is 1.2 cents a black and white copy for letter size sheets with 20% coverage of toner, and about 6+ cents a copy for printing in color. If you fail to go by these figures you may find yourself unexpectedly spending \$700 (including tax and shipping) for a set of new high yield toner cartridges that are only going to print 15,000 copies. For some laser printers, online (order by internet or world wide web) companies like www.meritline.com, or www.fillserv.com sell aftermarket [Uni-Kits](#) that contain 32 ounce bottles of aftermarket toner at about a third the price of a factory color toner cartridge. Along with this one must buy a new "[smart chip](#)" integrated circuit board to go on each cartridge which is refilled at a cost of about \$10 each circuit. There is also a hand held electronic device that resets the existing chip on inkjet cartridges. I bought [the one for Epson Inkjet printers](#). This lowers the per copy cost of laser printing way down. www.tonerprice.com now has generic brand toner cartridges at almost half the manufacturer's prices

In Offset Printing on a printing press, perhaps the biggest source of waste is unwanted "toning" of ink in the non printing background area of the sheet of paper. This is caused by a wrong "ph" or alkaline / acid level in the fountain solution, not using distilled water, or too lean a setting or a rise in room temperature or warm air blowing across the press. The ph of the distilled water is lowered to 4.5 to 5.5 by adding fountain solution concentrate and checking the mixture with test strips or an electronic measuring device. The easiest remedy to water problems, although expensive, seems to be installing a [Kompac automatic watering system](#) sold by Varn, Inc. The device is set on 2.5 or 3 (pressure between the two main rollers that determines how much water goes through the nip and onto the printing plate surface), and takes care of itself so the operator can set the press on a slow speed and do other things without worry while the press is printing. Trying to apply too much ink can cause a condition called [scuming](#). Running certain colored inks such as certain reds may require a setting that increases the available fountain solution. Such a Kompac system new probably costs \$2000. Pamarco sells a comparable [Crestline](#) continuous watering system, but it has to be adjusted according to room temperature, so I like the Kompac better. When the room temperature gets above 75 degrees using the two Crestlines (continuous dampening system) on our Ryobi 3302 larger press, I may have to open the two adjustment screws to increase the water. If the fireplace we use for a heater is going, moisture is taken out of the air, which could be a complication, and increase the tendency for background

toning of unwanted ink. I also noticed that, on one occasion, the type on the printing plates was getting plugged with unwanted ink. This was caused by the pH of the water being too high (over 6). I added fountain concentrate to the Crestline dampening system fountain tray and the extra acidity kept the letters from plugging up.



Universal Smart Chip Resetter for Epson inkjet cartridges

Buying Printing Supplies / Consumables



[Kelley Paper Company](#), [Xpedex](#), and [Unisource](#) carry paper and graphic arts supplies and are located in most major cities. Individual reams of colored paper or card stock or color laser 32lb gloss paper are available from office supply superstores like Staples, Office Depot, and Office Max. The cheapest place I found for standard size boxes of 20, 22, and 24 pound paper in boxes in letter or legal size (but not tabloid 11" by 17") is [Costco Wholesale](#) which requires a yearly membership fee of at least \$50, and accepts payment by cash, check, debit card, or American Express card. Paper weighs too much to pay for shipping, thus I try to buy it at Costco. I found out that one can buy reams of colored paper through Costco's online website at about \$5 a ream with no shipping charge. This paper is at least \$3 a ream more at a stationary store. Costco will even deliver a whole pallet of paper without a shipping charge!

I am running the business in the mountains and the nearest Kelley paper is about 40+ miles away (they deliver with a \$250 minimum order), I have been ordering all but paper through [Christine's Graphic Supplies](#) through her internet website. She now is able to get almost everything from one source and buys it wholesale and sells it to me at a 20% markup for her finding it, and she has it sent directly to me and bills me by a [virtual check](#) after she has worked up an invoice that she sends me by e-mail. I like printing tracts on glossy paper and to do this economically on a printing press I figured out I can buy a minimum order of \$250 of double sided glossy 60 or 70 pound weight paper from Kelley paper and they cut it down from the parent size to letter size and will deliver it, the price being cheaper than the 32lb weight color laser gloss I have been buying at Staples at about \$13 for a package of 300 sheets. When we bought six cans of ink for printing

30,000 tract booklets with heavy ink coverage, Kelly Paper in Ventura, CA delivered it to our home over 100 miles away. We had to meet a minimum order amount. If we set up a commercial account with them as a business, we could get a discount on what we buy and wouldn't have to pay the state sales tax if we obtained a [California Reseller's Permit](#). If we were reselling our supplies, by law, we would have to have this [permit](#). Unisource paper company out of the Los Angeles area would probably deliver to one of my relatives' homes in the city, but I would have to meet a minimum order amount and set up a commercial account.

For packaging and shipping materials and shrink wrap and shrink wrappers, I have used [www.uline.com](#). They have at least four locations around the United States.

Aftermarket toner and inkjet refill kits and bulk feed systems are available from [www.meritline.com](#) and [www.fillserv.com](#). At [www.tonerprice.com](#) we found aftermarket (not remanufactured) toner cartridges for our better laser printer at less than half the cost of OEM color cartridges. We usually get free shipping from them, and they frequently offer online discount coupons and bonus points. They also sell (without a discount) the major replaceable laser printer components like the fuser unit, transfer belt, waste toner cartridge, and the imaging drum units.

On Occasion, after sitting and not being used, the nozzles in a inkjet can plug up. Rather than throw the printer out, one can order cleaner cartridges from [www.tonerland.com](#). Also I was able to find good used Epson 880 and R300 series printers at thrift stores for under \$20 and get them to work. The older models may be slower, but the aftermarket or refilled cartridges are cheaper than cartridges for the new models. Also, the newer model Epson Printers like the large format (13" x 19") [Artisan 1430](#), when equipped with a [bulk feed system](#), stop when the internal counter perceives that an ink cartridge is empty. The older [Stylus Photo R320](#) with the bulk feed system doesn't stop, yet does six colors, and equivalent quality to newer models. Computer supplies and hardware and software are available from [www.tigerdirect.com](#). When it comes to press parts or color laser parts, they usually have to be ordered by phone from the manufacturer using the debit card for payment. The laser printer manufacturer, [Ricoh](#), offers a Church discount.

Here is a list of consumable items I have been using, most of which I got through Christine's Graphics Supply. Evidently she arranges the purchases and has the suppliers or manufacturers send the items directly to me for which she gets a 20% markup from the wholesale prices she pays.

Note: Use no chemicals containing alcohol for working with positive development metal plates for offset printing presses.

[Blanket Fix](#) – Van son Ink Company

[ph balance test strips](#) - for the press dampening system solution

Extra Strength Fountain Solution Universal Type product code 15155 Pacific Products, Inc., Sutter Creek, CA 1 Gallon bottle. This pin colored concentrate is mixed 15 to one with distilled water to get a ph balance of 5.5 to 4.5 (slightly acid). It works with metal plates and can work with Genie laser plates. Laser plates may require a background stray toner remover solution.

[Metal Plate Cleaner/Finisher/Preserver](#) 1 quart bottle Pacific Products, Inc., Sutter Creek, CA

Sheetfed Offset Printing Ink [ISC America, Inc.](#), Wood Dale, Illinois (Oil based Ink), [Van Son inks](#), [Gans inks](#)

[Red Runner Dampening Sleeves](#) BBA Nonwovens, Walpole, MA

[Antiset-off powder](#) by Varn

P.S.I. (Process Solutions, Inc.) [Positive Plate Developer BP](#)

[Baseline 4 x 4 cotton litho pads](#) Bulk, box of 500 - at Pressman's Pride

[Graphline High Quality Press Blankets.](#) Full Range of Pressroom Chemistry, Hollywood, FL 33020

[Safe and Easy Roller/Blanket Wash & Deglaze](#), at Pressman's Pride

[Baseline Cleanup Sheets](#), Graphic Arts Products

Positive Development Metal plates

[Genie](#) polyester instant laser plates

Kimoto [Kimodesk](#) Film Positive (matte or clear, 100 sheets per package, size 11" x 17") for laser printers. www.kimotech.com

[Nubtex](#) woven Shop Clothes

[Printer's Pride](#) Chrome Cylinder Cleaner & Desensitizer

Krylon Matte or Satin Finish #1919 or #1311 Acrylic clear spray paint to darken film positives, especially in the heavy solid areas. Sprayway also makes a [Toner Aide](#) darkener.

[Nikken Metal Deletion Pen](#) Positive Remover, fine and X Large tips

[Chrome cylinder cleaner and desensitizer](#)

Paper:

Paperback book covers printed on a color laser printer – [Kromekote Plus cover](#) (10 point short grain works best for flat covers if the covers are scored on the outside before binding). If 12 point or long grain is used, scoring the cover at the two fold points after printing is helpful. I score the 10 point also. Available at Kelly Paper Co. Approximately

\$50 to \$60 per 12" x 18" package of 250 sheets. This size sheet allows one to make a full bleed cover letter size book that is 5/8" thick. Kelley Paper company will deliver within a reasonable distance for a minimum order of \$250 and will custom cut sheets from parent size stock. [Xerox Digital Supreme Gloss](#) is cheaper and works just as well. If one laminates the outside of a book cover, which makes it shine, using glossy or coated cover stock is not necessary. Coated paper should be coated on one side only as the non coated book cover insides will adhere better with the glue.

18" x 12" 14 point thick short grain coated one side card digital card stock from Kelly Paper Company is used for printing post cards 8 to a page on the color laser printer. When laminated on one side with 1.4 mil material, the total thickness approaches the USPS upper limit for post cards. Also, our laser printer doesn't handle thicker card stock.

Inkjet photos and business cards: Costco Wholesale's [Kirkland Photo paper](#). About 120 thick glossy one side letter size sheets per box.

Slightly thicker and brighter paper for book insides and tracts. [Xerox Premium Multipurpose Paper](#). 96 bright, 24lb weight, 800 sheets a package for about \$6.83 a package at Costco Wholesale.

22 lb 96 bright letter size [Advantage Multi-System by Georgia Pacific](#) 2,500 letter size sheets per box. About \$18 at Costco Wholesale. On sale, it is \$14.99.

20 lb weight 92 bright, [Multi System](#) box of 5,000 letter size sheets. About \$30 at Costco Wholesale. By working advertised specials with Staples office supplies stores, we are able to get a few boxes at a time as low as \$20 each (maybe even as low as \$10).

20 lb box of 5,000 legal size (8.5" x 14") sheets (for 4 up small booklet tracts). Look for a sale at Staples or Office Depot to get the price down to \$50 or less a box.

Press parts, and most other supplies - Printers Parts of Los Angeles and San Diego. 626-447-1155 Arcadia, CA printersparts@aol.com www.printersparts4u.com. Sam Umfress, owner.

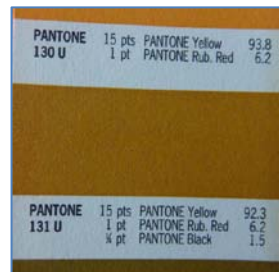
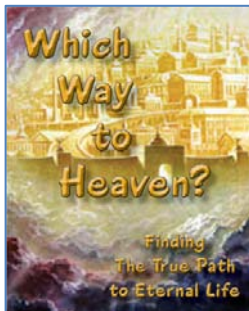
Bindery Equipment repair advisor - Mat Bond, Copy and Finishing Solutions, Inc., Santa Maria, CA [CFS Products](#)

Printing press maintenance and repair in Southern California - Larry Page, \$75 an hour Covina, CA 626-388-5884 lppacer@yahoo.com

Good Used Printing Equipment, as well as new equipment - [Print and Finishing Solutions](#), Inc., Placentia, CA, Mike Turner, Salesman

Mixing a Custom Ink Color by the Number

The [Pantone Matching System](#)® sells (for \$80?) a swatch book of 747+ custom colors made from about nine primary mixing colors. Examples of their base colors are Rubine Red and Pantone Green. Buying a five pound can of gold ink could cost \$80 to \$100. I didn't have any gold ink on hand, and wanted 5 ounces of a gold color for printing 10,000 two color [duotone](#) tracts that display a cover drawing of the [New Jerusalem](#) heavenly city. The other color was a reflex blue which I keep on hand because I use it more often. Here is how to make a custom gold PMS #131 color from the other colors I had on hand. I examined the three colors needed to make this color (Rubine red, Pantone Yellow, and black), and found I had them on the shelf - they had been donated to me when a print shop I had worked in had closed. By using the proportions math formula discussed in the previous chapter, I explain here how to make this color. Below are pictures of the of the sampler book, the swatch I choose, the accurate weigh scale, and the tract artwork I wanted the color for.



Step one is to find a color that can be made (mixed) from the colors on hand. Then, in the Adobe Indesign CS5 Page layout program on the computer, I add the PMS #131 color to the [swatches pallet](#). I then select the subheadings text by clicking and dragging over it with the computer mouse, and select the new swatch color in the swatches pallet to change the color. In Adobe Photoshop, I adjust the tract document cover art by changing it to *grayscale* under the *image* then *mode* tabs. I select *image* again, then go to *duotone*. In the window that opens, I chose my two colors, *Pantone 131* and *reflex blue*. By adjusting the graphs for each color, I can make the picture look the way I want it. The graphic is saved in the [PSD file format](#). When the graphic is *placed* into the page layout program, the *PMS* (pantone system properties) of the graphic are carried with it. Thus, when one asks for spot color separations when it comes time to make laser printer film positives, from which to make aluminum printing plates for the printing press, the graphic is separated into the two colors to match the two colors of text for the two press plates.

Step two is to decide how much ink to mix. I found out that the 5oz I chose was enough to do what I wanted (i.e., a box of paper printed both sides). By using the PMS

system, one can make more ink if needed, and it will be an exact match to finish the job. We will use the three numbers listed on the right of the #131 swatch (92.3, 6.2, 1.5).

Step three is doing the math to determine the proper weight of each of the three inks being combined to make the #131 gold looking color. A minor difficulty is the fact that the professional [Ohaus brand scale](#) was made for the metric system. 28.4 grams = 1oz. the 5oz. I want would be 142 grams. I want to add the smallest quantity of ink to the scale first, otherwise the black could get lost in the larger quantity of yellow and it would be hard to put some back if I added too much. So I will calculate the amount of black to add first, then set the scale weights and dial to that amount and add black ink until the pointer sits in the middle, showing the weight is right. If I want to add a piece of paper to keep the scale from getting dirty, I would add the paper first and then use the adjustment screw on the left end to bring the marker to zero when all the weights and dial are set at zero.

$$\frac{1.5}{100} = \frac{x}{142} \quad 100x = 1.5 \times 142 \quad x = \frac{213}{100} \quad x = 2.13 \text{ grams Pantone Black}$$

$$\frac{6.2}{100} = \frac{x}{142} \quad 100x = 6.2 \times 142 \quad x = \frac{880.4}{100} \quad x = 8.804 \text{ grams Pantone Rubine Red}$$

$$\frac{92.3}{100} = \frac{x}{142} \quad 100x = 92.3 \times 142 \quad x = \frac{13106.6}{100} \quad x = 131.066 \text{ grams Pantone Yellow}$$

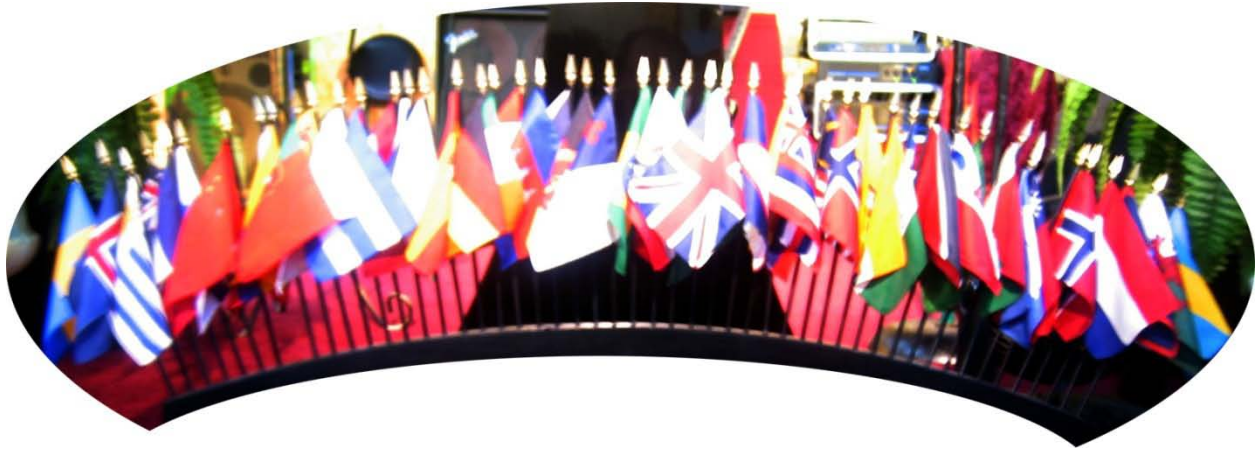
Using the scale, make sure it reads zero when all the weights are set at the minimum settings. Ohaus also makes an electronic scale with a digital LED readout that has a switch to choose ounces or grams. The scale comes with an accuracy adjustment weight. If the weight doesn't read the amount stamped on it, one adjusts the screw on the bottom of the scale. As you can see by the calculations above, one needs a sensitive scale for mixing inks. The scale also doubles for counting printed tracts. Make a stack of 100 tracts, and weigh it. Make additional piles that equal that weight. To figure out if one has printed enough tracts while the ink is still on the press, measure a stack of 20lb weight printed paper, and divide by 2", then multiply that by 500 if the tracts are one per sheet.

I set the mechanical scale rotating dial (fine adjustment) to 2.13 grams and add the black ink until the scale balances. For the next smallest ingredient, the rubine red, I add 2.13 + 8.804 = 10.934 grams. I reset the scale for this new weight, and add the rubine red until the scale is again balanced (pointer in the middle of the range). Lastly, I add 10.934 + 131.066 = 142 This verifies my mathematics since 142 grams (5 oz.) in the total amount of ink I had planned to make. I reset the scale's sliding weights and rotating dial to this new amount and add the Pantone Yellow ink. I remove the dish from the scale and thoroughly stir the three colors together. I use my finger tip to select a sample, then smooth it out on a piece of white paper. I put the paper alongside the pantone book's #131 color swatch page, and the two colors should match. It should be

noted that when printing on the printing press, the adjustable quantity of ink applied to the paper will affect the ink color. The pantone swatch for the color being printed will be needed to determine how much ink is printed on the paper. When printing the backside of a sheet, one can make press ink fountain adjustments so the same color on the two sides match.

In August of 2015, we began preparing to computerize and print about 30,000 of the sixteen page booklet tract [Cómo Obtener Paz con Dios](#). We are reproducing a previously printed booklet for which there is no existing computer document, as far as we know. We determined by using our Pantone colors swatch book, that the two colors were standard colors, Reflex Blue, and Pantone Green. We scanned the booklet graphics at 600 dpi, then, under the *Image* pull down menu, we went to *Mode*, then *Duotone*. We then chose *Monotone* and clicked on [Color Libraries](#), then *Pantone Solid Uncoated*. I then chose *Pantone Green*. I made the color appear in the tools pallet at the bottom. Selecting the [Paint Bucket tool](#) in Adobe Photoshop CS5, I clicked inside the graphic and the scanned color was replaced with the Pantone Green. The file for that graphic then becomes a .psd file extension which saved the color information so that when the graphic is *placed* into the Adobe Indesign page layout program, the PMS color I designated for that graphic carries over into the Indesign [Swatches pallet](#). When one chooses to print to color separations from indesign to make film positives from which to make metal press plates, the imported graphics of a designated color print along with the same color text and screens or gradients I made in Indesign. CS3, and later allow a color separations preview. I ran into a problem with a green silhouette of people graphic not printing right or not printing at all, especially when I tried to make a PDF of the document. I went back and checked the graphic in Photoshop, and the designated mode was *RGB* and not *Monotone* like I had wanted.

I ordered three 2.2 pound cans of both Pantone colors for the job from the nearest Kelly Paper store and they said it was enough of a sale to qualify for a free delivery on their truck the next day to our house! Having previously experimented with the Van Son Ink Co. inks they sell, I decided on the [Quickson oil based formulation](#), as it gave me no water or unwanted background toning problems on our biggest two color press, and it is supposed to dry faster. So you don't charge too little for printing expenses, the Reflex blue ink cans were about \$28 each, and the Pantone Green cans about \$35 each. Different formulations, cost different amounts, and some PMS colors like gold and Pantone Purple and Pantone Violet, cost more than other colors, up to \$80+ for five pounds.



Foreign Language Translations

When using the Windows operating system on the computer, one should go into “Control Panel” the click on the “[Regional and Language Settings](#)” icon. When I was using Windows XP Professional, I was asked to insert the operating installation CD and the Asian and Eastern language [fonts](#) were installed so they appear in the page layout and typing programs. Now someone in another country for which you have a font, can type something in a word document in their language and e-mail it to you by typing in the body of the e-mail or sending it as a word processing document attached to the e-mail. You will be able to make a text box in the page layout program you have with the text tool in the tools pallet, and cut and paste in the text they e-mailed you. For Romance alphabets like Russian, German, French, Spanish, Portuguese, Vietnamese, Tagalong, etc., you can type these languages yourself using the special characters found in “Character Map” accessed by “Start” then All Programs, then “Accessories”, then “System Tools”, then “[Character Map](#)”. Something similar is found In Microsoft Word under the pull down menu “Insert, then “Symbol”, then “More Symbols”. In the Adobe Indesign page layout program, the one I prefer to use, in the pull down “Type” menu, go down to “[Glyph](#)” and the pallet appears. Put the text tool cursor where you want to insert a special character or letter with a peculiar accent like the French “ç”, then double click on that character with the mouse pointer and it is inserted into the document. For languages for which you have no font (the characters of their written language are not on your computer), you can scan an existing document as a 1200 by 1200dpi grayscale into Adobe Photoshop clean up the background, then assemble blocks of scanned text on layers and later merge the layers or flatten the image to reduce the file size when you are finished with reproducing the document. In my opinion, it is better not to use any computer based translation program such as “[Bing](#)” to create a document in a foreign language. These quick translate programs, some located on the internet for free use, are handy when you get a response or comment to your website in a different language and you want to find out what they are saying in

English when you don't understand their language. I found out that a lot of this was advertisements from companies in Russia or Russian women looking to get to America by means of my marrying them! I had to close the *comments* feature on our Word Press based website, and put a filter on our e-mail service to stop the hundreds of foreign language advertisement related e-mails I had been receiving. Try to find an educated native speaker of that country to do the translation and have it checked by someone else for readability since some languages like Spanish have regional variations by country. Also, it is better to retype a language if you can, rather than scan it as it will be sharper and the file size will be smaller and the end quality will depend on the output printer device and some image setters can do 2540 dpi! I scanned a gospel tract written in the Oriya language in India, and another tract written in Arabic. I sent my reproduced tracts to native speakers in both languages, and they haven't responded to tell me if I did an OK job on the scan.

An educated Latino man waiting for housing at the rescue mission began translating tracts into Spanish for us, for a tip of about \$10. Because he had used hand writing and not a computer, I had someone else verify his work. The second person thought we could do better. We ended up with a volunteer pastor's wife from Peru, South America, who worked with us by e-mail and didn't charge for her help. We concluded that having only one translator is not the best policy. That person's work should be checked by others before printing the document. I e-mailed Fanny's translation of the Spanish *What Fills the Void* tract to the Spanish speaking printer working at the Free Tract Society. He said two words needed to be changed. I emailed this information back to Fanny, who agreed that the printing press operator was right.

When you are reproducing a previously printed foreign language tract made by others, never assume that it has been properly translated. Try to find a native speaker of that language. For example, we worked from an existing hard copy of the French *Know Your Future* booklet. We knew someone from a church we attended who was a WWII war bride from France. Our work turned out OK. There was a question about how to hyphenate a word in French. It appears that the English version of the Windows 7 operating system for the United States only knows how to hyphenate English. I solved the dilemma by widening the line of text until the whole word went on the next line. More recently, I reproduced, and actually printed for a customer, an enhanced version of the *What Fills the Void?* Spanish tract. Afterward, I showed it to a native Spanish speaker with an education, and he said a lot of accents were missing. I was a bit angry that I had already printed some tracts, and posted the document on the internet for free use on our website. In another case, the son of a Korean neighbor told us there had been a change in the characters of their language since the translation we worked from had been made. We put our work on that tract on hold. When the housing crunch of 2008 hit, and local people sold or lost their homes, a Korean lady and her husband bought the house across the street next to the Korean neighbors. I rushed over to see

the new owners, and she took the hard copy of the How To Win tract in Korean, retyped it to computer medium and changed one word. The document I had was a graphic arts negative in poor condition, and the "[camera-ready](#)" printed text copy ([Velox](#)) was faint in some areas. Now I was able to redo the document from scratch using fresh text because I had the [Microsoft Asian fonts package](#) on my computer. I tried to use the English document layout of the tract as a template, but the columns of computerized Korean text given me by the new owner were wider. Since I didn't know where Korean words should be hyphenated, or if they could still read the message if I reduced the point size of the type (font), I tried to leave the type given me by e-mail as is and adjust the page layout. I was able to make two tracts per letter size sheet instead of four for the English version. I made it a threefold instead of a twofold and it looks good! [See it here.](#)

On an Oriya language translation for India, even though we were sent the fonts, the message sent us by e-mail wouldn't display right on our computer. Then the sender made an PDF of the text. We placed it into the tract document as an image and were able to size it to fit. The Pastor in India wanted an Easter tract for an early Easter morning outreach in his village, and we didn't have a lot of time to make it, plus the shipping would take 6-10 days. He took our English tract and translated the text and emailed it back to us as a PDF. We used our graphics and his text and a different background picture of the resurrected Jesus, and it got to Pastor Naik the day before he needed it. He was so excited, he sent me pictures of his passing out the tracts as he talked with people.

A missionary among the Kurdish people in northern Iraq, wrote out the translation for the *How To Win* tract and it was mailed to us. I scanned the parts and sized them to fit in an Indesign document. Because there had been a correction using *white out*, the clarity of some lettering was questionable. I suggested we print a copy from our document and it be sent back to the translator. Sure enough, we hadn't accurately filled in the missing parts of one character in the document, and we were able to correct it. [See this tract here.](#)

A Cambodian Bible college student translated Dr. Esther Mallet's [How to Live Forever - There is Only One Way](#) tract into his native language and nicely laid it out in Microsoft Word for printing 4 tracts to a page like the English version. Because he didn't e-mail me the Khmer font, there were rectangles where the letters belonged. After he sent the fonts, or I found them on the internet and downloaded them, I could only get them to display in Microsoft Word. When I tried to copy and paste the text from Word to my favorite page layout program, Adobe Indesign CS5, it didn't work. I had intended to print the tract in two colors on our printing press and thought I could use the Microsoft Word document by making the color separation by coloring text I didn't want white, and then doing the opposite for the second color which was a brown. When I made the two film positives on the color laser printer, then made two metal plates, and put them on the press, I could not get the two colors to align properly. I ended up doing the job in full

color on the color laser printer for a Cambodian festival in a park where the man requesting the tract lived. [See it here.](#)

I had done a Chinese version of this tract using blocks of computerized text sent me by e-mail attachment. After designing the tract using the English document as a template, I made a PDF of it and posted it on our website. A relative of my wife had come to visit and brought along his new Chinese wife. I showed her the tract I had made in her native language, and she pointed out that the blocks of text had been positioned in the wrong order! I was glad to fix the problem. This shows that Foreign Language tracts require verification by native speakers of the language.

Another factor is being culturally relevant. I made a special version of the French Know Your Future booklet for the Congo in southern Africa. The original English version had a graphic for the What to Do now that I'm a Christian page that showed a white family. I got an artist Nurse to do a drawing of a black African family, then I found a better one.

Remember —Mark 16:10 “And this gospel of the Kingdom shall be published into all the world.” before Jesus returns. Let’s make it happen so He can return!



Pressman's Pointers - Learned over 20 Years of Printing

1. Don't try to do offset printing on glossy paper without anti-setoff spray powder.
2. Using too much spray powder when printing glossy paper may result in friction roller driven collators misfeeding the printed paper. Also when one goes to back up the sheet (print the backside), and the spray powder from the first side is not first blown out after the ink has dried, the powder residue in the sheet from it resting against the sheet under it during the first printing, could result in powder build up on the blanket cylinder and that powder attracting unwanted ink.
3. Use only distilled water in the press watering system with enough fountain solution concentrate added to make the "ph" (acid/alkaline balance) of the water between 4.5 and 5.5. When using instant polyester based "laser plates" made by Genie or other manufacturers, a pink universal fountain solution such as that made by Pacific Products, Inc. of Sutter's Creek, CA, may work. With these plates, keep the ph at 4.5. Determine the "ph by a test strip or hand held electronic device.
4. In printing multiple colors of non-collated NCR or carbonless paper on an upright press with no register table, the speed should be kept constant throughout the run, otherwise the necessary accurate registration between the collated and glued sets could change. Even if the sheets are pre-collated in reverse order, changing the speed of the press during the run may change the overall registration or position of the image on the sheet
5. Too much water will result in the side(s) of the stack of paper curling upwards, or a washed out look of the ink in that area of the paper or that area of the ink rollers losing ink in an integrated watering system.
6. Trying to print in an atmosphere less than 50 degrees in temperature can result in the ink not sticking to the printing plate. Pointing an infrared heat lamp at the ink train and fastening it there with its built-in clamp may remedy this problem.
7. In an atmosphere over 90 degrees, the press may not be able to supply enough moisture to prevent [toning](#) of the ink in the non-printing areas of the sheet. If distilled water is not used this issue is further complicated. Even with a Crestline continuous dampening system, in this hot weather, the adjustment screws may have to be opened as much as 11 notches above normal. Chilling the fountain solution helps. The Kompac automatic watering system does not seem to be affected by the warm weather, but may need to be adjusted for additional water when running certain color inks such as reds. In my experience, the older, non automatic style moleton (cloth sleeves on the rollers) watering system works best in hot weather.
8. Movement of air in close proximity to a running printing press, whether from a box fan, squirrel cage roof ventilator, or air conditioner, can speed evaporation of moisture off the metal printing plate surface and cause unwanted background

toning of ink, making the job not sellable. On a hot day in our new shop location with central air conditioning, I was able to keep the inside temperature below 74°. I closed the louvers on the ventilator directly above the press I was using. I had mixed the press fountain solution and frozen it into small ice cubes which I put in the two fountain solutions bottles, and even in the water holding trays. I then began freezing the full water bottles. The *Crestline* model Altra continuous dampening system works best when the fountain solution is kept chilled, which proved to be true on the hot day. Since this was the first job I did since the press had been moved by a flat bed tow truck, I had to use the troubleshooting manual and step by step adjust the pressures or stripe pattern between roller sets because unwanted ink was printing on the top corners of the sheet. Running the press at a faster speed also helped as less water is needed at higher speeds. As it turned out, I had to pen the two knurled adjusting screws on the water system until background toning of ink began and then decrease the pressure slightly. Evidently at this setting the press was not delivering too much water because, if it was, the stack of printed sheets in the output tray would be curled upward on the sides, and it wasn't.

9. If one is in a hurry and wants to print the backside of a job right away, dry the printed side stack of paper by using a hair dryer and fanning through it with the thumb of the other hand. Better yet, loosely put a handful of paper in an electric paper jogger and blow between the sheets with a hair dryer. After drying about 300 to 500 sheets, turn on the jogger to finish that handful. A additional method is to put an empty paper box upside down over a printed stack of paper with the free space facing you. using a bungee cord with the two ends attached to the box, support a hair dryer pointing up into the hollow and turn it on and leave it running. A caution here is that heating the papers to dry the ink also distorts the size of the paper enough that when the unprinted backside is run through the press, one must recheck the registration or location of the image on the sheet, and possibly make minor adjustments to the to the input paper stack (side to side), as well as the feed table jogger and accompanying spring on the opposite side of the paper. Also, running two hair dryers at the same time in the same outlet may blow the fuse. I used a separate electrical circuit for each dryer. Adding the jogger to one of the outlets is OK.



10. On positive development metal plates that are blue in color, one can coat the exposed and developed plates with a solution, and bake it (before preserving it with process gum or FPC) in an oven for three minutes at 450 degrees and it will

then print up to a million copies without wearing out!, according to the technician at the developer solution manufacturer. Trying to bake a non blue plate that was rinsed off with hard water with high mineral content, can bake the mineral residue onto the plate, and that residue can pick up unwanted ink.

11. On positive development metal plates never use alcohol based chemicals as these can dissolve the image. Fountain concentrate can also remove the image.
12. On a press such as a Hamada or Chief that jogs the paper with a push or pull guide, the jogger should move the paper over about 1/8" and the leaf spring on the opposite side should be contacted by the paper and move out some as a result. Chromed and knurled wheels should be positioned at the tail of the sheet so the middle of the wheels just touch the sheet after the front of the sheet has hit the "head stop" and momentarily stops moving until the impression cylinder input grippers grab onto it to pull it further. The rollers below the head stop have an adjustment and are adjusted for a slight drag on the sheet when the head stop has come down against the sheet and it is pinched between the rollers below the sheet. The first two rollers that the paper encounters when leaving the input pile can be adjusted to steer the paper straight as it goes down the register table. The side and tail pieces against the input stack of paper must corral the sheet so it doesn't blow above the copper whiskers when the air blowers are blowing the sheet up in preparation for the vacuum pickup feet coming down to pick it up. These air blowers into the sides and front of the sheet should float the top 5 to 10 sheets up to the whiskers. When the sheet is picked up it goes past or into a double sheet detector that can be adjusted ahead of time by sticking two thicknesses of paper in it and turning the adjusting knob until the deflector baffle plate is activated which would divert a double sheet to a tray below on a table feed press, or stop the feed on an upright press.
13. On a two color common blanket press the darker color is put on the head or ink train that lays down the second color after the first color. On the Hamada this is the ink unit closest to the input stack of paper.
14. On a two color common blanket press, wet ink should not be printed on top of wet ink except for a small overlap as registration between colors is not always exactly maintained. The computer page layout program in which the document being printed was designed should, when making color separations for printing plates, drop out or [knock out](#) the underlying color where two colors overlap and there should be a slight trap or choke of the lighter color under the darker color being printed after it. If this is not followed, it may be hard to get the second color dark enough especially when trying to print type over a solid color background. Without care, the ink eventually works its way back through the system and the two colors become slightly mixed due to the common blanket cylinder.

15. When backing up a job right away, printing the backside of a sheet before the ink is thoroughly dry, some ink will collect on the back or impression cylinder. An impression cylinder cleaner and desensitizer solution can be applied to the impression cylinder with a cotton pad to help prevent this unwanted ink buildup. On the Hamada one accesses the impression cylinder through the double doors below the feed table. On an upright press, one accesses the back cylinder through the output paper tray area, turning the operator hand wheel to access the whole surface. Also, not dry ink on the first three inches of the leading end of the sheet going into the press can transfer into the take in rollers which will need cleaning so as not to print unwanted marks on the top sides of the sheet when the second side is being printed.
16. Printing multiple colors on a single color press by running the paper through again for successive colors is only recommended if one is printing "spot colors" or colors that don't touch each other or are not part of the same line of type. Main headings on lines by themselves are OK. However, I did one four color process job on the [Heidelberg TOK](#), one color at a time with good results. Usually a two color press has a better chance of accurate registration in doing multiple colors requiring exact registration between colors.
17. I had hoped to get a Ryobi twin tower press with two blanket cylinders and a large common impression cylinder with the city college print shop I worked at moved to its new building, but I ended up with a [Heidelberg Printmaster QM46-2](#) which turned out to be an ideal press for me. The Plates are made from the computer on a computer to plate [Quicksetter](#), and the plates are punched in that machine so they go on the press automatically and come off the same. The press has an automatic blanket washer and an above average accuracy registration of the sheet for a non-jogger press to where one can do pleasing four color process (full color) jobs two colors at a time. The press can do 13 by 19 paper size and has an infrared dryer and powder sprayer. The pressure between the cylinders is done by air pressure (pneumatic), and there is an integrated lubricating system. This is the kind of press I would now prefer. In 2012, in my own shop, I got the Ryobi 3302 press I wanted.
18. When a printing press is moved or transported from one location to another, the adjustments of contact area between the ink form rollers and the plate cylinder and between the plate cylinder and the blanket cylinder need to be checked by inking the press and engaging the operator lever through its successive detents without the cylinders turning or rotating. The contact stripe between ink form rollers should be parallel and should be about 3 millimeters wide. One adjustment changes overall pressure and an adjustment on one side of the press changes the parallel adjustment. The contact strip pattern between plate cylinder (with a plate on it) and blanket cylinder should be about 4mm. The pressure adjustment between blanket and impression cylinder is variable by a thumb screw and lock bolt based on the

thickness of the paper being run. One can hand feed a sheet with the press hand wheel by turning on only the air/vacuum switch. When the sheet has been clamped by the impression cylinder fingers, adjust the pressure screw until there is slight contact pressure, then set the lock screw.

19. One can check the sheet to sheet registration accuracy of the printing press by first running three sheets and picking the middle one to measure the layout of the image on the sheet compared to the artwork sample with a [printer's "line gauge"](#) which is also used to get the image or text square on the sheet. One can then run 10 sheets that have registration marks at the edge (that will later trim off), fan or stagger the edge of the sheets and see if, with another edge against a flat surface, the marks all line up. Also, one can run about ten sheets through the press twice, printing the same thing on them each pass and then look for double image which shows a maladjustment of the mechanical parts of the press that register the sheet such as side jogger or pull guide and spring on the opposite side, head stop adjustment, and side guide adjustments on presses that don't have a register table.
20. When a printing press is moved to a new location, it should be leveled with a carpenter's level placed on the top of an ink oscillating roller. In checking for fore and aft level, put water in the water fountain and the supply bottle in place. Make sure that the water level is high enough to come above the lowest point of the aluminum or chromed water fountain pickup roller, and that the water level is not so high that it will overflow the tank if the press vibrates while running. Running the press at maximum speed can show how much it will vibrate and if the floor is sturdy enough under the press. Since the floor I put the press on was not a concrete slab, I first went below the dwelling and put in extra concrete tiers and 4 x 4 wood segments to strengthen the floor directly below where the press would go. I recommend this also for items like a heavy paper cutter. Presses have leveling screws with lock nuts in all four corners at the base and cast metal washers for them to sit on so as not to dig into a wood or tiled floor. I was able to get by without using the adjusters which distributed the weight across the two main steel rails that make up the frame.
21. Putting too many additives or too much additive in the ink can adversely affect the printing performance. If I know I am going to *back up* (print the backside of) a job right away, I add [three way dryer](#) to the ink. If I am running a fine halftone or screen on a cold morning when the ink is stiff, I will add some tack reducer to the ink to make it more pliable. When printing two colors at once, using some tack reducer in the ink train that lays down the ink last will help prevent it picking off the ink that may overlap below it on a common blanket cylinder press which would result in ink migrating backwards into the ink trains resulting in an unwanted mixing of the colors.

22. To get good registration of an image between the front and back sides of a sheet, or when adding additional colors, especially on a press with no feed table and paper input jogger, it is good to jog the paper well before loading it in the input stack. I was given a [Lectrojog brand electric paper jogger](#) for this which now sells for about \$400. Using the computer and the internet, one can look on [E-bay](#) and find cheaper paper joggors for \$200 or less. These joggors are most helpful with literature printed on laser printers which induce static into the paper and make it difficult to jog, before trimming in the paper cutter, or by any other means.
23. If the printing atmosphere or environment is high humidity, rainy, foggy, or damp, and one intends to wait until the next day to back up a job, the paper must be placed into closed cardboard boxes to prevent moisture absorption which could then cause wrinkled sheets when trying to print the backside. This happened to me when I was printing tracts in December on a ranch for the Rose Bowl game in Pasadena. I printed one side and put stacks of tracts all over the 8 car garage floor to dry. The next day when printing the backsides on a table top offset duplicator, almost all the sheets wrinkled when going through the machine. One workable solution is to remove the output stack on its dolly from the press and put a empty cardboard box over the top of the stack. By not disturbing the just printed stack, there is no possibility of smearing the ink.
24. If one does not have the advantage of using an automatic watering system like the [Varn Kompac](#), or the continuous watering system like the [Crestline Altra](#), one can still slow the press speed down and run nearby equipment while the press is printing. Note that when the press is slowed down it requires slightly more water from the water fountain, and when it is speeded up, it requires slightly less water. On a segregated watering system with moll ten cloth covers on the rollers, the proper water adjustment can be ascertained by looking across the surface of the plate cylinder while the press is running seeing a shine of a thin film of water all the way across. When the water is too much, water can be thrown off by centrifugal force, and when it is too little, the ends of the rollers dry up first, resulting in *toning* or unwanted background ink appearing on the printed sheet on the two sides and at the top of the sheet. When you see this by examining an printed sheet while the press is still running, and you manage to increase the water setting by the adjustment lever or spinning the crank knob on the end, and then adding a few drops of water to the ends of the water form and doctor form roller, the toning will go away. I like to be safe rather than sorry so I don't run the water as lean as possible and on a hot day I take a cotton pad and pick up water from the fountain tray now and then and squeeze some on the ends of the rollers where it normally gets lean first. If there is too much water the output sheet curls and doesn't lie flat, and the water may prevent ink from sticking to the ink rollers where it belongs, especially on integrated watering systems on upright presses like Ryobi, AB Dick,

Hamada, Itek. After a short stop of the press I spin the ink fountain roller knob or add extra water with a cotton pad before starting up again to prevent toning. When the operator lever is then pulled to the first detent which is adding water, I watch the surface of the plate until all unwanted ink has been cleaned off and there is no evidence of toning on the plate cylinder. In running two colors at once, the front head operator lever (the head that lays down the ink first) is turned through its detents slightly ahead of the second color head operator lever. When both levers are fully on, then the vacuum switch is turned on to begin feeding the paper.

25. When trimming the three sides of a paperback book, trim the face first. The top is next with the front of the cover facing up and the face trim against the left side guide of the paper cutter table. Since the blade moves to the left as it comes down to make a cut, this position prevents the trim from tearing away in the spine area. The last trim, the bottom is done with the back cover of the book facing up.
26. When inserting book covers in making paperback books on a perfect binding machine, it helps to pre score the outside of the cover in the two places where it folds at 90 degrees. The scoring makes for a flatter corner without lumps. Also, the centerline of the two score marks are to be slightly wider than the thickness of the book being bound. See the illustration in the chapter on making paperback books.. A cheap multifunction table top device for this like the Fiskers or Staples brand costs under \$40 and does a good job, and also perforates and trims. See a variety of better mechanical scoring devices at [Binding 101](#) on the Internet. The Easies method is to buy a scoring bone for \$8.50, and use a guillotine paper cutter with the clamp down. Without the scores, the [Boway](#) machine I use will not do a good job with the thicker 12 point cover stock or the better long grain paper. After scoring, spray the outside of the book covers made on the color laser printer with a fast drying glossy clear spray paint as a scratch protector and shine enhancement. Be warned that some sprays don't fully dry and stacked books can stick together. A better way is to laminate the outside, before binding the book, with a 1.4mil laminate on a machine with heaters built into the rollers like the [12" Pro-Lam PL1200hp](#).
27. I was at my wits end trying to do quality two color tracts to give to the Free Tract Society. was getting unwanted fuzzy bands of unwanted brown ink in the background or non image area of the printed sheet, and even though I had been printing for over fourteen years, I could not solve the problem. In my desperation, I told the Lord that if He didn't solve this problem, I would never print for Him again. Unknown to me, my wife, Harriet, had been cleaning up the computers area of the print shop and had placed a stack of my notes on 3 x 5 cards on the corner of my computer desk. She sensed I was having trouble and was praying for help also. In this round of difficulty, I had controlled myself and kept my anger and frustration inside. I was impressed to look through past notes I had made regarding past

printing problems, when I spotted the pile of cards. On one card it stated that adding varnish to the ink would eliminate unwanted background banding, the very problem I was having. I added the varnish, and the problems diminished so that I could print for about another 12 hours that day. The next day went even better. In a few days time we were able to print 140,000 tracts! Psalm 37:5 Living Bible reads, "Commit everything you do to the Lord. Trust him to help you do it and he will." I now feel the fountain solution in a Crestline Dampening System must be chilled while running our larger Ryobi 3302 press. The smaller, single color Ryobi 3200 also has a similar dampening system, but isn't affected by fountain solution temperature.



The Summer heat brought the room temperature to 80° before we put an 11,000 BTU air conditioner in the window. There was unwanted background ink on the paper (*toning*), and the ink was dripping through the ink fountain adjustment gap, aggravated by two many nights of *overnight spray* to keep the ink from drying on the rollers. Blue ice helped. The Gans ink sales representative told me to add varnish to the ink to make it thicker. He sent me a can of their varnish additive. it also helped. In 2016 I concluded that the room air conditioner is not enough to prevent unwanted background toning of ink. The water in the [Crestline Altra](#) continuous dampening system must be kept chilled.

29. When I imaged a metal plate from a film positive I had made from the computer in the laser printer and then put it on the press, I realized that the image was too close to the top of the plate - it all fit on the plate cylinder of the single color press, but when the image transferred to the blanket cylinder, it was not all showing. No matter how I adjusted the image up and down, the beginning of the document wouldn't all show on a printed sheet because it was bleeding off the leading edge of the blanket cylinder. I reimaged a second metal plated, moving the film positive down about 1/4". Then the document printed perfectly. In the past, the image had been too low on the plate and an unwanted line of ink would build up on the lead edge of the blanket cylinder and transfer to the printed stock after about a thousand copies - a real nuisance. Now I could print continuously without stopping until the output receiving paper tray on the press was full! I then decided, when I finished the job and went to store the plate for future use, I had better measure the distance from the leading edge to the beginning of the artwork or text. It was 7/8". I needed to save this information for future jobs on that press. The operator's manual had given me a dimension (a combination of plate bend and 5/16" gripper bite), but I found a measurement that really works for me.
30. A note I had written from a previous job on the one color press with the Crestline brand continuous dampening system, stated that, for temperatures up to 71 degrees, and a fountain solution and distilled water combination equaling a ph of 4.5 to 5, I would be able to print with the two adjusting screws in the lowest

position. I was using [Van Son Quickson Reflex Blue](#) ink for sheet fed presses. I was having toning of ink issues, or unwanted background printing of ink, but the room temperature got up to 74F. so I turned on the 11,000 btu air conditioner. By adjusting the output fins toward the press I was using, and hanging a box fan from the ceiling using bailing wire, I was able to focus the cooling on the part of the building where the press I was using is. The temperature went down to about 71, and no ink or water problems occurred with the press on that job of 20,000 copies.

31. I printed one side of a large job and didn't want to let the paper dry overnight, so I used the hair dryer and electric paper jogger to speed up the drying time so I could print the backsides right away. This deforms the paper. The fact that I was feeding the wide side (11") into the press compounded the issue. The advantage of feeding from this side is that one can design the 5/16" no print area gripper bite for the paper to be at the top of a small four to a page gospel tract, allowing the side margins to be 1/4" or less, which makes more room for the printed message. The disadvantage is that the grain structure of letter size paper normally runs parallel to the long side. Thus, when the press blows air into the front of the sheets, the sheets will curl more (not remaining flat) and some stability of the sheet will be lost in feeding it into the press that does not have a registration feed table. I was able to print the first side at a speed of up to 9,000 impressions per hour, but, after the hair dryer, I had to reduce the speed to 5,000 an hour. Even then, the pile height, vacuum, and blower adjustments to the input paper pile were so difficult that sheets began to wrinkle, feed double sheets, and even print crooked when feeding through the press. Evidently using the hair dryer warps the paper and it doesn't feed into the press as well.
32. When printing on a press, or machine folding, changing the speed control will affect the exact registration of the printed image on the sheet, and the accuracy of the fold. If one increases the folder speed, the position of the fold plates will have to be slightly modified. On a one color press, printing NCR or carbonless paper that is not pre collated, one must keep the press speed the same throughout the run on each of the layers or parts of paper. Note that drying the paper with a hair dryer before running the backside or an additional color can distort the paper slightly, requiring readjusting the registration table of the press where the paper clamps onto the impression cylinder. One can also run about ten sheets and stagger them on a light table to see that the image registration is consistent.

Maintenance and Repairs

33. The [Nu Ark flip top mercury vapor bulb](#) plate exposure box for aluminum press plates has a bulb that must be handled with cotton gloves and costs over \$100. The machine also contains slow blow short fuses that could blow and have to be replaced.

34. Most of the parts that get out of adjustment on a printing press can be adjusted by the normal pressman who follows the Press Owner's Manual. Such repairs are replacement of rollers because, in the watering system, the [molleton](#) or cloth covers of the water form roller or the water fountain doctor roller get dirty with ink and cannot be scrubbed clean with special cleaner for that. When ink rollers age, the rubber at the ends becomes enlarged and the contact pattern is not even. On integrated ink and watering systems, this can result in eventual inability to control the water, especially on a Heidelberg TOK press. The mounting shafts of rollers can become too small in diameter due to wear from lack of lubrication. The paper delivery gripper bars get out of timing and nick the paper where they bite on to it to carry it through the press. The Impression tripper adjustment, especially on a Hamada 500 or 600 series press, can be a very hard to obtain, hair line adjustment. The contact pressure between rollers and main cylinders, and parallel adjustment of the contacts, are easily adjusted by following the owner's manual. All these things should be fixable by replacement of rollers or adjustments that the operator can do, saving the possible hundreds of dollars it costs to call in a factory technician. My family's independent philosophy and pioneering spirit, my Father having been an Electronics Engineer and inventor, have motivated us to watch, observe, and then fix mechanical /electrical things ourselves. Replacing and adjusting the paper cutter blade is something you can do yourself and is explained in another section of this book.

For printing press parts and accessories, I recommend [Printer's Parts of Los Angeles, CA](#). I felt led by the Lord to visit them while my wife and I were on vacation. I got a very good discount on new ink and water system rollers needed for two of our presses. Larry Page, a seasoned press repairman working out of their office, took a family vacation to the city of our print shop so he could install the rollers and make other adjustments.

Maintenance, Repair, & Adjustments



Two examples of *neglect* found on the property where our *recovered* printing facility is located. Left - a bean thrasher. 2x4 braces keep it from falling over. Right – remains of a horse era utility wagon.

In science, the [Second Law of Thermodynamics](#), states that things left to themselves tend to degenerate, disintegrate, or fall apart. In 1970, my parents bought the small ranch on which our print shop is located, from a collector. The wooden bean thrashing machine is still standing, but has been propped up with support boards. Due to neglect, and being left out in the open, the spokes in the wheels of the horse drawn carriages have broken down and now one sees the iron rings lying against oak tree trunks here and there. Such sights should prompt us to take care of the equipment God has entrusted us with. Here is a list of suggested items in the print shop that need attention over time. Some are listed by type of machine. In making adjustments such as the necessary pressure between rollers and cylinders on a printing press, operators and repair manuals should explain this, and on smaller presses, one should be able to do these himself. On replacing rubber ink and water rollers, which swell on the ends, I have felt ok replacing them on the smaller press like the Hamada 550/650, or Ryobi 3200. On the larger Ryobi 3302, I paid an experienced factory trained press repair man Larry Page with Los Angeles Printing Parts) \$75 an hour. He brought the new parts with him that I had bought while visiting his office in Arcadia, CA.

A couple of years after the [Paramco](#) brand aftermarket press rollers had been installed, I was getting unwanted ink [toning](#) on the printed copy on the non operator side of the press. At my wits end, I called Larry Page, a press repairman at [Printer's Parts of Los Angeles](#), for advice. He said I should do a stripe check for roller to roller contact pressure at both ends. When I readjusted the pressure screws in the problem area of the watering system, the *toning* problem went away because more water was getting to the plate where it was needed to repel unwanted ink.

Lubrication – the newer printing presses have an integrated oiling system with a pump handle to distribute 100 weight oil to the main parts of the press. Red dots indicate small oil holes that are to be oiled with a hand held squirt can. Some machines, like the paper cutter, require grease where the ends of the blade slide up and down as it travels.

The booklet maker requires oil on shaft ends and parts around the staple heads where the staples are clinched. Another product, Silicone spray or [Teflon dry lubricant spray](#), can be sprayed on paper paths in the booklet maker to reduce friction where the paper travels, reducing jams.

Rust and Dust - on high humidity or rainy days, the wind can blow moisture onto bare metal surfaces like the paper cutter table, causing rust. Phosphoric acid can remove the rust and protect the metal. I cover the machines with movers blankets or painter's cloth tarps when they are not being used. We put a sheet over the computers and desktop printers when we are not at the shop. The flip top plate maker box requires the glass to be kept clean as specks of dirt will transfer spots to the plate surface when the plate is exposed. These can be removed with a deletion pen when the plate is mounted on the printing press.

Rubber [Sucker Feet](#) and friction rollers. Over time, the suckers that pick up the paper to feed it into the press become deteriorated/oxidized, or physically worn. I have a sealed plastic bag of 50 extras on hand. The friction rollers and "O" rings that move the paper in folders, booklet makers, and collators eventually lose their grip due to ink residue buildup or clay particles from the paper. A strong smelling product called [super rubber rejuvenator](#) sold by the gallon at the [Kelly Paper Company](#), restores and cleans rubber so it can grip the paper better. I was told, however, by a factory trained technician, not to use strong chemicals on collator friction feed rollers. They are to be removed by pushing the shaft sideways against the sprint and lifting the other end out, then washing the rollers with soap and water. Printing press rollers, over time, may need to be washed with a [deglaze solution](#). Supposedly, the non hazardous, low odor [Genie brand non solvent roller wash and blanket cleaner](#) makes a solvent based deglazing solution unnecessary. The Genie roller wash does have to be washed off the rollers with warm water after taking the ink off. If one uses a [solvent based roller cleaner](#) and blanket wash and orders it by mail, there will be, in California, an added shipping charge for hazardous material. Also, the cloth shop rags or paper based blanket wipes used with the solvent wash will have to be kept in a [covered metal safety can](#). When I used to use more solvent based products, I had a yellow double walled fire resistant special safety cabinet (\$400?) for storing these flammable and stinky chemistries.



Shrink Wrapper – it is a good idea to have a [spare heating wire and pad strip](#), if you have a shrink wrapper.

Paper Cutter – when the blade gets dull (4,000+ cuts), you notice that the hydraulic system strains on stacks of wide paper being cut, or the dull blade *draws* the paper so that the covers on paperback books do not trim evenly. One can try to use the opposite side of the cutting blade as a temporary fix. It is good to have a spare knife blade on hand with its wood or plastic guard. Replacing and readjusting the cutter knife oneself can be done. Realize that putting in a newer blade being will mean the top adjusting

screws will have to be backed off since the new blade will be taller and need more room so it doesn't ruin the plastic stick that the blade comes down against. One should have a small box of extra [sticks](#) on hand also. Their lengths and widths vary depending on the cutter make and model.

Perfect binder – the paperback book making machine has melted glue in a pot that solidifies after the machine is turned off. Eventually the glue becomes too old and has to be drained and discarded. There are small chains and shafts that get hot from the melted glue at 135°F or hotter, and need hand oiling. The [hot melt glue chips](#) can be expensive, and extras kept on hand. I was told to look up the Brackett company to get these. A cloth sack inside the machine cabinet collects paper dust from the carbide tipped grinding wheel and that dust has to be emptied and thrown away when the bag gets full. Also, a silicone lubricant needs to go on the sliding surfaces of the output *nip* clamps, or they won't release properly and a bound book may not fully release from the clamps and unwanted glue could get on the surrounding clamps.

Press Adjustments – The most essential adjustment I can think of relates to doing a [nip width or stripe test](#) which shows how tightly the ink and water form rollers contact the plate cylinder, and whether they are parallel to the plate cylinder with equal pressure on both ends. The last time I used the bigger press, I added the ink and waited for it to smooth out over all the rollers. On the front ink train, I noticed the ink was not smooth on the upper rollers. I found the tension adjuster screw and its lock nut had loosened. A readjustment solved the problem.

A nip width or ink stripe on the plate cylinder (with a plate on it) is determined by rotating the plate cylinder so all two or three inked up ink form rollers and the water form roller are over the surface of the plate cylinder with the press stopped. Move the operator lever to where all the rollers are engaged or touching the plate cylinder. Then turn the lever(s) back to the off or disengaged position. Rotate the cylinder using the hand wheel or inching button until the stripes become visible. Use a short ruler or measuring pattern to see that the stripes are 3mm wide, and that the width of each stripe is the same on both ends. Adjustments under the machines removable sheet metal side covers give one access to the adjusting screws, eccentric cams, lock nuts at the ends of the roller shafts. If the stripe pattern is much narrower in the middle than on the ends, the roller has swollen/ deformed, and may need replacing.

The nip width test can also be made between the plate cylinder and the blanket cylinder by inking up a portion or all of the plate cylinder, and then moving the operator lever and back again so that the inked area of the plate transfers a stripe to the blanket cylinder. Inking up the plate for this test may require first removing the water from the system watering system. The contact between the blanket cylinder and the impression or shiny chrome cylinder can be determined by inserting a sheet of paper from the feed table by the hand wheel or inching button until the paper has tripped the switch or finger for the two cylinders to make contact. If you then try to pull the paper out, you can

sense how much resistance there is. On most presses the blanket to impression cylinder pressure is adjustable. On the two Ryobi presses I have, a turn knob has *automatic*, or adjustment settings for thicker stocks of paper. Large presses have [bearers](#), or metal to metal contact of the cylinder side edges for better quality printing. A *packing sheet* placed under the blanket adjust the pressure in the paper being printed. Presses with a feed table also have a [head stop pressure and parallel adjustment](#) that may need to be adjusted depending on whether one is using thin paper or card stock.

Here are two more items of concern. First, is the air and vacuum adjustment for picking up the sheets from the input tray, along with the two or more fingers that keep the paper in position and level when air is being blown into the front of the sheet until the sucker feet come down and latch onto the sheet. A [double sheet detector](#) is adjusted to sense when two sheets are being picked up at once. When this happens, the second sheet may be transferred to a collection area below the feed table by a solenoid operated diverter baffle, or a whistle may sound and the press goes into idle mode until the operator goes to the output of the press and pulls out the blank sheet. On our larger feed table press, the double sheet detector could not be fixed, even with new parts. I have to run minimum vacuum and minimum air pressure where the incoming sheet is picked up, and I have to set automatic pile lifter adjuster knob so the pile height stays in the lowest position possible. If properly adjusted the problem of picking up double sheets will be eliminated. Otherwise the second unwanted sheet that is picked up may go into the ink train and disintegrate resulting in a need for washing the rollers before the printing job is finished. The last item I mention is the levelness of the press when a carpenter's level is placed across the top of the top most roller on the press. There are adjustment screws at the four corners of the press to change this. The Ryobi 3302 has two addition feet in the middle. When a press is level, the water in the water fountain will be evenly dispersed while printing, and the machine will set solidly on the floor. The press should not shake when running at higher speeds. The concrete floor surface on which the press sits may not be uniformly flat. The adjustable press feet fix this.

A couple of years after the press repairman, Larry, had replaced press rollers, I began having a real problem with the [Crestline Altra watering system](#) on our twin tower press. the non-operator side of the rollers weren't getting enough water, and ink unwanted background ink mysteriously began making a mess on all three of the main cylinders on one printing unit. I had thought it was a chemistry problem like the fountain solution being too alkaline, or, the overnight spray to keep the ink from drying on the press. Larry said it was likely the new rollers need a parallel pressure adjustment. I tried my best to do a stripe contact pressure pattern test, then adjusted the problem side accordingly using the built in Allen screws. I also used a carpenter's level and found a slight readjustment of both presses was needed. Now the [Ryobi 3302 press](#) doesn't have that pesky lack of water problem, which shows the need for occasional factory specifications checks and adjustments.

Electrical and Room Temperature Requirements

I have suffered so much waste of material, time, and loss of quality due to temperature or climate conditions in the press room, I am writing this to spare you the headache and heartache. The underlying problem is that offset printing requires a thin film of water on the surface of the printing plate to keep unwanted ink off the non printing areas. Too little water results in background [toning](#). Too much water can wash out the ink, curl the paper, and slow down drying time. [Scumming](#) is another problem that can cause ink to appear in the non image areas. Too alkaline a water fountain solution results in the copy text [plugging](#) (not sharp). Alcohol in the fountain solution can dissolve the image off positive development plates. If the room temperature is 40 degrees and the equipment has been sitting idle in the cold all night, the ink may be so stiff it won't stick to the surface of the metal plate. I took an [infrared heating lamp](#) with an squeeze clamp fastener and fastened it so it put heat on inking system. On the opposite temperature spectrum, when it is too warm (above 80°), there can also be problems with the ink. If overnight spray had been used a couple of nights in a row on the ink train to save having to wash the ink off the rollers so it won't dry on the rollers, on a hot day, the properties of the ink can change enough for the ink to run through the metering (adjustment) gaps and drip and make a mess. I C-clamped a frozen [Blue Ice](#) (self contained no drip ice substitute) to the ink fountain tray, to cool the ink. When using certain colored inks, like the Pantone 185 red, more water to the plate may be required to prevent [toning](#), even on *automatic* watering systems like the [Kompac](#). Watering systems that are described as *continuous*, like the [Crestline](#) brand, require counter clockwise opening of the two knurled adjustment knobs to increase the water when the room temperature rises to near 80° and above. An alternate solution is to cool the fountain solution in its dispenser bottle by storing the mixture in a refrigerator, or putting crushed ice made from distilled water, in the bottle. One could also put ice cubes in a zip lock bag and rubber band the bag of ice to the water fountain bottle. One brand of *Blue ice* freezing solution comes in a plastic container with an inward curved recession on one side to conform to the shape of the fountain solution supply bottle.

Another winter weather related problem is the printed paper collecting moisture when it is left out to dry. In December, about 1982, I had printed one side of 50,000 testimony compilation tracts. The chaplain of the Rose Parade had contacted the Christian football players from the two teams playing in the rose bowl game that year, and gotten their pictures and written testimonies. I didn't have the experience I have now with desktop publishing, so I paid a local [graphic arts service bureau](#) about \$80 to make a paste-up, a negative, and a metal plate for a two to a page gospel tract. I printed one side and spread small piles of paper all over the multi car garage's wood floor. There was no insulation in the walls, just galvanized sheet metal panels. The paper had absorbed so much moisture by the next day, that I couldn't stop the paper from wrinkling

when I printed the backside on a bottom of the line tabletop offset duplicator. Now I know to put the paper in a paper carton and put a lid on it.

The conclusion is that the room temperature should be between 60 and 75 degrees while running an [offset printing press](#) (and also an [image setter](#) which makes metal plates from the computer, I might add). For summer heat, I put an 11,000 BTU [window air conditioner](#) in the small window about 5 feet from the two sets of ink and water rollers on the biggest press. In addition, if the temperature gets up to 75 degrees, I plan to open the adjusting screws on the [Crestline](#) continuous watering system one or two notches. Having the building doors or windows open and a warm breeze blowing through can also evaporate water off the press plate surface while the press is running, resulting in [toning](#) or unwanted background ink in the non image areas of the paper being printed on. Evidently, even the cool air from the air conditioner blower can cause this unwanted evaporation. Anticipating hot air being trapped in the dome of the Quonset hut printing facility, along with fumes from [press solvents](#) and chemistry, we installed two squirrel cage electric motor blowers, one on each end of the building, against the ventilation slots found at each end. There are non smelly cleaning agents like [Genie Safe and Easy](#), but they don't seem to clean as well as or dry as fast as the more expensive [fast drying](#) environmentally hazardous solvents. I recommend not running the building exhaust fans while the presses are running but while they are idle during times of changing and registering another set of plates, or loading or unloading paper.

For the winter cold, I bought a forced air 40,000 BTU propane heater from [Harbor Freight Tools](#) which can raise the inside building temperature 10° in 15 minutes until the wood burning stove we put in catches on. After that the propane heater must be turned off because it takes breathing oxygen out of the air. I bought a [Kiddie](#) brand carbon monoxide detector/alarm and set it next to the propane heater. In California, propane heaters used indoors are required to vent to the outside through the wall or roof. I found I can put the forced air propane jet heater from the Harbor Freight tool company on a plastic crate so the fan or air input end can tuck into the front of the Wedgewood stove with the stove wood loading door open. This serves as a roof vent for the gas heater by using the 6" diameter fireplace chimney. The fireplace/stove, had to have a sheet metal chimney with a spark arrestor going through the roof and extending two feet above the highest point of the roof. Also, a hand adjustment baffle in the chimney about 2 feet above the stove was helpful to keep more heat inside the building. A 2' electrical box fan hangs on one of three hooks above the stove and close to the chimney to blow the heat into the room. The older stove has a dish built in the top for water to act as a humidifier. Evidently the stove can take so much moisture out of the air, that the printing press plate surface can dry out, resulting



in unwanted [toning](#) of ink in the non printing areas of the paper. I close with the comment that painting the corrugated roof with white reflective [Henry's Solar-Flex](#) thick latex roof paint (\$111 a 5 gallon pail), or the more expensive [Rustoleum](#) (\$35+ a gallon), keeps the sun from overheating the building. Putting R 32 [insulation](#) in the interior ceiling and walls and adding [dry wall](#) can also reduce temperature changes between day and night.

Electrical - When my father gave the okay to remodel the Quonset hut on the ranch and turn it into a print shop, the metal building was not insulated, and there were only two or three overhead porcelain light sockets for incandescent bulbs. By screwing a plug receptacle into the lamp socket, we were able to get enough electricity to do construction using an extension cord connected to electric drills and a cut off saw. For printing purposes, we would need 220 volts to run the larger printing press, the plate exposure box, and the paper cutter. The owner of the corporation that sold us the cutter told us that it required at least 230 to 240 volts for the electronics to function. If not, I would have to buy a [Buck-boost transformer](#) to raise the voltage. The long length of #2 aluminum wires from the main house can drop the voltage under the load of running several pieces of equipment at the same time. I measured the no load voltage and got 241 volts. However, on occasion, the machine would not initialize when I turned it on, and I would have to turn off other equipment then restart the cutter.

My father had told me that the ranch electrical system was already taxed to capacity, and if I wanted to build my own print shop, I would have to supply my own source of power. Outside the Quonset hut was a junction box where three #2 aluminum wires (capable of handling 90 amps of current) came from a sub panel in the addition to the main house. These wires were connected at the house to even smaller wires. The result was a voltage drop under heavy usage that could drop the voltage down to as low as 107 volts when wall heaters were being used. This may have resulted in our paperback book binding machine not working either. Putting in a new power pole next to the Quonset hut as an extension of the utility pole feeding the main house, would have cost up to \$7000, and new zoning only allowed one pole per house, unless it was for a water well. The maintenance man living on the ranch came up with a doable solution.

The power company came and approved an upgrade at the main house from a 100 to a 200 amp service. The maintenance man put in the new panel and the county inspector gave approval for the Edison Company to switch power to the new masthead and panel. Then the family began working with a licensed electrician. After the inspector gave the final inspection, an additional 100 amp circuit and copper wires were put in to connect directly to the junction to the Quonset hut. Now we are getting 116 to 118 volts (and 240 volts) inside the Quonset hut; and the voltage should not drop significantly when there is a load on the system. Two non electrician apprentices had worked together

with me to make a 100 amp panel inside the Quonset hut that meets county electrical codes. We ran duplex outlets every eight feet around the inside walls, and put in two ceiling fans and two rows of florescent lighting divided into four sections controlled by four switches at the entry doors. We added designated 220 volt outlets for the plate exposure box, bigger printing press, and hydraulic/electric programmable paper cutter.

Room Temperature - my real world experience

Too much heat causes two printing problems. First, when printing above 75 degrees, some ink brands can become so thin that the ink begins to run through the metering crack where the inkwell meets the ink fountain roller. The [Gans Ink](#) sales representative for our area told me he would send me [varnish](#) to add to and thicken the ink. It worked. Second, if one uses a press with the [Crestline](#) brand *continuous* watering system used on two of our three printing presses, the water need to be kept chilled. Cooling the room with an 11,000 btu air conditioner in the small window near the big press didn't solve the problem because the moving air over the press plate cylinders evaporated water off the plate. The Air conditioner can be used when the press is not running, e.g., during the time one is changing plates and registering the image a new set of plates, or when loading a new stack of paper into the input. In the evening, when it is cooler outside the building, one can turn one or both of the two squirrel cage exhaust fans located at the apex of both ends of the Quonset hut. When I did that, the room temperature went down 5° in under ten minutes. Before that, I opened the main entry door, leaving the screen door shut, with a box hanging on it to suck in cooler outside air. I am reluctant to run any fans while the printing press is also running because I believe the moving air in the room will have an adverse effect on the printing.

A press repairman with years of experience told me that our Crestline brand of watering system is not made to be adjusted by the two thumb screws that are loosed when not printing to prevent flat spots from developing on the rollers. I had tried opening the screws, but the printed image would begin to lighten and looked washed out. The answer is to have refrigerated bottles of *chilled* fountain solution, and, wrapping flexible frozen *blue ice* packets around the two water bottles and securing them with a small bungee cord. From now on, I don't plan on doing any printing without chilled and distilled water in the fountain solution with just enough fountain concentrate chemistry to bring the ph balance (tested with a litmus paper strip) to 4.5. On the internet I found stand alone [chiller machines](#) that connect to the press watering system.

It is interesting make a contrast with the older style manual adjustment *moleton* watering system that came out on printing presses like our Hamada 550 two color press built in 1983. I was using it to print a one color black ink only job inside a mobile home when the temperature was 100°. I don't remember having a lack of water problem then. I could look across the surface of the plate cylinder as it was turning and see a thin film of water. If necessary, I increased the adjustment so the cloth covered water system

transfer roller contacted the other rollers longer to apply more water to the plate. The [Red runner](#) brand of roller covers seemed to work better and collect less ink. On the next page, find a picture of how the *blue ice* packets can be used to chill the fountain solution in a continuous watering system. I would even suggest using *Velcro* fastener material to secure a block of artificial ice to the underside of the water fountain tray, if one can still open the safety guard to access and clean the press cylinders. The larger presses have a pump that circulates the water in the tray through the chilling device, and back to the tray again. Here is a link to one of these stand alone [chiller machines](#).



The Summer heat brought the room temperature to 80° before we put an 11,000 BTU air conditioner in the window. There was unwanted background ink on the paper (*toning*), and the ink was dripping through the ink fountain adjustment gap, aggravated by two many nights of *overnight spray* to keep the ink from drying on the rollers. Blue ice helped. Adding an 11,000 btu air conditioner in the small window near the press to cool the whole room, didn't solve the watering system's need to be chilled, and caused the problem of air blowing across the press plate cylinders and evaporating needed moisture from off the plates resulting in unwanted *toning* background ink in the printed sheets.

From 1993 to 1996 I was hired to do printing in a warehouse with two large roll up doors and no air conditioning in main work area. Temperatures would range from the 50s in the winter to 90+ in the summer. Even though the company bought a Crestline brand continuous watering system for the Itek 975 one color press I was running, we had problems with unwanted background toning, especially when we used an [Itek 430 camera](#) imaged Mitsubishi [Silvermaster](#) technology paper plates with colored ink. It was also a dusty environment. I think a big part of the problem was not using distilled water for the watering system and not keeping that water chilled. With regular tap water, the dried minerals on the plate surface can attract unwanted background ink, and the ph of the water is so alkaline, that it can't be brought down to the needed 4.5-5.5, no matter how much fountain solution concentrate is added.

October 2016 Update - A testimony to the grace of God.

Romans 8:28 AMP We are assured and know that [*God being a partner in their labor*] all things work together and are [*fitting into a plan*] for good to and for those who love God and are called according to [*His*] design and purpose.

Romans 8:31-32 AMP What then shall we say to [*all*] this? If God is for us, who [*can be*] against us? [*Who can be our foe, if God is on our side?*] [*Ps. 118:6.*] He who did not withhold or spare [*even*] His own Son but gave Him up for us all, will He not also with Him freely and graciously give us all [*other*] things?

Romans 8:37 AMP Yet amid all these things we are more than conquerors and gain a surpassing victory through Him Who loved us.

When we moved from a small ranch in the county to a commercial building in the city, the city planning and building permit department had me do a printing press sound level (decibel) report because of the surrounding neighborhood, before they decided we didn't need a conditional use designation. Amazingly, I was able to download an *App* to our android tablet that accurately used the tablet's microphone to measure sound levels. I found out that a home vacuum cleaner was louder than our big printing press, and that ear protection should be worn while using the paper folder with a vacuum input. I concluded that at the next door clinic, restaurant, hotel, and apartments across the street, the sound coming from our machines was no louder than the ambient city noise level published by the city planning committee.

We were also told that we could not do plumbing and electrical changes without a permit from a licensed person in the trade, and a plan drawing for the proposed work. Thus, we had to hire roofing contractors for a new top layer on the flat roof. The roofers referred us to an electrician who, unknown to us, didn't get a permit (costing \$404.05), and who was no longer legally do commercial work because internet search records showed his state license had not been renewed after 2001. The work was done, and the electrician paid \$2,300. The city had to inspect the work before granting us a business license, but there could be not inspection because a plan and permit had not been made and submitted to the planning department. I made a call to the electrician and he said he would take care of it but he never did.

Months earlier we reprinted a small booklet, *More Than A Conqueror*, for Robert Miller in Bakersfield, CA. He insisted on coming to visit us, and then his wife invited us to be guests on her internet TV show *Open Up*. Robert was a commercial electrical contractor. I called him about our electrical dilemma, and we worked together and handled it all by mail and by phone. I had seen a small drawing of the floor plan of the building on a real estate advertisement. I scanned and enlarged the blueprint. Because I am proficient in using Adobe Photoshop software, and I had helped the electrician do the job, I drew in the additional circuits, wire sizes and type of outlets. An electrical engineer had told me we would charge \$2,000 to draw up a plan. I turned in my plan and the city accepted it, along with a filled out business permit application for \$90 for Mr. Miller to do business in our city of Santa Maria. I also paid \$404.50 for a permit for the electrical project that (unknown to the city) had already been done. On his company letterhead, Mr. Miller faxed a permission letter to the city for me to pick up the permit to do the work. After that, we called the inspection hotline and asked for an inspection for the next morning. The inspector inspected for the business license, and the electrical improvements in the same visit and we passed. Later the roof passed inspection, but a restricted drain caused the carpet to get soaked in the central section of the building and

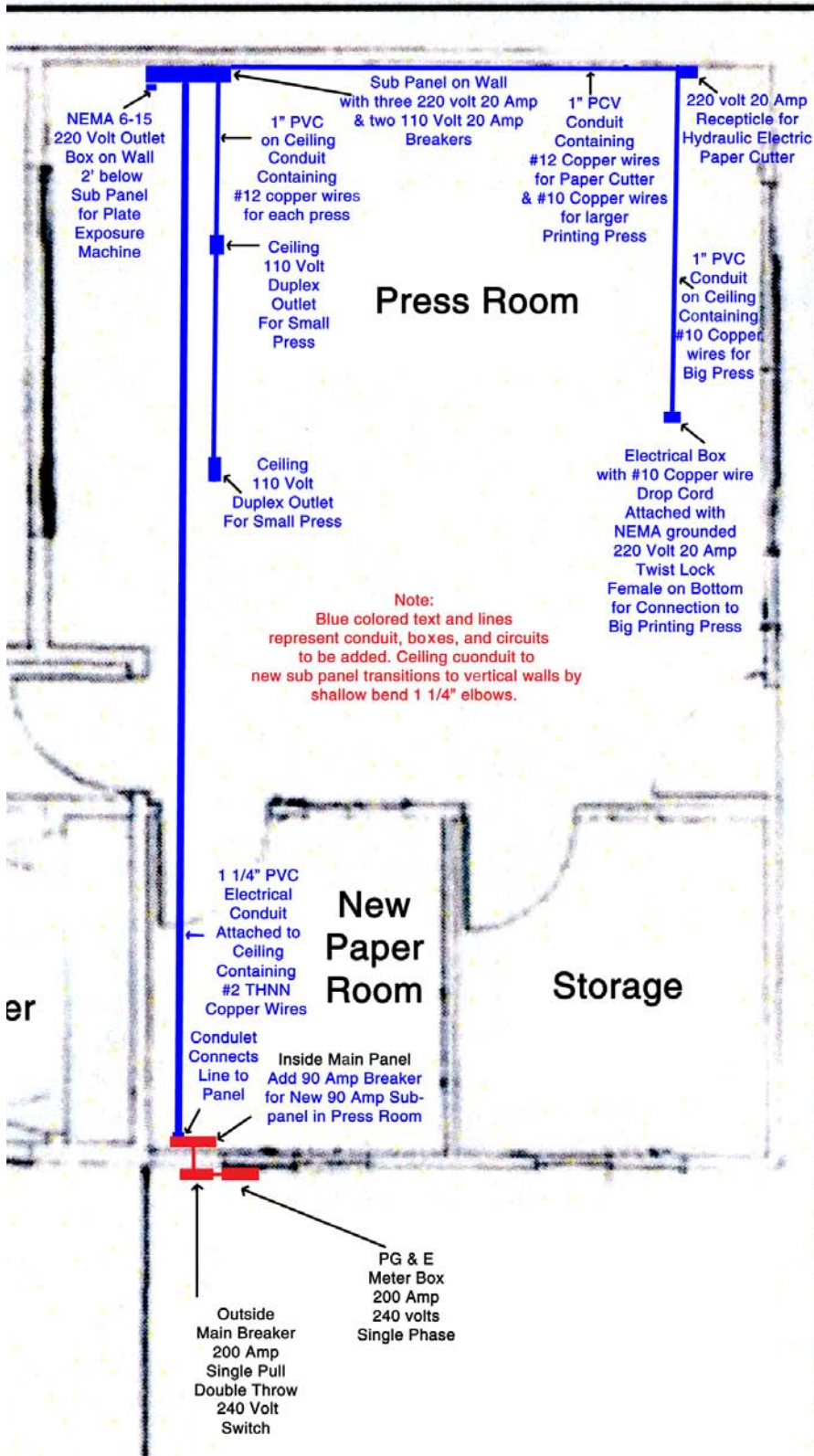
roofer had to come back. We now have our business license and non-profit tax-exempt status - something we had wanted, but not had before.

The building has central heating and air conditioning. We had paid *Top Notch Heating* to inspect the system and bring it up to code. I decided to print a rush job of tracts going to Mexico. with a heat wave outside and ninety degree temperatures outside, I had the air conditioner running at maximum capacity which kept the press room temperature below the seventy-four degree maximum I had previously determined for the Crestline continuous dampening systems on the two color press. I had to spend a day carefully readjusting the watering system by the troubleshooting guide I found. There were two ceiling ventilators for the air conditioning in the press room, and one was directly over the big press. I closed the louvers so the movement of air over the press wouldn't adversely affect the watering system like it had done in the Quonset hut where the window air conditioner was located about 5 feet from the press and blowing over the rollers, causing trouble. The next day, I was able to achieve good printing quality and run the machine at its maximum speed of 10,000 copies per hour! The end of the ordeal was that the donated tracts were delivered to Mexico at no shipping expense to us.

Psalm 34:19 TLB - The good man does not escape all troubles—he has them too. But the Lord helps him in each and every one.



Ceiling plugs in Press room from new 90 AMP Sub Panel
Three 220 volt and two 120 volt designated outlets



Branch off Building Main Panel for Sub Panel in Press Room



90 AMP Sub Panel in Press Room



Drop cords for Presses

How much does Electricity Cost?

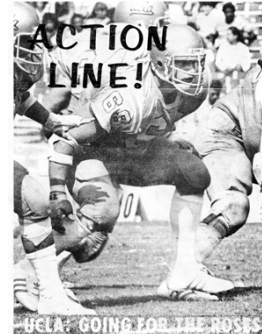
When we set up a business account with Pacific Gas & Electric, we were assigned an advisor and given a link to internet information so we could keep track of our usage. I was told that the cost per kilowatt hour (1000 watts used in one hour), varied between 19 and 24 cents. The cheapest rates are off *peak*, or at night after 9PM. Some people leave the lights on unnecessarily, or run electric space heaters when they could use natural gas for heating which is a lot cheaper, unless one is just heating one room. The central gas heating that works in conjunction with the air conditioning seems to necessitate heating the whole building, even though one might be working alone in a single room. At our new location some rooms intended to be used as office space also have built in electric wall heaters having a separate thermostat for each room. Such wall heaters would draw 1500 watts each x 24 cents a kilowatt hour which equals 36 cents an hour.

The press and bindery rooms have two have two rows of florescent light fixtures or about 48 40 watt bulbs per room. Thus turning on the light switch in either of those two rooms means 1920 watts. At 24 cents a kilowatt hour, that is 46.08 cents an hour for one room. When we bought the larger building in the city, I noticed that the previous owners had removed two of the four florescent bulbs in each fixture. There was still adequate light after I replaced burnt out blubs and one lighting ballast, so we continued with half the lights in use in the bindery room which reduces the light cost in that room by half. In my opinion, if one worked in a business five days a week during the daylight hours, it would not be hard to run up a bill of \$100+ in electricity each month. For the bindery room lighting alone, running on half the lights, eight hours a day, five days a week, 20 days a month, would be \$36.80 a month. This figure motivates me to light only the room I am working in, and to avoid using the space heater. The central air conditioner, with a compressor and fan motor is probably an equal expense.

HIS Print Accomplishments

To show that a relatively unknown and small Christian print shop, working out of a garage or residence, can, through a connection with larger more visible evangelistic ministries, produce some significant projects, consider the following:

1. In about 1980-81, using tabletop AB Dick and Ricoh brand offset duplicating machines, 50,000 *Action League* testimonial tracts were printed for the Pasadena Rose Bowl game. Evangelist Sondra Berry Young, who had grown up in Pasadena and become the official chaplain of the yearly parade where she coordinated a couple of hundred believers in evangelizing the one million visitors to the parade. She contacted payers on both football teams playing each other that year who were Christians, and got a short testimony and their photos. We paid a local graphic arts provider to assemble these into a tract on a metal printing plate to print it in black and white. Thousands of *Welcome to Pasadena* two color tracts with the official parade rose flower logo were also printed.
2. Sondra worked with the Holy Ghost Repair Service in Hollywood, CA which I had discovered when working in a Photography Studio there, when a new evangelist friend and I were passing out tracts we were given by a tract supplier in a nearby city. When I had moved back to Santa Barbara and begun printing out of a car garage on my parent's ranch. I was able to reprint thousands of drug related tracts like [*What Fill The Void?*](#), [*The Dealer*](#), and [*High Times*](#).
3. About 1998 Sondra connected me with a ministry in New York for which I reproduced 5,000 copies of Gwen Shaw's [*Who Is Jesus?*](#) Tracts in the Tibetan language for Tibet.
4. Sondra connected me with one of the Henderson brothers of [*Soldiers For Jesus*](#) and [*The Power Team*](#). They were leading a weekly street ministry on behalf of [*Trinity Broadcasting Network*](#) out of the Bear Street, Costa Mesa, CA headquarters. I printed in two colors, and delivered for their use, 11,000 of the [*Who...?*](#) Tract I had felt inspired to create. It is now posted in full color for download from the www.tracts4u.com website my associates and I created.
5. Again, Sondra connected me with Mel Rolls of [*Rescue Atlanta*](#) in Georgia who made specialty tracts for big parades and celebrations around the country. Using two color negatives and art work they provided me, my college Print Shop supervisor and I were able to make two color printing plates for a press and make thousands of



tracts for both the Savannah, Georgia Saint Patrick's Day Parade, and the weeklong Mardi Gras festival in New Orleans, Louisiana.

6. About 2002, I converted Mel Gerrard's *Know Your Future* booklet tract to a computer in English, Spanish, and French. Two friends and I made, donated, and delivered 32,000 Spanish booklets to the Los Angeles Free Tract Society to go to Cuba. When we purchased a used twin tower exact registration Ryobi 3302 press about 2011, my wife and I began making these English and Spanish booklets by the thousands. I now have the French translation ready on the computer to print those when requested.
7. Prince Handley, www.realmiracles.org, worked together with me for a year out of a garage rented on the Eastside of town for about \$120 a month. We made tens of thousands of his *Mini Series* tracts which he later told me had a great impact.
8. From the Lower Eastside of Santa Barbara, CA garage, I worked with Pastor Clayton Gollither of [Hope For Homeless Youth](#) at the Dream Center in Los Angeles, CA. A man in his program had been a warlock or wizard. I took my Desktop Publishing computer setup to Pastor Clayton's garage and we put together a tract, *I Was a True Harry Potter Experience*. We printed over 30,000 of them in black ink and they were distributed to young people in the Los Angeles Unified School District, warning them about the dangers of occult involvement.
9. Tens of thousands of tracts were printed and distributed locally, mostly at big yearly parades like 4th of July, and the Fiesta Parade. I am still supplying area Evangelists and Churches with custom tracts with their contact information on them.
10. Boxes of tracts were printed and mailed to Sondra Berry Young Ministries in South Africa. Through one tract I wrote, *Who...?*, She led thirty men to the Lord in a parking lot.
11. Boxes of tracts have recently gone to Africa and Brazil.
12. I began printing one of the tracts I designed, *Why John 3:16?*, along with *Conozca Su Futuro* Spanish booklet tracts by Mel Gerrard, for the Free Tract Society in Los Angeles, CA. Now FTS had negatives and plates made from my computer document and prints the Spanish prison art tract themselves.
13. In 2015 I have been asked to reproduce two out of print tracts that the people using them say are their favorite tract. After attempting to contact the original printers and receive copyright permission, we have gained enough computer skill in using Adobe Creative Suite CS5 to scan and reassemble the tract parts for printing more expensive short runs on our color laser printer. If the customer wants thousands of tracts, I proceed to separate the tract into two colors for our printing press.
14. We have also prepared computer tract documents for the [Free Tract Society of Los Angeles](#). I send an Adobe Acrobat PDF of a two color tract document to a service bureau that uses their expensive professional grade image setters to make film negatives that are then mailed to the FTS who strips the negatives into masks, burns

press plates, and prints and distributes the tracts. I took the time to print 10 two color tracts I wrote and designed, putting the FTS address on them. I delivered about 1200 of each as a gift. They have started using our tracts, are putting them in their sample packets, and have already asked us to print them more of a few of our designs.

15. An associate ministry that distributes tracts to other countries has been paying us to print, package and ship the tracts. In about two weeks, we printed 60,000 Portuguese *Como Vencer* (How to Win) tracts for Brazil, and mailed out over 40,000 of them through our local post office. Now a Spanish Pentecostal church in the Los Angeles area, has asked us to reproduce from a hard copy sample, a Spanish booklet for them. When they get their website running again, we are ready and feel confident to print 30,000 of these booklets, getting paid 10 cents each for the first 20,000, the rest going to the Free Tract Society, and some for us to have on hand.
16. I was told, prophetically, that I would train others to do what I do, so I downloaded the trial or free version software called Microsoft Expression and Screen Capture. Now I can capture to video what appears on my computer screen as I design tract documents. These 10 minute video clips are then converted to a WMV (Windows Media Video) file format and uploaded by internet, along with sound, and a thumbnail picture and short description, to become free You Tube training videos - a show and tell on doing Christian Evangelism desktop publishing.
17. Here is a neat story of how I worked with Christians from different parts of the world to make gospel tracts ready to print and to post on our website for free use by others.

In April of 2016 I received by e-mail a request from Stephen Tan to finish two tracts: *Discover How You Can be Sure of Going to Heaven at the End of Your Life* and *Entry into Heaven is not Bought, Earned, or Deserved - So What Must I Do to Go to Heaven?* They had been laid out on A4 size paper in Microsoft Word as a three-fold. They were full color. The cover graphic needed to have some black areas changed to a dark green. The three inside graphics were too low a resolution (less than 300 dpi) and the lettering in these graphics had been made in Photoshop which has to be rasterized which made it hard to read in the small point size it was typed in. The tracts needed to have the inside columns flipped upside down on the same sheet so two tracts could be printed from a one page document. A student in the church Stephen attended had made the graphics in Photoshop, but Stephen didn't want to bother the person any further as he felt it would interfere with his or her schoolwork.

He began to search the Internet for help and came across the website www.tracts.com started and managed by Joe and Laura Rich in the Eastern United States. In 2009, when was searching for a domain name for our website, I found and began corresponding with the Rich family. They had helped a lot people design tracts, and had quite a few connections to tract makers listed on their website. Our

ministry and domain name had also been added to their website, along with a tab or section just for us. Stephen saw this and e-mailed us, then sent us by attachment, the two tract documents in the state of development he had left them.

I hadn't worked with the [A4 paper size](#) before. I first fixed his graphics in Photoshop. Using the Clone stamp tool, I erased the fuzzy small text, replacing it with the background color. I found a walking man from another similar type tract we had worked on, and replaced the blurred man. The arch made gray dashes was removed. I redid the text and curve in Adobe Indesign CS5 after I placed the graphics into the A4 paper size Indesign document I created. Then the text was sharp. At first I had thought I could continue working on Stephen's tract in Microsoft Word, but I knew indesign would be easier and positioning the various parts more exact. I was able to draw text boxes and cut and paste the message from Word into Indesign. I was able to copy the text off his page two and paste it upside down on page one to make the document a two to a sheet [work and tumble](#). I used the [Magic Wand](#) selection tool, the [Paint Bucket](#) tool, and the [Swatches Palette](#) in Photoshop to turn a black leaf on the cover image into a dark green.

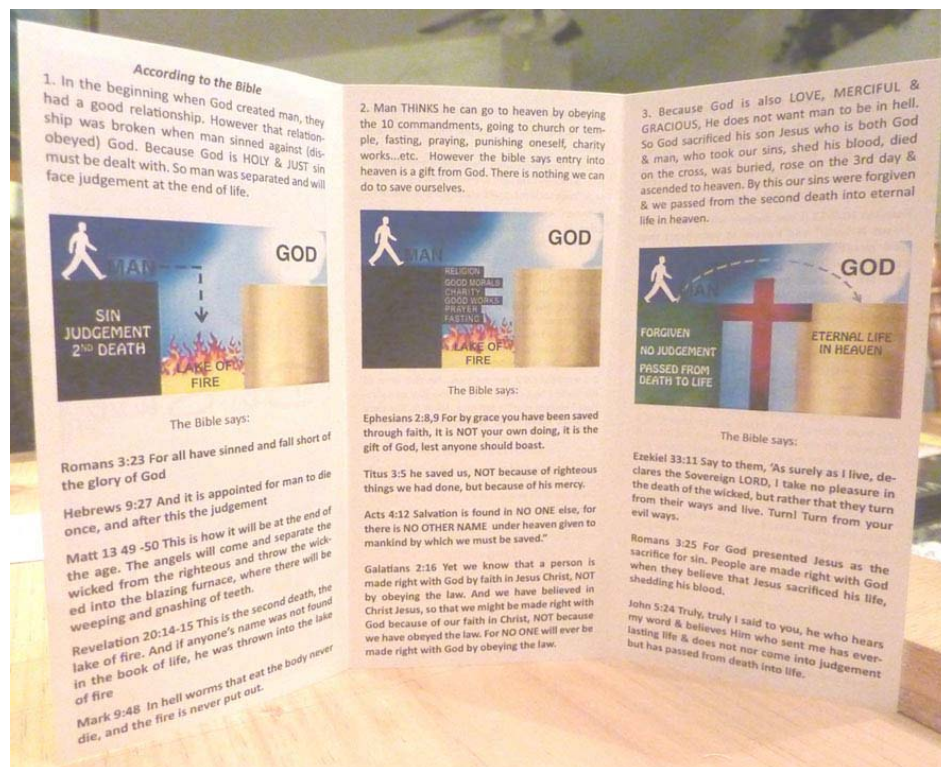
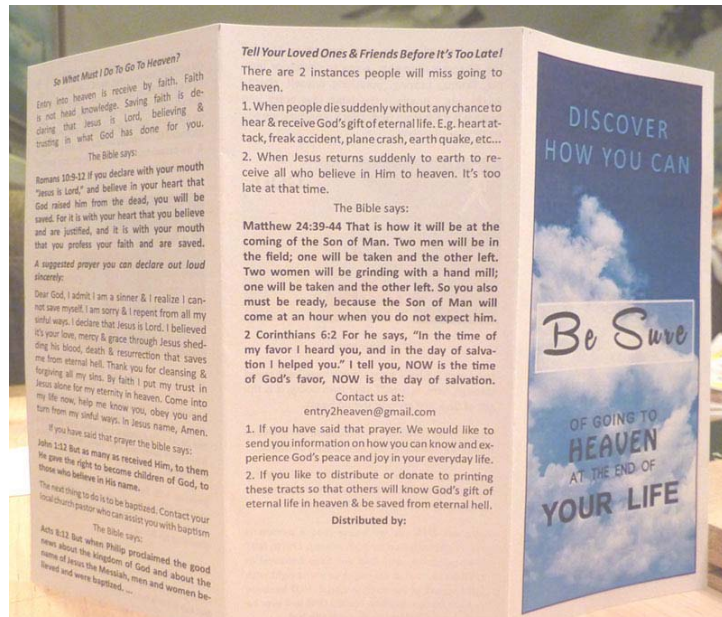
I made a PDF of my Indesign documents and emailed them to Stephen as attachments. He took the computer files to the Library and printed and folded the tract, but it didn't fit right on the paper. He took a picture of his printed sample and e-mailed that to me. At first I thought he didn't know how to print the document or he had used the wrong size paper. I had put the center guide for the A4 paper layout in the wrong place and not at the half way point. I corrected this, then printed the document on our color laser printer on a larger size piece of paper, telling the printer software to center the image on the sheet. I measured and marked 3/16" borders around the document (the smallest margin our laser printer allows). I used a razor blade and a straight edge to trim out the tract from the 11" by 17" tabloid sheet I had printed it on. When I folded each half into thirds, the tracts looked beautiful. I took a picture of my finished product and e-mailed it to Stephen to show him the job could be done with the second set of PDF documents I had also e-mailed him.

The A4 paper, and Stephen using the British spelling of certain words like *baptize*, and his English writing proficiency go me curious about what country he had been e-mailing me from. Then, in an e-mail he disclosed that it was Auckland, New Zealand! Then I remembered that a man named Trevor and his wife also lived in that city. They also had a tract printing ministry and shipped full color tracts free of charge to anyone requesting them, as funds and printed tract availability allowed. They had a similar domain name to our, www.tracts4u.org. I had e-mailed Trevor before, so I e-mailed him again and asked if he could help Stephen Tan get his tract properly printed on their A4 paper size from the two PDF documents I also

attached in my e-mail to Trevor. I gave him Stephen's e-mail address and he said he would contact him and offer his help.

Soon after that, Stephen e-mailed again, delighted that he has successfully made a good looking tract from the second set of computer documents I had sent him by attachment. He was eager to get a printer going at his home so he could start printing the tracts for himself and anyone else who wanted to distribute them. On the last panel of his tracts he stated he would give the tracts to others wanting to distribute them. I then felt like the Lord wanted me to e-mail the Rich family to tell them the good news about how we had all had a part in working together on this tract project. Joe Rich responded - he too was uplifted and encouraged.

*To God be the glory
Great things He hath done
So love He the world
That He gave us His Son
Who yielded His life
An atonement for sin
And opened the life gate
That all may go in!
Chorus:
Praise the Lord, Praise the Lord
Let the earth hear his voice
Praise the Lord, Praise the Lord
Let the people rejoice.
Oh come to the Father
And give Him the Glory
Great things He hath done!*



Example #2 – In 2016, a lady from Irvine, Texas contacted us by e-mail. She and her friends had been evangelizing for 25 years. She gained insight on the best topics for reaching people, and had made seven one color tracts by the paste up camera ready hard copy method. She would then photocopy the original, then fold and pass out her tracts. She wanted us to make her tracts look professional as well as print some for her on our color laser printer after they had been converted to computer medium using a scanner and the artwork she mailed by way of the post office. We made the tracts two color with new text, two to a letter size sheet in two or three colors. We sent 600 copies of the first printed tract for which she paid five cents each, plus shipping. Her response was that she was so happy that she had found us. Now we have perfected all her tracts and posted them on the internet and sent her copies. She says she will be buying more soon. We suggested she make a donation for the days of design work we put into her project, and she did. We concluded that the price we were charging her was our cost with no markup. Five cents could work for a two color tract printed on a press, but the base cost of color laser printing, according to the machine manufacturer, is 6.6 cents per letter size sheet at 5% coverage of toner, not including the paper cost.



Services Offered by HIS Print Media Ministries (What Other Christian Shops Might Offer)

1. Develop your tract or audio testimony idea into something beautiful that can be printed by you, or this ministry, and be posted on the internet with the idea of reaching more people with our evangelism creation. For example, see the website post of [*A Father's Steadfast Love*](#) which started with a phone conversation from a family in Texas that had seen the website. A hand written message and hard copy photographs were mailed to me. I developed the tract, turned it into a PDF, attached it to an e-mail, and sent it. The family used their computer to view the tract and suggest a couple of minor corrections, after which I printed and mailed the document. They mailed a suggested contribution for cost of materials. The tract and accompanying prayer card were posted on the website for reading and printing by anyone. When the family made a trip to Malaysia where the mother was raised, we worked together to make and print a Traditional Chinese version. We don't charge for our labor on these ministry related projects.
2. Making quality audio testimonies to post on the testimony section of the website, or burn on CDs with full color labels printed directly on the CDs. The free download Audacity program is used to edit and enhance the testimony. The Dragon Naturally Speaking Preferred 10 program by Nuance, and a microphone headset can convert an audio testimony to computer text then to a printed book like *That's No Problem For The Lord!*
3. Converting a preexisting hard copy document or tract to computer medium for printing on a color laser printer, or one or two color offset printing press. We haven't been charging for our computer work.
4. We now convert the printing press or laser printer computer documents to Adobe PDF interactive read order e-tracts, e-booklets, and e-books for smart phones and tablets with touch screen displays. The pages are turned with a side swipe of a finger tip on the display.
5. Printing gospel tracts or evangelistic discipleship training materials / literature at about 5 cents a tract on the 40 page a minute color laser printer in quantities up to 1,000 copies.
6. Printing, for 2 to 4.5 cents a copy, the above in one or two colors on an offset printing press that can handle up to legal size documents, at speeds up to 8,000 an hour, at a couple of cents a copy. At a later date, as working space increases, an 11" by 17" full bleed tabloid size press currently owned by the ministry can be utilized. At the present time, this larger press would only be able to print one color at a time without exact registration between colors.

7. Printing tract size 2" by 4" to letter size stapled booklets (the size after it is folded in half) up to 40 pages, or about 36 pages with a thick cover. The cover can be full color and printed both sides. The content can be 11" by 17" black and white or full color in limited quantities. 5 ½" by 8 ½" tall or 7 ½" by 8 ½" tall booklet insides can be printed in one or two colors in mass quantities on the printing press. Small two color tract booklets of 16 pages can be printed on the printing press as cheap as 2.5 cents each. The reason they are cheap is that the labor is donated. A 5 ½" by 8 ½" letter half booklet of twelve pages with a full color cover and black and white inside pages can be as low as ten cents each with donated labor, for examples, see the *Know Your Future* booklet posted on the website and also [Seven Things God Wants Us To Know](#). For clarification, my present low end model O & M series 60 Plockmatic booklet maker that staples and doesn't stitch, can handle ten sheets of 20lb weight paper in the input (a 40 page booklet). Newer models can handle 22-26 sheets at a time (a booklet up to 100 pages). These thicker booklets tend to not lie flat near the stapled edge. Such would also look better with a face trim. Doing more than 12 sheets would require running two tower collators in tandem or hand collating the booklet parts before running them through the booklet maker. Thus, making thicker booklets would best be done on a more expensive booklet making system like the Duplo 5000 that can also include a spine crusher (at \$8,000 additional?). Some newer models make a [square fold](#) like a paperback book, even though they still use staples.

The current equipment number of sheets limitations of HIS Print Media Ministries suggest that stapled booklets be a maximum of 40 pages or 10 sheets of 20lb weight paper. We do have a slower heavy duty saddle stitch machine that can do an 80 page booklet which is so thick it doesn't lie flat. Perfect bound or paperback books should be at least 100 pages if one intends to print the title of the book in the spine area - that would only be about .12" or 1/10th of an inch thick in the case of 100 pages. One solution here would be to take a letter size book and make it letter half so it would be twice as thick, and possibly be faster and cheaper to print and easier on the limited copy life of color laser printer parts and consumables since the books are now laid out two per letter size sheet and twice as many books are printed in the same time span. However, don't leave it up to me to layout the books two to a page in Microsoft Word as I've tried it and can't get the same page numbers to print two per page on both halves of the same letter size sheet. The best I was able to do was print a letter half book in reverse collation order on the left half of the letter size sheet, then flip the printed book set 180 degrees on the long edge and print on the other half in straight collation order. When the stack is cut in half, it yields two letter half book contents. The difficulty is that the smaller letter and legal size color laser printers that duplex can print a letter half sheet fed the narrow way, but larger format tabloid printers won't feed the letter half sheet, but do well with a letter size sheet fed from the 11" side.

8. 5" by 8" paperback books with a thick 10 point gloss full color cover and black and white inside pages, all one on a color laser printer which automatically collates the sheets and puts out complete book sets read for covers put in by the perfect binding machine, cost about \$3 for a 215 page book. We sell it for about \$7. A book of the same height and width, but 583 pages with full color pictures throughout costs about \$6 a copy with no labor charge. We sell it for \$15

Because using the computer for laying out such books in Microsoft Office Word is so time consuming, I request that the document being submitted for printing be a computer document, whether created in Pagemaker, Indesign, Quark Xpress, or a PDF file. Such a file would include a separate cover document (outside and inside), and the book content with page numbers, preface, table of contents, dedication, copyright permissions, etc., all in one document. I was involved in all this on four books, including securing the UPC symbol barcode and Library of Congress copyright on some of them. I have guidelines for such on my computer, but prefer not to have to do the writers part when I can spend my time designing new tract ideas the Lord has given me. If someone who is a published author would provide a step by step guide for putting a book document together it will be added as a chapter in future editions of this book and will be greatly appreciated.

9. I can take a larger file size [WAV](#) or [WMA](#) audio recording (on a cassette, CD, solid state flash card, or external hard drive, or record a phone conversation using a suction cup microphone, and use the free download [Audacity](#) computer program to edit the file, boost the volume of the recording, and export the file in WAV or mp3 format, putting it on a CD and designing a simple color label to print on the CD using an Epson R320 photo inkjet with a pigmented, light and fade resistant ink, bulk feed inking system that cuts the printing cost way down.
10. Reproduce previously printed books and tracts not on a computer medium. Use a scanner and Adobe Photoshop to capture and straighten and clean the individual pages. Place the pages into a page layout program in read order. Make a PDF e-book from the computer file, and print limited editions of the book using the color laser printer. Bind the pages together using a booklet maker, perfect binder for paperback books, or a GBC brand electric Comb Bind punching machine. The [Comb Bind system](#) takes less skill than making paperback books and a one inch comb can hold 330 double sided pages.
11. Post helpful literature or tract documents on a website for free use by anyone wanting to work for God using printed matter.
12. Customize a document posted for free use on our website, to meet the particular needs of a church or individual. The Romans Road PDF tract had been made with Bible verses from the New Living Translation. Tom called from Minnesota, and wanted the verses changed to the King James Version and his prayer of salvation

substituted for the one I like to use. We did this and are helping Tom's soul winning group get a custom contact address on the back of the tract. We helped Tom adapt the tract to print on his particular printer.

Writing a Tract

A tract is a concise written synopsis of the Good News of Jesus' death burial and resurrection for mankind ([1 Corinthians Chapter 15](#)), which, if personally and sincerely accepted (an opportunity presented through a prayer of salvation contained in the tract) can result in that person:

1. Becoming a child of God. ([John 1:11,12](#))
2. Being delivered out of the Spiritual domain or kingdom of Darkness ruled by Satan and demons, and being translated into the kingdom of Jesus Christ, God's dear Son. ([Colossians 1:13](#))
3. Receiving eternal life immediately in one's human spirit, the real person living in the body according to John 5:24 Amplified translation "He who believes in me, has [now possesses] eternal life.", and everlasting life (living forever) in a glorified body ([1 Corinthians 15:35-57](#)) with a loving God throughout eternity. *"and this is the promise he has promised us: eternal life."* 1 John 2:25.
4. Living a happy life. *"Happy is the people who's God is the Lord"* Psalm 144:15; *"To give them the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise, for the spirit of heaviness."* Isaiah 61:3.
5. Having a Prosperous life, prosperous in Hebrew meaning to succeed at what one is doing. *"But his delight is in the law of the Lord, and in his law doth he meditate day and night...and everything he does shall prosper"* Psalm 1:3
6. Having a Healthy Life. *"And it shall come to pass that if thou shalt hearken diligently unto the voice of the Lord thy God to keep all his commandments...that he shall take sickness away from the midst of thee."* Exodus 23:25 (see also [Deuteronomy 7:15](#)). Also *"Beloved, I wish above all things that thou mayest prosper and be in health, even as thy soul prospers."* 3 John 1:2. This is a result of having been redeemed or "bought back" from the curse(s) of God's broken laws, according to Galatians 3:18
7. Having joy and other *"fruit of the Holy Spirit"* [Galatians 5:22-23](#), along with getting rid of the *"works of the flesh"* (e.g., variance, strife, lust) mentioned in the preceding verse ([Galatians 5:19-21](#)).
8. Having a change of heart *"If any man be in Christ there is a brand new person inside, old things are passed away, behold new things have come."* 2 Corinthians 5:17 Living Bible
9. Having a new fellowship with God on three levels: Father and Son ([1 John 1:3](#)), and Holy Spirit ([2 Corinthians 13:14](#))
10. Having the power and opportunity to overcome in life's trials and circumstances. *"Overwhelming victory is ours..."* Philippians 3:8 AMP
11. Having the indwelling and lasting presence of the Spirit of God living within us as what the Greek language word usage calls the "Paraclete" which the Amplified

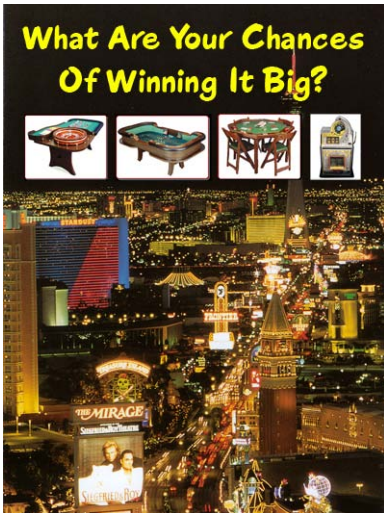
Translation lists as “Counselor, Helper, Advocate, Intercessor, Strengtheners, Standby” – [John 16:7 AMP](#)

12. Having the [Baptism of the Holy Spirit](#) - the power of God the Holy Spirit **upon** us to empower us to live and witness for God with power or “*signs following*” – [Mark 16:20](#); [Acts 1:8](#); [2:4](#). This will include a new heavenly personal prayer language that communicates directly with God and charges us up like a battery (Jude 20). “*For we know not what to pray for as we ought, but the Spirit himself maketh intercession for us, praying according to the will of God.*” – Romans 8:26). The Amplified Translation Bible states, “*For if I pray in an unknown tongue, my spirit (by the Holy Spirit within me) prays.*” 1 Cor. 14:14
AMP

Tract Contents:

1. A catchy, attention getting title and cover graphic or picture. For example, and see the full color thick paper tract by Ray Comfort (www.livingwaters.com) that looks like a dropped wallet with paper money sticking out of it. A booklet tract I am fond of and have reproduced is Mel Gerrard’s, [Know Your Future](#). The Lord spoke directly and audibly to Dr. Esther Mallet and gave her a tract that has gone around the world in many languages, [How To Live Forever – There Is Only One Way](#).
2. The beginning of the tract can give us some helpful and practical information like the message in a tract for Laundromats titled [Stain Removal Guide](#). The beginning contains information on how to remove various clothing stains as an analogy to the removal of the stain of sin on the human soul by the precious blood of Christ (“*redeemed with the precious blood of Christ*” I Peter 1:19). Bible verses, God’s promises from the written Word of God, show us our need for the cleansing of Jesus’ shed blood or life ([Leviticus 17:11](#)), for our lives (“*He who knew no sin...*” 2 Corinthians 5:21) to restore our broken relationship with God that occurred through our sin or disobedience to God’s commands, resulting in the prospect of our facing an eternal judgment awaiting us with everlasting and unpleasant consequences for our having gone astray from God to follow our own way ([Isaiah 53:6](#)).
As another example, my tract for gamblers is titled, [What Are Your Chances Of Winning It Big?](#) I put a color picture of the Las Vegas Strip or main street taken at night on the cover, and a picture of stacks of money on the inside two pages,





lightened beneath the text message that started by giving the odds of winning money at the various table games and slot machines. At the end of the statistics, I asked an important spiritual question related to odds: “What are your chances of making it to Heaven and living forever with God in the end?” This leads us to God’s desire to give us eternal life as a free gift if we pray and receive Jesus Christ’s death and resurrection on our behalf, as payment for our sins which [Isaiah 59:2](#) says have cut us off from God. So Item #2 in tract writing draws our attention to God loving us and wanting us to know Him personally, but our having turned away from God blocking us from

God, leaving us with the Devil as our master who will eventually, by his demons, drag us down to Hell against our wills at death, unless we change course by calling on the highest power, Jesus Christ as our new Lord and Master.

3. Item 3 shows us Jesus Christ’s substitute sacrifice or payment for our sins to remove God’s wrath against us, making a legal way for Him to declare us “not guilty” before God. A key verse here is 2 Corinthians 5:21 *“He who knew no sin was made to be sin on our behalf, that we might be made the righteousness of God in Him.”* 1 Corinthians 1:30 states that Jesus Christ has been made unto us *“wisdom, righteousness, and redemption.”*
4. This section presents us with the “Prayer of Salvation” as a turning point for us to renounce The Devil & get free of his evil domain or kingdom of darkness by calling on the name above every name that is named, Jesus Christ as our new Master who, then, according to the promise of His Word, the Bible, steps in on our behalf to deliver us out of Satan’s *“power of darkness”*, transferring us into the *“Kingdom of God’s dear Son”* ([Colossians 1:13](#)), making us children of God, giving us salvation and son ship, as a free gift, complements of Jesus Christ’s death on our behalf and not our works ([Titus 3:5](#), [Ephesians 2:8-9](#)).

The Prayer of Salvation offered here, which I call the World’s Most Important Prayer, is based on [Romans 10:8-13](#). The prayer is written for the reader to pray aloud. I like to precede the prayer with a question like the one I wrote in the [Why John 3:16?](#) Tract, “So, then, where is God in your life – on the inside, or just on the outside? Pray this World’s Most Important Prayer aloud and from your heart.” This is the clincher as we must each have a personal inside experience with God that we initiate by asking the Lord Jesus, who, according to [Revelation 3:20](#), is standing on the outside, knocking on our heart’s door, to please come in as our new Lord and Master. I had attended a good church for about a year when I was confronted with this issue. Just going to a Church and learning about God hadn’t been enough. I had to become a member of the Church

which, figuratively, is an organism, the corporate group of believers built on Jesus Christ the foundation ([Ephesians 2:22](#)).

Like a good recipe, this Bible based prayer needs to contain certain key ingredients which are:

1. An acknowledgement that Jesus Christ died on the cross for our/my sins (I Corinthians 15:3-4; Romans 10:9)
2. Asking God to please forgive all one's sins: *"I confess that I am a sinner, I choose to repent of my sins, and I ask you to please forgive me of every sin, cleansing me from my sins by the precious blood of your Son Jesus Christ, shed on the cross as a payment for my sins, His spotless life being now substituted for my sinful life."* The Bible says, *"Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish."* Luke 13:3, 5 Repent means an about face or making a decision, with the indwelling power and help of the Holy Spirit who is now coming to live within us, to turn from a life of disobedience and sinning, to a life of following and obeying God.
3. An acknowledgement that God the Father raised His Son Jesus Christ from the dead. Romans 10:10
4. In the first person particle of speech, an out loud confession of Jesus Christ as one's personal Lord and Master and Savior
5. Asking God to forgive one's sins as the Publican in the Temple cried out, smiting his breasts, *"Lord be merciful to me a sinner!"* Luke 18:13.
6. Asking God to "Wash me in the blood of Jesus!" *"If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness."* I John 1:9. See also [verse 7](#).
7. Asking God to write your name in His Book of Life in Heaven. *"And whosoever's name was not found written in the Lamb's book of life, was cast into the lake of fire."* Revelation 20:15.
8. Asking God to give you the free gift of Eternal Life. *"For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord."* Romans 6:23
"They that have received of the gift of righteousness, shall reign as kings in life by the one, Jesus Christ." Romans 5:17 AMP
9. Asking Jesus to fill or baptize you with His Holy Spirit. This is not an option, but a command of God through the Apostle Paul: *"Be filled with the Spirit."* Ephesians 5:18.
10. "so that I might serve and obey You." I began adding this after criticism from some Christians that asking Jesus into one's heart is not found in the Bible. To me, saying the prayer starts one on the road to Heaven or begins one's existence as a child of God according to Galatians 5:24. I am well aware that one must *press on to know Him* according to [Hosea 6:3 NLT](#). A song says, "If He's not Lord of everything, then He's not Lord at all." We know that God wants to bless and prosper us, and that we realize this by trusting and obeying Him, by being willing and obedient ([Isaiah 1:19](#)). I

like to distinguish that we do *good deeds* for God, not to be saved, but, because we are already saved by simple trust in Jesus Christ and his finished work on the cross, and He is living out the life and example of Jesus through us ([Acts 10:38](#))

Titus 2:14 NLT He gave His life to free us from every kind of sin, to cleanse us, and to make us His very own people, totally committed to doing good deeds.

1 Peter 2:21 NLT For God called you to do good, even if it means suffering, just as Christ suffered for you. He is your example, and you must follow in His steps.

11. Believing God has heard and answered one's prayer according to His Bible promise to do so, regardless of any immediate feelings in one's flesh or sense knowledge awareness., The Bible states, *"For we walk by faith, and not by sight."* 2 Corinthians 5:7 Jesus made a promise to come in (Revelations 3:20 Living Bible), *"I will come in..."*. The Bible also states, as God told the prophet Jeremiah, *"I am watching over my word to perform it."* Jeremiah 1:12. Isaiah 55:11 states *"So shall my word be that goeth forth from my mouth; it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish the thing whereunto I have sent it."* Yet another Bible promise tells us regarding God *"for thou hast magnified thy Word above all thy name."* Psalm 138:2. I close the written sinner's prayer in the tract with "I thank you for hearing and answering my prayer as you promised in your Word you would do." Or, "I thank you, and, by faith, I believe I have received the answer now."

The next part in tract writing, is the assurance of salvation that God has indeed heard, and answered, saving the person as it is written or promised in the Bible, which is "God-breathed", a transliteration of the Greek word "Theopneustos" used in I Timothy 3:15 which says, *"All Scripture is given by inspiration of God."* Another passage says, *"holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost"* 2 Peter 1:21. The Apostle Paul, who wrote 2/3rds of the New Testament, was personally taught by Jesus Christ for up to 3 ½ years in the wilderness of Arabia according to [Galatians 1:11-12](#), [17](#). He stated that people received his writings for what they really were, "the very word of God". In this part, depending on how much room is left to finish writing the tract, one can include one or more assurance of salvation Scriptures. I like ones from the Living Bible as they are especially clear and easy to understand with no archaic words. I try to at least use I John 2:25 *"And this is the promise He hath promised us: eternal life."* Here are other suggest verses I used (from the Living Bible) on the back of the [Why John 3:16? Tract: Revelation 3:20; John 1:12; 2 Corinthians 5:17, 21; Romans 6:23](#).

The last part of the tract is the contact or follow up information of a local church consisting of the name of the church, the location of the church, the pastor's name, the times of the services, the church phone number, e-mail address, and website URL address if they have a website. This information is required base on Jesus' command o "make disciples". The Greek word used here is "*discipulos*" and means an adherent or follower. Some tracts, like the ending pages of Mel Gerrard's [Know Your Future](#) booklet, under the heading "GROW", write out guidelines for growing in one's relationship with

the Lord. The Apostle Paul's goal was *"that I might present every man perfect* [Greek word used here also means "mature"] *in Christ."* [Colossians 1:28](#).

The **Testimony Tract**, whether written, or put on an audio CD as those posted for download at www.FreeCDtracts.com, is a different approach, telling one's own story of how he or she met the Lord, possibly through a difficult or life threatening experience. The reader relates himself to the writer's short story, realizes that he too needs God personally in his life, and can be changed by God and become a child of God in the same fashion the writer did as it is written, *"For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved."* Romans 10:13. He is made to know that this is accomplished by asking Jesus into his or her heart through praying aloud the [World's Most Important Prayer](#), the Prayer of Salvation through which one initially becomes a child of God ([John 1:11-12](#)), or is reconnected with God and started in the road to Heaven as his eternal destination, home, or citizenship.

Jesus told the demon possessed "man of the tombs", after setting him free from a legion of demons, *"Go and tell how great things the Lord hath done for thee, and hath had compassion on thee!"* Mark 5:19.

Helpful Tract Writing Verses:

Note: Some think that the King James Version of the Bible is the only truly inspired version and should be used exclusively in all preaching and evangelism. As I see it, the archaic words out an unnecessary language barrier in the way of an unsaved person coming to Jesus Christ. That is why I prefer using the Living Bible, The New Living Translation, and the Amplified Bible. Here is one example of the ease of understanding difference that the Living Bible makes - 2 Corinthians 5:18, 21 "God...brought us back to himself through what Jesus Christ did...For God took the sinless Christ and poured into him our sins. Then, in exchange, he poured God's goodness into us!" Verse 20, in the NLT says "Come back to God!" The one drawback to using these other translations is that, legally, one should include in small lettering at the end of the tract, the copyright permission statement requested by the publisher. You can see here how I did this on one of the tracts I wrote [The Greatest Offer Ever Made By The Greatest Man Who Ever Lives](#)

God Loves Us, and the Creation He Made:

John 3:16 AMP "For God so greatly loved and dearly prized the world that He [*even*] gave up His only begotten (unique) Son, so that whoever believes in (trusts in, clings to, relies on) Him shall not perish (come to destruction, be lost) but have eternal (everlasting) life."

1 John 4:8-10 NLT "But anyone who does not love does not know God, for God is love. ⁹ God showed how much He loved us by sending His one and only Son into the world so that we might have eternal life through Him. ¹⁰This is real love—not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son as a sacrifice to take away our sins."

Proverb 18:24b NLT "and there is a friend *that* sticketh closer than a brother."

We have All Sinned, and Our Sins or Disobedience to God's Laws have Cut Us Off from God.

Isaiah 64:5-6 NLT “You welcome those who gladly do good, who follow godly ways. But You have been very angry with us, for we are not godly. We are constant sinners; how can people like us be saved? ⁶ We are all infected and impure with sin. When we display our righteous deeds, they are nothing but filthy rags. Like autumn leaves, we wither and fall, and our sins sweep us away like the wind.”

Romans 3:23 NLT “For everyone has sinned; we all fall short of God’s glorious standard.”

Romans 3:19 NLT “Obviously, the law applies to those to whom it was given, for its purpose is to keep people from having excuses, and to show that the entire world is guilty before God. “

Romans 3:9b-12 NLT “For we have already shown that all people, whether Jews or Gentiles, are under the power of sin. ¹⁰ As the Scriptures say, “No one is righteous—not even one. ¹¹ No one is truly wise; no one is seeking God. ¹² All have turned away; all have become useless. No one does good, not a single one.”

Sin has a Consequence, a Judgment Day:

Romans 6:23 NLT “For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life through Christ Jesus our Lord.”

Isaiah 59:1-2 NLT “Listen! The LORD’s arm is not too weak to save you, nor is His ear too deaf to hear you call. ² It’s your sins that have cut you off from God. Because of your sins, He has turned away and will not listen anymore.”

Ezekiel 18:20 KJV “The soul that sinneth, it shall die.”

Hebrews 9:27 KJV “ And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment.”

Romans 14:10b KJV “For we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ.”

2 Corinthians 5:10 AMP “For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he hath done, whether *it be* good or bad.”

Matthew 25:41 KJV “Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.”

Luke 13:27-28 AMP “But he shall say, I tell you, I know you not whence ye are; depart from me, all ye workers of iniquity. ²⁸ There shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth, when ye shall see Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, and all the prophets, in the kingdom of God, and you *yourselves* thrust out.”

Exodus 34:7a NLT “I lavish unfailing love to a thousand generations. I forgive iniquity, rebellion, and sin. But I do not excuse the guilty.”

God has offered a Sins Payment Solution – Jesus Christ:

1 John 4:9-10 NLT “God showed how much He loved us by sending His one and only Son into the world so that we might have eternal life through Him. ¹⁰ This is real love—not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son as a sacrifice to take away our sins.”

John 1:12 LB “But to all who received him, he gave the right to become children of God. All they needed to do was to trust him to save them.”

2 Corinthians 5:21 LB “For God took the sinless Christ and poured into him our sins. Then, in exchange, he poured God’s goodness into us!”

Romans 3:24-26 NLT “Yet God, with undeserved kindness, declares that we are righteous. He did this through Christ Jesus when He freed us from the penalty for our sins. ²⁵ For God presented Jesus as the sacrifice for sin. People are made right with God when they believe that Jesus sacrificed His life, shedding His blood. ^{26b} He declares sinners to be right in His sight when they believe in Jesus.”

Romans 5:6-8 NLT “When we were utterly helpless, Christ came at just the right time and died for us sinners. ⁷ Now, most people would not be willing to die for an upright person, though someone might perhaps be willing to die for a person who is especially good. ⁸ But God showed

His great love for us by sending Christ to die for us while we were still sinners. ⁹ And since we have been made right in God's sight by the blood of Christ, He will certainly save us from God's condemnation. ¹⁰ For since our friendship with God was restored by the death of His Son while we were still His enemies, we will certainly be saved through the life of His Son. ¹¹ So now we can rejoice in our wonderful new relationship with God because our Lord Jesus Christ has made us friends of God. ¹² When Adam sinned, sin entered the world. Adam's sin brought death, so death spread to everyone, for everyone sinned. ¹³ Yes, people sinned even before the law was given. But it was not counted as sin because there was not yet any law to break. ¹⁴ still, everyone died—from the time of Adam to the time of Moses—even those who did not disobey an explicit commandment of God, as Adam did. Now Adam is a symbol, a representation of Christ, who was yet to come. ¹⁵ But there is a great difference between Adam's sin and God's gracious gift. For the sin of this one man, Adam, brought death to many. But even greater is God's wonderful grace and His gift of forgiveness to many through this other Man, Jesus Christ. ¹⁶ And the result of God's gracious gift is very different from the result of that one man's sin. For Adam's sin led to condemnation, but God's free gift leads to our being made right with God, even though we are guilty of many sins. ¹⁷ For the sin of this one man, Adam, caused death to rule over many. But even greater is God's wonderful grace and His gift of righteousness, for all who receive it will live in triumph over sin and death through this one Man, Jesus Christ. ¹⁸ Yes, Adam's one sin brings condemnation for everyone, but Christ's one act of righteousness brings a right relationship with God and new life for everyone. ¹⁹ Because one person disobeyed God, many became sinners. But because one other person obeyed God, many will be made righteous. ²⁰ God's law was given so that all people could see how sinful they were. But as people sinned more and more, God's wonderful grace became more abundant. ²¹ So just as sin ruled over all people and brought them to death, now God's wonderful grace rules instead, giving us right standing with God and resulting in eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord."

John 6:27-29 NLT "But don't be so concerned about perishable things like food. Spend your energy seeking the eternal life that the Son of Man can give you. For God the Father has given Me the seal of His approval. ²⁸ They replied, "We want to perform God's works, too. What should we do?" ²⁹ Jesus told them, "This is the only work God wants from you: Believe in the One He has sent."

We Can't Save Ourselves by Ourselves. Salvation or Right Standing before God is a Free Gift, Complements of Jesus Christ:

Romans 5:17 AMP For if because of one man's trespass (lapse, offense) death reigned through that one, much more surely will those who receive [*God's*] overflowing grace (unmerited favor) and the free gift of righteousness [*putting them into right standing with Himself*] reign as kings in life through the one Man Jesus Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One).

Romans 6:23 KJV "For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord."

Ephesians 2:8-9 NLT "God saved you by His grace when you believed. And you can't take credit for this; it is a gift from God. ² Salvation is not a reward for the good things we have done, so none of us can boast about it."

Titus 3:5 KJV "Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost."

Romans 3:20-23 NLT "For no one can ever be made right with God by doing what the law commands. The law simply shows us how sinful we are. ²¹ But now God has shown us a way to be made right with Him without keeping the requirements of the law, as was promised in the writings of Moses and the prophets long ago. ²² We are made right with God by placing our faith in Jesus Christ. And this is true for everyone who believes, no matter who we are. For everyone has sinned; we all fall short of God's glorious standard. ²⁷ Can we boast, then, that we have

done anything to be accepted by God? No, because our acquittal is not based on obeying the law. It is based on faith. ²⁸ So we are made right with God through faith and not by obeying the law.”

***God is merciful, willing to forgive, and He will not Reject Anyone
who comes to Him on His Terms:***

Numbers 14:18 KJV “The LORD *is* longsuffering, and of great mercy, forgiving iniquity and transgression, and by no means clearing *the guilty*.”

Romans 10:13 KJV “For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.”

Ephesians 2:4-5 NLT “But God is so rich in mercy, and He loved us so much, ⁵ that even though we were dead because of our sins, He gave us life when He raised Christ from the dead. (It is only by God’s grace that you have been saved!”

John 6:37 KJV “All that the Father giveth me shall come to me; and him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out.”

Revelations 3:20 NLT “Look! I stand at the door and knock. If you hear My voice and open the door, I will come in, and we will share a meal together as friends.

Matthew 11:28-30 NLT “Then Jesus said, “Come to Me, all of you who are weary and carry heavy burdens, and I will give you rest. ²⁹ Take My yoke upon you. Let Me teach you, because I am humble and gentle at heart, and you will find rest for your souls. ³⁰ For My yoke is easy to bear, and the burden I give you is light.”

Assurance of Salvation

We can Know, Based on God’s Promises (and not our Feelings) that We are Saved,
God has Accepted Us, and We Will Spend Eternity With Him:

1 John 2:25 KJV “And this is the promise that he hath promised us, *even eternal life*.”

John 5:24 AMP “I assure you, most solemnly I tell you, the person whose ears are open to My words [*who listens to My message*] and believes and trusts in and clings to and relies on Him Who sent Me has (possesses now) eternal life. And he does not come into judgment [*does not incur sentence of judgment, will not come under condemnation*], but he has already passed over out of death into life. “

2 Corinthians 5:17 LB “When someone becomes a Christian he becomes a brand new person inside. He is not the same anymore. A new life has begun!”

Revelations 3:20 LB “Look! I have been standing at the door and I am constantly knocking. If anyone hears me calling him and opens the door, **I will come in** and fellowship with him and he with me.”

Isaiah 1:18 NLT “Come now, let’s settle this,” says the LORD. “Though your sins are like scarlet, I will make them as white as snow. Though they are red like crimson, I will make them as white as wool.”

John 6:38-40 KJV “For I have come down from heaven to do the will of God who sent Me, not to do My own will. ³⁹ And this is the will of God, that I should not lose even one of all those He has given Me, but that I should raise them up at the last day. ⁴⁰ For it is My Father’s will that all who see His Son and believe in Him should have eternal life. I will raise them up at the last day.”

There Is a Reward for Soul Winning

Proverbs 11:30 KJV “He that winneth souls is wise, and they that lead many to righteousness shall shine as the stars forever and ever.”

1 Corinthians 9:16 KJV “Woe is unto me if I preach not the Gospel.”

Psalms 126:6 KJV “He that goeth forth an weepeth, bearing precious seed, shall doubtless come again rejoicing, bringing his sheaves with him”

John 4:35 KJV "Say not to yourselves, yet four months and then cometh the harvest. For I say unto you that the fields are already ripe unto harvest."

Matthew 9:38; Luke 10:2 KJV "Therefore pray ye the Lord of the harvest, that he will send forth laborers into his harvest."



Song: *Bringing In The Sheaves*

*Sowing in the morning, sowing seeds of kindness,
sowing in the noontime, and the dewy eves.
Waiting for the harvest, and the time of reaping,
We shall come rejoicing, bringing in the sheaves.*

My First Tract

In 1967, at age 17, I wrote my first tract titled *How Important Is Your Soul?* I printed it on a hand cranked [mimeograph machine](#) I ordered through the Sears catalogue for about \$75. The message was typed using a conventional typewriter on waxed coated sheets with a fiber backing. The metal cold type of a key stroke striking with force cut through the wax surface. If a mistake was made, a correction fluid from a small brush was applied to the mistake area. The ink



inside the machines drum with holes in the surface, was thrown against the holes by the centrifugal force of the rotating plate cylinder with the stencil attached to it, and oozed through the cut areas of type in stencil and onto the paper passing through that was pressed against the drum by a rubber friction roller. The cover artwork was drawn by hand using a stylus pen. I found a copy printed one side on old paper turning yellow with age, but it contained no cover artwork. The cover was a large question mark with words of the title hand written along its edge. The tract didn't contain a "[Sinner's Prayer](#)".

I had intended to spend my Summer vacation from high school printing Christian literature by this simple means in a shed my Dad and I had built behind our home, distributing it at the "coffee house" meetings held Friday evenings in a room behind the [Foursquare Church](#) in the nearby City of Carpinteria, CA. I knew so little about printing, I didn't carefully check for spelling mistakes, and the pastor of the church, Max Applegate, a teacher at my high school, confronted me about a grammatical error, and suggested I not be passing out this imperfect literature at his church. I think the error was actually made by my younger friend Jeff who became head of car testing at the General Motors Saturn Division. Now, in retyping this tract here, I found I had made about three "typos" in the original tract – Yikes! My Scientific Dad had concluded that tracts are not the most efficient way to spread the Gospel and he had put real pressure on me to either get a summer job or join the Army. What a way to start a printing ministry! Here is the tract.

How Important Is Your Soul?

I'm sure you have heard stories of poverty stricken men who sold their souls to the Devil. You accept them as fiction or fantasy. But could it be you've taken them too lightly? Let's assume you're in low straits; a very rough spot. You need help. Suddenly the figure of Satan appears before your eyes. You know its him because of the way he grins; or possibly by the pointed barb on his tail. He offers you one million dollars in

exchange for your soul. Would you unthinkingly accept his offer or quickly reject it; or would you get scared and run away? If you'd reject it – then why? Is it because you know how the story ends?

If you rejected this great offer of help in your time of need then surely you must place a great value upon the soul – but why? What's the soul? Can't we say that a person is made up of a body, soul, and spirit – and that the soul is the self-consciousness that responds to environment, and is the center of the senses – taste, touch, smell, hearing, sight? Thus it is indeed most valuable. One could not live without it. He would die.

Then what about when a person dies – what happens to his soul? Does it die with the body and remain in the grave to decay – or would you tell me that it goes to Heaven along with the person's spirit if they've led good lives? That seems to be partly right. The Bible says there is only one of two destinations for a person – Heaven or Hell. The person (soul and spirit) leaves the body. It never dies. The body is laid in the grave and returns to dust until the great judgment when it will be resurrected.

Judgment? What's that for? Well, the Word of God also states that men who disobey God will have to go with the Devil some day. God is a righteous God and therefore must punish man for his disobedience or sin. Even if a man commits only one single sin he can't be accepted into Heaven.

Now you're probably thinking that everyone is hopelessly doomed – right? Because you know that it is impossible for any man not to sin at all. And thus all men go to Hell – and the Devil gets their souls anyway – and their spirit along with it. And you're thinking how it's such a hopeless case when it's not!

Not a hopeless case? Do you think I'd be joking? Not at all! You must also know that God is a God of love.

Love?

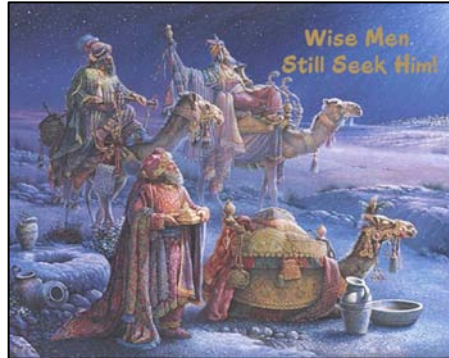
Yes, and He loves every sinner on earth. You're probably wondering now why God doesn't make a way out – a way that at least someone might get to Heaven. He already has! Men are sinners by nature, and sinners by practice, and are responsible for their actions. God demands death for sin – for the sinner to spend eternity in Hell; or a substitute death. But ever since the beginning of creation He made plans for this. It is the main theme of the Bible. He sent His Son Jesus Christ to earth as a man. Being a Son of God, Christ was able to lead a sinless life. He took upon himself all the past, present, and future sins of the world so that man through Him might be acceptable in the eyes of God. Is this not an ultimate love? Three days after Christ died, God his Father, raised Him from death to Heaven so that he became Victor over sin and death. Eternal life is Christ himself. He is the source of physical life and eternal life; He alone can give eternal life. The result is that there is now a way to Heaven – to be accepted as righteous by God. All we need to do is accept it.

But how does one do that?

Well, the Bible way to be saved is this:

Confess your sins to the Lord Jesus with your mouth. Repent and be sorry for all your sins. Forsake your wicked way of living. Call on Jesus and ask Him to come and live in your heart.

Holiday or Special Occasion Tracts



I was walking back from the mail box in our housing tract thinking that I am an [Evangelist](#) and my wife and I haven't even met all our neighbors, let alone talk to them about the Lord. Meanwhile, the [Jehovah's Witnesses](#) had been canvassing our neighborhood week after week. My wife wanted us to make a Valentine's Day tract and suggested a heart shaped cookies picture she had found on the computer in [Microsoft Word clip art](#). We then got the idea to attach the tract to a bag of cookies. At the [Dollar Tree store](#) we found ribbon and clear plastic bags with hearts printed on them. We went door to door with our gifts, were well received, and even got to pray with a neighbor. We also passed these out at our weekly Sunday Rescue Mission Church service for the homeless. I planned the sermon so we could close by all reading together the prayer of salvation on the back of the card each listener had received. We did the same thing on Easter Sunday. Using holidays, and current events in the news in writing tracts can help garner people's attention to the things of God.

Years ago, I went to see the first [Harry Potter Movie](#). The main character enrolled in a school for "[witchcraft](#) and [wizardry](#)". I was printing tracts for [Hope For Homeless Youth](#) at the [Dream Center](#) in Los Angeles, CA. A man went through their program who had been a [wizard](#). I packed up my desktop publishing computer equipment, put it in the car, and drove to the home of the director where we designed a tract titled *I Was a True Harry Potter Experience*. I printed 35,000 of these on the printing press. Pastor Clayton, the director, said he would like to put this tract in the hands of every high school student in the Los Angeles school district!



Another example: When a Muslim Army psychiatrist at [Fort Hood](#) went on a shooting spree, shouting "Allah Akbar!" I wrote a tract titled [Have You Been Hoodwinked?](#) picturing the Fort Hood medical center on the cover.

Writing & Publishing a Booklet or Book

Hopefully one's motivation for writing a book is more than making money. The objective should be wanting to spare others the grief and toil we went through learning life's hard lessons; or, learning from the trials and mistakes of others without our having to learn those lessons the hard way, ourselves. The Bible states that "The things which happened aforetime were written as ensamples...that we should not follow after the same manner of disobedience." – I Corinthians 10:6, 11. The immediate reference here is to the Children of Israel leaving Egypt, then, through unbelief ([Hebrews 4:6](#)) (not believing they could conquer the promised land like God and the two positive spies told them), they ticked God off, and wandered 40 years in the wilderness when they could have made it to the [land of Canaan](#) in just eleven days. That whole generation (except Joshua and Caleb) had to die off before the twelve tribes could move forward with God's promise and plan.

Another good motivation in writing a book follows the analogy of teaching a man to catch fish for himself, rather than your perpetually having to fish for him, preparing three meals a day, when we could be multiplying our efforts by teaching our talents and trade to others. The Apostle Paul told the younger upcoming Apostle, Timothy, "That which ye have received, the same commit also to faithful men who shall be able to teach others also." – 2 Timothy 2:2. The Lord told me prophetically, through someone under the anointing of the Holy Spirit, "You will train other to do what you do." On another similar occasion I was told "You are to write things that will help and benefit others, whether you think so or not." Fortunately, as I am doing right now in writing these very words, I can see evidence that the Lord is guiding me and making it easy. There is a saying, "Little is much, when God is in it."

Perhaps the first step in writing/making a book to be published yourself is to decide on a title and topics or chapter headlines, and then decide if you have the equipment and resources to do it, considering the limitations of that equipment. "For which of you, if he decides to build a building, does not first sit down and count the cost to see if he have sufficient to finish it?" – Luke 14:28. Whether you have and own the equipment, or are borrowing it to use, as with my perfect binder which was owned by the church, this chapter will give you the practical know how of putting it together on a computer with [Microsoft Office Word 2007](#), a [color laser printer](#), a [perfect binder](#) or paperback book gluing and cover inserting machine, a [roll laminator](#), and a [paper cutter](#). The Perfect binder I use can do up to 2" thick in a letter or letter half size. Two inches of 20 lb paper is about 500 sheets which, printed double sided, would give me a possibility of a book containing 1,000 pages. The accumulative thickness of the toner being printed on the sheets will probably take up 1/8". If the book is a letter half (5 1/2" wide by 8 1/2" tall) the top, bottom, and face will need a 1/16" or more trim. If one is starting with a standard letter size sheet readily available at warehouse princes at places like Costco, and one uses a full bleed to the edge after trim cover design, then an additional 3/16" trims off as

this is the no print margin area of the laser printer. Thus the total trim is ¼” off three sides making the finished bound book size 5” wide by 8” tall. A good inside margin dimension (so one doesn’t have to try and read down into the crack of the binding, is about 1”, and the outside margin is a little less, maybe .8” The bound book, from my experience, has to be trimmed for the edges to look smooth. If one uses an oversize cover stock taller than 8.5”, then one can gain an addition 3/16” width and 3/8” height by being able to first trim off the no print margin down to 8 ½” before putting the cover on, and then doing an additional 1/16” top and bottom trim after the book has been bound to make those surfaces smooth. If there are diagonal marks on the surface of the trimmed book, the paper cutter blade has been nicked and needs to be removed and sharpened at a tool supply store or saw shop. A guard is placed over the sharp edge. We pay about \$16 for getting a blade sharpened.

First decide, “Am I making a stapled booklet, or a paperback book with a glued spine?” The lowest quality booklet maker with stapler heads (rather than stitchers that make or form the staples each time from two spools of wire), is about ten thicknesses of 20 lb weight paper which equates to 40 to 88 pages in the booklet maker, depending on brand and model. The stitcher can do a couple of extra thicknesses of paper (additional sheets and the staple length is adjustable so thick booklets don’t have the staple barely folding over at the middle of the booklet. Thus a stitcher model can handle booklets up to 100 pages. The thickest booklets will require a face trim of up to 1/8” to make the edge even, and the spine area should be crushed by hand or with the paper cutter clamp so the middle of the booklet sits flat and doesn’t budge in the middle. Booklets of more than 80 pages should probably be bound as a paperback book or [comb bind](#). Cheap booklet makers (see inside of machine picture in this article) have fixed positions to staple in, but the distance between staples is predetermined for letter half and letter size booklets with two staples (i.e., collated sets of booklets being fed into the machine are letter size or tabloid size paper or “signature” sheets. One should make a “dummy” booklet first by taking the [signature sheets](#), folding them in half, and hand numbering the pages. For example, a letter half booklet of 36 pages will be printed both sides on 9 sheets of letter size paper folded in half. The number of pages you can make increases by 4 with each added signature sheet.

Whether the color laser printer or printing press being used can handle tabloid paper (11” by 17”) or only legal or letter size will determine whether the booklet is to be a letter half or letter size after folding. If the laser printer cannot duplex the sheet automatically, or the booklet is printed on a printing press, a [paper collator](#) will be needed. The tower models have friction or vacuum feed and come in 8 to 12 bin models.

The transition from booklet to paperback book is probably reached at 100 pages which is barely 1/10” thick and has almost no room to print the title and author’s name in the spine area of the cover. As with making a booklet, whether a glue bound book will be letter or letter half in size is determined by the limitation of the color laser printer or size

of the printing press being used. The big consideration is how long a cover sheet or book cover the machine can print. Even color laser printers that only do legal size can do a longer sheet through the bypass feed tray using a manufacturer's special software printer driver. In the case of my Ricoh / Lanier brand printer, this software driver is called "RCPS" and allows one to do banner printing possibly as long as 43". I read that Ricoh has now dropped this driver. A piece of paper long enough to do a two inch thick letter size book with a "full bleed" cover would make the needed length $8 \frac{1}{2} \times 2 + 2$ " spine width + $\frac{3}{16} \times 2$ no print margin + $\frac{1}{16} \times 2$ full bleed trims, a total length of $19 \frac{1}{2}$ ". This would require buying the coated one side 10 point thick short grain cover stock in a "parent size" and cutting it down with an expensive 20" or larger paper cutter. It would be cheaper and simpler to use one's existing smaller paper cutter like my 18" [Triumph 4705](#), and a standard 12" by 18" or smaller pre cut cover stock that is specifically made for digital laser printers and comes 250 sheets to a package for \$45 to \$65. To utilize this more readily available paper, one would need to make a thinner letter size book with fewer pages. How many pages, maximum would this be? There may be a 12" wide by 18" long limit of the [Postscript Level 3 software printer driver](#) on the computer, a driver that came with my Ricoh tabloid size color laser printer. There is also the size limit of the bypass or manual feed paper tray of 12" wide by 18" long. 18" less $\frac{3}{16}$ " no print area on both ends and a $\frac{1}{16}$ " trim on both ends to make the cover art of the bound book bleed to the edge, leaves $17 \frac{1}{2}$ ". The front and back cover widths of $8 \frac{7}{16}$ " ($16 \frac{7}{8}$ " total of the two) are subtracted from this leaving only $\frac{5}{8}$ " of binding area or thickness for the book. One ream of 500 sheets of 20 lb weight paper is about 2" thick and yields approximately 1,000 double sided printed sheets (but maybe as much as $\frac{1}{8}$ " less due to the cumulative build up of the thickness of the printed toner on the sheets). Using proportioning Algebra, $\frac{5}{8}$ " over 2" = X over 1000. $2X = .625 \times 1000$ or 625. $X = 625$ divided by 2 or 312. Cover stock is 10 point or .010" thick $\times 2 = .020$ ". 20 lb paper is about .003" thick per sheet. Thus, the cover thickness is equivalent to about 7 sheets of 20 lb paper. $312 - 7 = 305$. The answer is that, using a tabloid laser printer that can also print a 12" by 18" sheet in the bypass tray, to make the book cover, one can do a 20 lb paper book of 305 pages maximum less the thickness of the toner. It is safer to assume about 275 pages. These calculations are necessary for laying out on a computer, in a page layout program like [Adobe Indesign](#) or [Quark XPress](#), the cover for a book. Newer inkjet and laser printers can print sheets up to 24" long in the bypass or manual feed tray.

In making this book you are reading, I figured it would be about 150 back to back (duplexed) pages. I found the maximum thickness for a letter size book was 300 pages or $\frac{5}{8}$ ". This book then, which is half that amount, would require a $\frac{3}{5}$ " thick spine area or about .60". Another factor in deciding whether a book should be letter half or letter size is the tabloid laser printer's ability to run a letter half size sheet. If it can't then one would have to print a letter half book "two up" or two identical pages per sheet side by

side. I couldn't figure out how to do this using Microsoft Office Word 2007, so I decided on a letter size book. I did find a compromise for running letter half books formerly run on a smaller laser printer that could take the smaller letter half sheet. The newer and larger Ricoh printer duplex letter can feed half sheets in the bypass tray like the older model does, but it can't automatically duplex them. By increasing the right margin of the letter half book layout by about 5 ½ additional inches, I was able to get the book to show on the left half of the sheet one up. Then I could run it through the newer larger laser printer on letter size sheets that are fed in from the side in the main paper tray. First I would print one copy of the book in reverse order. Then I flipped the stack 180 degrees on the long side that fed into the machine before, and printed a second copy in straight collation order. I ended up with two letter half book contents on one stack of letter size paper. There is a disadvantage to doing it this way as it puts twice as much wear on the machine as running it two to a page printing the two copies in one pass. The imaging drums and the photo receptor belt in the machine, otherwise known as the intermediate transfer belt, have limited lifespan or number of copies they will do before wearing out. Running two copies in two passes on the machine shortens the life span of these parts by half and greatly increases the cost per copy. Perhaps laying out a letter half book two up from scratch in Adobe Indesign is the better way of doing it. I decide on making my first letter size book in Microsoft Word 2007 because inserting page numbers is easy, as well as pictures, and the text auto flows from one page to the next as it is typed in the document. Frankly, although I am pretty good at using Adobe Indesign for tract making, I don't know how to make books with it. My intent now is to describe, step by step, how to use Microsoft Office Word 2007 on the computer to make a book like this one, including how to insert pictures using a digital camera.

First, review the main parts of a book. The cover contains the book title, author's name, and background artwork that I like to "bleed" to all four sides, after using a paper cutter to trim off 1/16" after printing and binding. Down the spine area of the book cover, one puts the title and author again in smaller type size. The backside of the cover could contain a couple of positive reviews by those who have read the book, the author's picture, and the UPC symbol [barcode for books](#). Inside the cover of my book I put a picture of a sample future building I hope to have and who the book is printed by. On the inside of the back cover, I put "About the Author" and the author's picture and a scripture verse relevant to the [author's vision statement](#). The book insides begin with an [introduction](#) or [preface](#), [acknowledgments](#) or dedication page, [copyright permissions](#), [table of contents](#).

When making the table of contents page with chapter numbers, titles, and chapter start pages, one must make column like text boxes to put these items in, or they won't line up straight. In the task bar of Word, go to "Insert", then over to the right to "[Text Box](#)", then down to "Draw Text Box" near the bottom" Type the numbers and hit return

each time to make a column. You can click on the text box and move it around with the keyboard arrow keys to align the three boxes on the page.

Using Scripture verses from a translation other than the King James Version of 1611, will require printing an acknowledgement statement at the beginning of the book or even writing to the publishers for permission. Since I like using the Amplified and New Living Translations, I went to www.BibleGateway.com on the internet and they had a hypertext link for what kind of a statement the publishers want you to make. One problem, is that in writing something like a tract, it cannot contain more than 25% of the text from that translation.

Margin setting for the book can be 1" top and bottom and left with about $\frac{3}{4}$ " to $\frac{7}{8}$ " on the right. In Word, in the task bar, go to "Page Layout", then "Margins". One will need to check "Mirrored" because the book is being printed on both sides of the sheet and the backsides will need the wider margin for the spine area binding on the opposite side of the front or odd numbered pages. Normally, because of the full bleed cover, $\frac{1}{4}$ " will trim off the top, bottom, and face of the bound book. This is the $\frac{3}{16}$ " no print margin of the laser printer plus the additional $\frac{1}{16}$ " to make sure no white border shows on the finished cover. I figured out a way around this, a way of not cutting off but $\frac{1}{16}$ ", which is to use custom cover stock for making the cover and making the cover documents, inside of cover and outside, a custom size that is $\frac{3}{8}$ " wider and $\frac{3}{8}$ " longer. One would print the cover on this oversize sheet, cut it down to 11" or the same height as the book's inside pages, then do a final trim of $\frac{1}{16}$ " of the whole book after binding. The book making machine doesn't care if there is excess cover material sticking out in the face area, but top and bottom is too hard to get the cover centered over the content with different dimensions.

Here is how to lay out the book cover in Adobe Indesign CS2, both the inside and the outside, and the spine area title. I am using the cover of this book as a example.

1. With the computer on, open the Adobe Indesign CS2 Program by going to "Start" on the desktop, clicking on it with the mouse, and going to "All Programs", then "Adobe Indesign CS2". Wait until the program has fully loaded, then click and close the identification box in the middle of the screen.
2. Go to "File" in the pull down menus and click and then go down to "New", then "Document". In the Document Setup window that opens, set the Page Orientation to "Landscape" and 18" wide by 12" high.
3. Set the top and bottom margins for $\frac{5}{16}$ " or .3125". In setting the right and left margins, I determined the book would be 150 double sided pages. Thus the spine width would be 75 sheets of 20lb weight paper where the thickness of one sheet is about .003" or less thick, plus .020" for the thickness of the two 10 point covers. If 1000 printed sheets is a minimum of 2", then 150 sheets is .30 or just under $\frac{1}{3}$ ". $\frac{5}{16}$ " is close, a hair over, so I'll use that. The front and back of the cover take up 17". Adding the spine of $\frac{5}{16}$ " makes $17\frac{5}{16}$ ". The total of left and right margins is

then 11/16" and individually, half that or 11/32" which in decimal equivalent is .3406"
So for left and right margins, type in .3406

4. Make sure the program's "rulers" are showing in the top and left hand margins. If not, go to "Windows" pull down menu and check "[Rulers](#)".
5. Click with the mouse in the left ruler margin and drag out a blue line guide to the center of the document which is 9".
6. Drag out two more blue lines and place them 1/16" in from the left and right purple colored margin lines. This is where the face edge of the book will be after binding and 1/16" trim.
7. Drag two blue lines of the left ruler and place them 5/32" to both sides of the center line. These are the two folds at the edge of the glue binding.
8. Pull down two blue lines out of the top ruler area and put them 1/16" inside the purple margin markers. These are the top and bottom edges of the book after binding and trimming off 1/16" from the top and bottom.
9. Now we need to add four cut or trim marks to cut equal amounts off the printed cover to get it to 11" before inserting it on the book using the perfect binder machine. Select the line tool from the tools pallet. Now put the mouse cursor 1/2" down from the top of the document using the dotted gray line in the left ruler margin as a guide, while at the same time having the cursor 1/16" to the left or left edge of the document outline. Click and drag left to make a straight blue line about 1/4" long. Change the line segment to black color in the swatches pallet and one point thickness in the stroke pallet. If the stroke pallet isn't open or displaying, go to the "Windows" pull down menu and down and click on "Stroke". With the line segment you just made selected by clicking on it, go to "Edit" and then "Copy". Move the mouse cursor back in the document area and right click and go down to "Paste". You can keep doing this to make additional line segments. Click on the three additional line segments and drag them into positions at the four corners of the document, the edges where the paper will trim down to 11" before being bound to the book contents.
10. Later on, we will make a vertical short red colored line segment on the inside of the cover to serve as a centering mark for positioning the flat cover sheet (inside facing up, in the perfect Binder. This will assure that the book is bound in the center of the cover. If it is off, the face background may not "bleed" and the spine title won't be centered.

Now it's time to make equipment pictures to go on the back cover outside. On the more recent book back covers I have been using a quality group picture of the equipment in our Quonset hut print shop. On the older back cover I did a collage of our various machines. I try to hold the 5 megapixel digital camera steady and make the object fill the viewfinder to get the highest amount of detail. I find I have to use the flash

or the picture blurs. I find that if I back up and use the 3X zoom of the lens, The flash doesn't leave such glare marks in the photos.

1. I take digital camera pictures of each of the major pieces of equipment I have that make up a print shop such as paper cutter, color laser printer, computer, etc. It is always best to use a tripod on the camera and the ten second delay feature in taking the picture to minimize blur of the image.
2. Plug the camera into the computer's [USB port](#) or take the flash [SD memory card](#) out and put it into a [memory card reader](#) plugged into the computer.
3. Open Adobe Photoshop or [Photoshop Elements](#) or similar photo editing program. Go to "File", then "Open", then locate the drive that has the pictures on it, and select a picture at a time. You can click once on the number given to the picture and see it preview as a thumbnail in the center of the "Open" window. Open each picture and crop it as necessary using the "[marquis](#)" tool in the tools pallet, drawing a dotted rectangle around the area you want to keep and then doing "Image" and down to "Crop".
4. Adjust the brightness of the picture by going to "Image" then "Adjustments" then "[Levels](#)", then using the slider triangles to adjust as you watch the results. Click OK.
5. Adjust the size and resolution of the photo by going to "Image", then down to "Image Size". Make sure the three little square check boxes are checked to make the changes proportional. Change the size of the width of portrait photos to 2.125". On landscape photos, change the height to 2.125". Set the resolution for 250.
6. One can use the "Band Aide" (a [healing brush](#)) tool along with a mouse click and the "Alt key on the keyboard to remove blemishes in the paint of the equipment.
7. Save all these adjusted photos in a folder on the computer hard drive that is a subfolder under the book folder titled "cover" and then, inside that, "back cover photos".

One might as well get the front cover pictures ready at this time also.

1. Open a tract document on the computer in Adobe Indesign. If the tract is in PDF format it will open right into Photoshop. With each digital picture, working with one at a time, [place](#) them in Indesign, then draw a marquis around the cover material to select all items there, then go to "Object" and down to "[Group](#)". Now go to "Edit", then "Copy".
2. Open a new document window in the Indesign Program. Go to "Edit", then down to "Paste". Now, just the cover of a tract is showing. Now go to "File" then down to "Export", then select PDF as the type and make an intermediate place / folder to store these tract covers images. I named the folder "tract covers medium" since I want to make them smaller or a [thumbnail](#) size in Photoshop.
3. Now Open Adobe Photoshop again and go to "File", then "Open" and find one of the medium size tract covers and open it. Crop it so no white shows using the Marquis tool and "Image" then "Crop". In "Image" then "Image Size reduce the image so the

narrowest side is 2.125". Make the resolution 250. As you reduce size, you can increase the resolution and still maintain detail or sharpness. Save the image in JPEG, TIF, or PDF format and put it in a "tract covers small" folder as a subfolder under "Book Cover". Note that, when inserting pictures into a text box in Microsoft word, it seems best to use a JPEG file format image. When placing pictures on a Word Press based website, the JPEG seems to work, but PDF images don't work. When saving, first click on discard layer information (Layer - [Merge Visible](#)) so the resulting file size of the document is smaller. The idea here is that either the width or height of each tract [thumbnail](#) to be used in making a collage on the cover, has a common width so I can make a rectangle of tracts around the border of the cover that also bleed to the edge on all four sides of the book cover after 1/16" is trimmed off.

Now it's time to assemble to photos together on the back of the cover

1. Open the cover document in Adobe Indesign. In the right half, use the [picture box tool](#) with the X in it and draw a square with the mouse that is a little large than the photo we are placing. Now go to "File" and down to "[place](#)" then find the back cover pictures small folder and place pictures one per picture box. If the picture box made isn't big enough to see all the picture, click on the little squares around the border of the selected box. Clicking on the [white arrow tool](#) (direct selection tool) in the tools pallet allows one to click inside the picture box and see a brown outline of the actual size of the "Placed" picture. By holding down the shift key and dragging a corner of this brown box border around the picture, one can proportionally increase or decrease the size of the photo. Afterwards, click on the [black arrow tool](#) and make the blue border around the picture near the size of the picture. One can then click in the area of the picture and drag it around the desktop to position the picture where wanted. By clicking with the mouse on the brown bordered picture and not holding down the shift key when one drags, one can tweak the picture to fit better in a desired spot, so there are no gaps between pictures.
2. Move the pictures into position on the back cover within the document borders but so 1/16" sticks out to make a full bleed cover after trim. By using "Object" then down to "[Arrange](#)" then "Send backwards" or something similar, one can control the overlap of the pictures to get them all in the document. I put the printing press in the middle first and then made the other photos fit around it. If you use the [magnifying glass tool](#) and scroll around the document using the [hand tool](#) or border of document sliding bars, you can make sure there are no hairline white gaps between pictures. In one case, the picture of the laminator had a white area above the machine that I didn't like after I made the collage. I opened that picture in Photoshop, then used the [magic wand tool](#) and clicked in that white area to select it. Next I used the alt key and the eyedropper tool to select another area of solid color in the picture. I then

selected the Paint Bucket tool and clicked to put in the color in the white area to get rid of the white.

The back of the cover is done, now to make the front of the cover.

1. With the Adobe Indesign cover outside document open, I began to draw picture boxes anywhere on the desktop and file place all the small tract covers into individual text boxes.
2. Next I put the pictures in position. First I took the Messiah's Identity Revealed picture and put it in the upper left hand corner of the right half of the cover document, remembering not to go beyond the fold and into the spine area, and remembering also to extend the top of the picture 1/16" beyond the top trim marker. Across the top I placed landscape layout pictures like A Father's Steadfast Love. There was a space in between I needed to fill so I put the How To Live Forever tract cover there and made it fit by [resizing](#) it. On this one I didn't make the black outline border go above the trim line so that, after trim, there would still be a black border around all four sides of this tract. When I put the Arabic Who Is Jesus tract on the right, there was no color border around it so I decided to make a black outline rectangle using the box tool and coloring it black in swatches pallet and 2pt wide in the stroke pallet. I noticed I had to use the [magnifying glass tool](#) and blow the document up to 200% or more to see if there were unwanted white gaps between pictures.
3. Now to make the Titles. This required three text boxes since the black in the middle doesn't have a [drop shadow](#), but the type in the main title and author's name do. First I use the text box tool with the T in it from the tools pallet and with the mouse draw a text box almost as wide as the black rectangle I made as a border around the white space inside the pictures border. In the Character pallet I selected CAC Moose for typeface and 50 points for type size. In the [Swatches](#) pallet, I clicked on the two small overlapping white squares and set the outline for black at about .5pt thick. In the fill, I wanted 185 red which wasn't a choice of available colors. In the Swatches pallet I clicked on the small triangle in the circle near the upper right corner of the pallet. I went to [New Color Swatch](#), chose [Spot](#), and Pantone solid coated. In the next window that opened, I typed 185 in the middle near the top and clicked ok and PMS 185 appeared in the Swatches pallet so I could choose it for a type fill color. I then typed in the title with the "centered" icon selected in the Paragraph / Transform pallet. I clicked the Enter key after each word to make three lines. Now I wanted to add a [Drop Shadow](#) to the lettering so I clicked on the [black arrow tool](#), then with the mouse cursor went to Object in the pull down menu and down to Drop Shadow. I clicked to put a check mark in the [Add Drop Shadow box](#). I typed in 45% and .05 for blur, offset, etc, selections and clicked OK and observed the result. To make the author's name text box, I first selected the [Text tool](#) and then clicked and dragged across the pain title. Then I went to Edit and then Copy. Now I drew another text box that was about the same width as the first, but narrower. I then

went to Edit and then Paste and copied the main title text into the new text box. I clicked and dragged across it and made it about 20pt in size and typed over the existing text the author's name and degrees which replaced the text with the new text. I selected the black arrow tool in the tools pallet and clicked on the text box I had just made and sized and moved it into position by clicking and dragging with the mouse. Next I selected the Text tool and drew the third text box and CAC Moose and black with no fill. I typed in the subtitle and used the black arrow tool to arrange the three pieces of text to look good on the surrounding white portrait background.

4. Now for the book spine title. I used the text tool and drew a long narrow landscape text box. For font I chose CAC Moose, and made the fill PMS 185 red and the black outline .25points in thickness in the stroke pallet. The size of the type is about 12 points. The sub title is black only and the Author's name is CAC moose like the main title. To [rotate the text box](#) I selected it with the black arrow tool and then went to the Transform tab in the Paragraph pallet, and typed in -90 degrees then hit the enter key. This turned the text on end. I selected the black arrow key and used the mouse to click and drag the title into the spine area white background. Final positioning was done with the keyboard arrow keys. I made sure the centering of the type in the [Paragraph pallet](#) is "Left". By adding spaces with the keyboard space bar, I was able to space the lettering so that there is about ½" of margin from the edge of the type to the trim marks on the book, both top and bottom.
5. The last cover outside design item would be send an e-mail to the [Bowker](#) company back east and buy a UPC symbol bar code for a book with integrated ISBN (not a CD or other kind of product), have them send it by e-mail attachment, and draw a picture box on the back cover and place the UPC symbol there.

This is the end of making the outside of the cover.

To make the inside of the cover:

1. I went, in Indesign, to Layout in the pull down menus then Pages, then, add one page after the current page. Using the first page or cover outside blue lines as examples, I made new blue lines on page two and put them in the same positions they are on the outside document page. In addition, I used the line tool to make a ¼" long 2pt wide red marker for the center of the book, made it vertical, and positioned it at the top trim mark for the finished book. This serves as a guide for positioning the flat cover sheet in the book making machine which has a red arrow to indicate the center.
2. I felt led to put a picture of a future metal building I wanted to someday have for ministry expansion and I found one of sufficient quality by searching with the Google search engine under metal buildings. Using the [text tool in Photoshop](#) and other finer adjustments, I was able to slightly crop the picture, type caption in white below the building in the picture, and write HIS Print Media Ministries on the side of the building in green type in a perspective style making it look smaller as it got further

away from the viewer. I drew a [picture box](#) in Indesign and Placed this picture from where I had it stored on my computer's hard drive. Below the picture I made another text box and typed in black the publish date, and contact information for the publisher. This completed the inside of the front cover.

3. For the inside of the back cover, I made a text box and selected 14 point Arial typeface. I opened the document I had already made in Microsoft Word containing the About the Author and my picture. I dragged over and selected all the text in Word and copied it and then went back to Indesign and File and Paste and put it in. I then drew a picture box and was able to copy and paste the picture from Word into Indesign. I think it better to Place the picture from where it is stored on the computer. Under Object then [Text Frame Options](#), I was able to move the picture over the text and have the text wrap around it. I felt inspired to add a Scripture verse to the bottom of the existing text so I looked it up in the [E-sword program](#) and copied and pasted it into Indesign in the same text box, but I had to drag across the pasted text and change it to the same font and size as the rest of the text.
4. I went to the links pallet in Indesign and clicked on each linked picture in the list and then the little triangle in the circle and embedded each picture into the document so it travels with the document and the link won't end up missing.
5. I turned on the tabloid color laser printer and set it up in the software to print on card stock from the bypass or manual feed tray on a 12" by 18" sheet. I experimented and found the printer printed on the bottom side of the sheet and then I had to flip the paper 180 degrees on the long side to print the second side. I used a razor blade knife and tripped the document with an 18" ruler as a guide so the document bled to the edge on four sides. I then used the scoring machine I had bought at Staples for about \$29 and scored the inside of the cover at the two fold points. I carefully folded the cove stock 90 degrees on each of these two score marks and got to see what the cover would look like on a book. I then went back and made some minor improvements to the document and resaved it.

Now, to finish the inside of the book, mainly, [adding pictures](#) and [page numbers](#) in Microsoft Word, and making the chapter start pages all odd numbered pages, as well as creating a [Table of Contents](#). For the table of contents, [scroll](#) through the beginning pages of the document to find where to put the table of contents. Now, in Microsoft Word 2007, at the top of the program window, go to "Insert", then down and to the left to "Blank page", and a page is automatically inserted. Go back to the Home tab, chooses the icon for centered text, pick Bold, then type in Table of Contents. Hit the enter key, take off the bold, and set text alignment to the right. Now type in Chapter, followed by spaces, then Title or Topic, then more spaces and type Page, then hit the enter key. Spaces can be added between these words later to position them for best fit and look. Now we make three vertical columns necessary to keep the lists of chapter numbers, chapter titles, and chapter start page numbers straight. Go to the Insert tab again then

to “Text Box”, then “Draw text Box”. The cursor changes to a +. Click and drag to form a portrait narrow and tall box. Then go to “Text Box Styles”. A small box at the right, when clicked on, brings up [Advanced Tools](#). Here, in this new box, select none for fill color and for outline “No Outline”. Notice that if you hold the mouse cursor at the edge of the blue highlighted box, you can get a move icon and click and move the box within the page with the mouse. If you double click the box, you can move it with the keyboard arrow keys. You can also extend the size of the box by clicking and dragging on one of its sides. Position the box below “Chapter” and Chose something like the Arial font and 12pt size. Type a number 1, then hit return, and type successive numbers. Now go to “Insert” again, then “Text Box” then “Draw a Text Box” and place the mouse cursor to the right of the first text box with numbers in it and click and drag to make a wider text box for chapter titles. Make a third box near the right margin and type the page numbers there of the chapter starts. I couldn’t figure out when I added page numbers in the footer of the document how to get the beginning of Chapter One to have a page number 1, so, I left it whatever number it is, since the Word program began numbering from the first page in the document which was acknowledgements and copyright permissions. Move these three text boxes around on the page by double clicking on them and using the keyboard arrow keys, and align them so, reading across from left to right, the text in each column starts on the same level. I decided I wanted each chapter title to have 6pt of space after it, but have titles taking two lines to have no additional spacing between the lines. This means the line spacing between the numbers in the first and last column have to be adjusted to align with the middle column. This seems to be a trial and error adjustment method that is accessed by being in the “Home” tab and then opening “Paragraph” and varying the “Before” and “After” under “[Spacing](#)”.

After typing all the chapters in the contents of the book, and inserting pictures, and making sure that each chapter title starts at the top of its own page, it is time to insert page numbers. Go to the “Insert” tab, then over to “Page Number” then down to “[Format Page Numbers](#)”. Pick a number style and click on OK. In “Page Number” pick where on the page you want the page number to appear. Now the page numbers appear in the document, but the chapter start pages must be odd numbered pages so when the book is bound they appear on the right and not the left. Scroll with the mouse to the beginning of each chapter and if the chapter doesn’t start on an odd page, place the cursor in front of the title and click, and go to the Insert, then to Blank Page which automatically inserts a blank page before that chapter start, moving that chapter start page to an odd numbered page. Keep in mind that adding more text to the document and additional pictures, etc. may move the starting pages of chapter to an even page and another blank page may have to be inserted. When the book is the way you want it, write down the page numbers of the various chapter starts and type them into the Page column on the right in the Table of Contents.

For [adding pictures](#) one can simply go to the Insert tab and then click on the Picture icon which will open a window for you to find a stored picture on your computer. When you find one and click ok, the picture is inserted into the document at the point where you were typing. If you hold down the shift key and click and drag the corner of the picture, you can proportionally resize it. If you double click the picture, the “[Format](#)” tab opens at the top of the document with choices for adjusting the picture in terms of brightness and contrast, putting a border or drop shadow on the picture, and position on the page. The [Text Wrap](#) feature allows you to drag the picture over text and adjust the text to flow around the picture. Here I think it is best to make a text box around the picture or first draw a text box, click inside it and then do Insert and Picture. That way you can click on the text box and move the picture around a small amount at a time with more control using the keyboard arrow keys. There is also a feature I came across that allows you to easily insert a caption under the picture, but I can’t seem to find it.

In closing this chapter, please be sure that you have gone to the Page Layout tab, then “Margins” then “Custom” and clicked on “[Mirrored Margins](#)” and applied it to the whole document. You will be printing the book document double sided and hopefully you will have a laser printer that has built in automatic duplexer. My prayer is that as you begin writing and publishing books, the Lord make you to have what the Bible states in Psalm 45:1 AMP “My tongue is like the pen of a ready writer.”

It seems the easiest way to book publication is [Self-Publishing with Amazon.com](#). One uploads the book word document to them, and they take care making the paperback books, and also e-books. If one charges a low enough price (\$3.99 for e-books and 9.99 for printed books), the author gets 2/3rds of the royalties (profits from sales), and they handle the sales and record keeping.

FAQs: General Questions about ISBN*

[What is an ISBN?](#)

[What is the purpose of an ISBN?](#)

[What is the format of the ISBN?](#)

[Does the ISBN have any meaning imbedded in the numbers?](#)

[Why do some ISBNs end in an "X"?](#)

[Who can assign ISBNs to a publisher?](#)

[Who is eligible for an ISBN?](#)

[How long does it take to get an ISBN?](#)

[How much does it cost to get an ISBN?](#)

[What do I do when I receive the ISBN and where is it printed?](#)

[How & where do I register my ISBN?](#)

[Can a publisher have both an ISBN & ISSN?](#)

[How can I find an assigned ISBN?](#)

[How are ISBNs used in a Bar Code & how do I obtain one?](#)

[How do I select the correct amount of ISBNs?](#)

[What is the format of the new ISBN-13?](#)

[Does the ISBN-13 have any meaning embedded in the numbers?](#)

[Where does an ISBN get placed on a book?](#)

[What is the difference between a bar code and an ISBN?](#)

[Does it matter where a book is printed?](#)

[If a publisher is selling their books on their own and are not trying to place them in stores or libraries or with wholesalers, is an ISBN required?](#)

[Do ISBNs have to be assigned to books that are not being sold?](#)

[Are different ISBNs used if a book appears in different languages?](#)

[Are custom publications assigned ISBNs?](#)

What is an ISBN?

The International Standard Book Number (ISBN) is a 13-digit number that uniquely identifies books and book-like products published internationally.

What is the purpose of an ISBN?

The purpose of the ISBN is to establish and identify one title or edition of a title from one specific publisher and is unique to that edition, allowing for more efficient marketing of products by booksellers, libraries, universities, wholesalers and distributors.

What is the format of the ISBN?

Every ISBN consists of thirteen digits and whenever it is printed it is preceded by the letters ISBN. The thirteen-digit number is divided into four parts of variable length, each part separated by a hyphen.

Does the ISBN have any meaning embedded in the numbers?

The four parts of an ISBN are as follows:

- Group or country identifier which identifies a national or geographic grouping of publishers;
- Publisher identifier which identifies a particular publisher within a group;
- Title identifier which identifies a particular title or edition of a title;
- Check digit is the single digit at the end of the ISBN which validates the ISBN.

Why do some ISBNs end in an "X"?

In the case of the check digit, the last digit of the ISBN, the upper case X can appear. The method of determining the check digit for the ISBN is the modulus 11 with the weighting factors 10 to 1. The Roman numeral X is used in lieu of 10 where ten would occur as a check digit.

Who can assign ISBNs to a publisher?

There are over 160 ISBN Agencies worldwide, and each ISBN Agency is appointed as the exclusive agent responsible for assigning ISBNs to publishers residing in their country or geographic territory. The United States ISBN Agency is the only source authorized to assign ISBNs to publishers supplying an address in the United States, U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam and Puerto Rico and its database establishes the publisher of record associated with each prefix.

Once an ISBN publisher prefix and associated block of numbers has been assigned to a publisher by the ISBN Agency, the publisher can assign ISBNs to publications it holds publishing rights to. However, after the ISBN Agency assigns ISBNs to a publisher, that publisher cannot resell, re-assign, transfer, or split its list of ISBNs among other publishers. These guidelines have long been established to ensure the veracity, accuracy and continued utility of the international ISBN standard.

As defined by the ISO Standard, the ISBN publisher prefix (or "root" of the ISBN) identifies a single publisher. If a second publisher subsequently obtains an ISBN from the assigned publisher's block of ISBNs, there will be no change in the publisher of record for any ISBN in the block as originally assigned. Therefore, searches of industry databases for that re-assigned ISBN will identify the original owner of that assigned prefix as the publisher rather than the second publisher. Discovering this consequence too late can lead to extensive costs in applying for a new prefix, re-assigning a new ISBN, and potentially leading to the application of stickers to books already printed and in circulation.

If you are a new publisher, you should apply for your own ISBN publisher prefix and plan to identify and circulate your books properly in the industry supply chain. You may encounter offers from other sources to purchase single ISBNs at special offer prices; you should be wary of purchasing from these sources for the reasons noted above. There are unauthorized re-sellers of ISBNs and this activity is a violation of the ISBN standard and of industry practice. A publisher with one of these re-assigned ISBNs will not be correctly identified as the publisher of record in Books In Print or any of the industry databases such as Barnes and Noble or Amazon or those of wholesalers such as Ingram. If you have questions, contact the US ISBN Agency for further advice.

Who is eligible for an ISBN?

The ISBN Agency assigns ISBNs at the direct request of publishers, e-book publishers, audio

cassette and video producers, software producers and museums and associations with publishing programs.

How long does it take to get an ISBN?

Allow 5 business days for non-priority processing from the time an ISBN application is received at the agency (not from the date sent by the publisher.) Priority processing is two business days from the time an application is received at the agency. Express processing is 24 business hours.

How much does it cost to get an ISBN?

There is a service fee to process all ISBN applications. Service fee information is contained on the application. Priority and Express processing involve an additional fee.

NOTE: The processing service charge is NON-REFUNDABLE.

What do I do when I receive the ISBN and where is it printed?

An ISBN should be assigned to each title or product, including any backlist or forthcoming titles. Each format or binding must have a separate ISBN (i.e. hardcover, paperbound, VHS video, laserdisc, e-book format, etc). A new ISBN is required for a revised edition. Once assigned, an ISBN can never be reused. An ISBN is printed on the lower portion of the back cover of a book above the bar code and on the copyright page.

How & where do I register my ISBN?

Once ISBNs have been assigned to products they should be reported to R.R. Bowker as the database of record for the ISBN Agency. Companies are eligible for a free listing in various directories such as Books in Print, Words on Cassette, The Software Encyclopedia, Bowker's Complete Video Directory, etc.

NOTE: Receiving just your ISBNs does NOT guarantee title listings. To ensure your titles get in the Books in Print database you must submit your title information.

Book titles should be registered with Books in Print at www.bowkerlink.com

Can a publisher have both an ISBN & an ISSN?

Both numbering systems are used for books in a series and with annuals or biennials. The ISBN identifies the individual book in a series or a specific year for an annual or biennial. The ISSN identifies the ongoing series, or the ongoing annual or biennial serial. If a publication has both, each should be printed on the copyright page.

How can I find an assigned ISBN?

The Publications (hard copy listings) in which the assigned ISBNs appear are Publishers, Distributors & Wholesalers of the United States, published by R.R. Bowker, and Literary Market Place, published by Information Today.

How are ISBNs used in a Bar Code & how do I obtain one?

The ISBN can be translated into a worldwide compatible bar code format. Publishers who wish to have their ISBNs translated into worldwide compatible bar codes can now make their request

directly online at www.isbn.org or www.bowkerbarcode.com . Bar code scanning is a required step required by for many retailers in the sales transaction process for book publications and book-related items. We hope that offering this service will save you time and enable you to meet all of your transaction partners' requirements.

How do I select the correct amount of ISBNs?

ISBNs are sold in blocks of 10, 100, and 1000. When purchasing ISBNs, we recommend that you estimate the amount of publications you will be publishing within the next five years, and select the block that best suits your needs. It is always best to select the block that will last you for a few years because you will be able to maintain one publisher prefix, and minimize the unit cost per ISBN. When purchasing a larger block of ISBNs, the price per ISBN decreases.

What is the format of the new ISBN-13?

Every ISBN will consist of thirteen digits in 2007. The thirteen digit number is divided into five parts of variable length, each part separated by a hyphen.

Does the ISBN-13 have any meaning imbedded in the numbers?

The five parts of an ISBN are as follows:

1. The current ISBN-13 will be prefixed by "978"
2. Group or country identifier which identifies a national or geographic grouping of publishers;
3. Publisher identifier which identifies a particular publisher within a group;
4. Title identifier which identifies a particular title or edition of a title;
5. Check digit is the single digit at the end of the ISBN which validates the ISBN.

Where does an ISBN get placed on a book?

An ISBN gets placed on the copyright page and, if there is no bar code, on the back cover.

What is the difference between a bar code and an ISBN?

An ISBN is a number. A bar code is the graphic with vertical lines that encodes numerical information for scanning purposes. An ISBN and a bar code are two different things.

Does it matter where a book is printed?

No, books can be printed anywhere. ISBNs are assigned based on the geographical location of the publisher, not the printing company.

If a publisher is selling their books on their own and are not trying to place them in stores or libraries or with wholesalers, is an ISBN required?

No, an ISBN is not required.

Do ISBNs have to be assigned to books that are not being sold?

No, they do not have to be assigned, but they can be.

Are different ISBNs used if a book appears in different languages?

Yes. Each language version is a different product.

Are custom publications assigned ISBNs?

No, custom publications are not assigned ISBNs unless such assignment is necessary for a publisher's back office systems, such as finance, since there is only one customer in such arrangements.

[Bowker](#) is an affiliated business of [ProQuest](#). | © 2014 R.R. Bowker LLC. All rights reserved.

For support, please call us toll-free at **1-877-310-7333**.

[Contact Us](#) | [ISBN Terms of Use](#) | [Bowker Statement of Use](#) | [Privacy Policy](#)

*Note: This information was copied from the official ISBN website on the internet.

If one wants to buy a single book barcode and ISBN number, instead of minimum of ten from the Bowker company, he can go through [Publisher Services](#) and pay \$55 (as of 12/6/2011). For additional fees they do book formatting, etc., with a *Complementary Hard Proof Author Copy* for \$349 (the Base Cost for Publishing as of 12/6/2011). They also do digital formatting of books in the Kindle (\$180+) and e-pub formats.

Roy and Susan Cypher of [Taking it to the Streets](#), visit us to work on their books which we manufacture. In the past they had used ISBN numbers and bar codes, but we decided they didn't need to do that since their booklet and upcoming new book are mainly distributed by them personally at places they speak and minister. My wife and I are writing a new book titled *Our God Stories*. My mother, who had purchased a set of ten ISBN numbers from Bowker when she published her book, [Settlers of the Sod](#), agreed to let us use one of the ISBN numbers she bought. I contacted Bowker, and we are waiting to find out how many pages will be in the book and what we will charge for a copy. Then I will contact Bowker and they will produce and send me by e-mail attachment, and updated ISBN number including a barcode and price. I will place it on the back cover of the book and place the ISBN number on the copyright page.

What's This "Born-Again" Business? (Understanding God's Plan of Salvation)

Note: This chapter is now posted as a separate free downloadable [PDF](#) read order e-booklet item on our website www.tracts4u.com. This clickable link takes you to that document if you are reading this [desktop publishing](#) guide book in [e-book](#) rather than printed copy form: [Born Again read order e-booklet](#). I also have been printing it as a booklet to be used for follow-up after a person become a Christian - It explains in detail what happened to them when they asked Jesus to come into their heart as Personal Lord and Savior. When I did this at age eleven, my emotions were somewhat shut down, and I wondered for three years afterwards if I was really saved. God's Bible promises said I am, but my feelings didn't tell me that. Printed booklets are available by e-mailing info@tracts4u.com.

While living with and working for my parents on their ranch (about 1981), I felt inspired to write something on the scriptural background behind the concept of "getting saved". Thirty pages flowed out of me and I feel I should share it here, with a few additions or improvements. As an [Evangelist](#), I have been praying for a "revelation of Jesus Christ" or divine revelation regarding God's plan of Salvation for mankind from eternity past to eternity future. This is not it, but is helpful in doing a better job of reaching the lost soul. This paper became a sermon topic at public locations I was asked to preach at. Keep in mind that the statistics I quote were taken in the early 1980's.

Here's an interesting topic – interesting because some sixty million Americans are involved in it. This topic, the title of my sermon (tonight) is: What's This "Born-Again Business?" I pick up the news paper. The [Gallup Company](#) has taken another poll! They say some 60 million Adult Americans (one half of the U.S. population) claim they've had a "Born-Again" experience. An earlier poll a few years ago said 50 million. This is a growing phenomenon. It's happening to people from all walks of life, and it's changing the hell out of the most unlikely people – characters like former [communist](#) and [Black Panther Eldridge Cleaver](#) who now emphatically states that an individual personal encounter with Jesus Christ is the best way to change or reform the world for good. I heard him give his testimony – it's really touching; yet, when I mention this, some insist that Eldridge hasn't or couldn't have changed. Then we have [Chuck Colson](#), a Richard Nixon "hatchet man", a prisoner turned preacher to prisoners. He wrote a book, a best seller, I believe it was, titled, *Born Again*. This brings to mind [Charles Tex Watson](#) of the [Charles Manson Cult](#) – the one responsible for the brutal murder of [Sharon Tate](#). Watson became assistant chaplain at the prison where he was serving time. Perhaps the most dramatic case I can remember is that of Jim Tucker, a bank robber, weight lifter, Hell's Angel, American Nazi Party member, and Satanist who tried

to shoot and kill his school teacher during class at age eight. Jim is now a man of the cloth!

This born-again group now includes singer Bob Dylan and notable movie stars such as Pat Boone, Cheryl Ladd of the TV series *Charlie's Angels*, Dean Jones, Jane Fonda, and the late Steve McQueen, not to mention Ronald Reagan, according to a March '81 article in *The Ladies Home Journal* titled, *Going Back to God in Godless Hollywood*. Movie stars have all had all the popularity, sex, drugs, riches, you or I could want, and they're still not satisfied, still searching for true happiness – that's why they're taking another look, a closer look at the God of their childhood, the subject of a song by Rev. Kenneth Copeland, "I have returned, to the God of my childhood, to the same simple faith, that as a child I once knew...and the God I outgrew."

On the other hand, this *born-again* experience is happening to some of the world's most religious people such as [Rabi Maharaj](#) from India who authored the book *Death of a Guru*. Although one might rightly say that the majority of *born-again* people are religious; believe it or not, religion (being religious or of a certain Church denomination or affiliation, having Christian parents, or being raised in a Christian home) – all this is not a prerequisite to being *born-again*. You'll see why as we discuss this further. My mother's side of the family were devout Christians and my Grandmother prayed over me and dedicated me to the Lord when I was born, and although I began attending a church of their same denomination and had been going there a year with my sister, I was not yet *born again*.

Well, if 60 million Americans are testifying that, spiritually, being *born-again* is the best way to go – "the only way to fly", we ought to know about it – we need to find out what's gotten into these people or what this *born-again* business is all about. For sure, pollsters show us, this group has been growing in numbers. Some of us may not like it, but it's something we're going to have to learn to like or to live with. In the case of *The Galloping Gourmet* TV cook, [Graham Kerr](#), for example, he found out it had happened to his wife!

The fourth largest television network in the USA, [CBN](#), is promoting this phenomenon. As you can see, it is dramatically revolutionizing for the good people from all walks of life – especially people like yourself – so how can you knock it! It's coming your way, so let's be informed and be prepared. "What is this Born-Again Business?" I went through a year of Bible College and two years of Theology School, to find out. Here's the scoop as I see it and have experienced it. I've been *born-again* over nineteen years now and I just recently figured out what all happened to me. It is obvious that *something* happened. There's been such a change in me that my formerly agnostic and still scientific Dad figured those religious fanatics on my mother's side had done something to me during my occasional visits to the farm in South Dakota. When I went to Georgia to work with a seasoned Evangelist, the family began to think I needed to be

deprogrammed, as they had my Aunt travel an additional 90 miles from her company meeting in Atlanta to check on me.

Born-again is a familiar term in some circles; but, all too often, theology students like myself develop this religious Bible lingo or jargon and we fail to communicate in talking to those outside our line of study. We assume that others know what we're (what I'm) talking about. It reminds me of the two black men speaking *jive* in the movie *Airplane*. I mean using words like the word *theology* that I just used a moment ago. It can be divided or broken down into the two Greek words *Theos* (God), and *ology* (the study of). *Theology*, then, is the study of God. Other words I might otherwise use are: *Propitiation*, *Salvation*, *Righteousness*, *Justification*, *Sanctification*, and *Redemption*, to name a few. Take the word *Redemption*, for example; or, *Salvation*. We know about the Salvation Army or, for those of you who are a little older, the location of the nearest [Blue Chip stamp](#) redemption store; but this is probably the limited extent of our understanding of such terms. You walk down the street in downtown Los Angeles. Someone hands you a tract and says, "Are you saved?" "Saved, what's that? Saved from what?" you might well reply if you didn't feel embarrassed and weren't in such a hurry. As a bit of humor, take the word *assume* I used earlier and break it down – *ass* – *u* – *me*. When I assume that you understand what I'm talking about, and you don't, it makes an *Ass* out of *You* and *Me*.

I know many of you have been to various Rescue Missions, Churches, or Salvation Army meetings across the country, or possibly a Billy Graham Crusade, at some time in your life. Some of you have probably heard more sermons than I've heard or preached, especially on the subject of being or getting *saved*. Oops, there's one of those theological words again! Just the same, I will not assume that you've not understood all the religious or Biblical nomenclature that's come from this and other pulpits like it all across our land. I was told by other ministers that I don't break terms down enough for new Christians or non-Christians to understand. I checked this out and found out they were right! At a nearby boys camp chapel service we sang that old standby [Amazing Grace](#). I asked if anyone knew what the word *grace* meant. One young man raised his hand and exclaimed "I always thought that *grace* is what you say before meals." On this topic I've endeavored to explain things as clearly and as simply as I know how.

The word *born-again* was coined by Jesus Christ when a leader of the Jews named Nicodemus came to see Jesus at night. Nick must have sensed that something was lacking in his life, something Jesus either had or knew about. Nick, and other Jewish leaders like him had been anticipating the arrival of the promised [Jewish Messiah](#) or Anointed One, and he wondered if Jesus were the One. This is substantiated by the following Bible references:

Daniel 9:25 κβ "Know therefore and understand, *that* from the going forth of the *commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the Messiah the Prince shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks: the street shall be built again, and the wall, even in troublous times.*"

Luke 3:15 κJV “And as the people were in expectation, and all men mused in their hearts of John, whether he were the Christ, or not.”

John 4:25 κJV “The woman saith unto him, I know that Messiahs cometh, which is called Christ: when he is come, he will tell us all things. “

Although Nick was a spiritual leader of his people and outwardly very religious, Jesus knew that no man or woman could be right with God without an inward change of heart, a change in his spiritual nature or spirit, what the Apostle Paul called the *inward man*.

(**2 Corinthians 4:16**), the *inner man* (**Ephesians 3:16**); or, *the hidden man of the heart* as the Apostle Peter called it (**1 Peter 3:4**).

2 Corinthians 4:16 κJV “For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward *man* is renewed day by day.”

Ephesians 3:16-17a κJV “That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man. ^{17a} That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith.”

1 Peter 3:3-4 κJV “Whose adorning let it not be that outward *adorning* of plaiting the hair, and of wearing of gold, or of putting on of apparel. ⁴ But *let it be* the hidden man of the heart, in that which is not corruptible, *even the ornament* of a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price.”

We can only understand this if we understand that man in his makeup is a three part being – spirit, soul, and body. The real you is a *spirit* being who lives in that *body* of yours, through which you express various emotions, the *soul* being the seat of the emotions. Modern medical science is enabling doctors like cardiologist [Maurice Rawlings](#), MD, to revive clinically dead patients, who, in the olden days, never came back. As Reader’s Digest put it, “Today, medical advances have allowed doctors to resuscitate people who in earlier times would have been irretrievably dead. In effect, medical intervention has pushed back the boundaries of what we call death.” (August 2003, page 124) People are dying as usual, but now, through modern medical resuscitation methods such as CPR and AED machines, some are returning to tell about a very real existence beyond this life, a Life After Life as one researcher titled his book.

Dr. Rawlings wrote two books, [Beyond Death’s Door](#) by Bantam House, and *To Hell and Back* which is also a [video](#). In his first book he tells of a patient in his office having a cardiac arrest and collapsing while taking a treadmill test. Dr. Rawlings began administering CPR. He says the first thing a patient usually says when they come to life again is, “Get off of me, you’re hurting me!” But this man said “Don’t stop! Don’t stop! Don’t you know that every time you stop I die and go to Hell!? Dr. Rawlings told him to shut up and keep his *Hell* to himself until he got a pacemaker installed. he patient cried out, “What do I have to do so I don’t die and go to Hell!” The doctor replied, “I guess it’s like we learned in Sunday school when we were children. Ask Jesus into your heart and you will go to Heaven when you die. If you live, you’re on the hook forever.” The doctor, not sure of any of this, found himself leading the patient in the prayer of salvation to ask Jesus to come into his heart, right there on the floor in his office. The patient stabilized and became a sincere Christian after that. Dr. Rawlings made an interesting discovery when he writes, “I found out it may not be safe to die!”

My Dad once told my Mom and me, “When I die, have me cremated, scatter my ashes, and forget about me, I’m gone!” “Can you be so sure?” my Mom had replied,

having been raised in a Christian [Pentecostal](#) family. More recently my Father got cancer and then had a minor heart attack. He called me on my cell phone at work and asked me to come by and pray for him after work. He really wanted to get healed and live longer, even though he is was 87. I told him something I had come up with the week before. “Dad, it’s not your time to go because, #1, you don’t know where you’re going; and, #2, You don’t know how you’re going to get there. After explaining about the need to pray and ask Jesus into one’s heart as personal Lord and Savior, I took his hand and led him in the [prayer of salvation](#). He had been a research scientist and electronic inventor. His youngest brother, a Baptist lay minister, had been trying to reach my dad for years.

Reader’s Digest magazine published two articles on Evidence for Life after Death. In the first article, Professor of Psychiatry, Dr. Ian Stevenson, after having researched NDEs (near death experiences), and OBEs (out of body experiences), told Reader’s Digest, “I think it prudent to prepare for the eventuality.” The second article *New Evidence: Life After Death* (August 2003), tells the [true story of Pam Reynolds](#) who, in 1991, learned she had a life-threatening bulge in an artery in her brain. Neurosurgeon Robert Spetzler, director of the Barrow Neurological Institute in Phoenix, AZ, told the 35 year old mother of three that in order to operate, her heart would have to be stopped, her brain function would cease, and by all clinical measures she would be dead for up to an hour.

During the operation, “Spetzler gave the order to bring Reynolds to ‘standstill’ – draining the blood from her body. By every reading of every instrument, life left Reynold’s body.” Just before that Reynolds felt herself *pop* out of her body, where she briefly observed part of the operation (which she described in detail afterwards, even though her eyes had been taped shut), then he found herself traveling down a tunnel toward a light where she saw her long-dead grandmother, relatives and friends, until an uncle led her back to her body and instructed her to return. After she came to, she told the doctor all that she had seen and experienced. At the writing of the article, twelve years later, the doctor still didn’t know what to make if it all.

What these doctors are proving is that it is this *human spirit* part of a man that lives a very real existence beyond physical death and the grave. [Dr. William Mayo](#), co founder and chief of staff at the famous Mayo Clinic at Rochester, Minnesota, said “The keen blade of my scalpel may never uncover the soul as a tangible part of the mystery called man, but I know it is there. I am as confident of its presence as I am of the most elemental truth to which my own medical science adheres.” In the Bible, in the Apostle Paul’s second letter to the church at Corinth, he wrote:

2 Corinthians 5:1 κβ “For we know that if our earthly house of *this* tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens.”

2 Corinthians 5:8 κβ “We are confident, *I* say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord.”

Another Old Testament passage confirms this:

Zechariah 12:1 κβ “The burden of the word of the LORD for Israel, saith the LORD, which stretcheth forth the heavens, and layeth the foundation of the earth, and formeth the spirit of man within him.”

Getting back to our story of Jesus and Nicodemus, Jesus emphasizes that the *spirit* of a man must undergo a change if man is to live a truly happy life. He get’s right to the

root of Nicodemus's need. Jesus tells him, "Except a man be born again" (or, born a second time, "born from above" as some translations have it), he cannot see or enter into the Kingdom of God – this rule of God on earth the Jews were looking for. In other words, unless the *spirit man* is somehow born a second time, a man cannot take part in the blessings of God's rule and kingdom. Using similar language, Jesus said, in a different setting on a different occasion:

Matthew 18:3 **ΚJV** "And said, Verily I say unto you, Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven.

The Apostle Peter, in one of his first public sermons said:

Acts 3:19 **ΚJV** "Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord."

There is a neat riddle I used to have on a hand held multi-page sign "Born once, die twice, born twice, die once" Nicodemus tried to figure this out on a mere physical level of meaning without seeing the spiritual meaning because the Jews were under the Romans or The Great Roman Empire, at the time and were very interested in being liberated from pagan Rome with their pantheon of idol gods, while the Jews were monotheistic, or believing in only one God. They looked for this deliverance to come through the promised Messiah (Anointed One) of Old Testament prophecy, who, they figured, would throw off their Roman oppressors and set up a Kingdom of God on Earth centered at Jerusalem, Israel.

Acts 1:6 **ΚJV** "When they therefore were come together, they asked of him, saying, Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the kingdom to Israel?"

You can see, then, why Nick was so interested in Jesus' use of the phrase *Kingdom of Heaven*. Trying to figure out what Jesus meant by the term *born-again* in the kingdom statement Jesus had just made.

John 3:4-6 **ΚJV** "Nicodemus saith unto him, How can a man be born when he is old? Can he enter the second time into his mother's womb, and be born?"

Jesus begins to straighten things out a bit for Nick, and for us, by building on the idea Nick just put out – a physical birth. ⁵ Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. ⁶ "That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit."

Jesus here distinguishes the birth he is talking about, saying that it is a *spiritual* one whose agent (that which causes it to happen) is the Holy Spirit of God. This is a supernatural experience involving supernatural power. One version of Peter's epistle states "born, not of human origin, but of God". The birth here is a second birth or rebirth of the human spirit, not the body, but your spirit – the real you that lives inside that body of yours – that part of you the doctors have found to live on after you physically die. I heard the testimony of a *born-again* minister who works with Oral Roberts, and had a heart attack and died recently in ICU – the hospital's Intensive Care Unit. When his heart stopped he (the human spirit) checked out of his body and was in another world walking along a green country path toward the great City of God in Heaven. Meanwhile, when the heart monitoring machine first sounded its alarm, a medical assistant began jumping on the man's body to get his heart going again. When the heart started beating, the human spirit returned. "Didn't that hurt you, my beating on your chest?" the assistant asked. The man replied, "How could it hurt me when I wasn't here?"

Even the news media understands this. When someone is murdered and the police find out about it, the news report goes something like this: "Police detectives discovered the body of John Doe." They recognize that John Doe, the spirit man, is no longer associated with his body because, at death, John Doe checked out. When was the last time you looked at an epitaph or tomb stone or grave marker to find it reads, "Here lies the body of..."? The *human spirit* is the most important aspect of our beings as it is the part which lives forever. Thus, making sure our spirits are *born-again* is of utmost importance. Jesus said:

Matthew 16:26 KJV "For what is a man profited, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul? or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul?"

I hope you understand now what I mean when I use the term *the human spirit*, or man's *spiritual nature*.

By using the term *born-again*, then, I paraphrase Jesus as saying, "Nick, being right with God is more than a matter of being physically born once (a man's first birth) into a Jewish family, the Jews being God's chosen people. A right relationship with God transcends physical ties. You're having a right and satisfying relationship with God your creator transcends physical relationships or requirements. Your having a right and satisfying relationship with God in His Kingdom requires this second birth I'm talking about – a rebirth of the human spirit – the spiritual side of man – that which was originally made in the image and likeness of God (Genesis 1:26). Since God is a spirit being (John 4:24), he relates to man as a spirit being."

Saint Peter is the only other person in the Bible to use the term *born-again*. His usage of the word shows us that this term cannot be a reference to physical birth. "*Being born-again, not of corruptible seed [i.e., earthly parents], but of incorruptible, by the word of God which liveth and abideth forever. For all flesh is a grass [an analogy to the word "corruptible" just used]...*" (I Peter 1:23-24a).

As I mentioned earlier, one translation reads "born, not of human origin". The NASB translation reads, "*having been born-again*" showing us that this is a present experience, and not a future happening as advocated by the late Herbert W. Armstrong in his *Plain Truth* magazine. Saint John uses a similar phrase, *born of God*, that sheds further light on the fact that this is a supernatural experience that occurs or takes place inside a man, in his heart or human spirit. A sample of the Apostle John's usage of his term here is I John 5:1a "*Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ [i.e., the Anointed One of God] is born of God.*"

We can draw two conclusions to what Jesus is saying to Nicodemus in the third chapter of the Book of John. If a man's *spirit* needs to be reborn to be in God's kingdom – in right relationship and harmony with God, then something has gone wrong somewhere because, as originally created, man was at one time in harmony with God and in right standing with God,; but, for some reason, he's not there now. We can deduce or conclude that:

1. The man who hasn't been born again is out of kilter or out of harmony with God.
2. If the *inner man* or *spirit* of a man needs to be reborn, then somewhere along the span of man's existence, man died as a spirit; or, spiritually speaking. We know that he continued to exist (because we're all still standing here today). Man continued to exist, but alienated somehow from God – somehow fallen from the image and likeness in which he (man) was created according to Genesis 1:26.

Genesis 1:26-27 KJV “And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. ²⁷ So God created man in his *own* image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.”

When, then did this happen, and what does this term *spiritual death* or *died spiritually* mean? And, in what way does being *born-again* resolve this whole broken relationship between God and mankind? What is this *born again business*, anyway? As I said, I spent five years in college getting a Bachelor of Theology degree (a study of God degree) to find out; and now I believe I understand it, and can help you to understand it with me.

At the Biblical creation of man by God in the Garden of Eden, God’s enemy, the fallen angel Lucifer, appeared disguised as a snake or serpent and told the first woman, Eve, that God was wrong when he told them they would die if they ate of the fruit of the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil. Being the father of lies, Satan deceived Eve (her husband Adam sinned also, but was not deceived in what he was doing according to 1 Timothy 2:4) into thinking that God was withholding something good from mankind that could make him like God. Willfully following the advice of Satan over God’s clear command, man disobeyed God. This made Satan man’s authority figure. Man sold out to Satan, willfully committing an act of high treason against God, and then indirectly blaming God for it by saying, “The woman *whom thou gavest to be with me* she gave me of the tree and I did eat.” (Genesis 3:12). Adam and Eve [mankind] lost their place as God’s under rulers on the earth.

Genesis 1:28 KJV “...have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.”

The Apostle Paul tell us that the result of this is that the Devil, God’s arch enemy, became “the god of this world” (2 Corinthians 4:4). In his relationship with God, Adam died as a spiritual being – he fell out of harmony and fellowship with a Holy and Just God, his creator. Although created to live forever, men began to die physically, living increasingly shorter lives as a result of spiritual death and the disease of sin, which is disobedience to God’s commands. Further disobedience, starting with Adam’s son Cain murdering his brother Abel, led to men taking on more of the nature of Satan to where in Jesus time, he told the most religious people of his day, the Pharisees,

John 8:44 KJV “Ye are of *your* father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.”

God wouldn’t let mankind live forever in a fallen condition – that’s why Adam and Eve were put out of the Garden of Eden so they wouldn’t continue to eat of the Tree of Life and live forever in their fallen spiritual state.

Genesis 3:22-24 KJV “And the LORD God said, Behold, the man is become as one of us, to know good and evil: and now, lest he put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat, and live for ever: ²³ Therefore the LORD God sent him forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground from whence he was taken. ²⁴ So he drove out the man; and he placed at the east of the garden of Eden Cherubims, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life.”

God had told man at the start, “*In the day that thou eatest of it [the forbidden fruit] thou shalt surely die.*” (Genesis 2:17). Yet Adam didn’t die physically for 930 years after that. Looking back to the time before men are *born-again*, the Apostle Paul helps us understand things when he writes:

Ephesians 2:1-3 κJV “And you *hath he quickened*, who were dead in trespasses and sins; ² Where-in in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: ³ Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.”

The people (Ephesians) that Paul was writing to were alive, yet Paul says they *were* dead. He has to be talking about a spiritual death rather than a physical death. Jesus told a man who wanted to follow him after burying his father, “Let the dead bury their *dead.*” (Luke 9:60). Adam and Eve were acutely aware of this when they became embarrassed about their physical nakedness before God and tried to make coverings for themselves out of fig leaves (Genesis 3:7). God then killed an animal to make clothes of skin for man. This showed the high cost of sin – that the only acceptable covering for man’s sin is the taking of the life of another in exchange for our life, and the shedding of that other’s *blood* which represents life. In the Book of Leviticus, God says:

Leviticus 17:11 κJV “For the life of the flesh *is* in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it *is* the blood *that* maketh an atonement for the soul.”

This is why only the blood or life of Jesus Christ applied to our sins is acceptable to God, and why God will not accept any religion or cult that does not involve a blood sacrifice. This is why the Mormons, Jehovah’s witnesses, Christian Scientists, Eastern Religions, and other groups who deny the need of a blood sacrifice to be forgiven by God, are not acceptable to God, because they won’t meet God on His terms – they won’t accept His plan for making men right with God.

Romans 10:2-4 κJV “For I bear them record that they have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge. ³ For they being ignorant of God’s righteousness, and going about to establish their own righteousness, have not submitted themselves unto the righteousness of God. ⁴ For Christ *is* the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.”

God called Adam and Eve’s act of rebellion (eating the forbidden fruit and following Satan’s advice) *sin*. Sin is defined elsewhere in the Bible as the transgression of, or disobedience to, God’s laws or commandments (more specifically, the Ten Commandments – Exodus chapter 20) for peace and harmony on earth.

1 John 3:4 κJV “Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law.”

1 John 5:17 κJV “All unrighteousness is sin: and there is a sin not unto death.”

Romans 5:12 κJV “Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned.”

Romans 6:23 κJV “For the wages of sin *is* death.”

Ezekiel 18:20 κJV “The soul that sinneth, it shall die.”

It should be noted here that the terms *death* and *die*, do not mean what the Jehovah’s witnesses call [*soul sleep*](#), or, ceasing to exist for a period of time until Jesus returns to earth.. Although the physical body dies and decays, the Bible says God will someday,

somehow resurrect it to stand before Him on a Judgment Day, but, on a spiritual plane, one never ceases to exist. Jesus said:

Matthew 10:28 κJV “And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.”

W.E. Vine, in his [*Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words*](#) comments that the Greek word for *destroy* used here is “not absence of being, but of well being”.

Romans 6:23 is telling us that when we sin we earn wages or earnings, and that these earnings are death – eternal separation from God for all eternity. When the Bible speaks of unrepentant sinners suffering in a burning Hell, it also states in at least three places.

Mark 9:43-48 κJV “And if thy hand offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter into life maimed, than having two hands to go into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: ⁴⁴ Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. ⁴⁵ And if thy foot offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter halt into life, than having two feet to be cast into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: ⁴⁶ Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. ⁴⁷ And if thine eye offend thee, pluck it out: it is better for thee to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye, than having two eyes to be cast into hell fire: ⁴⁸ Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched.”

Revelations 14:11 κJV “And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name.”

I believe it was Albert Einstein who stated that “once matter has been created, it cannot be destroyed” As men continued to sin by yielding to Satan’s dominion and following Satan’s perverted advice, they, as I mentioned earlier (John 8:44), took on Satan’s nature or character. Here is an additional reference from the Apostle Paul:

Ephesians 2:1-3 κJV “And you were dead in the trespasses and sins ² in which you once walked, following the course of this world, following the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that is now at work in the sons of disobedience-- ³ among whom we all once lived in the passions of our flesh, carrying out the desires of the body and the mind, and were by nature children of wrath, like the rest of mankind.”

Evidently, in John 8:44 where Jesus told the religious leaders they were of their father the Devil, doing the lusts of that father, he was, in essence, that no amount of human effort, good works (good deeds) or religious acts can get a man out from under Satan’s spiritual and physical domination in this earth, partly because such deeds don’t and can’t change a man’s intrinsic nature, which is sinful. If you will look around you will see that this world is in a mess because men, by nature, are doing things Satan’s way, following Satan’s lusts – playing into his hand, rather than following God’s way.

Isaiah 55:6-9 κJV "Seek the LORD while he may be found; call upon Him while he is near; ⁷ let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts; let him return to the LORD, that he may have compassion on him, and to our God, for He will abundantly pardon. ⁸ For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, declares the LORD. ⁹ For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways and my thoughts than your thoughts.”

Although men can’t change their evil nature or please God, the situation isn’t hopeless because God can and wants to change our natures or our hearts.

Romans 5:5-6 KJV “And hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us. ⁶ For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly.”

In the Old Testament, in the Book of Ezekiel, God foretold how he would accomplish this:

Ezekiel 11:19-21 KJV “And I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them an heart of flesh:

²⁰ That they may walk in my statutes, and keep mine ordinances, and do them: and they shall be my people, and I will be their God.”

It’s like the drug addict who eventually comes to the realization that he seems hopelessly addicted. And so it is with the alcoholic, the occultist or Satanist, the Boston Strangler, the freeway killer, etc. We have unknowingly yielded to the Devil until there is no way out except the Lord rescuing us when we call on Him.

Joel 2:32 KJV “And it shall come to pass, *that* whosoever shall call on the name of the LORD shall be delivered: for in mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, as the LORD hath said, and in the remnant whom the LORD shall call.”

Romans 10:13 KJV “For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.”

Did you read the Reader’s Digest feature story of March ’81 titled *To Catch a Killer?*

Theodore R. Bundy was a college graduate and was studying to be a lawyer. But he had a fantasy about single young women. He gave in to the thought and eventually found his name on the FBI’s list of the ten most wanted fugitives. After his final arrest, Bundy admitted to picking up, molesting, and killing over 100 women. “I’m one of the most cold hearted SOB’s you’ll ever meet!” Bundy exclaimed. You see, it’s the Devil, not God, that has tried to destroy this world ever since he (the Devil) usurped or took over Adam’s God given dominion or under rule on earth. Jesus stated:

John 10:9-10 NKJV “I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture. ¹⁰ The thief cometh not, but for to steal, and to kill, and to destroy: I am come that they might have life, and that they might have *it* more abundantly.”

The Apostle Paul calling the Devil “the God of this world” who “has blinded the minds of them that believe not” (2 Corinthians 4:4), is confirmed by Jesus temptation by the Devil in the wilderness.

Luke 4:5-7 KJV “And the devil, taking him up into an high mountain, shewed unto him all the kingdoms of the world in a moment of time. ⁶ And the devil said unto him, **All this power** will I give thee, and the glory of them: for that **is delivered unto me**; and to whomsoever I will I give it. ⁷ If thou therefore wilt worship me, all shall be thine.”

What fallen man needs then are three things.

1. Spiritual life (a reconnection with God and a new spiritual nature) in place of spiritual death (Satan’s nature), for the Bible says, “The soul that sinneth, it shall die.” (Ezekiel 18:4,20).
2. Man needs *righteousness* – right standing with God – the restoration of a sin free fellowship between God and man. The Bible says “There is none righteous, no not one; there is not a just man upon the earth that doeth good and sinneth not.” (Romans 3:10; Ecclesiastes 7:20). At one time or another we’ve all blown it – we’ve all broken at least one of God’s commandments on occasion.

3. Fallen man needs liberation from the bondage of Satan's dominion of poverty, addictions, sickness, disease, insatiable lusts, and fears – the curses of the broken law (Deuteronomy chapter 27, second half of chapter 28)

The Bible tells us that God knew when the world was created that all this would happen, and way back then, before the world began, he had a plan to straighten things out. Revelation 13:8, a most unusual verse, speaks of Jesus Christ as "the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world". God in His love and mercy looked down on suffering humanity. God personally came to earth to solve these problems by providing *himself* the perfect blood sacrifice for sin that He required, but that no man had been able to provide because of man's sin heritage from Adam (Romans 5:12). The Patriarch Abraham foresaw this when God asked him to sacrifice his only son Isaac, on Mount Mariah (the same place where years later Jesus would be sacrificed). When Isaac asked, "Where is the sacrifice?", Abraham replied (Genesis 22:8) "God will provide himself a lamb for a burnt offering." Through a virgin birth (a young woman who had never had sex with a man), by the impregnating of the Spirit of God came Jesus whose name means *Savior*.

Luke 1:34-35 KJV "Then said Mary unto the angel, How shall this be, seeing I know not a man?
³⁵ And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God."

Evidently, the blood type of a child comes from the father, and since Jesus had God as his Father, he had a unique blood type free from the sin passed down from Adam. I watched a video by an amateur archaeologist excavating the area of the crucifixion of Jesus, the place where Abraham had told his son the Lord would provide the necessary sacrifice. A pseudo archeologist named [Ron Wyatt](#) said that, In the [Books of the Maccabees](#) in the Catholic Bible, it says that the Prophet Jeremiah, took the Ark of the Covenant, upon which the blood of animal blood sacrifices were annually sprinkled by the high priest as a foreshadow of the coming perfect, "once for all" sacrifice of God himself in the person of Jesus Christ, and hid it in a cave in the side of a hill.

Hebrews 1:3 KJV "Who being the brightness of *his* glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high."

Wyatt shows in a video where he was digging and says he found the Arc of The Covenant and the Ten Commandments. Even more astounding, the Ark was located directly beneath [Golgotha](#), the place where Jesus was crucified. He said that when the earthquake occurred at Jesus crucifixion, as recorded in the Bible, some of Jesus unique type blood went down a crack and dripped on the mercy seat of the Arc to make the perfect sacrifice, and that he, Wyatt, took blood samples and had them analyzed, and this was indeed a different type of blood! It sounds impossible to have happened that way, but I believe it did. The Bible also says that Jesus took some of his blood to the Temple in Heaven, and purged that also.

Hebrews 9:11-14 KJV "But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building; 12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption *for us*.¹³ For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the

ashes of an heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh: ¹⁴ How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?"

I was told the story of an unsaved farmer, whose wife had been trying to win him to the Lord. One Sunday morning, in the cold of winter, when she had gone to church and he was home alone, he watched a bird hitting against the window trying to get into the house where it was warm. "If I could just tell that bird to go into the barn", he thought, "He could keep warm." He then realized that in order to relate that message to the bird, he would have to be a bird himself. It was at that moment the Gospel Message became real to him.

The angel had told Joseph, Jesus' earthly guardian, "Thou shalt call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins." (Matthew 1:21). Verse 23 recalls an Old Testament prophecy which read, "they shall call his name Emanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us." As I stated, by the virgin birth, with God as his father, and a divine blood type, Jesus escaped the tarnish of sin handed down through Adam's bloodline, and was free from Satan's nature and bondage. This is evident in Jesus' statement regarding Satan, "The prince of this world [the Devil] cometh, and hath nothing in me." (John 14:30). Thus, Jesus Christ was the only one who could free others from sin and its consequences – from unrighteousness (lack of right standing with God), from spiritual death (separation from God for time and eternity), and from Satan's dominion and nature.

It was like a rematch between Adam and Lucifer, alias the serpent. Jesus is sometimes called the *last Adam* in the Bible (for example, I Corinthians 15:22). The difference is that this time Jesus won, after being severely tempted "in all points like as we are, yet without sin" (Hebrews 4:15). Jesus knows what we go through, yet he never gave in to Satan's pranks – Satan's delusions. As I pointed out, the Devil tempted Jesus with giving him all the kingdoms of the world (Matthew 4:8,9). "...for they have been given to me, and they are mine to give to whosoever I will" he had said. You see, Satan had gotten all this from Adam. You know that God's not going to even give his enemy the Devil the time of day, let alone anything else. If the Devil had been lying as usual, Jesus would have known it, and this wouldn't be called a temptation. This is why I say Adam committed high treason against God and let his dominion over the earth slip into the Devil's hands, resulting in Satan becoming "the god of this world" (2 Corinthians 4:4); or, "the prince of this world" (John 14:30); or, "the prince of the power of the air" (Ephesians 2:2) – resulting in man's need to be free from Satan's dominion if he is to be saved from his deplorable condition – saved through a *born from above* experience.

In not sinning or giving in to Satan, not succumbing to the Devil's evil lordship, Jesus perfectly obeyed God's commands and met all of God's requirements for being righteous or in right standing with God, free from the consequences of sin and spiritual death. In other words, Jesus is the only man who ever lived who was, in himself, perfectly righteous in God's sight according to the God given Jewish laws or Ten Commandments.

Hebrews 4:15 KJV "For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as *we are, yet without sin.*"

1 Peter 2:22 KJV "Who did no sin, neither was guile found in his mouth."

Now, how could Jesus' [righteousness](#) be transferred over to sinful man's account and satisfy sinful man's need for righteousness, spiritual life, and freedom from Satan? The answer is a thousand dollar theological phrase, [vicarious atonement](#) – one man's life voluntarily given in exchange for the life of another in such a manner that God's justice and punishment for sin would be fully satisfied and man declared "not guilty!". In God's eyes, according to His master plan to save the world, Jesus' righteousness (and no one else's) qualified for an equal exchange for man's unrighteousness.

2 Corinthians 5:21 KJV "For he hath made him *to be* sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him." The Living Bible reads, "For God took the sinless Christ and poured into him our sins. Then, in exchange, he poured God's goodness into us!"

I call it the Great Exchange where, when we look to Jesus to save us, God, 2000 years ago takes our junk, what the Bible calls the "handwriting of ordinances against us.", then, as a free gift, gives us the goodness of Jesus in its place.

Colossians 2:13-15 KJV "And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses.¹⁴ Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross; ¹⁵ And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it."

Romans 5:12 KJV "Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned."

Romans 5:15-19 KJV "But not as the offence, so also *is* the free gift. For if through the offence of one many be dead, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, *which is* by one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many. ¹⁶ And not as *it was* by one that sinned, so *is* the gift: for the judgment *was* by one to condemnation, but the free gift *is* of many offences unto justification. ¹⁷ For if by one man's offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.) ¹⁸ Therefore as by the offence of one *judgment came* upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one *the free gift came* upon all men unto justification of life. ¹⁹ For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous."

The Amplified translation says that those who have received "the gift of righteousness, shall reign as kings in life by the one, Jesus Christ". Another passage says "overwhelming victory is ours!" The Lord told Rev. Kenneth Copeland "A twice born man [Jesus] defeated Satan in his [Satan's] own domain." We are a copy [of Jesus].

Colossians 1:13-15 KJV "Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated *us* into the kingdom of his dear Son: ¹⁴ In whom we have redemption through his blood, *even* the forgiveness of sins: ¹⁵ Who is the image of the invisible God, the **firstborn** of every creature:"

Romans 8:28-32 KJV "And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to *his* purpose. ²⁹ For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate *to be* conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the **firstborn** among many brethren. ³⁰ Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified. ³¹ What shall we then say to these things? If God *be* for us, who *can be* against us? ³² He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?"

The Greek word for *firstborn* used here is *prototokos* from which we get our word prototype.

As an added benefit to a changed heart, we have the overcoming power of the Spirit of God and Jesus Christ living within us who will one day make alive or “quicken” our mortal bodies, just as it did Jesus, in raising him from the dead, when Jesus returns to earth to punish the wicked, reward the faithful, and set up his [Millennial Kingdom](#). At last the scales of justice qualified for an equal exchange for man’s unrighteousness, harmony and fellowship between God and man could be balanced. But how?

John 15:13 κJV “Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.”

Romans 8:9-11 κJV But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. ¹⁰ And if Christ *be* in you, the body *is* dead because of sin; but the Spirit *is* life because of righteousness. ¹¹ But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.”

Hello Good Friday! Hello, Easter Sunday! Jesus was falsely arrested, tried and convicted by the ruling Jews who were envious and jealous of the attention he was getting from the people, so they had set out to capture and kill Him. At the insistence of these Jews, the Romans crucified the very Messiah these Jews had hoped would throw off the Romans. Yet God was ultimately in control.

Isaiah 53:4-6 κJV “Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted. ⁵ But he *was* wounded for our transgressions, *he was* bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace *was* upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. ⁶ All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.”

Isaiah 53:10-11 κJV “Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put *him* to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see *his* seed, he shall prolong *his* days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand. ¹¹ He shall see of the travail of his soul, *and* shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.”

Nailed to the cross, Jesus took upon himself the sins of the world and suffered the consequences of sin – God’s wrath, alienation from God, and banishment to Hell for what might have been a godless eternity. Many ministers will deny that Jesus went this far in identifying with fallen man. What does it mean when the Bible states:

1 Peter 2:24-25 κJV “Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed. ²⁵ For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.”

2 Corinthians 5:19 κJV “To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them.”

Perhaps the most memorized verse in the Bible is John 3:16, “For God so loved the world that He gave His only Begotten Son...” But how much did he give? Amazingly, the verse before this, John 3:15 Compares Jesus death on the cross to the serpent God had told Moses to make and put on a pole in the wilderness, so that when people looked upon that serpent, the plague in their bodies stopped and they were healed / delivered. How could Jesus be likened to a serpent when, in the Garden of Eden, the deceiver, the Devil, God’s arch enemy was the serpent?

John 3:14-15 KJV “And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up: 15 That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.” It wasn’t for nothing that the dying Jesus cried out, “*My God, My God, why hast thou forsaken me!*” (Matthew 27:46). The Living Bible paraphrase states, regarding Jesus’ sweating blood ordeal in the garden of Gethsemane, “*He shrank back in terror at the thought of being separated from the Father’s bright presence.*”

The Holy God could no longer look on His sin laden Son. For the first time in his existence, Jesus personally experienced what mankind had known all along – the loneliness and emptiness of a life without (separated from, or estranged from) God – a separation brought on by sin or disobedience to God’s laws.

Isaiah 59:1-2 KJV “Behold, the LORD’S hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy, that it cannot hear: ² But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid *his* face from you, that he will not hear.”

How could God do such a thing – turn His back on His only Son – the Son of His love, his beloved Son, about whom He had spoken from Heaven that He was well pleased with (Matthew 3:17; 17:5; Mark 1:11; 2Peter 1:17)? Here we see God’s love and desire in freeing mankind – His love for a lost and dying world. This is why John 3:16 Jesus states:

John 3:16 KJV “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.”

As I indirectly pointed out, this great love of God for you and me is further manifested in Isaiah 53:10 which strangely declares, “It pleased the Lord to bruise Him.” The letter to the Hebrews, and the Romans adds:

Hebrews 12:2 NKJV “Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of *our* faith; **who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame**, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.”

Romans 5:6-10 KJV “For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly. ⁷ For scarcely for a righteous man will one die: yet peradventure for a good man some would even dare to die. ⁸ But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. ⁹ Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him. ¹⁰ For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.”

John 15:13 KJV Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.”

With great expense and force, atomic particles are separated in a cyclotron generator. Even greater, the Trinity of God was temporarily split by God’s great love for you.

On the cross, Jesus shed His divine blood for us, the very life of God!, because, as scientists admit, the blood is the source of one’s physical life. As I already mentioned, God, in the bible pointed this out centuries ago:

Leviticus 17:11 KJV “For the life of the flesh *is* in the blood: and I have given it to you upon the altar to make an atonement for your souls: for it *is* the blood *that* maketh an atonement for the soul. “

Jesus gave his life by shedding His blood because the Bible says that without the shedding of blood there is no remission of sin.

Hebrews 9:22 KJV “And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission.”

This is why there is no *born-again* experience in bloodless religions. Such religions are manmade, made by men because men are naturally religious – they were created that way – created with a hunger to know God. Saint Augustine said, “Thou hast made us for thyself, O God, and the heart of man is ever restless, until it finds its rest in Thee.” Time Magazine published an article saying there may be a gene in man’s makeup that causes him to search for God. The many religions created by men are a result of this. But, however much they satisfy men, or even the Devil (as a diversion from the truth that is in Jesus - Ephesians 4:21); they don’t satisfy God’s requirement for right standing with Himself, namely, the shedding of blood, a *vicarious atonement*, a sinless life for a sinful life.

This shows the high cost of sin – it cost God His only Son. We must not skirt around the real Biblical reasons Jesus came:

Hebrews 9:26-28 KJV “For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself. ²⁷ And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment: ²⁸ So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.

1 John 4:10 AMP “In this is love, not that we loved God, but that he loved us, and sent his Son *to be* the propitiation [the atoning sacrifice] for our sins.”

He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

The Apostle Paul, who was personally taught by Jesus in the wilderness of Arabia (Galatians 1:12,17), tells us “For He (God) hath made Him (Jesus) to be sin for us (on our behalf), who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in Him.” (Corinthians 5:21). Jesus was *made to be sin* that we might be made right with God through Jesus’ death on our behalf or, in our place. This phrase *was made to be sin* can only mean that Jesus took upon himself all the diseases, distress, and sickness the Devil had been putting on us as a result of our disobedience or sin.

1 Peter 2:24 NKJV “Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

Matthews 8:16-17 KJV “When the even was come, they brought unto him many that were possessed with devils: and he cast out the spirits with *his* word, and healed all that were sick: ¹⁷ that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare *our* sicknesses.”

The prophet Isaiah foresaw this when he wrote of the coming Messiah or Anointed One, “*He bare the sins the sin of many.*” (Isaiah 53:12). “*Thou [speaking of the Lord] shall make his soul an offering for sin*” (verse 10) – a vicarious or substitutionary sacrifice for our sins. Earlier in this 53rd chapter, Isaiah, by divine inspiration, wrote (verses 4-6) “*Surely he hath borne our griefs [or “pains” – see Matthew 8:17], and carried our sorrows [or sicknesses], yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God and afflicted. But he was wounded [“tormented” as the margin reads] for our transgressions [our sins, disobedience to God], he was bruised for our iniquities [wickedness]: the chastisement [punishment for] our peace [peace with God] was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. All we like sheep have gone astray [away from God and His commands given for our good and welfare]. We have turned everyone to his own way*

[each of us has done his own selfish thing]; and the Lord hath laid on him [Jesus] the iniquity [wickedness] of us all."

As I pointed out earlier, we all know that the serpent represents Satan. In the Old Testament, the Children of Israel were delivered from an onslaught of snakes by looking at a brass serpent the Lord had Moses place on a pole. God told Moses to make the brass serpent as a type or symbol of the people's sins. In John 3:14, 15 Jesus identifies himself with that serpent when he says,

John 3:14-15 KJV "And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up: ¹⁵ That whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have eternal life.

Jesus was *made to be sin* on our behalf (2 Corinthians 5:21). Here we find Jesus on the cross and at the whipping post, suffering in our place the death sentence we, before God, deserve – that we have earned by sinning.

Romans 6:23a KJV "For the wages of sin *is* death."

Jesus then physically died (his human spirit separated from his body).

James 2:26 KJV "For as the body without the spirit is dead."

Luke 23:46 LKV "And when Jesus had cried with a loud voice, he said, Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit: and having said thus, he gave up the ghost."

Now, as a living, but spiritually dead or separated from God human spirit, Jesus had to do something more while his body spent three days and three nights in the tomb just like Jonah spent three days and three nights in the belly of the whale; and, the Apostle Paul says we don't cease to exist when we physically die.

Matthews 12:40 KJV "For as Jonas was three days and three nights in the whale's belly; so shall the Son of man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth."

2 Corinthians 5:1 KJV "For we know that if our earthly house of *this* tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens."

Jonah wrote of his ordeal:

John 2:1-7 KJV "Then Jonah prayed unto the LORD his God out of the fish's belly, ² And said, I cried by reason of mine affliction unto the LORD, and he heard me; out of the belly of hell cried I, *and* thou heardest my voice. ³ For thou hadst cast me into the deep, in the midst of the seas; and the floods compassed me about: all thy billows and thy waves passed over me. ⁴ Then I said, I am cast out of thy sight; yet I will look again toward thy holy temple. ⁵ The waters compassed me about, *even* to the soul: the depth closed me round about, the weeds were wrapped about my head. ⁶ I went down to the bottoms of the mountains; the earth with her bars *was* about me forever: yet hast thou brought up my life from corruption, O LORD my God. ⁷ When my soul fainted within me I remembered the LORD: and my prayer came in unto thee, into thine holy temple."

So, then what did Jesus the human spirit who had lived in his body, but was now separated from it due to his death on the cross, do during these next three days? I believe the demons, Satan's agents, took him to a literal burning Hell where is suffered *spiritual death* in our place. The late Rev. E.W. Kenyon, a forerunner of Kenneth E. Hagin, says the literal translation of the original Hebrew language of Isaiah 53:9 uses the word *deaths* in the plural and reads:

Isaiah 53:9 KJV "And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his deaths."

Jesus had been *made sin*. In the book *Visions Beyond the Veil* by Baker, Orphan children in China in the early 1900's experienced a revival and were able to see, by the Holy Spirit upon them, into the spiritual realm around us. They observed, that when an

unsaved sinner dies, demons are there at the bedside and put spiritual shackles and chains on the person and drag them forcibly, against their will, down to Hell for eternity, to suffer and be tormented there. Thus, Jesus also suffered a *spiritual death*, the eternal consequences of sin. I was quite unsure about this teaching as I hadn't heard it before and I didn't want to spread any false doctrine. I believed the Lord to give me a confirmation of the truth of this. I went with my spiritual parents to hear a guest speaker, [Evangelist Dave Roberson](#), who was speaking in Templeton, California. When I got there, he said he felt led to speak on something different than what he had planned and spoke on the extent of the expression of God's love for us. He said God had shown him a vision of Jesus suffering in torment in the lowest pit of Hell, and gave these Biblical references from Psalm 88 for it:

Psalm 88:6-18 KJV "Thou hast laid me in the lowest pit, in darkness, in the deeps. ⁷ Thy wrath lieth hard upon me, and thou hast afflicted *me* with all thy waves. Selah. ⁸ Thou hast put away mine acquaintance far from me; thou hast made me an abomination unto them: *I am* shut up, and I cannot come forth. ⁹ Mine eye mourneth by reason of affliction: LORD, I have called daily upon thee, I have stretched out my hands unto thee. ¹⁰ Wilt thou shew wonders to the dead? shall the dead arise *and* praise thee? Selah. ¹¹ Shall thy lovingkindness be declared in the grave? *or* thy faithfulness in destruction? ¹² Shall thy wonders be known in the dark? and thy righteousness in the land of forgetfulness? ¹³ But unto thee have I cried, O LORD; and in the morning shall my prayer prevent thee. ¹⁴ LORD, why castest thou off my soul? *why* hidest thou thy face from me? ¹⁵ *I am* afflicted and ready to die from *my* youth up: *while* I suffer thy terrors I am distracted. ¹⁶ Thy fierce wrath goeth over me; thy terrors have cut me off. ¹⁷ They came round about me daily like water; they compassed me about together. ¹⁸ Lover and friend hast thou put far from me, *and* mine acquaintance into darkness. "

These would be the *pains of death* spoken about in Acts 2:24.

Acts 2:24-27 KJV "Whom God hath raised up, having loosed **the pains of death**: because it was not possible that he should be holden of it. ²⁵ For David speaketh concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved: ²⁶ Therefore did my heart rejoice, and my tongue was glad; moreover also my flesh shall rest in hope: ²⁷ Because thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption."

The word *torment* in the margin of [Isaiah 53:5](#) [i.e., alternate reading, "he was tormented for our transgressions") may be what Jesus was referring to in this parable:

Matthews 18:34-35 KJV "And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him. ³⁵ So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not everyone his brother their trespasses."

Recalling Psalm 16:8, Saint Peter applied it to Jesus, saying, "thou wilt not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption [NASB says, 'undergo decay']" (Acts 2:27). In his first letter to *born-again* Christians scattered throughout the Roman Empire, he states that, when Jesus died and his spirit left his body, he descended into *the lower parts of the earth* ([Ephesians 4:9](#)), and preached a *born-again* message to lost sinners in prison in prison there, being incarcerated by Satan:

1 Peter 3:18-20 KJV "For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit: ¹⁹ By which also he went and reached unto the spirits in prison; ²⁰ Which sometime were disobedient, when

once the longsuffering of God waited in the days of Noah, while the ark was a preparing, wherein few, that is, eight souls were saved by water.”

1 Peter 4:6 κJV “For for this cause was the gospel preached also to them that are dead, that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, but live according to God in the spirit.”

2 Peter 2:4 κJV “For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast *them* down to hell, and delivered *them* into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.”

[Isaiah 14:12,17](#) says Lucifer “opened not the house of his prisoners”. You see, in my view, God in His love and mercy even gave dead sinners before Jesus’ death an opportunity to be saved or *born-again*. These were those who, beating on the door of Noah’s Ark to get in after God had shut the door, cried for help. Though it was too late for physical survival then, they were now being given the opportunity, through Jesus, to live forever with God. Those who received that message preached by Jesus in Hell were taken out of there along with Jesus after he had been dead three days and three nights. Strangely, the Bible tells us, that after Jesus death, some graves were opened and some people came back to life then. He also led a train of captives out of Hell. Evidently, according to what the Lord showed Mary Katherine Baxter in her bestselling book [A Divine Revelation of Hell](#), Jesus took [Abraham’s Bosom](#), a holding tank within the earth for Heaven bound Old Testament people waiting for Jesus’ yet to come resurrection ([Luke 16:22](#)), and transferred it to Heaven, and that vacated area was taken over by Hell which the Bible says “enlarged itself” ([Isaiah 5:14](#))

Matthews 27:50 κJV “Jesus, when he had cried again with a loud voice, yielded up the ghost.⁵¹ And, behold, the veil of the temple was rent in twain from the top to the bottom; and the earth did quake, and the rocks rent;⁵² And the graves were opened; and many bodies of the saints which slept arose,⁵³ And came out of the graves after his resurrection, and went into the holy city, and appeared unto many.”

Ephesians 4:8 κJV “Wherefore he saith, When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men.” [Psalm 68:18]

Eph. 4:9-10 κJV “Now that he ascended, what is it but that he also descended first into the lower parts of the earth?¹⁰ He that descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens, that he might fill all things.”

Maybe [Luke 4:18](#) applies here were Jesus says the Spirit of the Lord is upon Him, having anointed him “to proclaim release to captives”. We need to realize that Jesus didn’t go to Hell just to preach to others who were lost. It wouldn’t take 72 hours (three days and three nights - [Matthew 12:40](#)) to do that. He had been made sin for us ([2 Corinthians 5:21](#); [John 3:14](#); [Numbers 21:9](#); [Galatians 3:13](#))

Num. 21:7-9 κJV “Therefore the people came to Moses, and said, We have sinned, for we have spoken against the LORD, and against thee; pray unto the LORD, that he take away the serpents from us. And Moses prayed for the people.⁸ And the LORD said unto Moses, Make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole: and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live.

⁹ And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived.”

Galatians 3:13-14 κJV “Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed *is* every one that hangeth on a tree:¹⁴ That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith. “

All the sins we ever committed were transferred to Jesus account and he was suffering *the pains of death* ([Acts 2:24](#)) in Hell as He paid or settled mankind's account. The Greek word *odin* used here is used elsewhere to describe the pangs of a woman giving birth to a child. The New Living Translation uses the word *horrors*. [Hebrews 2:9](#) tells us that Jesus tasted death for every man. We know this by a most unusual Bible reference to this event of Jesus being resurrected, raised from the dead, or brought back to life by his heavenly Father ([Acts 13:33](#)), Himself ([John 2:19,20](#)), and the Holy Spirit ([Romans 8:11](#)). Acts 13:33 reads [the Heavenly Father speaking] "Thou art my Son, this day [NASB reads 'today'] have I begotten thee." Jesus previously existed with God in a form the Bible calls "the Word" ([John 1:1](#)). He became the Son of God when he became human through the Virgin Mary being impregnated by the Holy Spirit. Jesus asked his disciples who they thought he was. Peter gave the correct answer when he said "Thou art the Christ [Anointed One] the Son of the living God" (Matthew 16:16). We see that Jesus was the Son of God, but on the day of his resurrection, his Heavenly Father says He was made to be God's Son, "Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee." ([Psalm 2:7](#); [Acts 13:33](#); [Hebrews 1:5](#)). The Bible doesn't contradict itself, so we conclude that on the day of his resurrection Jesus was spiritually reborn a second time or *born-again*.

As I already mentioned, Saint Paul describes this Jesus as "the beginning, the firstborn from the dead" ([Colossians 1:18](#); and, "the firstborn of all creation" ([Colossians 1:15](#)). If Jesus needed to be *born-again*, then He, like the rest of humanity, must have been spiritually dead (separated from God) during his stay in Hell – dead because He had been made sin on our behalf and had taken upon himself the sins of all mankind – separated because God will not fellowship with sin – suffering spiritual punishment because God, being just, must punish sin as it is written in Romans 6:23a "the wages of sin is death", and "The soul that sinneth, it shall die" (Ezekiel 18:20). Psalm 22, a Psalm ordinarily accepted as Messianic, or referring to the coming Messiah, shows this spiritual separation of Jesus from his Father during the time the wrath of God against sin was being poured out on His Only Son.

Psalm 22:1 KJV "To the chief Musician upon Aijeleth Shahar, A Psalm of David.' "My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me? *why art thou so far from helping me, and from the words of my roaring?* ² O my God, I cry in the daytime, but thou hearest not; and in the night season, and am not silent. ³ But thou *art* holy, O *thou* that inhabitest the praises of Israel."

Psalm 22:6-8 KJV "But I *am* a worm, and no man; a reproach of men, and despised of the people. ⁷ All they that see me laugh me to scorn: they shoot out the lip, they shake the head, *saying*, ⁸ He trusted on the LORD *that* he would deliver him: let him deliver him, seeing he delighted in him."

Psalm 22:11-21a KJV "Be not far from me; for trouble *is* near; for *there is* none to help. ¹² Many bulls have compassed me: strong *bulls* of Bashan have beset me round. ¹³ They gaped upon me *with* their mouths, *as* a ravening and a roaring lion. ¹⁴ I am poured out like water, and all my bones are out of joint: my heart is like wax; it is melted in the midst of my bowels. ¹⁵ My strength is dried up like a potsherd; and my tongue cleaveth to my jaws; and thou hast brought me into the dust of death. ¹⁶ For dogs have compassed me: the assembly of the wicked have inclosed me: they pierced my hands and my feet. ¹⁷ I may tell all my bones: they look *and* stare upon me. ¹⁸ They part my garments among them, and cast lots upon my vesture. ⁹ But be not thou far from me, O LORD: O my strength, haste thee to help me. ²⁰ Deliver my soul from the sword; my darling from the power of the dog. ^{21a} Save me from the lion's mouth:

1Peter 5:8 KJV “Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the Devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour.”

I think Ephesians 2:1 and Colossians 2:13-15 may fit in here:

Ephesians 2:1 KJV “And you *hath he quickened*, who were dead in trespasses and sins.”

Colossians 2:13-15 KJV “ And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses.¹⁴ Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross; ¹⁵ And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a shew of them openly, triumphing over them in it.”

Thus, Jesus suffered the Hell we each deserved for our sins and now we don't have to go to Hell – nobody has to go – they may chose to go there, but they are doing so with their sins potentially having been paid for by Jesus about 2000 years ago,

2 Colossians 5:17-21 KJV “Therefore if any man *be* in Christ, *he is* a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new. ¹⁸ And all things *are* of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation; ¹⁹ To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation. ²⁰ Now then we are ambassadors for Christ, as though God did beseech *you* by us: we pray *you* in Christ's stead, be ye reconciled to God.²¹ For he hath made him *to be* sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.”

This belief is further established by the fact that Saint Peter, in his writings, looks back on the cross (crucifixion of Jesus) and writes “Who his own self bare [past tense] our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins [separated from a sin dominated life], might live unto righteousness [do what is right in God's sight – do what He says is best for us, by His indwelling ability and presence of the Holy Spirit in our lives]. By whose stripes ye *were healed*. For ye *were* as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd and Bishop of your souls.” (I Peter 2:24-25). *Were healed* is past tense. Earlier we read in Isaiah “with his stripes we *are* healed.” (Isaiah 53:5). Peter used *were* to show that our sins which alienated us from God and brought us under Satan's bondage or *domain of darkness* ([Colossians 1:13](#)) were dealt with 2000 years ago in Jesus Christ, who, in His death totally identified with fallen man.

We can see that all of mankind's varied troubles (sickness, disease, premature death, poverty, etc) stem from our disobedience to God's commands. This opens the door for Satan to attack, afflict, and torment us with these various troubles. In the Old Testament of the Bible all these troubles are summed up in one phrase *the curse of the law*. In Galatians 3:13 the Apostle Paul states that Jesus, in His crucifixion, took upon himself this *curse of the broken Law*, setting us free from its harm so that we can now live under God's blessings

Galatians 3:13-14 KJV “Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed *is* every one that hangeth on a tree: ¹⁴ That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.”

Proverbs 10:22 KJV “The blessing of the LORD, it maketh rich, and he addeth no sorrow with it.”

In that deplorable condition, suffering in Hell, God considered our account with Satan legally paid in full and, by the power of the Holy Spirit, yanked Jesus up out of there

along with those who believed his *born-again* message He preached there (Ephesians 4:8-9; I Peter 4:18-22)

I am well aware as I stated earlier, that the idea of Jesus suffering in Hell is completely foreign to the teachings of most ministers today, and probably even considered a heresy by some, which is why I have been reluctant to mention it in public sermons I have done. I was wary that, if I were to preach this in most churches, I would be branded a promulgator of false doctrine, booted out, and never invited back. As I told you, I prayed that God would confirm the truth of this usual conception of the *born-again*, as it was new and strange to me also. When the minister shared his vision of how he had seen Jesus suffering in the lowest pit of Hell being tormented by worms, it was within two weeks after I had prayed. The gist of the minister's message is that if Jesus could go through that on our behalf, out of love for us, then He can relate to anything we are going through. At the meeting I attended, traveling about 100 miles to get there, Roberson began in detail, to expound upon the very points that I had prayed about. He told how he had himself questioned Jesus' going to Hell until God showed him the various scriptures I've already quoted, along with Psalm 88, and the vision of Jesus being tormented by worms:

Mark 9:44-46 KJV "Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched. ⁴⁵ And if thy foot offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter halt into life, than having two feet to be cast into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: ⁴⁶ Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched.

Mark 9:48 KJV "Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched."

I quoted Psalm 88 earlier:

"I am counted with them that go down into the pit: I am as a man that hath no strength:... Thou hast laid me in the lowest pit, in darkness, in the deeps. Thy wrath lieth hard upon me, and thou has afflicted me with all thy waves. Selah. I am shut up, and I cannot come forth. Mine eye mourneth by reason of affliction:... Lord, why casteth thou off my soul? Why hideth thou thy face from me?"

The astonishing spiritual agony of this cursed separation from God was depicted by the Prophet Isaiah:

Isaiah 52:14 KJV "As many were astonished at thee; his visage was so marred more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men."

As I already mentioned, the Living Bible paraphrase of this verse reads:

They shall see my Servant beaten and bloodied, so disfigured one would scarcely know it was a person standing there. So shall he cleanse many nations.

This is why Jesus sweat as it were *great drops of blood* [there is actually a medical term for this phenomenon] when he prayed in the Garden of Gethsemane.

Luke 22:41-44 AMP "And He withdrew from them about a stone's throw and knelt down and prayed,⁴² Saying, Father, if You are willing, remove this cup from Me; yet not My will, but [always] Yours be done. ⁴³ And there appeared to Him an angel from heaven, strengthening Him in spirit. ⁴⁴ And being in an agony [of mind], He prayed [all the] more earnestly and intently, and His sweat became like great clots of blood dropping down upon the ground."

In his human nature, Jesus did not want to go through this. The Living Bible reads: He shrank back in terror at the thought of being separated from the Father's bright presence.

He had learned from the Scriptures what Hell is like, had taught on the subject, and now he had to yield to God the Father's will that He [Jesus] would be separated from God's wonderful presence for the first time in his life (existence) to be tormented in a *burning Hell*. An interesting verse that fits in here is Peter's statement.

Acts 2:24 NLT "But God released Him from the horrors of death and raised Him back to life, for death could not keep Him in its grip."

If death is cessation of existence, or [soul sleep](#) as some Christian Cults teach, how was Jesus' being dead for three days and nights in a tomb, an experience of *horrors*? What would motivate a person to voluntarily go through that, let alone being cut off from constant communion with God for a period in his life? Answer – love for you and me.

John 15:13 AMP "No one has greater love [*no one has shown stronger affection*] than to lay down (give up) his own life for his friends."

Jesus went beyond this to lay down his life for his *enemies*!

Romans 5:8-11 AMP "But God shows and clearly proves His [*own*] love for us by the fact that while we were still sinners, Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One) died for us.⁹ Therefore, since we are now justified (acquitted, made righteous, and brought into right relationship with God) by Christ's blood, how much more [*certain is it that*] we shall be saved by Him from the indignation and wrath of God.¹⁰ For if while we were enemies we were reconciled to God through the death of His Son, it is much more [*certain*], now that we are reconciled, that we shall be saved (daily delivered from sin's dominion) through His [*resurrection*] life.¹¹ Not only so, but we also rejoice and exultingly glory in God [*in His love and perfection*] through our Lord Jesus Christ, through Whom we have now received and enjoy [*our*] reconciliation." [*Jer. 9:24.*]

Who would want to go through that! Nevertheless, even in this, Jesus, in his love for God and fallen men and women, submitted totally to his Father's will and Master Plan when he exclaimed. "Not my will, but Thine be done." (Luke 22:42)

Thank God, when we have a question about a difficult subject, we can go to Him and get a clear, satisfying answer.

Jeremiah 33:3 NLT "Ask Me and I will tell you remarkable secrets you do not know about things to come."

Being raised from spiritual death or spiritually *reborn*, Jesus Christ became the first man to be *born again*. The Bible says that what God desires here is that Jesus' release from sin and Satan might be a pattern for us – that Jesus might be "the firstborn among many brethren" ([Romans 8:19](#)). The Word of God also states that when Jesus was raised up out of Hell, he took from Satan the *keys* – the governing authority over – spiritual death and Hell.

Revelations 1:18 NLT "I am the living One. I died, but look—I am alive forever and ever! And I hold the keys of death and the grave."

What He is saying is that if we look to Jesus Christ and acknowledge Him as our Lord, Master, and Savior, rather than Satan, God will yank spiritual death and Satan's nature out of us just like He delivered Jesus out of Hell. The moment we make the free will confession with our mouth that Jesus Christ is now our newly elected Lord, and that Satan is no longer our master, God brings all the power of Heaven on the scene to deliver us and give us a new divine spiritual nature, God coming to dwell in us by His omnipresent (present everywhere) Holy Spirit.

Let's look at three key verses:

First, Romans 10:13 which is a quote of [Joel 2:32](#):

And it shall come to pass that *whosoever* shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be delivered [saved].

Second, showing our transfer of ownership from Satan to God, Paul's letter to the Colossians states:

Colossians 1:13 NLT "For He has rescued us from the kingdom of darkness and transferred us into the Kingdom of His dear Son."

A connecting verse here is:

John 1:12-13 NLT "But to all who believed Him and accepted Him, He gave the right to become children of God. ¹³They are reborn—not with a physical birth resulting from human passion or plan, but a birth that comes from God."

A fellow minister and I were ministering to a homeless man in the local park where we were holding meetings. He needed some Vaseline for his cracked lips, so I went to the 7-11 Store and bought him some. We wanted him to say the prayer and invite Jesus into his heart, but he couldn't say the name Jesus in the prayer, so we prayed and rebuked the Devil or demons hindering him, and he was then able to say it!

The third verse shows that when we confess Jesus to be our personal Lord and Savior, we become God's child,

Galatians 3:26 KJV "For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus."

Renewed in His likeness, God takes spiritual death and Satan's nature out of us, and gives us a divine nature, making us a new kind of creature.

2 Colossians 5:17 AMP "Therefore if any person is [*ingrafted*] in Christ (the Messiah) he is a new creation (a new creature altogether); the old [*previous moral and spiritual condition*] has passed away. Behold, the fresh and new has come!"

An analogy would be the dramatic caterpillar to butterfly transformation or [metamorphosis](#).

This explanation of the *born-again* experience shows why the lives of the most unlikely people – people like Charles Tex Watson, a former member of the Charles Manson cult – are so drastically changed when they acknowledge Jesus Christ as their personal Lord and Savior and are *born again*. Although such people were evil and undoubtedly on the road to Hell, we must realize that anyone who hasn't been born-again is lost, not because of what he or she does, but because of he or she is – [spiritually dead](#) inside (separated from God) and needing life from the Source of all life, Jesus Christ:

Revelations 21:6 KJV "And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely."

John 14:6 KJV "Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Revelations 2:10b KJV "Be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.

2 Timothy 1:10 KJV "But is now made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Jesus Christ, who hath abolished death, and hath brought life and immortality to light through the gospel:

Colossians 3:4 KJV "When Christ, *who is* our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory."

Colossians 1:17 AMP "And He Himself existed before all things, and in Him all things consist (cohere, are held together)." [*Prov. 8:22-31.*]

Hebrews 5:9 AMP “And, [*His completed experience*] making Him perfectly [*equipped*], He became the Author and Source of eternal salvation to all those who give heed and obey Him,” [*Isa. 45:17.*]

John 1:3 KJV “All things were made and came into existence through Him; and without Him was not even one thing made that has come into being.

John 1:4 KJV “ In Him was Life, and the Life was the Light of men.”

In Mark 7:21-23 Jesus tells us that a man is evil or lost because of heart trouble – Satan’s nature in his human spirit or inner man.

Mark 7:20-23 AMP “And He said, What comes out of a man is what makes a man unclean and renders [*him*] unhallowed. ²¹ For from within, [*that is*] out of the hearts of men, come base and wicked thoughts, sexual immorality, stealing, murder, adultery, ²² Coveting (a greedy desire to have more wealth), dangerous and destructive wickedness, deceit; unrestrained (indecent) conduct; an evil eye (envy), slander (evil speaking, malicious misrepresentation, abusiveness), pride (the sin of an uplifted heart against God and man), foolishness (folly, lack of sense, recklessness, thoughtlessness).²³ All these evil [*purposes and desires*] come from within, and they make the man unclean and render him unhallowed.”

1 John 3:8 NLT “But when people keep on sinning, it shows that they belong to the devil, who has been sinning since the beginning. But the Son of God came to destroy the works of the devil.”

We see, then, that people don’t go to Hell or miss Heaven just because they are sinners by practice; but, because they are sinners by nature – in their hearts or spirits.

1John 3:8 AMP “[*But*] he who commits sin [*who practices evildoing*] is of the devil [*takes his character from the evil one*], for the devil has sinned (violated the divine law) from the beginning. The reason the Son of God was made manifest (visible) was to undo (destroy, loosen, and dissolve) the works the devil [*has done*].“

These people have spiritual death in their hearts. They need spiritual life, eternal life (God’s life and nature) in their human spirits or innermost beings. However many good or bad deeds they do, their nature remains the same – dead in spiritual darkness.

Ephesian 5:8 NLT “For once you were full of darkness, but now you have light from the Lord. So live as people of light!”

You can dress a dead man in his Sunday best clothes and try to put a smile on his face, but he’s still dead! The Bible says that death started with Adam’s first sin and spread to each of us because we’ve all sinned.

Romans 5:12-14 NLT “When Adam sinned, sin entered the world. Adam’s sin brought death, so death spread to everyone, for everyone sinned. 13 Yes, people sinned even before the law was given. But it was not counted as sin because there was not yet any law to break. 14 Still, everyone died—from the time of Adam to the time of Moses—even those who did not disobey an explicit commandment of God, as Adam did. Now Adam is a symbol, a representation of Christ, who was yet to come. “

Man, then, needs, not a change of action, but a change of heart. Doing good deeds in and of itself, cannot put oneself on the road to Heaven. Deciding to *turn over a new leaf* each new years day will never do, even if we follow through on such resolutions. God works are meaningful to God *after* one is *born-again* and on the road to Heaven, but not before. Once on Heaven’s road they help determine our rate of Christian growth and maturity, and our earthly and eternal rewards, and they keep the door closed to the Devil. This is why, as I mentioned earlier, Jesus says “Except ye be converted [have a

change of heart]...ye shall all likewise perish” ([Matthew 18:3](#)). This is where Eastern Religions and Philosophies fall short – they attempt, by physical disciplines and meditation to change the heart – a job that only the Spirit of God can do.

John 3:6b NLT “Humans can reproduce only human life, but the Holy Spirit gives birth to spiritual life.”

Here are some related verses showing that man is, by nature, spiritually dead (separated from God), and Satan bound in his spirit or heart. The extent of bondage varies with the individual, depending on the degree to which he knowingly or unknowingly yields to Satan’s desires (sinning), and the type of sins he commits.

Ephesians 4:27 KJV “Neither give place to the devil.”

1 Peter 5:8 KJV “Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour.”

2 Timothy 2:26 AMP “And *that* they may recover themselves out of the snare of the devil, who are taken captive by him at his will.”

Ephesians 2:1-3 KJV “And you *hath he quickened*, who were dead in trespasses and sins; ² Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: ³ Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and **were by nature the children of wrath**, even as others.

The first part of Ephesians 2:1 states that Jesus had *quickened* them, or, made them alive. Paul’s letter to the Romans states:

Romans 5:10 NLT “For since our friendship with God was restored by the death of His Son while we were still His enemies, **we will certainly be saved through the life of His Son.**”

In John 5:24 Jesus describes this *born-again* experience, this spiritual *quickening*, or receiving of eternal life as a passing *from death unto life* that takes place the moment we hear the *born again* message and appropriate it (apply it) to our lives. God is the Source of all life. The Apostle Peter called Jesus *the Author of life* ([Acts 3:15](#)). Saint John tells us ([John 5:26](#)) that He (God) gave this life to His Son Jesus so that Jesus can now give this *divine life* to those of us who will receive it through the *born-again* experience. This is why Jesus calls himself *the Way, the Truth, and the Life* in [John 14:6](#). Jesus Christ also says in this verse that he his Father’s only appointed connection between us and God. “no man cometh unto the Father but by me.”. Saint Peter, in the Book of Acts, confirms this.

Acts 4:12 NLT “There is salvation in no one else! God has given no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.”

Jesus Christ is the only way or avenue God has provided for us to receive the *divine life and nature of God* we so desperately need. Eastern religions may claim to be one of the many ways to God, but such are not God’s chosen way, and thus are not acceptable to God and cannot bring us this *divine life* because they do not deal with the problem of spiritual death and man’s need for a change of nature (heart), rather than just a change of outward actions, exercise, or diet. If there had been another less costly way that God could have reconciled or restored the world to right standing with himself other than by his sacrificing the most precious thing that he had, his Only Son, don’t you think he would have known about it; that he would have utilized it? Advocating that Jesus is but one of many *savior christs* or that there are many roads to God is like a slap in God’s face, an implication that He didn’t make the best choice or know what he was doing.

Jesus, himself, stated in [John 10:9-10](#) that He is the *door* to salvation or spiritual life – the *born again* experience, the rebirth of the human spirit (entry into God’s sheepfold). In this same passage ([John 10:1](#)) He tells us that the person who tries to *climb up some other way* is a *thief and a robber*.

John 10:9 NLT “I am the door: by me if any man enter in, he shall be saved.”

Jesus here proclaims himself as God’s only passage, gate, or door of escape from spiritual death, Satan’s nature and bondage, as well as their inevitable result, Hell for eternity. In [John 11:25-26](#), Jesus also presents Himself as *our only door* to receiving this God given divine life ([John 5:26](#)), made available to us on a believing, receiving basis.

John 11:25-26 NLT “Jesus told her [Martha], “I am the resurrection and the life. Anyone who believes in Me will live, even after dying.²⁶ Everyone who lives in Me and believes in Me will never ever die.”

John 11:25-26 AMP “Jesus said to her, I am [*Myself*] the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in (adheres to, trusts in, and relies on) Me, although he may die, yet he shall live;²⁶ And whoever continues to live and believes in (has faith in, cleaves to, and relies on) Me shall never [*actually*] die at all. Do you believe this?”

Please consider the following statement used in two tracts I wrote:

Did Jesus pay too much? If there had been another way that God could have restored fallen men to right standing with Himself, other than sacrificing the most precious thing He had, His only Son Jesus Christ to die on the cross for our sins, don't you think He would have known about it and used it?

I might add here that, in addition to giving us a new spiritual nature, God has given us the promise that when Jesus returns, our physical bodies will be changed and perfected to life forever, just like the body that Jesus had when He was resurrected or raised from the dead. This will be the final putting away of physical death.

1 Colossians 15:51-54 AMP “Take notice! I tell you a mystery (a secret truth, an event decreed by the hidden purpose or counsel of God). We shall not all fall asleep [*in death*], but we shall all be changed (transformed)⁵² In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the [*sound of the*] last trumpet call. For a trumpet will sound, and the dead [*in Christ*] will be raised imperishable (free and immune from decay), and we shall be changed (transformed).⁵³ For this perishable [*part of us*] must put on the imperishable [*nature*], and this mortal [*part of us, this nature that is capable of dying*] must put on immortality (freedom from death).⁵⁴ And when this perishable puts on the imperishable and this that was capable of dying puts on freedom from death, then shall be fulfilled the Scripture that says, Death is swallowed up (utterly vanquished forever) in and unto victory.” [*Isa. 25:8.*]

In Revelation 2:7 Jesus tells us that resurrected, *born-again* Christians, having God’s divine life and nature, will regain the immortality that Adam and Eve lost through sin and spiritual death. These *believers in Jesus* will once again be able to eat the fruit of the [Tree of Life](#) in the middle of the [Paradise of God](#).

Revelations 2:7 NLT “Anyone with ears to hear must listen to the Spirit and understand what He is saying to the churches. To everyone who is victorious I will give fruit from the tree of life in the paradise of God.”

Friends, we’ve learned that mankind was separated from God by sin—he [died spiritually](#). In other words, men fell from the spiritual image and likeness of God in which he was created (Genesis 1:26-27). In his fallen state he continued to disobey God and

progressively took on Satan's nature or likeness as he chose to obey Satan rather than God. Man had lost God and God (with a few exceptions like Enoch and Elijah) had lost man as a source of mutual fellowship and communion like he had had with Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden before the fall (Genesis 3:8). The result is that there's a God shaped void in the heart of every man, woman, boy, or girl who hasn't been *born-again* – a void or emptiness that only God can fill. The French physicist [Blaise Pascal](#) said "There is a God shaped void in every person that only Jesus Christ can fill." People's attempts to fill this void lead them down the road of drugs, sex booze, education, getting rich, religion, etc. This is why people, like the movie stars in the *Ladies Home Journal* article, who have tried everything but being *born-again*, have come to the end of the road—they've run out of things to try and, have either committed suicide; or, come full circle and returned to the God of their childhood by asking Jesus Christ into their hearts.

We learned that since his fall by sin, or disobedience to God, man, by following the Devil's suggestions, rather than God's commands, has been suffering, along with all God's creation (Romans 8:22, under the "god of this world" (2 Corinthians 4:4), Satan, who will not open the "house of his prisoners" (Isaiah 14:17). Outside of Jesus Christ, serving Satan is a one way, no return street to Hell for all eternity. Fallen man, then, needs spiritual life (God's life and nature), righteousness—right standing with God—and freedom from sin's present power and eternal punishment. Fourthly, man needs freedom from Satan's yoke of misery and bondage. God personally solved this crisis by becoming a man like us who "was in all ways tempted as we are" so that He totally identified with us, except that He never sinned (Hebrews 2:17-18; 4:15).

You've probably heard the name [Immanuel](#) used in reference to Jesus ([Matthew 1:23](#) NLT)? It means "God with us". Jesus died in our place as God's perfect sacrifice for mankind's sins, restoring perfect harmony and peace between God and men by taking upon himself all that relates to our sin (disobedience), namely our lack of peace, poverty, sickness, anguish of soul, loneliness, etc.. In Jesus Christ (the Savior – the Anointed One of God) God potentially solved all four of the aforementioned needs or problems of mankind – spiritual death, unrighteousness, sinfulness in conduct and nature,, and the lordship of Satan. In other words, Jesus broke the sin barrier (between God and man) 2000 years ago according to 2 Corinthians 5:19 which reads, "God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them. The words "not imputing" mean that God no longer charges or holds our sins against us. Isaiah 53:11 says that "He [God] shall see the travail [agony] of his [Jesus'] soul, and shall be satisfied." God's justice in dealing with and punishing our sins was fully satisfied in the sacrifice [death] of His Son Jesus for us. To put it yet another way, the main issue today, between the man who isn't *born-again* and God is not every single sin or act of disobedience that you or I ever committed. Rather, it is only one sin, rejecting the sin cure, Jesus Christ. You don't have to fear going down to the altar and tell everyone every embarrassing thing you ever remember doing wrong.

What is this one lone sin that bars man from Heaven and fellowship with God? In John 16:8,9 Jesus says that when he dies he will send the Spirit of God to earth to carry on his work, and that the Holy Spirit will convince, convict, or reprove the world of sin "*because they believe not on me [on Jesus Christ].*" In other words, God's not mad at you but loves you. John 3:17-18 says almost the same thing.

John 3:17-18 **κβ** “God sent His Son into the world not to judge the world, but to save the world through Him. ¹⁸ There is no judgment against anyone who believes in Him. But anyone who does not believe in Him has already been judged for not believing in God's one and only Son.”

Revelations 21:8 **κβ** “But the fearful, and **unbelieving**, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.’

These verses are telling us that the real issue between God and us is a failure on our part to believe on Jesus Christ – to recognize and accept Jesus as God's only sin solution, remedy, or cure. [Jehovah Rapha](#), the Great Physician, has a cure for all your ills. Won't you take it? Have you taken it? How sad that people are going to Hell with their sins paid for. It's kind of like the world's food and medicine, and clean water shortage, especially in Africa where one third of the population doesn't get enough to eat. Food is being produced elsewhere, but needy people can't reach it. In the case of eternal life or salvation, Jesus states:

Revelations 22:17 **κβ** “ And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely. The letter to the Romans, citing Deuteronomy 30:14, shows salvation is a simple confession way from anyone.

Romans 10:8-9 **AMP** “But what does it say? The Word (God's message in Christ) is near you, on your lips and in your heart; that is, the Word (the message, the basis and object) of faith which we preach. [*Deut. 30:14.*] ⁹ Because if you acknowledge and confess with your lips that Jesus is Lord and in your heart believe (adhere to, trust in, and rely on the truth) that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved.”

We must understand that there are two masters and two spiritual kingdom—the Kingdom of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the kingdom of “the god of this world” ([2 Corinthians 4:4](#)), Satan. Saint John, in ([1 John 3:10](#)) uses the term “the children of God...and the children of the Devil.” Of Jesus kingdom the prophet Isaiah tells us, “of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end.” ([Isaiah 9:6-7](#)). On the other hand, Satan's kingdom is destined for complete destruction when the Devil is cast into the Lake of Fire, along with death and Hell, for all eternity:

Revelation 20:10-15 **κβ** “And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet *are*, and shall be tormented day and night forever and ever. ¹¹ And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. ¹² And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is *the book* of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. ¹³ And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. ¹⁴ And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. ¹⁵ And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.”

As we've seen, the Bible tells us that, because of sin, every man born on earth, by nature, is in Satan's kingdom already. Jesus so identified with our sin and Satan's bondage, that, when God told Satan “That's enough, hold it right there!” and raised Jesus out of Satan's kingdom, God made, in Jesus, a way out for us also. The Bible says that God raised Jesus to the right hand of the throne of God, a position of authority far above all principalities, powers, might and dominion ([1 Peter 3:22](#) NLT) where he intercedes between God and men ([Hebrews 7:25](#) NLT).

The Apostle Paul says that we are seated with Jesus, in this position of authority ([Ephesians 1:16 – 2:7](#) NLT). Now fallen man is no longer hopelessly doomed to spend eternity in Hell. As I mentioned earlier, Hell was created for the Devil and fallen angels, not for us ([Matthew 25:41](#) NLT). Nevertheless, people in Satan’s kingdom will go there when they physically die. As mentioned earlier, in the Book by Baker, *Visions Beyond the Veil*, boys in an orphan home in China saw visions of what happens to unsaved people when they physically die. The reason these people go to Hell is that, when they die, demon spirits, Satan’s servants, drag them forcibly in shackles and chains, down to Hell. I met a man named William Dellury who told me he was laying on a gurney in the hospital after a drug overdose, waiting and hoping to die when he saw [demons](#) coming toward him. “Oh, no! I’m not going with you! He had said. Now he is a born-again Christian with Jesus living in his heart. It is possible that when Jesus died, because he had been made sin and forsaken by God, was also dragged down to Hell by the demons.



Man is no longer hopelessly doomed, though, because, after Jesus defeated Satan in his (Satan’s) own domain.

Hebrews 2:14 NLT Because God’s children are human beings—made of flesh and blood—the Son also became flesh and blood. For only as a human being could he die, and only by dying could he break the power of the devil, who had the power of death.

God reestablished man’s free will in the matter. Now people go to Hell only because they choose to, not because God sends them there. We can choose not to go there by choosing not to remain any longer in Satan’s kingdom under Satan’s cruel bondage and dominion. We do this by acknowledging Jesus Christ to be the Lord of our lives and renouncing Satan’s lordship. When we do this, all the power of God that delivered Jesus from Hell comes on the scene and delivers us also, transferring us to Jesus’ kingdom and giving us just as much power (authority) over the Devil as Jesus has. Then, when we die as *born again* Christians (the same orphan boys also saw this), the angels of God come and escort us to Heaven. You choose Heaven or Hell, to be a winner or loser, depending on which spiritual kingdom you choose to be in. If you fail to choose or keep putting off the decision to enter Jesus’ Kingdom of Heaven – the one Nicodemus was looking and hoping for; you remain in Satan’s kingdom and choose Hell by default – by failing to make a decision *not* to go there.

A Christian Woman called to ministry work walked away from God and lived a life of sinning and drug abuse. She ended up in a mental institution where she drew pictures of the demons who tormented her until, once again, the Lord set her free, restored her, and she was discharged from the mental

John 3:18 NLT “There is no judgment against anyone who believes in Him. But anyone who does not believe in Him has already been judged for not believing in God’s one and only Son.”

Jesus regained the dominion over the earth that Adam lost to Satan, and it will not be lost a second time because Jesus, the Last Adam (1 Corinthians 15:45) is holding it. Jesus invites you to share this dominion with Him – to “reign in life as kings (Romans 5:17 Amplified Translation), and to be “more than conquerors” through Him (Romans 8:37) through God’s indwelling presence and power in the life of a believer in Jesus.

Galatians 6:15 NLT states, “What counts is whether we have been transformed into a new-creation.”

Now, like Adam, God has given us the ability to choose our eternal destiny – to choose once again who will be the lord of our lives – Jesus Christ or Satan. Each of us individually must face up or own up to the ugly fact that, if we haven’t been *born-again* – if we haven’t acknowledged Jesus Christ as our personal Lord and Savior, then we are right now under Satan’s dominion as “the god of this world” who blinds the minds of unbelievers from seeing the good news of freedom through faith in Jesus Christ ([2 Corinthians 4:4](#)). Let us again examine Ephesians 2:1-6 NLT where the Apostle Paul addresses *born-again* Christians, looking back to that time in their lives before they had a *born-again* experience – before they had individually accepted, acknowledged, or confessed Jesus as Lord of their lives.

Ephesians 2:1-6 NLT “Once you were dead because of your disobedience and your many sins. ² You used to live in sin, just like the rest of the world, obeying the devil—the commander of the powers in the unseen world. He is the spirit at work in the hearts of those who refuse to obey God. ³ All of us used to live that way, following the passionate desires and inclinations of our sinful nature. By our very nature we were subject to God's anger, just like everyone else. ⁴ But God is so rich in mercy, and He loved us so much, ⁵ that even though we were dead because of our sins, He gave us life when He raised Christ from the dead. (It is only by God's grace that you have been saved!) ⁶ For He raised us from the dead along with Christ and seated us with Him in the heavenly realms because we are united with Christ Jesus.”

HA Bakker headed an orphan home in China in the early 1900s. Revival broke out and the children became Christians. By the gifting of God the Holy Spirit upon them, they were able to see the spiritual world around us, the angels and the demons. When a person was near death, the nonbeliever who had not asked Jesus into his or her heart as his personal Lord and Savior, was accompanied by demons in the room. When the person physically died, the demons would put shackles on the human spirit of the person that remained alive, and drag that person, against his wishes, down into the Devils kingdom within the earth, a place the children saw as conscious and ongoing fiery torment. On the other hand, when a follower of Jesus died, angels of God were standing by the bedside to escort the liberated human spirit and soul to God's dwelling place - Heaven and the heavenly city there. Here is a link to Bakker's free online PDF book titled [Visions Beyond the Veil](#).

But thank God, in His love and mercy, He has provided for us a fire escape from hell through His Son Jesus Christ who said “I am the way” ([John 14:6a](#)). I included [Ephesians 2:6](#) above to show that when we were spiritually dead in sins, God made us alive – He gave us spiritual life just like He did for Jesus when He was in [Hell](#). In the *born-again* experience, God raises us up out of a sin serving, sin dominated existence, to a spiritual position of victory with Christ, over Satan and sin.

Romans 6:20-23 NLT “When you were slaves to sin, you were free from the obligation to do right. ²¹ And what was the result? You are now ashamed of the things you used to do, things that end in eternal doom. ²² But now you are free from the power of sin and have become slaves of God. Now you do those things that lead to holiness and result in eternal life. ²³ For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life through Christ Jesus our Lord.”

God meets us at our level – at the point of our need when we’re in a fix and can’t get out by ourselves; and, God saves us there, the moment we turn our lives over to Him.

Ephesians 2:8-9 tells us that, outside of Jesus Christ, no amount of effort or good works on our part can get us out – out of our bondage to sin and Satan. If you like cartoons, in a *fix* [Felix the Cat](#) his *bag of tricks*. [Popeye the Sailor Man](#) had his *can of spinach*; but in the real world, outside of Jesus Christ the *Deliverer* ([Romans 11:26](#) / [Isaiah 59:20-21](#)), fallen man resorts to using recovery programs like [Alcoholics Anonymous](#) which seem to offer only a degree of self control. Realizing this, we call on Jesus as our Lord; and God, in His mercy, reaches out and lifts us to safety.

Ephesians 2:8-9 AMP “For it is by free grace (God's unmerited favor) that you are saved (delivered from judgment and made partakers of Christ's salvation) through [*your*] faith. And this [*salvation*] is not of yourselves [*of your own doing, it came not through your own striving*], but it is the gift of God; ⁹ Not because of works [*not the fulfillment of the Law's demands*], lest any man should boast. [*It is not the result of what anyone can possibly do, so no one can pride himself in it or take glory to himself.*]”

God has provided only one Way of escape from the spiritual dilemma of fallen man – Jesus Christ. Man, in his quest for God, has provided many ways (the many religions of the world) by which he hopes to find God. But God, in His search for man, has provided only one way that he will accept and that really works. In the Book of Acts, Dr. Luke records this statement from one of Saint Peter's first sermons:

Acts 4:12 AMP “And there is salvation in and through no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by and in which we must be saved.”

Saint Peter told us “You must be saved!” Jesus tells us, in his meeting with Nicodemus, “*Ye must be born-again!*” This is because, “Except a man be *born again...*” he cannot see or enter into God's present and eternal kingdom. Jesus also put it another way “*Except ye be converted...ye shall all likewise perish*” (Matthew 18:3). In other words, as we have seen verified by so many Bible writers and references, Jesus Christ is our only hope of Heaven, and He is God's only means of transferring us from Satan's kingdom to God's kingdom; because, of all men throughout history, only Jesus successfully whipped Satan. The Author of the letter to the Hebrews states of Jesus:

Hebrews 2:14-15 AMP “Since, therefore, [*these His*] children share in flesh and blood [*in the physical nature of human beings*], He [*Himself*] in a similar manner partook of the same [*nature*], that by [*going through*] death He might bring to nought and make of no effect him who **had** the power of death--that is, the devil.¹⁵ And also that He might deliver and completely set free all those who through the [*haunting*] fear of death were held in bondage throughout the whole course of their lives.”

Only Jesus can bring you safely home to God – only He can give you, in exchange for your sinfulness, the righteousness you need to be restored to right standing before God; for the Bible says:

Isaiah 64:6 AMP “For we have all become like one who is unclean [*ceremonially, like a leper*], and all our righteousness (our best deeds of rightness and justice) is like filthy rags or a polluted garment; we all fade like a leaf, and our iniquities, like the wind, take us away [*far from God's favor, hurrying us toward destruction*].” [*Lev. 13:45, 46.*]

Only Jesus can bring us to a saving knowledge of God. You may know *about* God through your weekly participation in Mass or Church liturgy; but do you know God on a personal basis through Jesus Christ? 2 Thessalonians 1:8-9 tells us “those who do not **know** God...will be punished with everlasting destruction and shut out from the presence of the Lord.”

Many will miss Heaven by 18” – the distance between heart and mind. They have an intellectual understanding of God’s Plan of Salvation, but have never made a heartfelt acceptance or out loud confession of it with their mouths, making it their very own.

Romans 10:9-10 NLT If you openly declare that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For it is by believing in your heart that you are made right with God, and it is by openly declaring your faith that you are saved.

[Kenneth E. Hagin](#) told the story of being a guest speaker for a group of men at a weekly Church Bible Study. One man stood up and said that he had been coming there for twenty years, and he knew that the other men there were saved, but that he wasn’t. Rev. Hagin told him he was half way there, he had done the first half (come to believe the historical facts about Jesus, that He died for our sins and that God raised Him from the dead), but he had never done the other half, the confession of Jesus as one’s own personal Lord and Savior with one’s mouth in a public setting (the two parts of [Romans 10:9 -10](#)). He then led that man in confessing aloud before the group that Jesus is his Lord and Savior, and the man got it.

Only Jesus can give you the divine spiritual life that results in a *born-again* experience, a rebirth of the human spirit, the real you living in that body of yours, that makes you a new creation like Adam and Eve before they ever sinned. Jesus Said, “I am the life.” (John 14:6c) “I am the resurrection and the life. He who believes in me shall never die [never spend an endless eternity separated from God and His love in a burning Lake of Fire and Brimstone – Hell!” ([John 11:25-26](#); [Revelation 21:8](#))

In Acts 26:28 the Apostle Paul describes his God given mission as follows [Jesus speaking]:

Acts 26:18 AMP “To open their eyes, *and* to turn *them* from darkness to light, and *from* the power of Satan unto God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among them which are sanctified by faith that is in me.”

This, in a nutshell, is the heart of the Bible message. This is the *born-again* experience that has transformed multiplied millions of lives from hopeless wretched sinners to loving saints, doing what no rehabilitation program could ever do. Men get into such deplorable condition because they are searching for something or someone to fill that *God shaped* void that San Pascal talked about, that is in the heart of every man. Jesus perfectly fills that void, bringing us to God and washing away the guilt and hang-ups of our searching past. Saint Paul tells us in his first letter to Timothy:

I Timothy 2:5-6 TLB “God is on one side and all the people on the other side, and Christ Jesus, Himself man, is between them to bring them together, by giving His life for all mankind.”

I Peter 3:18 states “Christ died for sins once for all...to bring you to God.” The author of the Book of Hebrews writes:

Hebrews 9:26b KJV “But now once in the end of the world hath He [i.e., Jesus Christ] appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.”

Now, let’s get to the conclusion of this whole matter – how it relates to you and I as twenty first century individuals – how we can appropriate or apply this to our lives. We know, based on the testimonies of millions in our society today, people like TV’s FBI star, [Ephraim Zimbalist Jr.](#), that man’s deepest needs are met only when his broken relationship with God or right standing before God is restored through a spiritual rebirth of the human spirit from spiritual death to spiritual life for time and eternity. Jesus called

this second spiritual birth being *born-again*. Jesus Christ is the only Way God has provided for this restoration or new birth to be accomplished. We get the term *new birth* from [2 Corinthians 5:17](#) NLT where the Apostle Paul tells us:

...anyone who belongs to Christ has become a new person; the old life is gone; a new life has begun.

This involves our being rescued from the lordship or ruler ship of Satan over us as “the god of this world” ([2 Corinthians 4:4](#) KJV) – a transfer of ownership from Satan, and his “kingdom of darkness” into the kingdom of God’s dear Son ([Colossians 1:13](#) NLT). By “kingdom of God”, I mean, the rule and the reign of Jesus Christ in the hearts and lives of men.

The Bible tells us, and millions have testified to the fact, that this *born-again* experience occurs or takes place the moment we confess Jesus Christ to be our Lord and Savior (the Master of our lives) according to [Romans 10:8-10](#) – the key to the *born-again* experience. “This is the word of faith which we preach [this is the crux, the main theme or objective of a preacher’s mission or duty – to reunite fallen men and women with God for time and eternity]”. Now here’s how or when it happens in two parts – believing and confessing. Verse 9, “That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus [or, Jesus as your Lord], and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.” To *believe* means accepting as true the historic facts concerning Jesus Christ and what He came to do for you – specifically, how he died, was buried, and was raised from death after three days ([1 Corinthians 15:1-8](#)). Verse 10 of Romans chapter ten reads “For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness [resulting in right standing with God]; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation [or, resulting in salvation]. Salvation is a term synonymous with *born-again* and means a divine deliverance or work of God in your life which frees you from your enemies, specifically Satan’s and spiritual death’s hold over you, be it mental illness, sickness, disease, drug addictions, a need for eternal life, etc. The root Greek word translated *saved* here, is transliterated to *sodzo* and means to be made whole in every sense of the word. Look at these examples:

Matthew 24:21-22 κβ “For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. ²² And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect’s sake those days shall be shortened.”

Luke 18:40-43 κβ “And Jesus stood, and commanded him to be brought unto him: and when he was come near, he asked him, ⁴¹ Saying, What wilt thou that I shall do unto thee? And he said, Lord, that I may receive my sight. ⁴² And Jesus said unto him, Receive thy sight: thy faith hath saved thee. ⁴³ And immediately he received his sight, and followed him, glorifying God: and all the people, when they saw *it*, gave praise unto God.”

Romans 5:8-10 κβ “But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. ⁹ Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him. ¹⁰ For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.”

Mark 4:37-39 NLT But soon a fierce storm came up. High waves were breaking into the boat, and it began to fill with water. ³⁸ Jesus was sleeping at the back of the boat with His head on a cushion. The disciples woke Him up, shouting, “Teacher, don’t You care that we’re going to drown?” ³⁹ When Jesus woke up, He rebuked the wind and said to the waves, “Silence! Be still!” Suddenly the wind stopped, and there was a great calm.”

Verse thirteen of this tenth chapter of Romans goes on to say, “For whosoever [that means anyone--YOU!] shall call upon the name of the Lord [call on Jesus Christ invoking Him as his Lord and Savior] shall be saved [i.e., *made whole*]. In the Old Testament of the Bible, where this verse originated in the vision of Joel the prophet ([Joel 2:32](#)), it reads “shall be delivered”.

Reader, the Lord God of the universe is a very present help in trouble ([Psalm 46:1](#)). He’s here right now to meet your needs if you’ll let Him; if you will surrender your whole life and not just your individual problems (not just your bad habits) to Him, acknowledging Jesus Christ to be your Savior and Lord – the Lord of your life. While various community social programs and health clinics want you to pay them to help you control your problems – your drinking, gambling, overeating, drug addiction, anger, smoking, anxiety, fears, etc. – God has made us an offer that on one in his right mind will refuse. Others offer you a way of life, but Jesus Christ offers you life itself, in all its fullness ([John 10:10](#)). God offers you the perfect ([James 1:17](#)) and free ([Ephesians 2:8-9](#)) gifts of salvation, eternal life ([Romans 6:23b](#)), living water ([John 4:10, 13-14](#)), right standing with God ([Romans 5:15-17](#)), the indwelling presence and power of the Comforter, The Holy Spirit ([John 14:16-17](#)) to abide with you *forever*; and a divine supernatural and total permanent deliverance from these problems (not just a miserable lifetime of trying to control your habits. One man I heard give his testimony, a former alcoholic, stated “You could give me a bath in alcohol, and it wouldn’t phase me!” It has been the Devil that led you into these habits so he could gain complete control over you to destroy you so you’d spend eternity with him – *miseria loves company* you know!

How is it that one is prompted or moved to be *born-again*? Why does it happen to some of the most unlikely people? The Bible states that the Heavenly Father loves you so much that He draws you into a satisfying relationship with Himself by the conviction His Holy Spirit ([John 6:44](#); [16:7-11](#); [Ephesians 2:18](#)). Let’s say you’re in a most unusual Church meeting. God is moving – supernatural miracles of healing and deliverance are taking place. God gets hold of you on the inside, tugging at your heart or human spirit and you know as never before that you need God. The path you’ve been traveling turned out to be a one way street leading you straight to Hell; and Jesus (God) is your only hope. Then, as the preacher shows everyone how, you take these verses in the Book of Romans, and you make a prayer out of them (the Prayer of Salvation or *Sinner’s Prayer*, as many call it). You say this prayer with your mouth out loud and believe it in your heart or spirit, and something wonderful happens – you’re born again! You experience an inner peace and calm that you’ve never known before ([John 14:27](#)). You don’t feel guilty or apprehensive about being in Church because you feel like a million bucks! You feel like a ton of bricks has been lifted from your shoulders – Satan’s shackles have dropped off.

Since Jesus Came Into My Heart - Words: Rufus H. McDaniel, 1914. Music: Charles H. Gabriel, 1914

What a wonderful change in my life has been wrought

Since Jesus came into my heart!

I have light in my soul for which long I had sought,

Since Jesus came into my heart!

Refrain

*Since Jesus came into my heart,
 Since Jesus came into my heart,
 Floods of joy o'er my soul
 Like the sea billows roll,
 Since Jesus came into my heart.
 I have ceased from my wandering and going astray,
 Since Jesus came into my heart!
 And my sins, which were many, are all washed away,
 Since Jesus came into my heart!*

Refrain

*I'm possessed of a hope that is steadfast and sure,
 Since Jesus came into my heart!
 And no dark clouds of doubt now my pathway obscure,
 Since Jesus came into my heart!*

Refrain

*There's a light in the valley of death now for me,
 Since Jesus came into my heart!
 And the gates of the City beyond I can see,
 Since Jesus came into my heart!*

Refrain

*I shall go there to dwell in that City, I know,
 Since Jesus came into my heart!
 And I'm happy, so happy, as onward I go,
 Since Jesus came into my heart!*

Refrain

But, how can this be - what has happened? God tells us that when we meant business with God and prayed this prayer, He “delivered us from the domain [authority] of darkness, and transferred us to the kingdom of His beloved Son [Jesus Christ].” ([Colossians 1:13](#). John 1:12 reads:

“But as many as received Him [Jesus as Lord of their lives], to them gave he [God] the right [power] to become the children of God, even to them that believe in his name.”

Beloved reader, as we've seen, God through Jesus Christ triumphed over Satan and death, leaving you with a free will choice in the matter of your spiritual and eternal destiny. All you have to do is to acknowledge Jesus as Lord of your life, and be willing, with His indwelling help and power, to do things God's way. In doing this you're saying “Satan, I've had it with you! You've done me no good. I've had enough of your rule in my life. I renounce you Satan, in Jesus' mighty name. From this moment on I acknowledge Jesus Christ to be the Lord of my life.” At that moment, all the power of Heaven goes to work to make good what you just declared with our mouth – to make effective for you God's written Bible promise of eternal life. The Bible tells us, “I create the fruit of the lips.” (Isaiah 57:19), and that God watches over His Word to perform it ([Jeremiah 1:12](#); [Isaiah 44:26](#), [55:11](#)). God yanks the Devil and his demons off of you, forgives you and forgets all of your past sins, casting into the sea of His forgetfulness ([Micah 7:9](#)); and separating them from you “as far as the East is from the West” ([Psalm 103:12](#)). God then comes to abide within you by the Holy Spirit as He transfers you into His kingdom, making you a child of God, and giving you the inward assurance of (and the Bible promise of) eternal life ([Romans 8:16](#); [I John 5:10-13](#)).

God's not mad at you. God loves you and has a wonderful plan for your life! ([Jeremiah 29:11](#)). God longs to reveal Himself to you—to relate to you as an individual. God wants you to prosper and be in health, spiritually, physically, mentally, and emotionally:

3 John 2 KJV - "Beloved, I wish above all things that thou mayest prosper and be in health, even as thy soul prospereth."

Remember, Jesus said:

John 10:10 NLT - "The thief's purpose is to steal and kill and destroy. My purpose is to give them a rich and satisfying life."

Are you God's beloved—are you His child—have you been *born again*—have you personally asked Jesus Christ to come into your life (spirit, soul, and body), and be the Lord of your life? Have you renounced the Devil's lordship over you and been set free – are you willing to admit that the Devil is at the bottom of all your troubles? If you haven't done so, and would like to, I invite you to do so right now by praying this simple, World's Most Important Prayer, or, Prayer of Salvation, aloud as you repeat it after me, from your heart. God tells us in the Bible that he wants everyone to pray this prayer.

1 Timothy 2:4 NLT - "Who wants everyone to be saved and to understand the truth."

Romans 10:13 NLT - "For everyone who calls on the name of the LORD will be saved."

Revelation 3:20 NLT - "Look! I stand at the door and knock. If you hear my voice and open the door, I will come in, and we will share a meal together as friends."

This is how you can be *born again*. This is how to receive Jesus as your Lord and Savior – as your sin solution. This is how you become a child of God and an heir—a recipient of God's blessings. This is how you the free gift of eternal life He has for you. God If you are able, as an act of surrendering your life to Him, raise your hands as you pray:

Dear Father God, I come before you just as I am. I've sinned against you by going my own way. I'm sorry Lord. I now renounce all sin in my life—any bitterness, unforgiveness, hatred, or evil thoughts I am holding toward anyone, including myself. I forgive myself. I receive your forgiveness. I know now that Jesus Christ is my only hope. I now turn my life over to your control, Lord, as best I know how. I now confess Jesus to be my Savior and Lord. I now renounce the lordship of Satan over my life. I renounce all involvement in the occult. I call upon you Lord Jesus as my Deliverer—set me free as you said in your Word you would. Save me now! Wash me in the shed blood of Jesus, Lord. Fill me with your promised Holy Spirit so I can serve and obey you. Give me your free gift of eternal life and the inner assurance that I am your child. Write my name in your Book of Life. I thank you Lord for hearing and answering my prayer—for making me right with you as you promised you would. I ask this all in Jesus' name, Amen.

When you prayed, God made you his own special child of love.

John 1:12 KJV - "But as many as received Him [Jesus as Lord of their lives], to them He [God] gave the right to become children of God."

When you prayed, God gave you the gift of everlasting life (here and hereafter in Heaven) – no more spiritual death, no more Hell, no more fear of dying!

I John 5:13 κJV - "These things have I written to you who believe in the Name of the Son of God, in order that you may **know** that you have eternal life."

I John 2:25 κJV - "And this is the promise that He has promised us, even eternal life."

When you prayed, God forgave all your sins and washed them from his remembrance as he cast them into the sea of His forgetfulness and love.

Micah 7:19 κJV - "He will have compassion on us. Thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea."

Psalms 103:10,12 κJV says "He hath not dealt with us after our sins; nor rewarded us according to our iniquities [wickedness]. As far as the East is from the West, so far hath he removed our transgressions from us."

When you prayed, God gave you His divine peace.

John 14:27 κJV - "Peace I leave with you, my peace I give unto you; not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid."

When you prayed, God gave you righteousness (right standing with himself) as a free gift, and enabled you, through your Lord Jesus Christ, to now reign as kings in this life by his indwelling presence and power.

Romans 5:17 AMP - "They which receive abundance of grace [God's unmerited favor and blessing – God's riches at Jesus' expense] and of the gift of righteousness, shall reign as kings in life, by one, Jesus Christ."

Romans 5:10 AMP - "*For if while we were enemies we were reconciled to [restored to harmony with] God through the death of His Son, it is much more (certain), now that we are reconciled [are God's friends] that we shall be saved (daily delivered from sin's dominion) through His (resurrection) life.*"

Freed from Satan's sin nature, you can now live above sin and not be dominated by it. If we do sin, we ask God's forgiveness, and Jesus blood keeps on washing away the sins we commit after being born-again.

I John 1:9 κJV – "If we confess our sins, He [God] is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness."

When you die, physically (Jesus will someday eliminate this death too – [I Corinthians 15:25-26](#)), the angels of God will escort you to heaven—God's home. The Apostle Paul, who had visions of Heaven (supernatural insight into the supernatural realm or world around us), assured us that:

2 Corinthians 5:8 κJV - "...to be absent from the body [to die and leave your body behind in the grave], is to be present with the Lord."

I Timothy 2:5 NLT "...I know the One in whom I trust, and I am sure that He is able to guard what I have entrusted to Him until the day of His return."

The Bible also assures you, and all other *born again* Christians living at this time, that Jesus will return to Earth to rule over it. From the signs of the times, it looks like it will be soon. Those of us still living here on planet Earth at that time, who have been *born again*, will be resurrected—physically changed like Jesus was when He was raised from the dead. Our bodies will be made perfect and immortal like the bodies that Adam and Eve had in the Garden of Eden before they sinned and spiritually died. These *incorruptible* bodies ([I Corinthians 15:12-58](#)) will never again know sickness, sorrow, or pain:

Isaiah 25:8-9 KJV “He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord GOD will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the LORD hath spoken *it*.⁹ And it shall be said in that day, Lo, this *is* our God; we have waited for him, and he will save us: this *is* the LORD; we have waited for him, we will be glad and rejoice in his salvation.”

When Jesus returns, we'll share in the blessings of His benevolent worldwide rule, free from Satan's presence and power, for Satan will be bound in a pit for a thousand years! ([Revelation 20:1-3](#))

When you prayed and were *born-again*, God sent his omni-present (present everywhere) Holy Spirit to dwell inside you—to assure you that you are right with God ([Romans 8:16](#)) – to empower you to live an overcoming life of victory and success ([Acts 1:8](#)) – and to lead and guide you to success in your new found walk with God ([John 16:13](#)), and to enable you to understand the Bible. Consider the following Bible verses or promises along these lines:

Romans 8:16 KJV “The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God.”

Acts 1:8a KJV “But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you.”

John 16:13-15 KJV “Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, *that* shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.¹⁴ He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall shew *it* unto you.¹⁵ All things that the Father hath are mine: therefore said I, that he shall take of mine, and shall shew *it* unto you.”

Phillip 4:13 KJV “I can do all things through Christ which strengtheneth me.”

Congratulations! You're *born-again*! Welcome to the family of God! The Bible says that the angels of Heaven are rejoicing over your decision.

Luke 15:10 KJV “Likewise, I say unto you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner that repenteth.”

For you to realize your full potential as a *born-again Christian* – for you to grow up in the knowledge of what or who you are in God's family – and what's available to you in the way of blessings, and helping others to also find God, you need to start doing what the Bible says – to start doing things God's way as outlined in the Bible, realizing that His way is the best possible way you can live – a blueprint or instruction manual:

2 Timothy 3:15-17 NLT “You have been taught the holy Scriptures from childhood, and they have given you *the wisdom to receive the salvation that comes by trusting in Christ Jesus*.¹⁶ *All Scripture is inspired by God and is useful to teach us what is true and to make us realize what is wrong in our lives. It corrects us when we are wrong and teaches us to do what is right.*¹⁷ God uses it to prepare and equip His people to do every good work.”

As the late Rev. Dick Mills pointed out, There are some 7,700 or more promises or blessings in the Bible that can be yours if you put handles on them with your faith—if you walk with God—knowing and doing what God wants as revealed in the Bible, and by the leading of the Holy Spirit who now dwells inside you. Walking with God can be condensed into four main activities or categories—first *prayer life*; second, studying *the Bible* (meditating in God's Word) – God's road map or, owner's manual.

Psalms 1:1-3 NLT “Oh, the joys of those who do not follow the advice of the wicked, or stand around with sinners, or join in with mockers.² But they delight in the law of the LORD,

meditating on it day and night. ³ They are like trees planted along the riverbank, bearing fruit each season. Their leaves never wither, and they prosper in all they do.”

Third, *fellowshipping with other born again Christians*, and Fourth, *witnessing* (telling others about Jesus and why he came and what he offers, and how to receive it).

First is your private and public prayer life. This is a two way conversation with God – between you and God. In his epistle (letter) to the Ephesians (6:18), the Apostle Paul admonishes Christians to be “Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit [as the indwelling Holy Spirit leads you to pray], and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.”

Philippians 4:6-7 κJV - “Be careful [anxious] for nothing; but in everything by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Jesus Christ.”

Secondly, another main activity in your walking with God, is your daily study of the Bible—God’s plan and road map for your life. Read it as if it were written to you personally. Pray that the Holy Spirit will reveal its meaning and meditate on it until He does just that. I suggest you do an internet search and locate the cassette tape series by Dave Roberson, [Cardinal Laws That Govern Meditation in God’s Word](#). As mentioned earlier, [Psalm 1:2,3](#) states that when one meditates in God’s word day and night “whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.” [Joshua 1:8](#) tells us that when we are careful to do according to all God wants us to do as revealed in God’s Law, the Bible, then we will make our way prosperous and we will have good success. [2 Timothy 2:15](#) tells us that we find God’s approval as we study the Bible, God’s words of truth.

Thirdly, we must stay in fellowship with other believers in Jesus. When one removes a single log from the burning fire, it doesn’t burn very well by itself. So we need the help, encouragement, teaching, and prayers of others.

Proverbs 27:17 NLT “As iron sharpens iron, so a friend sharpens a friend.”

We usually find this fellowship in going to a local Church. Neighborhood home prayer and Bible study groups where everyone participates with his or her God given spiritual gift or talent, are exciting too!

Hebrews 10:25 NLT – And let us not neglect our meeting together, as some people do, but encourage one another, especially now that the day of his return is drawing near.

Our fourth main category of activity for a successful or fruitful and joyous Christian life is witnessing—telling others what Jesus has done for us and leading them to a *born-again* experience with the Savior. The Devil, through fears, will try and stop us in this because witnessing and soul winning is taking away his subjects; but we must persevere to victory.

Proverbs 11:30b κJV - “he that winneth souls is wise.”

Daniel 12:3 κJV - “And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars forever and ever.”

In our final journey to Heaven, all we can take with us is other souls. This is why Jesus told his disciples to use their financial resources to convert souls who will someday, when they die and get to Heaven before we do, welcome us into the eternal kingdom. **Luke 16:9** NLT - "Here’s the lesson: Use your worldly resources to benefit others and make friends. Then, when your possessions are gone, they will welcome you to an eternal home."

By witnessing, I mean what the phone company means when they use the catchy phrase “reach out and touch someone!” We need to reach out and let God help others through us—telling others what God has done for us as Jesus told the delivered demoniac. We tell them that what God did for us, He wants to do for them.

Mark 5:19 κJV - “Go home to thy friends, and tell them how great things the Lord hath done for thee, and hath had compassion on thee.”

You can see by all that has been written on the subject of being *born again* that salvation is the world’s greatest need—it changes the world from the inside out by changing men’s hearts (human spirits) and attitudes which improves their conduct and gives them something to live for. I started reading the book [God’s War on Terror](#) by [Walid Shoebat](#) a former PLO Islamic terrorist who, through the influence of his Christian wife, became born again and made an about face! Therefore, everything we do for God or our fellow man is geared to bringing them into this *born again* relationship with our Heavenly Father. God has chosen to use us to do this. Jesus said to his core group of disciples, before going to sit on the right hand of God in Heaven:

Matthew 28:18-20 κJV - “All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations [make disciples of them]...teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world.”

Saint Mark tells us that as we go out witnessing, fulfilling this *Great Commission*, God will confirm our witness and preaching by miracles that God works through us.

Mark 16:20 κJV - “And they went forth and preached everywhere, the Lord working with them, and confirming the word with signs following.”

The principle of God reaching people through people is found in Colossians 1:27 “Christ in you, the hope of glory.” We need to be *God inside minded*. The bible says that “All things are possible with God ([Matthew 19:26](#)) and that “All things are possible to him that believeth ([Mark 9:23](#)). 1 Corinthians 6:16 states:

“For ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people.”

I John 4:4 κJV - “Greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world.”

These verses are telling us that when we are *born again*, Satan no longer is the dominating force in us. God comes to live inside us and carries out his will and plan he began in Jesus, through us. Jesus said:

John 14:12 κJV - “He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do, because I go unto my Father.”

The extent to which God so uses us depends on:

1. Our understanding of His indwelling presence – our knowledge and faith.
2. Our yielding and cooperation.
3. How much God can trust us to use His power wisely
4. Our willingness to maintain a right attitude and *walk in love* (Ephesians 5:2)

Benediction

Philip 4:7 κJV “And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.”

Colossians 1:9-12 NLT “ For this cause we also, since the day we heard *it*, do not cease to pray for you, and to desire that ye might be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and

spiritual understanding; ¹⁰ That ye might walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God; ¹¹ Strengthened with all might, according to his glorious power, unto all patience and longsuffering with joyfulness; ¹² Giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light.”

A Song: **I Know in Whom I have believed** ([2 Timothy 1:12b](#))

Words: Daniel W. Whittle, in Gospel Hymns No. 4, 1883. Music: James McGranahan

*I know not why God's wondrous grace
To me He hath made known,
Nor why, unworthy, Christ in love
Redeemed me for His own.*

Refrain

*But I know Whom I have believed,
And am persuaded that He is able
To keep that which I've committed
Unto Him against that day.*

Refrain

*I know not how this saving faith
To me He did impart,
Nor how believing in His Word
Wrought peace within my heart.*

Refrain

*I know not how the Spirit moves,
Convincing us of sin,
Revealing Jesus through the Word,
Creating faith in Him.*

Refrain

*I know not what of good or ill
May be reserved for me,
Of weary ways or golden days,
Before His face I see.*

Refrain

*I know not when my Lord may come,
At night or noontide fair,
Nor if I walk the vale with Him,
Or meet Him in the air.*

God's Anointed Soul-Winning Plan

Note: This plan has now been made into a booklet document available as a free PDF download, both as a [printable document](#) or a [read order computer document \(e-booklet\)](#). They contain pages copied from Rev. Beckmann's diary that prove this plan changes lives. There are also printable forms for contact information and Bible assurance of salvation verses. Here is the link to the [document for printing booklets](#).

Reverend Larry Beckmann with Dick Handley
Sep 30, 2009

About 40 years ago I had the privilege to ordain into the ministry a man, who without a doubt, was the greatest personal soul winner of the last 100 years. His name was Reverend Larry Beckmann, and he was the recipient, posthumously, of the **World Services® University of Excellence Honorary Doctorate** for excellence in personal evangelism and discipleship.

Larry came to Bible studies I taught where many high school and college students attended. I also had the privilege to pray for him to receive the Baptism in the Holy Spirit with the evidence of speaking in tongues. A few minutes later he was leading a man to Christ at a liquor store next door. **Reverend Beckmann kept a detailed daily log, or diary, of the people he led to Christ.**

From the day Christ came into Larry's heart on May 2, 1964 until June 9, 1996, during that 32 years, **he personally prayed with 170,336 people to receive Christ. In one city alone (Atlanta, Georgia) 60,347 people prayed with him to receive Christ.** In just a five (5) year period, one married couple Larry trained in soul-winning in Atlanta prayed with an additional 8,000 people to receive Christ.

These are the greatest MIRACLES ... real miracles: **people experiencing Christ!** It is with GREAT JOY that I share with you the tool which the Holy Spirit had Larry prepare for the Body of Christ before he went to Heaven: "God's Anointed Soul-Winning Plan." This is the plan he used to lead people to Christ and it is the plan we use in the **University of Excellence** T.A.S.E.R. (The Apostles School of Evangelistic Reform) program.

GOD'S ANOINTED SOUL-WINNING PLAN

NOTE: This is not a tract. This is a tool for soul-winners.

Only read what's INSIDE the QUOTATION MARKS to the people with whom you witness. Your first two times read this exactly as written. Do not let Satan trick you into believing you'll look foolish reading this. Because of the anointing on this plan, they will listen!

“Pardon me, may I ask you a question?”

“I'm a Christian and I'm taking a survey; can you listen for about three minutes?”

“You believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. Is that true?”

Nine in ten Americans believe this much. This will vary from country to country. If the person does not believe this, END the survey. Then SOW SOME SEED to help them come to Christ at a FUTURE time.

Don't let the person interrupt until you have ask these questions.

“Have you ever met Christ personally, where He has come into your heart as Savior?”

“You've never met Christ personally, have you?”

NEVER ask: "Are you a Christian?" NEVER ask: "Are you saved?"

Why? Because almost EVERYBODY says "Yes" to either of these two questions.

And once they say "Yes" you can't win them to Christ. However, if they are saved, this question ("Have you ever met Christ Personally?") is written in such a way that you will be able to read to them and see if they are saved.

This is the one question [*"You've never met Christ personally, have you?"*] I advise you to **MEMORIZE** – and then use for the rest of your life as you witness.

“It's simple to get Jesus into your heart.”

“The first thing to realize is that Christ LOVES you. When he hung on the cross He died for YOU. He died in your place.”

John 3:16 (Read it or say it to them . . . best to let them look at it in the Bible with you.

John 3:16 NLT "For God loved the world so much that He gave His one and only Son, so that everyone who believes in Him will not perish but have eternal life."

“Do you know why He died for you on that cross?”

“So you wouldn't have to go to HELL and burn forever.”

“Look at my finger . . . how many sins does it take to put you into Hell, according to the Bible? “

(Hold up one finger.)

“Just ONE. James 2:10 teaches that.”

James 2:10 NLT “For the person who keeps all of the laws except one is as guilty as a person who has broken all of God's laws.”

“Everybody has sinned. You've sinned.” Romans 3:23 (Read it or say it to them - best to let them look at it in the Bible with you.)”

“Which means, if you died tonight in a car wreck without Christ, you would be in Hell. “

“And that's the reason I stopped you. Because it is very easy to protect you from Hell.”

“Of course, I can't protect you from Hell, but God can.”

“If you're a good person, will you go to Heaven?”

“No! Ephesians 2:8 says that being good doesn't even help.” (Read it or say it to them . . . best to let them look at it in the Bible with you.)

Ephesians 2:8 NLT “God saved you by His grace when you believed. And you can't take credit for this; it is a gift from God.”

“Church, baptism, believing – none of these [good works] can save you.”

“The devil BELIEVES that Jesus is God, and the devil is NOT going to Heaven. Believing is only the first step.”

“HERE'S THE ANSWER!! To get to Heaven you must let Jesus come into your heart.”

“REVELATION 3:20 (Read it or say it to them . . . best to let them look at it in the Bible with you.) “

“Be honest, do you WANT to let Jesus come into your heart? “

“Because you LOVE Him, right? “

“And you don't want to go to Hell.”

And you need Him. “

“In order to be saved from Hell, you must REPENT! That is, TURN from wanting Christ only partially . . . to wanting Him 100%. Are you willing to turn from your sins?”

“Do you want Jesus to come into your heart as a FRIEND?”

“Now, I'm going to make it real hard for you. Do you want Jesus as a friend with ALL your heart? “

Don't pray with them unless they are 100% sure.

“If you mean this prayer, you won't have to go to Hell. “

“Just repeat [this prayer] after me.”

“Jesus, I believe You are here. (PAUSE) I'm sorry for my sins. (PAUSE) And you

promised to save me from Hell if I would ask you into my heart. (PAUSE) So I ask you, Jesus . . . please come into my heart right now. “

“He heard your prayer . . . He is in your heart NOW! “

“Did you really mean that prayer? “

“So . . . where is Jesus living right now? “

“In your heart! “

“Do you have to ask Jesus into your heart every day to go to Heaven, or just once? “

“Just once. Once does it. You pray every day. You pray hundreds of times. You confess your sins every day. But you only let Jesus come into your heart once. “

“Now . . . let's do a little review. Are you saved? “

“Yes! You just got saved. Don't base your salvation on FEELINGS. Most people don't feel anything when they get saved. Base it on what the Bible says. “

“Does the Bible say you're saved?”

“More than 100 verses say you are saved. For example, John 1:12 says you are saved, and Revelation 3:20 says you are saved. More than 100 verses assure you. “

(Question) “And what did you do that saved you?”

(Answer) “You let Jesus come into your heart.”

Write down five (5) scripture references on a piece of paper for them to read later (or, you can have them preprinted). These verses are helpful to give them added assurance when of their salvation when doubt comes. These are the scriptures to write down:

- John 1:12
- Romans 10:9, 10 & 13.
- Revelation 3:20
- 1 John 5:12
- Ephesians 2:8-10

(Verses are taken from the New Living Translation)

John 1:12 κJV “But to all who believed Him and accepted Him, He gave the right to become children of God.”

Romans 10:9 κJV “If you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved.”

Romans 10:10 κJV “For it is by believing in your heart that you are made right with God, and it is by confessing with your mouth that you are saved.”

Romans 10:13 κJV “For “Everyone who calls on the name of the LORD will be saved.”

Revelations 3:20 κJV “Look! I stand at the door and knock. If you hear My voice and open the door, I will come in, and we will share a meal together as friends.”

1 John 5:12 κβ “Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have God's Son does not have life.”

Ephesians 2:8-10 κβ “God saved you by His grace when you believed. And you can't take credit for this; it is a gift from God.⁹ Salvation is not a reward for the good things we have done, so none of us can boast about it. ¹⁰ For we are God's masterpiece. He has created us anew in Christ Jesus, so we can do the good things He planned for us long ago.”

Four (4) things God wants you to DO now that you are saved.

#1. Church (Recommend a good power church to them).

#2. Read the Holy Bible every day. Don't start in the front of the Bible, because Jesus wasn't born yet. The first book, Genesis, was 4,000 years before Jesus was born. Begin by reading MATTHEW, MARK, LUKE, and JOHN. These four books quote Jesus' words hundreds of times, and show what the Holy Spirit did through Him. Then read the Book of Acts to see exciting things the Holy Spirit does through Christians.

#3. Pray. Talk to Jesus many times each day . . . whenever you want. He's your BEST FRIEND.

#4. Tell others about Jesus. Try to tell several people today and tomorrow that you let Jesus come into your heart. Not only will this challenge you to get others saved, but it will STRENGTHEN YOU greatly. “

Write down the person's name, address, email address (if any), and telephone number so either you or a church can FOLLOW UP with them. NOTE: it is very important to **get their email address**.

Why is this plan entitled "God's Anointed Soul-Winning Plan?"

The answer lies in the meaning of the word "anointed." Pastor Mel Amrine wisely said: "The proof of whether a plan is anointed or not is in the results it gets." You can have ten soul-winning plans with all ten of them full of Bible verses. Yet nine of them see only a few results, but the tenth plan sees enormous results. It is the plan that sees enormous results which is anointed.

In a period of just 11 years before Larry Beckmann went to Heaven, the Lord used this plan to lead more than 100,000 people to pray and receive Christ as Savior. Virtually everyone that uses it sees tremendous results.

It is my prayer that God will use this simple soul winning plan in **your life** to bring multitudes to Christ.

Your friend, Apostle Dick Handley

"The fruit of the righteous is a tree of life; and he that wins souls is wise." (Proverbs 11:30)

Follow-Up — Discipleship Training for New Believers

When the resurrected Jesus left earth to sit at the right hand of the *Majesty on High*, He told His disciples (Matthew 28:19,20 LB) “Go and make disciples in [literally, ‘of’] all nations...and teach these new disciples to obey all the commands I have given you.” The Greek word for disciple, *matheteuo*, used here means to teach, instruct, enroll as a scholar, become a pupil. The words “to obey”, *tereo*, include the figurative meaning of *to maintain*, and *to hold fast, keep*, according to [Strong’s Greek Dictionary](#). In Jesus’ parable of the sower and the seed, he said (Matthew 13:5,6 LB) “*and some fell on rocky soil where there was little depth of earth; the plants sprang up quickly enough in the shallow soil, but the hot sun soon scorched them and they withered and died, for they had so little root.*” Jesus explanation of this (verses 20-21) was “*the shallow, rocky soil represents the heart of a man who hears the message and receives it with real joy, but he doesn’t have much depth in his life, and the seeds don’t root very deeply, and after a while when trouble comes, or persecution because of his beliefs, his enthusiasm fades, and he drops out.*”

The Apostle Paul told the younger Timothy (2 Timothy 4:2b) “*All the time be feeding them patiently with God’s word.*” and, (2 Timothy 2:2) “*For you must teach others those things you and many others have heard me speak about. Teach these great truths to trustworthy men who will, in turn, pass them on to others.*” Judy Bauer started [Kingdom Advancement Ministries](#) (KAM), an organized follow-up system that the church I was working with implemented, after the pastor and I were trained by Mrs. Bauer. When a new person or family visited our Church they would fill out a [visitor’s card](#) with their name and address on it. The church visitation team would make weekly unannounced visits to the residence of these new comers to ascertain where they stood with the Lord. An attempt was made to start an eight week Bible study in the family’s home. Friends and relatives are to be invited, and the *basic teachings* of [Hebrews 6:1-2](#) are taught: “*those first lessons about Christ...the foolishness of trying to be saved by being good, or about the necessity of faith in God...instruction about baptism and spiritual gifts [literally, ‘the laying on of hands’] and the resurrection of the dead and eternal judgment.*”

[Pastor Clayton Gollieher](#) of [Hope For Homeless Youth](#) in the Los Angeles, CA area wrote: “There are a few things to remember when starting an outreach program. You must be consistent. You will develop relationships with the people as they get to know you and see Jesus’ love on a consistent basis. Be faithful. Establish a discipleship plan, weekly Bible studies either in your church or on the street. **90% of those saved will be lost again without discipleship.** Deliverance, and inner healing must be incorporated into your plan of discipleship.”

Therefore, Christian evangelism Publishers should make it a point to have available, a guide, or literature for new converts. Prince Handley’s [Free Bible Studies](#), posted in [English](#), [Spanish](#), and [French](#) on the www.realmiracles.org website. A printable English

version with answers to the questions is also located [here](#). I attended a home Bible study connected with my church about 1981 that was being taught by a young man in his early twenties. I heard him ask the group, "What do you say to next week we wade out into the Book of Revelation?" "Oh, no!" I said to myself. "That subject is too controversial or hard to figure out." The Lord had told me "You will teach simple doctrine to simple folk." "What do you want us to be learning here?" I asked the Lord. The Holy Spirit within me said [this was afterward confirmed by my spiritual mother to be an authentic message from God] "[The Lordship of Jesus Christ](#); [how to hear the voice of God](#); and, [how to share your faith](#)."

Here is a list of Bible axioms for successful Christian living:

1. The concept of Jesus Christ being the Lord, Owner, or Master of our lives, a confession we made to get saved based on [Romans 10:9-10](#). A song goes, "I'm not my own, I belong to Jesus. With His own blood He ransomed me..." The Living Bible states ([Romans 8:8](#)) that those bent on living their own evil desires "can never please God". Romans 10:28 TLB reads, "And we know that all that happens to us is working for our good **if we love God and are fitting into His plans.**" An Old Testament verse (Isaiah 1:19) says "If ye be willing and obedient, ye shall eat the good of the land:" For Our Christian lives to be effective, the Lord must be in charge. In the book [A 2nd Helping of Chicken Soup for the Soul](#), under [The Bike Ride](#), an anonymous contributor says that when he recognized his higher power better, it seemed his life was like a bicycle ride on a tandem bike with God in the back helping him pedal. At one point God suggested they change places, which made life much more exciting. At first he didn't trust God being in control of his life, thinking God would wreck it, but as he adjusted, he found God became "my delightful constant companion".
2. Jesus said "*My sheep hear my voice, and they follow me, and the voice of another they will not hear.*" (John 10:27). Romans 8:14^{LB} states, "*For all who are led by the Spirit of God are the sons of God.*" Although God rarely speaks in an audible voice, He does impress us to do things by the *bearing witness* of the Holy Spirit who lives within us, in our human spirits, or geographically, in our gut. "*The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit...*" (Romans 8:16). Psalm 37:23 states: "*The steps of a good man are ordered of the Lord...*" The hardest part is tuning in like a radio station to how God speaks or leads us by the Holy Spirit within. 2 Timothy 1:14 says "...*the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us.*" Galatians 5:25 NLT - "*Since we are living by the Spirit, let us follow the Spirit's leading in every part of our lives.*"
3. Sharing one's faith is living so as to represent Jesus Christ in our words and actions: "*Ye are our epistle, written in our hearts, known and read of all men.*" (2 Corinthians 3:2). As we become *imitators of Christ* ("*And you should imitate me, just as I imitate Christ*" – 1 Corinthians 11:1), people are attracted to the Lord and we simply learn to lead them in a prayer of salvation like the one at the back of this

book. We also then give them assurance of their salvation promises from God's Word the Bible, and get them involved with other believers and Bible Study. *"Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together"* – Hebrews 10:25. Leading others to a personal saving relationship with God (to become a child of God through faith in Jesus Christ – [2 Timothy 3:15](#); [Galatians 3:26](#)) is every Christian's duty or responsibility. *"And they went forth and preached everywhere..."* – Mark 16:20.

4. We are to bear one another's burdens and so fulfill the law of Christ – [Galatians 6:2](#)
5. We are to walk in love and forgiveness toward others because our horizontal relationship with others affects our vertical relationship with God, and vice versa. *"By this shall all men know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love, one to another."*
- John 13:35 *"The love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us."* – Romans 5:5 *"And when ye stand praying, forgive if ye have aught against any, that your Father also which is in heaven may also forgive you your trespasses."* – Mark 11:25 *"Love worketh no ill to his neighbor"* – Romans 13:10
6. We are to pray without ceasing [i.e., be in a constant attitude of prayer], be thankful in everything, and rejoice evermore.
1 Thessalonians 5:16-18 κJV " Rejoice evermore. ¹⁷ Pray without ceasing. ¹⁸ In everything give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you."
7. We are to treat others as we would have them treat us (Matthew 7:12 -.The Golden Rule), and be concerned about the needs of those round us, and not just ourselves. (I Thessalonians 5:15)
Matthew 7:12 κJV "Therefore all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them: for this is the law and the prophets."
1 Thessalonians 5:15 κJV "See that none render evil for evil unto any *man*; but ever follow that which is good, both among yourselves, and to all *men*."
Phillip 2:1-9 κJV "If *there be* therefore any consolation in Christ, if any comfort of love, if any fellowship of the Spirit, if any bowels and mercies, ² fulfil ye my joy, that ye be likeminded, having the same love, *being* of one accord, of one mind. ³ Let nothing *be done* through strife or vainglory; but in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves. ⁴ Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others. ⁵ Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus: ⁶ Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: ⁷ But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: ⁸ And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross. ⁹ Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name"
8. God wants us to healthy and prosperous as we grow and develop spiritually – [3rd John 2](#).
9. We are in a war between good and evil, God and the Devil & his allied demons or evil spirits, and this earth and our beings are the battleground. By using the Word of

God “*It is written...*” ([Luke 4:4, 8](#)), Jesus’ Name ([Mark 16:17](#)), the power of His blood ([Revelation 12:11](#)), and sticking together, we have the assurance of victory

Romans 8:37 κJV “No, despite all these things, overwhelming victory is ours through Christ, who loved us.”

Leviticus 26:7-8 κJV “And you shall chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword. ⁸ Five of you shall chase a hundred, and a hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight; your enemies shall fall before you by the sword.”

10. We will all one day stand before God to give account for or be rewarded for what we did while here on Earth.

2 Corinthians 5:10 κJV “For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he hath done, whether *it be* good or bad.”

11. There is eternal life (eternity with God) [1 Thessalonians 4:17](#); and eternal death (separation from God in Hell or a place of conscious and ongoing torment) [Revelation 14:11](#); [20:15](#). Our final destination is our choice based on our acceptance or rejection of Jesus Christ personally in our hearts.

1 John 5:11-12 “And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. ¹² He that hath the Son hath life; *and* he that hath not the Son of God hath not life. ¹³ These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.

12. It is our goal to not sin or disobey God, but we will likely sin and need to ask God’s forgiveness (and other’s forgiveness). The hard part is being willing to acknowledge there is still sin in our lives and that we hurt others and grieve the Holy Spirit within us when we shouldn’t.

1 John 2:1 NLT “My dear children, I am writing this to you so that you will not sin. But if anyone does sin, we have an advocate who pleads our case before the Father. He is Jesus Christ, the One who is truly righteous.

Phillip 3:18-20 NLT “For I have told you often before, and I say it again with tears in my eyes, that there are many whose conduct shows they are really enemies of the cross of Christ. ¹⁹ They are headed for destruction. Their god is their appetite, they brag about shameful things, and they think only about this life here on earth. ²⁰ But we are citizens of heaven, where the Lord Jesus Christ lives. And we are eagerly waiting for Him to return as our Savior.”

It is better to be open and honest and repentant (sorry for) our sins than to try and hide them or cover them up.

Proverbs 28:13 κJV “He that covereth his sins shall not prosper: but whoso confesseth and forsaketh *them* shall have mercy.”

1 John 1:9 κJV “If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us *our* sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

Proverbs 24:16 κJV “For a just *man* falleth seven times, and riseth up again:

13. Although sins may be forgiven, they can still have earthy consequences as in the after effects of King David committing adultery, and then murder to try and cover it up.

Galatians 6:7 KJV “Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap.”⁸ For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting.”

Yet God is merciful.

Psalms 103:10-14 κJV “He hath not dealt with us after our sins; nor rewarded us according to our iniquities. ¹¹ For as the heaven is high above the earth, so great is his mercy toward them that fear him. ¹² As far as the east is from the west, so far hath he removed our transgressions from us. ¹³ Like as a father pitieth *his* children, so the LORD pitieth them that fear him. ¹⁴ For he knoweth our frame; he remembereth that we *are* dust.

14. In Hell, Jesus Christ defeated Satan and took back man’s rulership of the Earth. Eventually Jesus will return from his present position seated at the right hand of the Father God ([1 Peter 3:22](#)) where He is interceding on our behalf, to reign as King on Earth ([2 Timothy 4:1](#)), subduing evil and, 1,000 years later, banishing the Devil with his followers and fallen angels, to the [Lake of Fire](#).

Isaiah 9:7 κJV “Of the increase of *his* government and peace *there shall be* no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the LORD of hosts will perform this.”

15. When Jesus returns to Earth, to bring judgment on evil and reward His followers, those believers in Jesus who have died previously, will have their bodies resurrected and changed to immortal bodies along with those of us alive and serving Christ here on Earth at that time. We will have perfect bodies like that of Jesus and will share in Jesus Christ’s benevolent reign ([1 Corinthians chapter 15](#)). “*And so shall we ever be with the Lord.*” (1 Thessalonians 4:17)

16. The Earth will be destroyed or renovated and a new Heaven and Earth will take its place, with the Heavenly City New Jerusalem being transferred from Heaven to Earth.

Revelations 21:1-5a κJV “And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea. ² And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. ³ And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God *is* with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, *and be* their God: ⁴ And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away. ^{5a} And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new.

17. The Bible (*all Scripture*) is inspired by God or “God breathed”, and a guide for right living ([2 Timothy 3:16,17LB](#)). The Bible came to us as holy men of old spoke as were moved upon by the Holy Spirit ([1 Peter 1:10,11](#)).

The whole Bible was given to us by inspiration from God and is useful to teach us what is true and to make us realize what is wrong in our lives; it straightens us out

and helps us do what is right. It is God's way of making us well prepared at every point, fully equipped to do good to everyone.

18. We are commanded to be filled with or baptized in the Holy Spirit (Ephesians 5:18) which is shown in the Book of Acts (e.g., Acts 10:44-47) to be accompanied by speaking in a heavenly personal prayer language by which the Holy Spirit can pray through us a perfect prayer to God (Romans 8:26); and by which we can charge ourselves up like a battery (the gateway to walking in a demonstration of God's power – Jude verse 20)

Jude 20 TLB "But you, dear friends, must build up your lives even more strongly upon the foundation of our holy faith, learning to pray in the power and strength of the Holy Spirit."

It has been my personal observation that Spirit filled Christians who pray in tongues (their heavenly language) a lot, are more anointed and tuned in to God, and more effective in getting people saved, healed, delivered, and set free. No wonder the Apostle Paul said, "*I thank my God I speak with tongues more than ye all.*" (I Corinthians 14:18). My prophet roommate disciplined himself to pray fourteen hours a day in tongues, and he was the most anointed local man I knew.

19. We need to not talk negatively about ourselves or others ([1 Peter 2:1-3](#)) as the Bible says we can have what we say ([Mark 11:23-25](#)). We must guard our thought life also, as the Devil or demons try to first gain access or get into us through our minds. ([Philippians 4:7-8](#); [2 Corinthians 10:3-5](#))

Ephesians 4:29 NLT "Don't use foul or abusive language. Let everything you say be good and helpful, so that your words will be an encouragement to those who hear them. ³⁰ And do not bring sorrow to God's Holy Spirit by the way you live. Remember, He has identified you as His own, guaranteeing that you will be saved on the day of redemption. ³¹ Get rid of all bitterness, rage, anger, harsh words, and slander, as well as all types of evil behavior. ³² Instead, be kind to each other, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, just as God through Christ has forgiven you."

Proverbs 6:2 KJV "Thou art snared with the words of thy mouth, thou art taken with the words of thy mouth."

20. We are to be holy (set apart to God) and Christ like in all we say and do. Obey God because you are his children. Don't slip back into your old ways – doing evil because you knew no better. We have died to the old life we used to live.

1 Peter 1:15 TLB "But be holy now in everything you do, just as the Lord is holy, who invited you to be his child. He himself has said, "You must be holy, for I am holy."

2 Corinthians 6:16b-17 TLB "Come ye out from among them, and be ye separate says the Lord, and I will receive you. ¹⁷ For you are God's temple, the home of the living God!

1 Peter 2:11,16 TLB "Since your real home is in heaven I beg you to keep away from the evil pleasures of this world; they are not for you, for they fight against your very souls. You are free from the Law, but that doesn't mean you are free to do wrong. Live as those who are free only to do God's will at all times."

1 Peter 4:3 TLB "You have had enough in the past of the evil things the godless enjoy – sex sin, lust, getting drunk, wild parties, drinking bouts, and the worship of idols, and other terrible sins."

Titus 2:11b TLB "For the free gift of eternal salvation is now being offered to everyone: and along with this gift come the realization that God wants us to turn from godless living and sinful pleasures and to live good, god-fearing lives day after day."

21. The suffering of persecution for our Christian beliefs cannot be avoided, and is normal.

1 Peter 4:16 TLB “But it is no shame to suffer for being a Christian.”

2 Titus 3:12 KJV “Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution.”

1 Corinthians 16:9 LB “For there is a wide door for me to preach here: so much is happening, but there are many enemies.”

1 Peter 4:1:14 TLB “Since Christ suffered and underwent pain, you must have the same attitude he did; you must be ready to suffer too. Be happy if you are cursed and insulted for being a Christian, for when that happens the Spirit of God will come upon you with great glory.”

22. As the late [Dr. John G. Lake](#) pointed out, we can walk in divine healing, divine health, and divine life. It is possible to live without being sick. The late Kenneth E. Hagin implied he wasn't sick and didn't have the flu in over 50 years, although he was so sick up to age 16, from being born prematurely, that he died four times and came back before he was divinely healed. Bad symptoms would try to come on him, but he rebuked them in Jesus' and didn't sign for the package ([1 Peter 5:8](#); [James 4:7](#))

Colossians 3:4 KJV “Christ, *who is* our life...”

Romans 8:2 NLT “And because you belong to Him, the power of the life-giving Spirit has freed you from the power of sin that leads to death.”

Isaiah 53:5 NLT “But He was pierced for our rebellion, crushed for our sins. He was beaten so we could be whole. He was whipped so we could be healed.”

23. Jesus died to redeem us, not just from sin, but, the curse of the broken law, namely poverty, sickness, and premature death.

Galatians 3:13a LB “But Christ has brought us out from under the doom of that impossible system by taking the curse of our wrong doing upon himself.”

Psalms 91:10,16 LB “How then can evil overtake me or any plague come near? ¹⁶I will satisfy him with a full life [literally “with long life”] and give him my salvation.”

24. God cares about the intimate details of our lives and wants us to consult Him about everything; and He desires to help us in every area of our lives. As an example, Evangelist Dave Roberson began to pray 8 hours a day in tongues in desperation and as he tuned in to God, he received wisdom for investments and financial prosperity that brought him out of poverty in just a year.

1 Peter 5:7 Casting the whole of your care [*all your anxieties, all your worries, all your concerns, once and for all*] on Him, for He cares for you affectionately and cares about you watchfully. [*Ps. 55:22.*]

25. God wants to prosper us or give us success in all we do that is good and right and honors Him.

Proverbs 10:22 NLT “The blessing of the LORD makes a person rich, and He adds no sorrow with it.”

Dick Mills points out there are 7,700 promises in the Bible, with handles on them, our personal faith, by which we can appropriate them (apply them to our lives).

2 Peter 1:3-4 KJV “According as his divine power hath given unto us all things that *pertain* unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that hath called us to glory and virtue: thereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be

partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.”

Romans 8:31 KJV “What shall we say about such wonderful things as these? If God is for us, who can ever be against us?”

Romans 8:32 KJV “Since He did not spare even His own Son but gave Him up for us all, won't He also give us everything else?”

Matthew 7:7-11 KJV “Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you: ⁸ For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened. ⁹ Or what man is there of you, whom if his son ask bread, will he give him a stone? ¹⁰ Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent? ¹¹ If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?”

1Peter 5:7 AMP “Casting the whole of your care [*all your anxieties, all your worries, all your concerns, once and for all*] on Him, for He cares for you affectionately and cares about you watchfully. [*Ps.55:22.*]”

Philippians 4:13,19-20 TLB “For I can do everything God asks me to with the help of Christ who gives me the strength and power. And it is he who will supply all your needs from his riches in glory, because of what Christ Jesus has done for us. Don't worry about anything; instead, pray about everything, tell God your needs, and don't forget to thank him for his answers. If you do this you will experience God's peace, which is far more wonderful than the human mind can understand. His peace will keep your thoughts and your hearts quiet and at rest as you trust in Christ Jesus.”

26. Everyone will one day give an account to God (or be held accountable) for his or her actions while here on Earth.

John 5:28-29 TLB “Don't be surprised! Indeed the time is coming when all the dead in their graves shall hear the voice of God's Son and shall rise again – those who have done good, to eternal life; and those who have continued in evil, to judgment.”

Hebrews 9:27 TLB “And just as it is destined that men die only once, and after that comes judgment.”

2 Corinthians 5:10 KJV “For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things *done* in *his* body, according to that he hath done, whether *it be* good or bad.”

Revelations 20:12-13 NLT “I saw the dead, both great and small, standing before God's throne. And the books were opened, including the Book of Life. And the dead were judged according to what they had done, as recorded in the books. The sea gave up its dead, and death and the grave gave up their dead. And all were judged according to their deeds.”

26. Christ rejecters and evil doers will have their part in the Lake of Fire, which is called [the second death](#).

Revelations 20:13-15 KJV “The sea gave up its dead, and death and the grave gave up their dead. And all were judged according to their deeds. ¹⁴Then death and the grave were thrown into the lake of fire. This lake of fire is the second death. ¹⁵ And anyone whose name was not found recorded in the Book of Life was thrown into the lake of fire.

Revelations 14:11 KJV “And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name.”

Jesus said:

Matthew 10:28 NLT “Don't be afraid of those who want to kill your body; they cannot touch your soul. Fear only God, who can destroy both soul and body in hell.

According to W.E. Vine, in his Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words, the Greek word for *destroy* used here does not mean absence of being, but of well being.

27. On the other hand, the person who has asked Jesus into his heart or life and has sought to serve Him, now possesses eternal life [no soul sleep], and will immediately go to be with the Lord when he dies, to spend eternity with God. When Jesus returns to Earth He will give all believers in him a physical resurrection and glorified immortal bodies like his.

2 Corinthians 5:8 “We are confident, / say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord.”

2 Corinthians 5:1-5 KJV “For we know that when this earthly tent we live in is taken down (that is, when we die and leave this earthly body), we will have a house in heaven, an eternal body made for us by God Himself and not by human hands.² We grow weary in our present bodies, and we long to put on our heavenly bodies like new clothing.³ For we will put on heavenly bodies; we will not be spirits without bodies.⁴ While we live in these earthly bodies, we groan and sigh, but it's not that we want to die and get rid of these bodies that clothe us. Rather, we want to put on our new bodies so that these dying bodies will be swallowed up by life.⁵ God Himself has prepared us for this, and as a guarantee He has given us His Holy Spirit.”

It should be noted here that to die at less than 70 or 80 years old is, according to the Bible, not God's best for us.

Psalms 90:10 NLT “Seventy years are given to us! Some even live to eighty.”

Psalms 91:16 NLT “I will reward them with a long life and give them My salvation.”

28. God's way of doing things, although in our best interest, is not always as we would expect (what makes rational sense to us), so we often need to follow in faith and ask questions or figure it out later.

Isaiah 55:8-9 KJV “My thoughts are nothing like your thoughts,” says the LORD. “And My ways are far beyond anything you could imagine.⁹ For just as the heavens are higher than the earth, so My ways are higher than your ways and My thoughts higher than your thoughts.”

Proverbs 16:25 KJV “There is a way that seemeth right unto a man, but the end thereof *are* the ways of death.”

1 Corinthians 2:14 NLT “But people who aren't spiritual can't receive these truths from God's Spirit. It all sounds foolish to them and they can't understand it, for only those who are spiritual can understand what the Spirit means.”

John 3:8 AMP “The wind blows (breathes) where it wills; and though you hear its sound, yet you neither know where it comes from nor where it is going. So it is with everyone who is born of the Spirit.”

Years ago the Lord told me through a prophet of God, “The path that I have chosen for you is not a path that you would have chosen; neither is it a path that others would have chosen for you. It may seem errant, irrelevant, erroneous, but stay on the path, for it is the path that I have chosen.”

29. God wants us to praise Him, and as I already stated, to be thankful and joyful regardless of the circumstances (1 Thessalonians 5:16-18). His presence inhabits the praises of His people (1 Peter 2:9)

Psalm 147:1 NLT "Praise the LORD! How good to sing praises to our God! How delightful and how fitting!"

Psalm 84:4 NLT "What joy for those who can live in Your house, always singing Your praises."

Perhaps praise keeps us from developing a negative or self defeating, critical attitude; or, it gets our minds off the problem and on to the solution. When King Jehoshaphat put the praisers in front of the army (2 Chronicles 20:20-28), God caused the enemies to turn on each other, resulting in a seemingly impossible victory for God's people."

1 Thessalonians 5:15b-18 TLB "...always try to do good to each other and to everyone else. Always be joyful. Always keep on praying. No matter what happens, always be thankful, for this is God's will for you who belong to Christ Jesus."

30. As the saying goes, we are to look on the faith side of dark things. The Lord told Charles Capps, and Jerry Leonard, "Tell my people I said they can have what they say, and they are saying what they have." This is based on [Mark 11:23-24](#), where Jesus tells us our tongues or personal confessions can bring God's power to our aid, or self invited curses from the evil one. What we say is what we get.

Proverbs 18:21 KJV "Death and life *are* in the power of the tongue: and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof."

An appropriate example of good faith confessions would be reading over in a personalized way, Psalm 91, and Ephesians 6 which are used to protect ourselves from evil, harm, danger, and misfortune. Of course, we should also use common sense and try taking care of ourselves so we can see the 70 to 80 years the Lord wants us to have.

31. It is possible to develop an intimate fellowship or walk with God the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit while we are here on Earth, and we should pursue that. In the Old Testament, Enoch walked with God 300 years after he had his son Methuselah (Genesis 5:22).

2 Corinthians 13:14 NLT "May the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all."

1 John 1:3 NLT "We proclaim to you what we ourselves have actually seen and heard so that you may have fellowship with us. And our fellowship is with the Father and with His Son, Jesus Christ."

Mark 1:35 KJV "And in the morning, rising up a great while before day, he [Jesus] went out, and departed into a solitary place, and there prayed."

32. We are to live like Jesus and carry on the miracle work he began.

John 14:12-14 KJV "Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that believeth on me, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater *works* than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father. ¹³ And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. ¹⁴ If ye shall ask any thing in my name, I will do *it*."

33. God has an earthly and eternal reward for our obedience to Him. God wants us to develop our God given talents and be successful.

Hebrews 6:10 KJV “For God *is* not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love, which ye have shewed toward his name, in that ye have ministered to the saints, and do minister.”

Psalms 1:1-3 KJV “Blessed *is* the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful. ² But his delight *is* in the law of the LORD; and in his law doth he meditate day and night. ³ And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.”

Matthew 6:30-33 KJV “ Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which to day is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, *shall he* not much more *clothe* you, O ye of little faith? ¹therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed? ² (For after all these things do the Gentiles seek:) for your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things. ³ But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and his righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.”

Matthew 25:20-21 KJV “And so he that had received five talents came and brought other five talents, saying, Lord, thou deliveredst unto me five talents: behold, I have gained beside them five talents more. ²¹ His lord said unto him, Well done, *thou* good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord.”

For example, the current director of the Santa Barbara Rescue Mission was a drug addict sleeping in a cardboard box in downtown Los Angeles. He realized he needed to be in a rehabilitation program, so he got into one. He has now been a program director for ten years, drives a nice car, lives in a condominium, and is happily married to a wife with a graduate degree

34. God wants us to be zealous of good works, but not as an effort on our part to be saved, but because we are saved, His having changed our hearts and put it in our hearts to do His will.

Titus 2:11-14 KJV “For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men, ²Teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world; ³Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ; ⁴Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works.”

35. The salvation that began when we asked Jesus into our hearts as Lord and Savior is ongoing. As we ask the Lord to search our hearts and purify and mature us, we are *being saved*. The final salvation will be the redemption of our physical bodies when Jesus returns.

1 Corinthians 1:18 NLT “The message of the cross is foolish to those who are headed for destruction! But we who are being saved know it is the very power of God.”

36. God wants to give us wisdom to deal wisely in the affairs of life.

James 1:5 NLT “If you need wisdom, ask our generous God, and He will give it to you. He will not rebuke you for asking.”

1 Kings 3:9-14 NLT “Give me an understanding heart so that I can govern Your people well and know the difference between right and wrong. For who by himself is able to govern this great people of Yours? ¹⁰ The Lord was pleased that Solomon had asked for wisdom. ¹¹So God replied, “Because you have asked for wisdom in governing My people with justice and have not asked for a long life or wealth or the death of your enemies—¹² I will

give you what you asked for! I will give you a wise and understanding heart such as no one else has had or ever will have! ¹³ And I will also give you what you did not ask for—riches and fame! No other king in all the world will be compared to you for the rest of your life! ¹⁴ And if you follow Me and obey My decrees and My commands as your father, David, did, I will give you a long life."

37. The Christian life or walk isn't always easy, but through the indwelling power and presence of the Holy Spirit in our lives, we overcome evil with good and ultimately prevail.

Acts 14:21-22 NLT "After preaching the Good News in Derbe and making many disciples, Paul and Barnabas returned to Lystra, Iconium, and Antioch of Pisidia, ²² where they strengthened the believers. They encouraged them to continue in the faith, reminding them that we must suffer many hardships to enter the Kingdom of God."

38. God wants us to be unselfish givers.

Proverbs 11:24-25 KJV "There is that scattereth, and yet increaseth; and *there is* that withholdeth more than is meet, but *it tendeth* to poverty. ²⁵ The liberal soul shall be made fat: and he that watereth shall be watered also himself."

39. God wants to develop the nature and character of Jesus in us. This is a process and involves the evil in us being exposed and taken out as we can bear to see it, then being cleansed by God's Word and the blood of Jesus, then being filled in with more of Jesus and the fruit of the Holy Spirit (Galatians 5:19-25). A Hospital chaplain, Bishop Whitlock, was told by the Lord, "First, my son, empty out, and then I will fill you." The Apostle Paul stated:

Colossians 1:28 AMP "Him we preach and proclaim, warning and admonishing everyone and instructing everyone in all wisdom (comprehensive insight into the ways and purposes of God), that we may present every person mature (full-grown, fully initiated, complete, and perfect) in Christ (the Anointed One).

A song says, "From glory to glory He's changing me, changing me...changed to the likeness of God and His Son...from the earthly to the heavenly...His image and likeness to perfect in me." The Lord promised:

Psalms 138:8 NLT "The LORD will work out His plans for my life—for Your faithful love, O LORD, endures forever."

Psalms 138:8 AMP "The Lord will perfect that which concerns me."

Here is a self improvement prayer along these lines, given to me by a prophet of God:

Holy Spirit Inspired Prayer for Personal Growth

"Father God, in the Name of Jesus show me my faults and failures and all the things I am in self-denial about, and can't see about myself by myself. By your Spirit, or in any form you choose, show me the real truth about me to me. And God and Jesus, give me the courage and wisdom and strength to accept myself as I truly am, and love myself unconditionally as you love me. And move me on -through the stages of growth and acceptance of things I need to know about myself, and to have the courage that you give me, and for me to give myself the courage to confess these faults and feelings to others that you direct me to confess these things to, because your word says to confess my faults to others so that I will be healed; and to keep my mouth shut when it should be, and to say things only when I have the proper words and wisdom to do so, and not before, so I won't be saying things

that are out of season, but in season. And please, God, help me to express what and how I personally feel about myself to get all of my feelings out to the proper people at the proper time, and at the proper place. I confess I have been running from your truth and the real truth about myself. Let the scales of spiritual blindness fall from my eyes as they did from Paul. Please don't do these things all at once, but have mercy on me, and show me as I can bear it and receive it. But answer this prayer as fast as you can and give me the ability to go forward in your strength and in your timing. But please move me into new growth, not so I will get some place in life, to fulfill selfish ambition, but to fulfill your will for my life. Help me to seek wisdom and not be afraid of what I'm really like. Help me to see what my responsibility is in life, and to see there is no way but yours, and yours alone, and not to blame anyone or anything that has happened to me for who and what I am, but to assume all of this responsibility on myself, as Jesus took my sins on himself, and to quit, stop, desist, and halt all of my puny alibis about the way I handle my life, and to be responsible for my own actions, and to quit squirming out of the truth when it is shown me, and to quit my unreal rationalizations to avoid doing my part in getting well and whole. Please forgive me for all my wrong words and actions that have kept me in self-denial, and have kept me from seeing and living your truth, for you are the truth. Please help me to replace all of my self-defense mechanisms that are keeping me safe (but are really not), even though I think they are, with reality in each and every situation that comes into my life, for my walls of self-protection from pain and hurt have kept you out, and me in emotional and spiritual prison, and you came to release the captives. Help me to see that I must help myself before I can really help others. Help me to see if the things in this prayer are going to come to pass and come true. It's up to me, and then you. I confess that my own intellectualizing of things is worth virtually nothing in the sight of your real truth. And help me to get out of my head into my heart. Help me to see that the useless junk that I put out to protect myself from real life to be what it really is, useless junk, and to replace it with your truth, words, and power. I confess I am thoroughly messed up and tangled up and ask you to unmess and untangle me. Help me to stop all phoniness, and to quit believing all the lies that have been said to me, and about me, and to be more like you, and less and less like me, so I can be the real me. I give you glory, praise, and honor, not only for my life, but also for yours, because your life is truth. Thank you Jesus for all you have, and will do to see my perfection for the glory of God, amen."

40. God's blessings and prosperity seem to come over time as a result of continued faithfulness and well doing, rather than immediately upon initial salvation.

Hebrews 6:12 *KJV* "That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises."

41. Unfair Comparisons – when we compare our talents or progress in the Lord with others, we can do ourselves harm.

2 Corinthians 10:12 *AMP* "Not that we [*have the audacity to*] venture to class or [*even to*] compare ourselves with some who exalt and furnish testimonials for themselves! However, when they measure themselves with themselves and compare themselves with one another, they are without understanding and behave unwisely."

42. God expects us to walk by faith, which is trusting God to do what he promised in His Word the Bible. This may mean ignoring seemingly contradictory circumstances or symptoms.

Psalms 138:2 AMP "I will worship toward Your holy temple and praise Your name for Your loving-kindness and for Your truth and faithfulness; for You have exalted above all else Your name and Your word and You have magnified Your word above all Your name!"

Hebrews 10:38 KJV "Now the just shall live by faith: but if *any man* draw back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him."

The Amplified translation defines faith as "*to adhere to, trust in rely on, have faith in*".

Galatians 2:20 AMP "I have been crucified with Christ [*in Him I have shared His crucifixion*]; it is no longer I who live, but Christ (the Messiah) lives in me; and the life I now live in the body I live by faith in (by adherence to and reliance on and complete trust in) the Son of God, Who loved me and gave Himself up for me."

2 Corinthians 4:18 AMP "Since we consider and look not to the things that are seen but to the things that are unseen; for the things that are visible are temporal (brief and fleeting), but the things that are invisible are deathless and everlasting."

Jeremiah 1:12 KJV "Then said the LORD unto me, Thou hast well seen: for I will hasten my word to perform it."

Psalms 105:8 KJV "He hath remembered his covenant for ever, the word *which* he commanded to a thousand generations."

1 Titus 6:12 KJV "Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art also called, and hast professed a good profession before many witnesses."

2 Corinthians 5:7 AMP "For we walk by faith [*we regulate our lives and conduct ourselves by our conviction or belief respecting man's relationship to God and divine things, with trust and holy fervor; thus we walk*] not by sight or appearance."

Free Online Resources for Making Disciples

Bible Search and Study Program for KJV - www.e-sword.net Some Extras
(Commentaries and additional Bible translations) may cost money.

Online University - www.harvestime.org Discipleship Evangelism - Andrew Wommack

Online Bibles - A variety of translations and languages - www.biblegateway.com

Discipleship Lessons - <http://www.biblestudycd.com/Lessons.html>

Discipler Training International - <http://www.disciplers.org/>

Uptown Church Discipleship Training - <http://www.uptownchurch.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/06/Discipleship-Training-Manual-Uptown-Church.pdf>

Discipleship Training Schools & Supernatural Mentoring

Youth with a Mission - <http://www.ywam.org/dts/> <http://itssupernaturalschool.com/>

Discipleship and Training - Billy Graham Evangelistic Association
<http://www.biblestudycd.com/Lessons.html>

Free Online Bible Study Courses

Free Bible Studies Online - <http://freebiblestudiesonline.org/courses-and-studies>

Bible Study Lessons - <http://www.biblestudylessons.com/>

[Free Bible Studies with Answers by Prince Handley](#)

Open Air Ministry Reaching Beyond the Printed Page



Orriya tracts printed by HIS Print Media Ministry being passed out by Pastor Niak in the Orissa province of India. Pictures show progression from just passing tracts, to sharing from God's Word the Bible in the marketplace, and ministering to the sick.

When the Apostle Paul met with the Other Apostles before him in Jerusalem, they reminded him to show regard for the poor, which Paul stated he already knew to do - [Galatians 2:10](#). Throughout the Bible, God, through his authors, shows regard for the poor among us. A ministry associate, an Illinois lawyer on disability, had tried to start a church at the downtown Recreation Center as another Evangelist had done who built his Word of Faith church to 400 members though active community outreach, and more prominent contacts and guest speakers in [the Faith Movement](#). Rev. Auten was struggling, so I suggested he move to a local park where an insurance broker, Dr. Hank Drost and I had started church services with food Sunday mornings for the homeless. Even though I had been a shy, emotionally super sensitive, and immature child, somewhat of a loner, rather than be faced with any feelings of rejection from others, I felt compelled by the evangelistic call on my life, to reach out to people on the streets. "the least, the last, the lost". The visiting charismatic Baptist Rev. Barnwell had told me when he prayed over me about 1969, that I would have a ministry to young people in the "highways, byways, and alleyways". Just getting started in Christian Evangelism Printing at age 17, was not enough. So I came to be progressively involved in [Open Air Ministry](#). First I began, on Friday night through the weekend, passing out the tracts I was printing. Peter Poppov, of Upland, CA had called me out in a meeting in Anaheim where I lived and went to [Melodyland School of Theology](#) to get my WASC Accredited [Bth](#) degree. "You are not going to sit on the sidelines any longer", he said. "God is giving you boldness!" As boldness increased and I began overcoming my fears, I found success as I followed the leading of the Lord and learned to hear his voice. For example, one afternoon, after I had spent the morning witnessing with my tract bag, I asked the Lord if I was done for the day. The Spirit of the Lord in my human spirit, the real me, said, but not in an audible voice, "I want you to take your tract bag and go down to the Breakwater." I obeyed, curious as to what would transpire. As I began down the breakwater that protects the harbor, I met five Hispanic teenagers, one carrying a stick. Being a humorist, I decided to start a conversation by asking, "Which president was it

that said, 'Speak softly, and carry a big stick!?'” We began to talk and the Lord impressed me to ask if one of them had a short leg, as the Lord was still proving Himself today by working miracles (Galatians 3:5 – *“The God who worketh miracles among you...”*). One young man spoke up, “It’s me. I’m the one with the short leg!” He also told me that, believe it or not, he had taken some training toward becoming a priest. I had him sit on the thick cement sea wall atop the rocks of the breakwater. I held my hands under his outstretched legs to support them and sure enough one leg was shorter than the other evidenced by comparing the position of the heels on his shoes. As the others watched, in Jesus’ Name I commanded the shorter leg to grow out and become equal length with the other one, and it did. Immediately one of the other boys watching exclaimed to the man I had prayed for, “You just did that to pull the preachers leg!” “No, man!”, the other replied, “It really happened!” Then I had all five of the boys gather in a circle with me and hold hands and together repeat after me the prayer of salvation asking Jesus into their hearts as their Lord and Savior.” What a day!

The Lord gave me a witnessing partner and we decided to not just pass out tracts in a predominately Spanish speaking lower Westside neighborhood, but to use what little Spanish we knew to get them to say the prayer of Salvation in Spanish and about four people did! From there we evangelized the yearly big parades, Fiesta, Fourth of July, and the Christmas parade, as well as concerts that came to the County Bowl. The president of the local [Gideon’s](#) Bible distribution chapter and I went out on the Harbor Chaplain boat and passed out about 80 Bibles to boaters with no rejections in the Channel Islands Harbor in Oxnard, CA. We began visiting local convalescent hospitals together and talking to patients individually in their rooms, leading them in the prayer of salvation. When Beverly Manor told me we couldn’t do that in their facility, I began conducting church services there and at about three other facilities with a portable “music box” sound system I made of wood on casters from car stereo audio equipment and a restaurant public address system amplifier. Opportunity opened for me to conduct church services as part of the [California Parks Ministry](#), at the [Cachuma Lake Recreation Park](#) - a source of city drinking water.

Now Rev. Auten was moving his church, Believer’s Charismatic Fellowship, from the Carrillo Recreation Center to Plaza Del Mar Park across from the Yacht Harbor, one of the three parks where amplified music was allowed. The previous minister who had started successfully at the same Recreation center, using a cassette recorder for a PA system, had chided me about not being associated with a local church. I had spent 13 years of my childhood growing up in a local Pentecostal Church that didn’t recognize the call of God on my life, and then said I wouldn’t be welcome as a minister in their denomination after graduating as an honor student from Miracle Valley Bible College, founded by one of the world’s greatest modern evangelists, A.A. Allen. I was hurt by



this, and, now that I was doing my own evangelism, I had gotten out of God's will regarding Christian fellowship and personal accountability to others. I didn't care if I ever got involved in a local church again as I was not about to be slowed down or held back by any organization of man. However, after prayer, I believed I needed to be working with a church so I prayed and felt it was the Lord speaking, through a visiting minister, Auggie Alcalá, "You need to find a church home. If you don't, you will miss the next great move of God in your life!" After prayer, the Lord directed me to Lighthouse faith center where I went right to work as a volunteer associate minister. I was ordained there in 1982, having previously had a Minister's License in 1974 from the first Bible College that had delayed sending me out with a minister, then sent me with a seasoned evangelist in Georgia that told a group in his home, "If ever there were a young man that wanted to serve God more than anything else in the world, this is that man.". However I was so nervous about working with him, I was trying to get close to God while he was taking a vacation between meetings and a lack of communication resulting in his concluding we shouldn't work together, I spent three weeks in the home of a ministry couple in a nearby city that he had had a falling out with. After seven months of living in the backwoods of Macon, Georgia, and following the misleading of a major Prophet with the [United Pentecostal Church](#), I had returned home to Santa Barbara to my wary parents, in an emotionally repressed condition that my two spiritual parents prayed me out of, just as they had previously prayed over me for twelve hours the first time I had visited their home, after getting out of the US Navy.

I stayed with Lighthouse Faith Center until a disagreement among the elders broke up the church. Little Auggie, had been right though, about my entering the next big phase of my ministry by joining that local church. I had preached a main service there while the pastor was away and felt, at the conclusion, that the Lord wanted to confirm the Word of God preached by performing a miracle. I got a "[word of knowledge](#)" (one of the 9 spiritual gifts listed in I Corinthians chapters 12 & 14) that someone in the audience had a tooth problem. The pastor's wife spoke up, "It's my daughter, Jennifer; her tooth is cracked off. She came forward and when I laid hands on her and prayed, something like electricity went through me, and she shook and almost fell down. Ten minutes later her mother spoke again, "Since you prayed for my daughter Jennifer, her tooth has grown back in!"

To God be the Glory!; but the next great move of God in my life was not this, but the fact that the church had received the donation of a Ricoh table top offset printing duplicator being stored at the plumbing shop of Richard Hansen, the Gideon's chapter president I worked with. I set the press up in part of the eight car tin garage on my Dad's ranch in the mountains where I was working, and I ran it and printed tracts for a Hollywood street ministry called [The Holy Ghost Repair Service](#), and *Christian Action League*, until it wouldn't run anymore. I was given an AB Dick brand similar machine and continued printing tracts. As foretold by the prophet, this was the beginning of the

next great move of God in my life, the meager startup of what I later named HIS Print Media Ministries.

The purpose of this chapter has been to show you that what God has called and equipped us to do, may be bigger than what you or I had first thought, which in my case was Christian Evangelism Printing. Let's not limit God by tunnel vision. J.P Phillips, who wrote a modern translation of the Bible, also wrote a book my Aunt gave me titled, [*Your God Is Too Small!*](#) I explained how I went from just printing tracts, to passing out the tracts, to talking with the people I gave them to, leading them in the "[Sinner's Prayer](#)", to Open Air Ministry in Plaza Del Mar Park at the band shell with a home built sound system, ministering weekly on Saturday and Sunday mornings, feeding the homeless, Rev. Auten having turned his church over to me on Saturdays. This was only one of several ministry doors that opened to me. As a part of Lighthouse Faith Center I began monthly services at the local Rescue Mission, then spent the last 6+ years there with my singing wife, doing the weekly Sunday evening chapel services as a team, along with another anointed preacher, and a talented worship musician from [Calvary Chapel](#) (they helped for about a year). At one service in 1982, I had preached on the topic "The God Who Works Miracles Among You" found in Galatians 3:5 KJV. I had told the people that doctors couldn't do everything, God wanted us well. He still works Miracles today, so why not look to Him for a miracle if we need one. I then asked people in the audience to come up for prayer. A man on staff there came up, told me that he had broken his hand or wrist eighteen months earlier, that it hadn't healed right and had been in pain ever since. He showed me how he couldn't bend it any further back than straight out. I laid my hands on his hand and prayed in faith, believing for a miracle. I then prayed a second time, as I didn't feel anything the first time. The Bible says "For we walk by faith, and not by sight." (2 Corinthians 5:7). When I finished, the man got all excited, stating, "Can I give a testimony? When this minister prayed for me something like electricity went into my body and even got down in my feet and made me a little shaky; and now look, I can bend my hand back, and there is no pain!"

Because I became too busy with a full time CNA care giving job, caring for my older ailing parents, and further developing HIS Print media Ministries as I work, save, and buy equipment; I found I had to leave the local church I had been attending for five years. Now, when people ask me where I go to church, I am able to tell them, in a straightforward manner, "The Santa Barbara Rescue Mission". Perhaps, because of atrocities committed in the name of Christianity (to where Alcoholics Anonymous has to use the name "Higher Power" as a substitute for "God"), to me, it is realistic to think that most lost people will never darken the door of a church building to enter it unless it's a wedding or funeral! In the original Greek language in which most of the New Testament was written, the word for "Church", "ecclesia", started out as a term for a democratic town meeting of the people, and never once in the New Testament refers to a physical building, for the church is a organism, the collective body of believers (see [Ephesians](#)

[2:19-22](#)). Mark 16:20 states the “disciples went out and preached **everywhere** and the Lord worked with them, confirming the word with signs following.” By way of a parable, Jesus said “Go out into the highways and byways and compel them to come in [i.e., to the King’s wedding banquet], that my house may be full.” (Luke 14:23).

Next, as the prophetess, Sandy Querin from Clovis, California, has foretold, another door of opportunity opened for me, and, although, I was busy and not getting enough rest, I pursued it. My ministry partner at the Rescue mission, John Whittenberg has been submissive to his senior pastor, a bishop at the local [Church of God in Christ](#), and God has been anointing and promoting him. He was given his own cost free TV show on two of the local cable company’s *public access* channels, four shows a week which reach an average viewing audience of 8,000; and he asked me to do the show with him. He titled his show *The Power of God* telecast. It aired on Sunday mornings at 10:30!

As I stated, I was born a supersensitive person. Sensitive to any criticism or rejection by others, and having a strong willed father, I had found it wasn’t safe to express my feelings or opinions as a child and I shut down emotionally to where others tried to get me on SSI disability for being an incapable of feeling person. That may be why I didn’t feel anything when I prayed for the man with the injured hand at the Rescue Mission, but he had felt a lot. Thus, inside I was still sensitive and I was having a hard time coping with rejection while doing public open air ministry. After the Summer Solstice parade one year, I was in Alameda Park, which was crowded with revelers. A street ministry co-worker and I had gone out evangelizing with tracts at this parade, years earlier, and he had been so demonically attacked and oppressed just passing out tracts, I had found him curled over in a fetal position in a small grassy area, and after I prayed the demons off of him and he felt released, he was again excited and wanted to go out and pass out more tracts. Now, years later I was passing out tracts alone. I handed one to a man who took it, glanced at it, looked me in the face, said “F--- you!” He then handed it back, and walked off. One faith and healing minister, [T.L. Osborne](#), had written a book titled *Soul Winning Out Where The Sinners Are*, the implication being that open air public places were a good place to witness, but sensitive me had come to believe otherwise.

One night while I was at work, printing automobile leasing guide books on a high speed [Xerox Docutech 135](#) digital printer that ran 10 hours without a paper jam, I felt the Lord was consoling me by saying, “I haven’t called you to be a front line minister, but to be the support in the back.” The Bible says, “Take heed that the light that is in thee be not darkness” (Luke 11:35), and “Let him that thinketh he standeth take heed lest he fall.” (I Corinthians 10:12). I was content with what I had been told. I figured, although it was hard work due to used and sometimes faulty equipment, and sometimes it is boring, I would just stay behind the scenes from then on and print tracts and try to be content with a private ministry of making the ammunition and passing it to the front line street workers who were better at handling all the flak of the enemy, demonic opposition rising

up in sinners waiting to be harvested and translated out of “the power of darkness” and into “the Kingdom of God’s dear Son.” ([Colossians 1:13](#) & [Acts 26:18](#)).

I had been stealing the devil's subjects - I should have known that opposition comes with the ministry of the Evangelist ([1 Corinthians 16:9](#)). Dr. Hank Drost and I had bought a homeless person a stick of Vaseline for his chapped lips, hoping ministering first to his physical need would prime the pump for his spiritual need to pray the sinner’s prayer; but, when he started to repeat the prayer after us and we got to the name “Jesus” in the prayer, he couldn’t repeat it, until we first spent some time breaking the binding power of the demons over his tongue. On another occasion I had been witnessing with a team, passing out gospel tracts in front of the UCEN building at the University of California Santa Barbara. One team member, a woman living at the Christian half way house, Sea and Summit, run by Youth With a Mission, had a man refuse to take a tract and turn away, to which she yelled out, with the humorous, but out of character for a Christian, “The Devil’s got you, Buster. And you can just go to Hell, for all I care!”

I never suspected that it was really the devil speaking to me that night at work, until something happened when I visited the Santa Maria, CA Foursquare Church with Christian friends. Evidently, as a result of my just having opened a Christian print shop in a low rent garage on the lower East Side of town across from a drug infested trailer park next to the freeway, I had stirred up so much demonic oppression against myself that I was really hurting inside and thought the visiting minister from Tennessee at the Foursquare church could help me get set free. When I began sharing my predicament, he immediately began to fire off that pat answer that I wasn’t under the needed “covering” of being a member of a local church. Then the Lord revealed to him the gravity of the situation and he suddenly changed his tune and exclaimed, “I don’t know how you’re still alive, how you’re still standing there!”

The Apostle Paul stated in I Corinthians 16:9, “*A great door for effective service has opened for me, and there are many adversaries.*” What I had learned is, no matter what level or field of evangelism or spiritual warfare prayer we are involved in, if we are moving in the gifting and power of the Holy Spirit within and by His anointing upon us, we are doing damage to the Devil’s kingdom, snatching away his suspects; and he, being the sore loser that he is, is not happy about it. One demon, when confronted in a person and commanded to leave, in Jesus’ Name, responded, “I sure don’t want to, but if you say that I have to, then I have to.” Jesus’ immediate disciples soon found out, “Even the demons are subject unto us, in thy Name!” – Luke 10:17. I also concluded that one should be attending a local church, so I found one and became actively involved, furthering my ministry training as an Evangelist, Bible College teacher, and church Treasurer.

On another visit that week to the same Foursquare Church in Santa Maria, I went up to Sue Haddick, who headed the church prayer team, for personal prayer. She took me

up on the platform and said, "Someone has lied to you. Your place is up here on the platform. The Lord has called you to be a leader in the body of Christ." This was later confirmed during my participation in a "Presbytery" ([1 Timothy 4:14](#)) at the local church I had begun attending to get some protection from the attack of evil for being a soldier in the army of the Lord, as Paul told Timothy, "Endure hardness as a good soldier." – 2 Timothy 2:3. The prophetic word of God was spoken over me in the presbytery, "The office of the Evangelist is upon thee...You will teach others to do what you do." Evidently, that night at job, printing automotive lease guide books, it had been the enemy, or an evil spirit that had spoken to me, telling me that I could just print tracts, hiding out "behind the scenes".

As a means of daily protection from evil, I tried to follow the advice of my spiritual elders or mentors, in symbolically putting on the whole armor of God according to [Ephesians 6:10-19](#), and in celebrating personal communion each morning according to [1 Corinthians 11:23-26](#), as I start the day. The opposition is real, and frequently, I am hit so hard I want to give up and quit, but yet go on. When Apostle Cannistraci prayed over me as requested by the pastors, he stated, "You have persevered when others would have capitulated and given up." The Word of God enjoins us: "Fight the good fight of faith. Quit ye like men, be strong!" – 1 Corinthians 16:13. I believe the Lord just gave me the words of the hymn, *He Lives*: "I serve a risen Savior, who's in the world today. I know that He is living, whatever men may say. I feel His hand of mercy, I hear His voice of cheer; and just the time I need Him, He's always near. He lives, He Lives, salvation to impart, you ask me how I know He lives, He lives within my heart." Another stanza reads, "the hope of all who seek Him, the help of all who find, none other is so loving, so good and kind."

The Bible states, "For the Lord is a very present help in trouble, a shelter in the time of the storm." – Psalm 46:1. Psalm 37:23 NLT states, "The Lord directs the steps of the godly. He delights in every detail of their lives." Two more hymns just came to me: First, "And when the battles raging, stand by me!" Second, "Though all Hell assails me, I shall not be moved. In His love and favor, I shall not be moved; just like a tree that's planted by the water, I shall not be moved...He's the One that's leading, I shall not be moved."

In 2010, when I met my wife to be, she told me "The Lord showed me a way where you can work full time for God for the next two years until you are 62, then start drawing your social security retirement benefits. I'm not going to tell you what it is - you have to ask God to show you." "Lord, what could she be talking about?" I pondered. The answer was very simple - "Get married!" Now we have our own well equipped print shop, and have spent the last six years helping others with their Christian Evangelism Printing needs. Personally, we receive no money for our labor of love. We do charge cost of materials plus 40% for those able to pay for their printing. This income goes into a separate ministry checking account. We take care of God's work, and H takes care of

us! We accept, but don't solicit contributions. We lack for nothing! I call it the *blessed life!*

Luke 6:38 NLT - "Give, and you will receive. Your gift will return to you in full—pressed down, shaken together to make room for more, running over, and poured into your lap. The amount you give will determine the amount you get back."

Joshua 1:9 KJV - Have not I commanded thee? Be strong and of a good courage; be not afraid, neither be thou dismayed: for the LORD thy God *is* with thee whithersoever thou goest.

Maintaining Priorities - Desiring the Better Part

In the Bible ([Luke 10:38-42](#)) two sisters, Mary and Martha, were preparing a meal with Jesus as a guest in their home. Martha complained that her sister was spending too much time listening to what Jesus had to say when there was work to do. Jesus told her that Mary had desired the "better part." Sometimes, as the saying goes, "We can be so busy doing the work of the Lord, that we neglect the Lord of the work." After Jesus went to heaven, the religious leaders called in His followers.

Acts 4:13 NLT - "The members of the council were amazed when they saw the boldness of Peter and John, for they could see that they were ordinary men with no special training in the Scriptures. They also recognized them as men who had been with Jesus."

To be most effective in ministry, we must seek the Giver above the gift (abilities God has given us to work for Him and expand His kingdom on earth). Working for God, in and of itself, is not the whole picture. The most effective Christians are those who spend time with God in prayer and personal Bible study. The more they pray, the more sensitive they become to the leading of the Holy Spirit within them as to the most effective way to be reaching people. Jim Spillman, a former Baptist Sunday school curriculum writer, got filled with the Holy Spirit and his ministry grew in proportion to his ability to cooperate with God. In a pastoral training class he taught, I heard him say, "The most important thing you can know as a minister, is when the Holy Spirit is upon you." What matters most seems to be God's ability working through our availability. The book of Luke makes this statement about the healing ministry of Jesus:

Luk3 6:19 NLT - "Everyone tried to touch Him, because healing power went out from Him, and He healed everyone."

If we are not careful, we may substitute clever and logical gospel presentations for the demonstration of the power of God and the conviction of the Holy Spirit - two key factors in the success of the early church. My *spiritual mother* once told me: "David, the Lord is going to use you; but, if you really want Him to use you, you are going to have to pray more."

Hosea 6:1-3 NLT - "Come, let us return to the LORD... In just a short time He will restore us, so that we may live in His presence. Oh, that we might know the LORD! Let us press on to know Him. He will respond to us as surely as the arrival of dawn or the coming of rains in early spring."

1 Corinthians 2:4-5 NLT - "And my message and my preaching were very plain. Rather than using clever and persuasive speeches, I relied only on the power of the Holy Spirit. I did this so you would trust not in human wisdom but in the power of God."

In the beginning days of Ministry I had a lot of energy and wanted to accomplish so much. One Monday morning, after having worked the night shift over the weekend, I decided to go shopping, but the Lord told me, "You had better see about getting in bed and getting some rest, or you are going to be in trouble." Since I didn't feel tired, I ignored the warning and ended up with persistent chest pain for a day, even though I was in my twenties. My spiritual parents or mentors had told me. "David, if you don't settle down and start taking care of yourself, you're not going to be any good for God or anyone else!" They were right!

May 2016 - The world is now in the beginning stages of the greatest revival it has ever seen, perhaps a last great harvest of souls before Jesus returns to earth and eventually rules over a new heaven and a new earth. Prophetic guests on TV shows like [Sid Roth's It's Supernatural](#) have revealed that a billion people will come to Jesus Christ over the next ten years. [Glenda Jackson](#) says what is coming will be greater than what happened in the Book of Acts in the Bible, what the Book of Daniel means when it states:

Daniel 11:32 KJV "...the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do *exploits*."

John 14:11-14 NLT - Just believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me. Or at least believe because of the work you have seen Me do. "I tell you the truth, **anyone who believes in Me will do the same works I have done, and even greater works, because I am going to be with the Father.** You can ask for anything in My name, and I will do it, so that the Son can bring glory to the Father. Yes, ask Me for anything in My name, and I will do it!

God's desire and plan is to spiritually bless the United States (in spite of natural disasters) and use Christians filled with the Holy Spirit and walking in step with the leading of the Holy Spirit ([Galatians 5:25](#) NLT) to usher in this great move of God. With the ability to demonstrate miracles, and the conviction of the Holy Spirit moving on the hearts of the unsaved to see their need of Jesus and give their hearts to Him, we may no longer need fancy sermons and polished churches and theatrical performances, or even gospel tracts. Once again we will understand why the early Church evangelists were so successful - they were proof producers able to demonstrate the reality and power of the living God, rather than just rituals and religion. My view is that miracles will be happening through ordinary Christians in every day places - the marketplaces, streets, parks and beaches - places we have been passing out tracts.

In all our efforts to win souls for Christ, let us not forget that it is not what we have to offer (our natural abilities and training) that matter, but our cooperation with God to let Him do what He wants through us - God's ability working through our Availability. In creating Evangelism literature, what we design and print must never be a substitute for the Biblical pattern of Evangelism - The demonstration of God's power in miracles and healing, along with the convicting power of the Holy Spirit. Let's develop a more personal relationship with God through a personal prayer life, so we will be God's hand extended in this exciting time of revival and blessing.

1 Corinthians 2:4-5 AMP - And my language and my message were not set forth in persuasive (enticing and plausible) words of wisdom, but they were in demonstration of the [*Holy*] Spirit and power [*a proof by the Spirit and power of God, operating on me and stirring in the minds of my hearers the most holy emotions and thus persuading them*], So that your faith might not rest in the wisdom of men (human philosophy), but in the power of God.

Acts 8:4-8 KJV - Therefore they that were scattered abroad went every where preaching the word. Then Philip went down to the city of Samaria, and preached Christ unto them. And the people with one accord gave heed unto those things which Philip spake, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did. For unclean spirits, crying with loud voice, came out of many that were possessed *with them*: and many taken with palsies, and that were lame, were healed. And there was great joy in that city.

Galatians 5:25 NLT - Since we are living by the Spirit, let us follow the Spirit's leading in every part of our lives.

Where & How You Can Help

A visiting minister, Rev. Craig Hill, founder of [Ancient Paths Seminars](#), came from Colorado to Carpinteria, CA to do a seminar, and went around the room to minister to do individual ministry. When he stood in front of me, he could see, by the insight of the Holy Spirit all the years of training and experience that had gone into my life. He told me, prophetically, that the Lord would speak to people to plug into holes in the path to the HIS Print Media Ministry's vision to make it a reality. Maybe you are one of these individuals. The beauty of modern technology is that, using their computers, the internet, and e-mail, people can help without having to leave the comfort of their own homes.

1. Existing previously printed tracts need converting to digital computer document using the picture editing software Adobe Photoshop, the page layout program Adobe Indesign, and Adobe Acrobat Professional to convert documents to a PDF format for posting on our website www.tracts4u.com for worldwide viewing and usage by Evangelists and others.
2. The ministry could use additional pieces of equipment. For example, a computer to metal press plate image setter with no chemistry. A high speed no moving print head duplexing inkjet printer like the Hewlett Packard Pro x series. Adobe CS 6 and Microsoft Office 2016 software. A production CD / DVD duplicating system with direct to CD label printer, preferably one with a robotic arm that is self sustaining for 100+ copies. A Dymo brand one at a time label only CD printer would suffice for now, along with a two or four at a time stand alone CD /DVD duplicator sold at Fry's Electronics.
3. Computer typists to convert hard copy text documents from which to make film positives for printing press metal plates.
4. Foreign language translators, especially ones with computers that can type foreign languages that don't utilize Romance (European / Latin) characters. For example, Chinese, Japanese, Korean, Hindi, Arabic, and Farsi / Persian.
5. PDF format digital Bibles.
6. We are looking for a building of about 2000 square feet in the Santa Maria, CA area, with built in heating and air conditioning and a 220 volt 100+ amp power panel.
7. Financial contributions are accepted with checks being made out to HIS Print Media Ministries. These incoming contributions are deposited in a separate ministry account, and, as of this writing, none of these funds will go to pay salaries as all labor is a voluntary contribution. The contact for Equipment or financial donations: David A. Hupp, HIS Print Media Ministries, P.O. Box 62112, Santa Barbara, CA 93160-2112. E-mail: info@tracts4u.com. A tax deductible receipt for your gift can be provided through our parent non-profit ministry corporation, Mercy International, Inc.

8. Step by step guidelines on putting together a book or booklet document on the computer, using Adobe Indesign CS5 or later software. This would become an added chapter to this book in future printings. We need to know how to place text from Microsoft Word into an Adobe Indesign book document and have the text flow continuously from one page to the next like it does in Word.
9. A similar instruction guide to #8, only on the proper set up and use of print shop bindery equipment and / or Offset Printing Presses.
10. A how-to guide on the use and maintenance of Color Laser and Inkjet printers.
11. A how-to do it guide for using Dragon Naturally Speaking Preferred, talk and it types, which I have on both computers. This will help people with less education still express themselves in writing a tract, testimony, or book.
12. Making more Microsoft Screen capture training videos on Christian Evangelism Publishing. We will post them on YouTube along with the 21 videos I have already posted. We also posted our [12 minute interview with Open Up](#) in Bakersfield, CA

The World's Most Important Prayer

2 Titus 3:15 NLT “You have been taught the holy Scriptures from childhood, and they have given you the wisdom to receive the salvation that comes by trusting in Christ Jesus.”

1 John 5:1a NLT “Everyone who believes that Jesus is the Christ has become a child of God.”

Galatians 3:26 KJV “For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.”

Ephesians 2:8-10 NLT “God saved you by His grace when you believed. And you can't take credit for this; it is a gift from God.⁹ Salvation is not a reward for the good things we have done, so none of us can boast about it.¹⁰ For we are God's masterpiece. He has created us anew in Christ Jesus, so we can do the good things He planned for us long ago.”

Ephesians 2:13 KJV “But now you have been united with Christ Jesus. Once you were far away from God, but now you have been brought near to Him through the blood of Christ.”

John 1:12-3 NLT “But to all who believed Him and accepted Him, He gave the right to become children of God.¹³ They are reborn—not with a physical birth resulting from human passion or plan, but a birth that comes from God.”

Romans 10:9-10 NLT “If you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved.¹⁰ For it is by believing in your heart that you are made right with God, and it is by confessing with your mouth that you are saved.

Revelations 3:20 NLT [Jesus speaking]: “Look! I stand at the door and knock. If you hear My voice and open the door, I will come in, and we will share a meal together as friends.”

Romans 10:13 NLT “For Everyone who calls on the name of the LORD will be saved.”

The Above Scripture verses from The Word of God, the Bible, tell us we are not children of God by natural birth, but by a spiritual rebirth, or, being “Born Again.” We have to individually invite Jesus Christ to come into our heart and lives on His terms. Our first experience of God comes when we, through personal prayer, become related to him by becoming His child and entering into His eternal kingdom. So, then, where is God in **Your Life**? Is He on the inside or just on the outside? Life's greatest accomplishment is making Heaven by praying this **World's Most Important Prayer**, aloud, and from your heart:

“Father God, I come before you in Jesus’ name. I ask you to reveal yourself to me, and come into my life, forgiving my sins by cleansing me with your blood. Believing Jesus Christ died for me, and that you raised Him from the dead, I now confess Jesus Christ to be the Lord and Master of my life. I command Satan to depart in Jesus’ name. Lord, now give me your promised free gift of eternal life, writing my name in your Book of Life. Fill me with your Holy Spirit so I can follow and obey you. Cause me to know you personally, and to experience your abundant life. Thank you for hearing and answering this prayer as you promised you would. Amen.”

Spanish / Español

Invítalo en este momento y ora, por favor. Aquí esta cómo hacerlo: ¡Di la **oración más valiosa del mundo** en voz alta con todo tu corazón!

“Padre Dios, vengo ante ti en el nombre de Jesús. Perdona mis pecados y límpiame con tu sangre. Creo que Jesucristo murió por mí, y que tú, mi Padre, lo has resucitado de la muerte. Ahora declaro que Jesucristo es el Señor y Maestro de mi vida. Yo ordeno a Satanás que se

aleje de mi vida en el nombre de Jesús. Señor, ahora dame tu promesa, el regalo gratis de vida eterna, escribe mi nombre en el Libro de Vida. Enviame tu Espíritu Santo para así poder seguirte y obedecerte. Permíteme conocerte personalmente y disfrutar de tu vida abundante. Gracias por oírme y responder a ésta plegaria como nos prometiste que se cumpliría. Amén.”

Closing Prayer by Author


Father God, in Jesus' Name I ask you to anoint the one who has read this book on soul winning evangelism. Anoint him or her with creative design, printing, and soul winning ability just like, in the Old Testament ([Exodus 31:3](#)), you filled Bezalel and Oholiab with the Spirit of God, giving them "great wisdom, ability, and expertise in all kinds of crafts", empowering and enabling him/her to help fulfill Jesus' Great Commission to take his Good News "to every creature". Amen! So be it!

Craftsmen: Bezalel and Oholiab

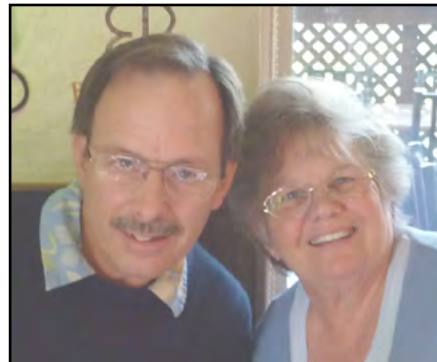
Exodus 31:1-6 NLT

Then the LORD said to Moses, ²“Look, I have specifically chosen Bezalel son of Uri, grandson of Hur, of the tribe of Judah. ³I have filled him with the Spirit of God, giving him great wisdom, ability, and expertise in all kinds of crafts. ⁴He is a master craftsman, expert in working with gold, silver, and bronze. ⁵He is skilled in engraving and mounting gemstones and in carving wood. He is a master at every craft! ⁶“And I have personally appointed Oholiab son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan, to be his assistant. Moreover, I have given special skill to all the gifted craftsmen so they can make all the things I have commanded you to make:

PDF Interactive Version of This Book on DVD

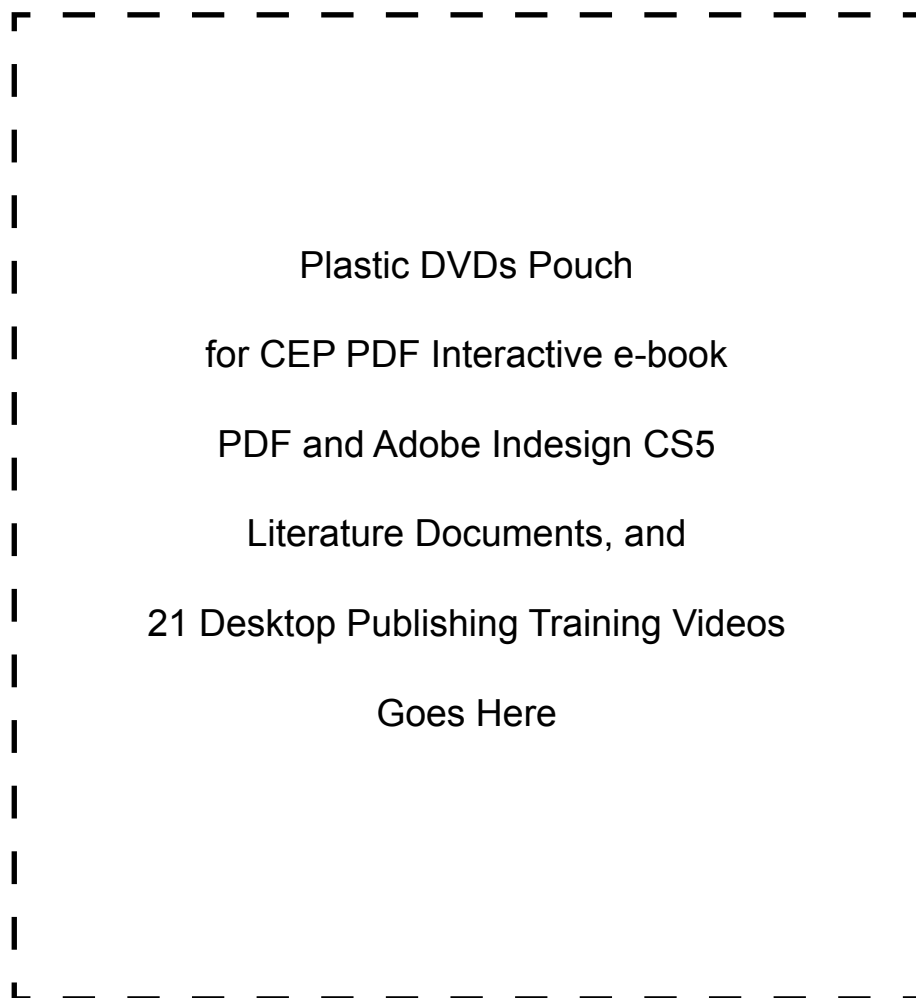
I am convinced that the digital Adobe Acrobat PDF Interactive version of this book is far superior to the printed comb bind version because of the one mouse click internet accessibility to additional information for blue colored words and phrases. An internet or Wi-Fi connection is required. In the PDF document, when the mouse cursor is moved over blue hyperlinked text, a hand icon  appears, and one then left clicks the computer mouse, or taps a finger on a touch screen tablet. On printed versions of this book, a CD containing the PDF Interactive book document is included in a pouch pasted inside the back cover of the book. A slightly less quality (smaller file size *Standard Quality*) read online or download version of this newest version of the book is the first item posted on our website www.tracts4u.com. It can be read online for free, or downloaded and saved on one's computer. The read online version doesn't have full functionality with the clickable links to additional information found elsewhere on the internet, unless the file is opened in a private viewing browser window. When viewing additional information, an additional window will open. After viewing that information, close that window, and one continues to view the e-book in the private viewing window.

About the Author Evangelist Rev. David A. Hupp was born in 1950 into a family of poor homesteading Midwest farmers and intellectual achievers. At birth, when his inventor father wasn't looking, his Pentecostal grandmother laid a hand on him, dedicating him to the service of the Lord. Although his parents thought they had created a genius, he was super sensitive, immature, didn't do well his first twelve years of primary schooling, and wasn't supposed to graduate from High School. It took years for him to realize that he was different and had to pursue another calling, the Lord's, to the Office of the Evangelist, and in particular, Christian Evangelism Printing, a work he began at age 17 on a hand cranked mimeograph machine he bought from Sears for about \$75.



Now, at age 66, after two Bible colleges (six years total college with a "B" average), nine graphics arts courses with "A" grades, over thirty years as a licensed or ordained minister, and over twenty years of offset printing and desktop publishing, including helping print paperback books for others, he has written his own "How To" Christian Evangelism Printing guide for small, in home, Desktop Publishers and Printers. In June 2016 He received an honorary Doctor of Divinity degree from EMIBU associated with ACI, the world's largest non-governmental accrediting agency.

In June 2016 we expect to own a larger building in the business district. With added equipment, this can serve as a hands on Christian Publishing training center under the name HIS Print Media Ministries. Graduates will receive a certificate of competence in printing and be sent out to work with other printers like World Missionary Press, or establish their own Christian publishing centers. Samples of the work in progress, or documents already being distributed and published may be viewed at the HIS Print Media Ministries website, www.tracts4u.com. Having coordinated two years of open air meetings in local parks, David also seeks, as foreseen in dream and visions, to follow in the footsteps of Philip, one of the Church's first Evangelists, preaching with signs following at local parks, shopping centers, and beaches, reliving the Book of the Acts of the Apostles.



Back Cover Photo (August 2016) - The press room of HIS Print Media Ministries' new location in Santa Maria, CA. At 1900 square feet, this building is over twice as large as the previous location in Santa Barbara in a Quonset hut on the family ranch. We now have nine rooms and two bathrooms, and the Christian Evangelism print shop is within two miles of where we live.



ISBN 978-1-61623-753-0

9 0000 >



9 781616 237530